

THIS BOOK IS THE PROPERTY OF:  STATE			
	Year	COND	ITION
ISSUED TO	Used	ISSUED	RETURNED
***************************************	000000000000000000000000000000000000000		
***************************************	2002000000000000000	******	
	000000000000000000000000000000000000000		
	***************************************		
	\$20200000000000000000000		
	860000000000000000000000000000000000000		
	4999028\00000000000000000		
	400000000000000000000000000000000000000		•
		***************************************	

PUPILS to whom this textbook is issued must not write on any page or mark any part of it in any way, consumable textbooks excepted.

<sup>1.</sup> Teachers should see that the pupil's name is clearly written in ink in the spaces above in every back issued.

The following terms should be used in recording the condition of the book: New; Good; Fair; Poor; Bad.

wed-land ftons Lill Copy all Fir VOZ-(QUIZ) Forms plaCaux) Pel. VOCAD Daniel Sides Ch 16-20 354A -01ND A & P 4th no, PP 32 -No neury 32 pt ohlo-20 fero, ee - Knorthan, Jall Me - Johns (og Nom, s. meng) - 40 pg 100's sput to -) / tions of stoy (book)

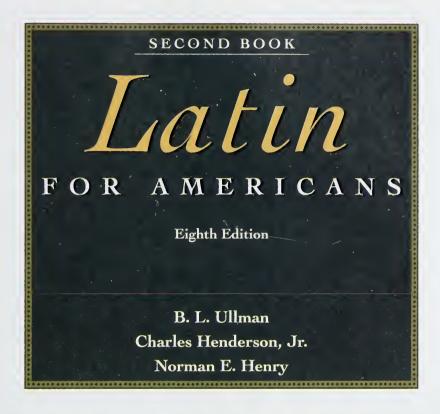
Digitized by the Internet Archive in 2012







EM LOS EM





# About the Authors

B. L. Ullman enjoyed a distinguished career of teaching and scholarship at the Universities of Pittsburgh, Iowa, Chicago, and North Carolina. An authority on all aspects of the Roman world, ancient, medieval, and Renaissance, he was also a pioneer in modern methods of teaching elementary Latin.

Charles Henderson, Jr. collaborated with Professor Ullman in the previous revisions of this book. He has taught at New York University, the University of North Carolina, and at Smith College.

Norman E. Henry, collaborator with Professor Ullman in earlier editions of the *Latin for Americans* series, taught for many years at the Peabody High School, Pittsburgh, and contributed material that has been tested in high school classrooms.

# Glencoe/McGraw-Hill



Copyright © 1997 by Glencoe/McGraw-Hill. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

Send all inquiries to: Glencoe/McGraw-Hill 21600 Oxnard Street Woodland Hills, CA 91367

ISBN 0-02-640913-5 (Student Text)

Printed in the United States of America

4 5 6 7 8 9 10 027 02 01 00 99

# Acknowledgements

The editors would like to thank the following individuals for their assistance in this revision of Latin for Americans:

Nancy Seltz

Ron Tetrick

Carolyn Beach White

Walnut Hills High School

Kokomo High School

Columbus School for Girls

Cincinnati, Ohio

Kokomo, Indiana

Columbus, Ohio

#### Front cover:

Giovanni Paolo Panini, *Interior of the Pantheon, Rome*, c. 1734, Samuel H. Kress Collection, © 1995 Board of Trustees, National Gallery of Art, Washington, D.C., oil on canvas, 1.283 x .991 (50 1/2 x 39); framed: 1.441 x 1.143 (56 3/4 x 45)

This painting is typical of those commissioned by 18th century sight-seeing noblemen to bring home as a souvenir of the Italian part of their "grand tour" of Europe. Rome was a major destination of all educated travellers, who realized their debt to the Roman heritage, its language and its achievements in literature, architecture, science, and the arts.

The most famous and best preserved ancient building in Rome is the Pantheon. (See also page 35.) The original building was built in 27 B.C. by Agrippa, son-in-law of Augustus Caesar. Because of fire and earthquakes, it was rebuilt and altered a number of times, but its original design and purpose remained. The building, with its great dome and round opening at its crown (the oculus), may have first served as a temple to the seven planetary divinities and then to all the gods ("Pantheon" in Greek). Later, in 609, it was made into a church dedicated to the Christian martyrs of the first three centuries. Still later in the 16th century, it served as the burial place of notable artists such as Raphael, while in the 19th century the Italian kings were buried there.

Throughout the centuries, people have marvelled at the Pantheon's interior—its order, proportion, and the sense of calm. For 2,000 years, it has served a spiritual use and has been a major reminder of Rome's contribution to civilization. Just to the right of its great bronze doors, there is a marble plaque that sums up the building. The inscription, first placed on the wall in 1632 reads:

PANTHEON AEDIFICIUM TOTO TERRARUM ORBE CELEBERRIUM

The Pantheon
The Most Celebrated Edifice
In the Whole World

#### Title page:

Brian Blake/Photo Researchers

While Greek political influence waned in the first two centuries B.C., Greek cultural influence remained as strong as ever. The Romans took on Greek culture as their own and spread what can be called Greco-Roman thought and art throughout the then-known world. This Temple of Jupiter in Tunisia is one of the hundreds of temples the Romans built in honor of their gods. It was dedicated to Jupiter, who in the Greek religion was Zeus.

Cartography: Mapping Specialists Limited, pp. 136-137, p. 194, pp. 228-229 Electronic Enhancement: Paul Mirto, p. 197, p. 205, p. 253, p. 364

# Contents -----

Introduction	xi
Unit I—A Roman Family	
Lesson I: Pūblius and Secunda  Form Review (Nouns and Adjectives, Verbs); Syntax Review (Nominative, Accusative, Ablative of Place Where, Ablative of Time When, Agreement of Adjectives, Apposition); Reading Strategies	2
Lesson II: A New Cousin Form Review (Nouns, Adjectives); Syntax Review (Ablative of Accompaniment, Dative): Reading Strategies	11
Lesson III: The Women Have Their Say Form Review; Syntax Review (The Ablative of Means, The Infinitive Used as Subject and Object)	17
Lesson IV: Days with Books and Writers Form Review	22
Lesson V: The Laws of the Twelve Tables Form Review (The Passive Voice, Participles); Syntax Review (Perfect Participles Used as Adjectives and Nouns, Participles Used as Clauses, Ablative Absolute. Ablative of Agent)	26
Lesson VI: The Senate in Session  Form Review (Infinitives, Relative Pronouns and Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives); Syntax Review (Tenses of the Infinitive, Indirect Statement, Relative Pronouns)	32
Lesson VII: Holidays Form Review (Irregular Adjectives, The Demonstratives <i>Hic</i> and <i>Ille</i> , The Verb Possum); Syntax Review (Ablative of Respect, Use of Mille and Milia)	38
Lesson VIII: Superstitions Form Review (The Declensions of <i>Is</i> , <i>Īdem</i> , and <i>Ipse</i> , Comparison of Regular Adjectives and Adverbs); Syntax Review (Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs, Dative with Adjectives)	44
Lesson IX: The Big Show Form Review (Comparison of Irregular Adjectives, Comparison of Irregular Adverbs); Syntax Review (The Uses of the Ablative)	49
Unit II—Two Roman Students in Athens	
Lesson X: The Farewell Dinner Review of the Fourth Declension; Subjunctive Mood; Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive	58
Lesson XI: On the Way Purpose Clauses with <i>Ut</i> and <i>Nē</i>	64
Lesson XII An Adventure Imperfect Subjunctive; The Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum; Tense Sequence in Purpose Clauses	68
Lesson XIII: Sight-Seeing at Brundisium Conjugation of Fero	73

Result Clauses with <i>Ut</i> and <i>Ut non</i> ; Summary of Purpose and Result Clauses	78
Lesson XV: A Gossipy Letter from Rome Review of the Fifth Declension; Subjunctive of Sum and Possum	82
Lesson XVI: Alma Māter Pluperfect Active Subjunctive; Time Clauses: Ubi, Postquam, Cum	86
Lesson XVII: Athens the Beautiful Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Summary of Sequence of Tenses	91
Lesson XVIII: A Request for Funds Deponent Verbs	97
Lesson XIX: A Wedding Personal Pronouns; Reflexive Pronouns; Indirect Questions	101
Lesson XX: The Trip to Delphi Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives; The Seven Wise Men of Greece	106
Lesson XXI: Totalitarianism and Democracy Formation and Use of the Future Passive Participle	112
Lesson XXII: Athletics and Patriotism Indirect Commands	116
Lesson XXIII: National Heroes The Gerund; Use of the Gerund and the Gerundive	120
Lesson XXIV: A Visit to the Academy Conjugation of $Fi\bar{o}$	125
Lesson XXV: Athens and Rome Conjugation of <i>Volō</i> and <i>Nōlō</i>	128
Lesson XXVI: The Homecoming The Dative with Special Verbs; The Datives of Reference and Purpose	132
Our Heritage: Greeks and Romans	138
Unit II Review A Latin Play: Bulla	141
Unit III—Livy	
A Great Historian	146
Lesson XXVII: Early Kings of Rome The Dative with Compounds	148
Lesson XXVIII: Out Go the Kings The Conjugation of <i>Mālō</i> ; The Locative Case	152
Lesson XXIX: How Brutus Got His Name Review: Future Passive Participle and Gerund	156
Lesson XXX: How "Lefty" (Scaevola) Got His Name The Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing; Latin Sentence Structure	159
Lesson XXXI: The Plebeians Go On Strike Impersonal Verbs	163
Lesson XXXII: Extra! Rome Captured by the Gauls Genitive of the Whole; More about Cum Clauses	167

Lesson XXXIII: Rome Sweet Home Omission of Sum	171
Lesson XXXIV: Torquātus, or Courage and Discipline Indirect Command; The Indefinite Quis, Aliquis, and Quīdam	175
Lesson XXXV: The Punic Wars The Relative as Connective; Place to Which	178
Lesson XXXVI: The Romans Give Liberty to the Greeks The Imperative; Quisque and Quisquam	182
Lesson XXXVII: Civil War Ablative of Separation	186
Lesson XXXVIII: Pāx Rōmāna Description; Ablative of Degree of Difference; Etiam and Quoque; Quidem	190
Lesson XXXIX: Roman Scandals Relative Purpose Clauses	195
Our Heritage: The Roman Empire	199
Unit IV—The Argonauts	
The Story of the Golden Fleece The Argonauts and Latin Grammar	204
Lesson XL: The Wicked Uncle	206
Lesson XLI: The Golden Fleece and the Building of the Argo	208
Lesson XLII: Dinner Under Difficulties	210
Lesson XLIII: Two Good Turns	213
Lesson XLIV: A Risky Job	215
Lesson XLV: Sowing the Dragon's Teeth	217
Lesson XLVI: Jason Gets the Fleece	219
Lesson XLVII: Escape Through Murder	221
Lesson XLVIII: Boiled Mutton	224
Lesson XLIX: Death and More Death	226
Unit V—Dē Bellō Gallicō I	
Julius Caesar	232
Caesar's Army	236
Lesson L: A Geography Lesson	240
Lesson LI: An Entire Nation Emigrates	244
Lesson LII: A Mysterious Death and a Bonfire	248
Lesso 13 III: Caesar Says: "You Shall Not Pass"	252
Lesson LIV: The Harder Way	256
Lessen IV. The Gauls Appeal to Caesar The Dative of Possession; The Subjunctive in Anticipatory Clauses	260
Lesson Land A Surprise That Failed	264

Lesson LVII: The Fight Is On Causal Clauses with Quod and Quoniam	267
Lesson LVIII: The Helvetian Surrender	271
Lesson LIX: The Price of Peace	274
Lesson LX: The German Threat	277
Lesson LXI: Caesar Promises to Support the Gauls	281
Lesson LXII: Ariovistus' Defiant Stand	285
Our Heritage: The Gallic Conquest and Its Effect on the World	290
Unit VI—Dē Bellō Gallicō II-V	
Summary of Book II-Caesar's Gallic War	294
Lesson LXIII: The First Battle on the Atlantic	297
Lesson LXIV: A Decisive Victory	300
Lesson LXV: Description of the Suebi	303
Lesson LXVI: The Bridging of the Rhine	306
Lesson LXVII: Scarcity of Information about Britain	309
Lesson LXVIII: Midnight Sailing	312
Lesson LXIX: Difficult Fighting	315
Lesson LXX: Storm and Tide Cause Trouble	318
Lesson LXXI: New Difficulties	321
Our Heritage: Caesar's Invasions of Britain	324
Lesson LXXII: Britain and Its People	325
Lesson LXXII: Two Rival Heroes	330
Lesson LXXIV: A Coded Message and a Clever Trick	333
Unit VIIDē Bellō Gallicō VI-VII	
Lesson LXXV: Gallic Leaders	338
Lesson LXXVI: The Druids	341
Lesson LXXVII: Druids and Knights	344
Lesson LXXVIII: Religion	347
Lesson LXXIX: Marriages and Funerals; Censorship	349
Lesson LXXX: Description of the Germans	351
Lesson LXXXI: The Hercynian Forest and Its Animals	354
Lesson LXXXII: Vercingetorix Takes Charge	357
Lesson LXXXIII: Roman Spirit	360
Lesson LXXXIV: The Siege of Alesia	363
Lesson LXXV: A Horrible Suggestion	366
Lesson LXCXXVI: Innocent Victims of War	369
Lesson LXXXVII: Near Disaster Followed by Victory	372

Our Heritage: Vercingetorix and Alesia	375
A Latin Play: Caesar Dictator	376
Unit VIII—The Letters of Pliny  An Ancient Letter Writer-382; The Eruption of Vesuvius-383; Flight from Disaster-384; The Secret of Success-386; How to Keep Young-387; The Good Die Young-387; A Ghost Story-389; Don't Be a Harsh Father-389; Graded Friendship Is Degraded Friendship-390; Wanted, A Teacher-390; A Courageous Wife-391; Two Love Letters-392; A Fish Story-392; Advice to a Provincial Governor-393; A Humane Master-394; A Busy Holiday-395  Unit IX—Latin Literature  Ennius-398; Plautus and Terence-399; Lucretius-400; Cornelius Nepos-402; Catullus-402; Cicero-404; Sallust-407; Publilius Syrus-408; Livy-409; Horace-410; Sulpicia-411; Ovid and Roman Elegy-412; Phaedrus-413; Valerius Maximus-414; Seneca-415; Petronius-415; Quintilian-417; Martial-418; Tacitus-419; Juvenal-420; Aulus Gellius-420; Miscellaneous Quotations-422; Augustine- 423; Liutprand-424; Adam of Bremen-425; Hildegard von Bingen-426; From the Carmina Burana-428; Iacopone of Todi-429; Thomas of Celano-429; From Gesta Romanorum-431; Petrarch-431; Poggio-433; Pietro Bembo-433	
Unit X—Ovid and Vergil	
Reading Latin Verse	436
Ovid's Metamorphōsēs  The Flood: Deucalion and Pyrrha–438; Echo and Narcissus–441; Perseus and Atlas–443; Orpheus and Eurydice–444; Pygmalion–445	438
Vergil's Aeneid Book I-448; Book IV-450; Book VI-451	446
Quotations from Vergil	453
Appendix	454
Vocabulary	
Latin-English	489
English–Latin	517
Subject Index	523
Grammar/Vocabulary Index	528
Maps	
Imperium (Communication)	136-137
Italia Gallia	194 228-229

# Introduction

In content, theme, and organization, this edition of *Latin for Americans*, *Second Book* retains the emphasis earlier editions have placed upon American ideals and their classical background. The textbook makes comparisons between ancient and modern ways of life, builds upon English vocabulary-building through the study of Latin roots, and provides thorough and yet simple explanations of the similarities and differences between English and Latin grammar. The reading selections are often accompanied by exercises intended to help the student analyze the real sense of what is being said, to develop a feeling for the variety of meanings possible in many Latin words, depending upon the context, and to instill the confidence to use the full resources of his or her own English vocabulary.

It is not intended that all the Latin readings be completed by every class. The first three units present virtually all the essentials of second-year grammar, and the teacher should feel a certain freedom thereafter in matching the readings to the interests and abilities of the class. The wealth of material provides an ample choice for both regular classwork and for additional assignments to the better students. The reading in Caesar can well be postponed until the second semester, and there should be no need to feel that it must all be done. The work of two new female authors has been introduced in this edition: Sulpicia and Hildegard von Bingen.

Numerous full-color photos replace those found in earlier editions, providing visual appeal and reinforcement to the reading topics.

The revised *Workbook*, authored by Marcia Stille, offers a wealth of supplemental practice. The *Progress Tests* and a set of *Cassette Tapes* rerecorded with new voices are equally usable with this revision. And a set of twenty full-color *Transparencies* are now available for use.

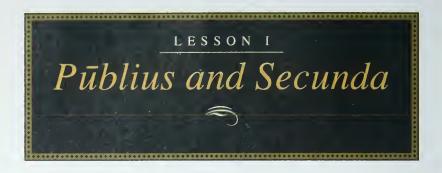




# Unit I A Roman Family

Daily life inside the home of Cornelius Rufus in Pompeii. The boy is using a conch shell to blow his sailboat across the impluvium (pool). A female servant sets out a bowl of fruit and a male servant sorts through several books. Meanwhile, the dominus discusses something with another servant while his wife speaks with her maidservants. Notice that the bottoms of the pillars are painted red to help hide fingerprints.

K.G., Berlin/SuperStock, Inc.





ECUNDA: Ubi fuisti, Pūblī?

PŪBLIUS: In Forō Rōmānō fuī, Secunda.

SECUNDA: Quem ibi vīdistī, Pūblī?

PŪBLIUS: Patrem nostrum et Augustum, prīncipem cīvitātis, vīdī, 5 illum quī pācem constituit. Nonne de hāc pāce audīvistī? "Pāx Augusta", ā populo grāto appellātur.

SECUNDA: Sī Augustus prīnceps cīvitātis est, estne pater noster, P. Caecilius Rūfus, prīnceps familiae?

 $P\bar{U}BLIUS$ : Ita est; nõn autem prīnceps sed paterfamili $\bar{a}s_2$  appell $\bar{a}$ tur. 10 Māter nostra Fulvia māterfamili $\bar{a}s_2$  est.

SECUNDA: Quid facit paterfamiliās?

PŪBLIUS: Ille tōtam familiam regit—et līberōs et servōs. Etiam deōs familiae colit et sōlus omnia negōtia gerit. Auctōritās patris, quae ā nōbīs Rōmānīs "patria3 potestās" appellātur, maxima est. Sī servum aut fīlium 15 interficere cupit, potestātem habet. Sed nōn timēre dēbēs, nam hōc tempore nūllī patrēs Rōmānī id cupiunt. Pater noster bonus, nōn dūrus est. Nōs eum amāmus et omnēs servī eum amant.

SECUNDA: Ubi nunc pater est?

PŪBLIUS: In Forō negōtia pūblica gerit; quondam mīles fuit. Nōbilis et 20 īnsignis est. Sed quid tū hodiē fēcistī, Secunda?

SECUNDA: Cum sorore nostră maiore Caeciliă eram. Ea de officiis mătris nostrae verba fecit. Măter domina servarum est et laborem earum regit. Ā patre nostro semper consulitur, nam docta acrisque est. Postea mater me docuit, nam puellae non in ludum mittuntur. Mater me docuit de 25 factis quae memoria tenuit et de hominibus claris quos ipsa novit et de eis de quibus in libris legit.

PŪBLIUS: Bene. Quid aliud māter docuit?

<sup>1</sup> Named after the emperor Augustus who brought about a long period of peace after many years of civil war.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> The second part of the word is an old genitive form; *paterfamilias* and *materfamilias* are used in English.

<sup>3</sup> Adjective: the father's power



Scala/Art Resource, NY

SECUNDA: Dē patre nostrō docuit. Pater "iūs trium līberōrum", obtinuit, quod tres līberos habet, me et te et Caeciliam. Hoc iūs ab Augusto datum est quod in paucis nobilibus familiis hoc tempore multi liberi sunt, 30 the morning, a Roman patronus et quod Augustus maiörem esse numerum optimõrum cīvium Rōmānōrum cupit. Sed tū, Pūblī, quī iam vir es, quid nunc faciēs?

PUBLIUS: Studia in lūdo nostro perfēcī; iam in Graeciam, ubi clārae scholae sunt, nāvigāre parō.

SECUNDA: Ōh, fēlīx tū. Ego quoque in Graeciam nāvigāre cupiō.

PUBLIUS: Hodiē alia in mente volvõ, nam crās optimus diēs aderit.

SECUNDA: Quid est hoc?

PUBLIUS: Sī bona puella eris, iam cognōscēs.

All official business was conducted in the Roman Forum. After receiving his clientes in would go on to the Forum to meet with his business or political colleagues.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What legal right did a Roman father have?
- 2. What was the name of Secunda's father?
- 3. Whom did the Romans include under "family"?
- 4. Describe Fulvia's household duties.
- 5. Compare and contrast Roman and American family life.

35

Fathers having three children were exempted from certain taxes and were given preference in official positions. Compare modern income tax exemptions for married couples with children.

# Grammar -----

## Form Review

# Nouns and Adjectives

Review the following models of the endings for first and second declension nouns and adjectives. Remember that almost all first declension nouns are feminine (exceptions are agricola, nauta, pīrāta, poēta). Second declension nouns are either masculine (nominative in -us or -r) or neuter (nominative in -um).

FIRST DECLE	NSION	SECOND DECLI	SECOND DECLENSION		
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL		
via	viae	serv <b>us</b>	servī		
viae	vi <b>ārum</b>	serv <b>ī</b>	serv <b>ōrum</b>		
viae	viīs	serv <b>ō</b>	serv <b>īs</b>		
vi <b>am</b>	vi <b>ās</b>	ser v <b>um</b>	serv <b>ōs</b>		
vi <b>ā</b>	viīs	serv <b>ō</b>	serv <b>īs</b>		

SECOND	)	SECOND		SECOND	
DECLEN	SION	DECLENS	ION	DECLENS	ION
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
ager	agrī	puer	puer <b>ī</b>	sign <b>um</b>	sign <b>a</b>
agrī	agr <b>ōrum</b>	puer <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ōrum</b>	sign <b>ī</b>	sign <b>ōrum</b>
agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	sign <b>īs</b>
_	_				- 6
agr <b>um</b>	agrōs	puer <b>um</b>	puer <b>ōs</b>	sign <b>um</b>	sign <b>a</b>
agr <b>um</b> agrō	agr <b>ōs</b> agr <b>ī</b> s	puer <b>um</b> puer <b>ō</b>	•		

# NOTA·BENE

Remember that the vocative is the same as the nominative except for nouns in -us, whose vocative is -e (serve) and nouns in -ius, whose vocative ends in -ī (fīlī).

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

	FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS				
	SINGULAR				
magnus	magn <b>a</b>	magn <b>um</b>			
magnī	magn <b>ae</b>	magnī			
magnō	magn <b>ae</b> .	magnō			
magn <b>um</b>	magn <b>am</b>	magn <b>um</b>			
magn <b>ō</b>	magn <b>ā</b>	magnō			
	PLURAL				
magnī	magn <b>ae</b>	magna			
magn <b>ōrum</b>	magn <b>ārum</b>	magn <b>ōrum</b>			
magnīs	magn <b>īs</b>	magn <b>īs</b>			
magnōs	magn <b>ās</b>	magn <b>a</b>			
magn <b>īs</b>	magnīs	magnīs			

## Verbs

The present, imperfect, and future tenses comprise the present system because they are all formed from the present stem of the verb. To find the present stem, drop the **-re** from the present infinitive (second principal part), add the tense sign (if necessary), and the personal ending.

PRES	ENT	IMPER	FECT
portō	doceō	portā <b>bam</b>	docē <b>bam</b>
portās	docēs	portā <b>bās</b>	docē <b>bās</b>
portat	docet	portā <b>bat</b>	docē <b>bat</b>
portāmus	docē <b>mus</b>	portā <b>bāmus</b>	docē <b>bāmus</b>
portātis	docētis	portā <b>bātis</b>	docē <b>bātis</b>
porta <b>nt</b>	docent	portā <b>bant</b>	docēbant
	FU'	TURE	
	portā <b>bō</b>	docē <b>bō</b>	
	portā <b>bis</b>	docē <b>bis</b>	
	portā <b>bit</b>	docē <b>bit</b>	
	portā <b>bimus</b>	docē <b>bimus</b>	
	portā <b>bitis</b>	docē <b>bitis</b>	
	portā <b>bunt</b>	docē <b>bunt</b>	

The atrium of the House of the Faun at Pompeii. Typically, the ātrium had a funnel-shaped roof designed so that rainwater would drain into the impluvium (shallow pool) in the foreground. The water would then be stored in a cistern for household purposes. In the distance, you can see the peristylum, or open area, at the rear of the house, where there was usually a garden and a fountain. The basic design of the Roman house can still be seen today in Italy and throughout Europe in former Roman provinces.





The present, imperfect, and future of sum are formed irregularly.

X One

PRESENT		IMPERF	IMPERFECT		E
sum	su <b>mus</b>	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	es <b>tis</b>	erās	er <b>ātis</b>	eris	eritis
est.	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Decline agricola līber, officium dūrum.
- 2. Tell the form(s) of servō, paucīs, optimōrum, familiā, fīlī, fīliae, fīliī, virī, līberōs, negōtiīs.
- 3. Give the second person singular of **obtineo** and the third person plural of **nāvigo** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active.

# Syntax Review

# Nominative: Subject and Predicate Nominative

The subject of a conjugated verb is in the nominative case. A noun or adjective used in the predicate after a linking verb is in the nominative case.

Mīles cum hostibus pugnat. The soldier is fighting with the enemy.

Sardinia īnsula est. Sardinia is an island.

# Accusative: Direct Object

The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Magister līberōs laudāvit. The teacher praised the children.

Fēminae aquam portant. The women are carrying the water.

# Ablative of Place Where

The ablative case with the preposition in or **sub** is used to indicate *where* something is or is happening. Sometimes the preposition is omitted, especially in poetry.

Gentēs in provinciā in īnsulā habitant.

Canes sub arbore sunt.

The people live in a province on an island.

The dogs are under the tree.

# Ablative of Time When

The ablative without a preposition is used to express *time when* or within which.

Hieme animalia dormiunt.

Paucīs diēbus pervenient.

In the winter, the animals sleep. Within a few days, they will

arrive.

# Agreement of Adjectives

Adjectives agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns they modify.

Beātus nauta ad Ītaliam

nāvigāvit.

Flümen celere multos pisces habuit.

The happy sailor sailed to Italy.

The swift river had many fish.

# **Apposition**

Appositives agree in case. You may want to supply *as* when you are translating.

Rūfus dux factus est.

Rufus was made leader.

Servus magister dēlēctus

The slave was chosen as teacher.

est.



SuperStock, Inc.

Servants and children gather around the community well to exchange news as well as to retrieve fresh water that they carry home in metal or earthenware jugs. Note that the bottoms of the pillars here, as in the houses, are painted to keep them from looking dirty.

## TRANSLATION

- 1. The slaves at that time often had harsh masters.
- 2. Do you not wish to hear about Publius, son of Rufus?
- 3. The mother taught the daughters and the father, the sons.
- 4. Rufus consulted Fulvia about the duties of the children and slaves.
- 5. There were few children in many Roman families in the time of Augustus.

# Vocabulary Review

The following words should already be familiar. Remember that it is important to learn not only the meaning, but also the essential facts about each word: for nouns, this means the genitive and gender; for adjectives, all three nominative forms: for verbs, the principal parts; and for prepositions, the case. Try to think of an English derivative for each vocabulary word.

#### Nouns

fīlius officium servus līberī populus vir

negōtium

# **Adjectives**

dūrus paucī

#### Verbs

appellō nāvigō teneō doceō obtineō timeō

habeō

#### **Word Studies**

Many English words in the singular retain the exact form of the Latin original, even though the meaning may have changed: *arena*, *radius*, *victor*, *impetus*, *species*. Many even retain the Latin ending in the plural.

Other English words preserve only the Latin base: duct, legion, long, tend, timid. Others preserve the Latin base plus silent -e; mode, grave, produce, dire. Still others show a minor change of spelling in the base: boon (bonus), example (exemplum), pair (pār), obtain (obtineō).

Give two more examples of each of the four types of derivatives presented above. The next stage will be to review the prefixes and suffixes commonly attached to the bases of Latin words.

# Reading Strategies

When you read or listen to English you naturally take in the words as they come. So it is in Latin. When Romans were conversing they understood each other as the words were spoken. They did not stop to look first for the subject, then for the verb; that would have been impossible! In reading as in speaking they understood the meaning of the words in their Latin order. And you should try to do the same.

Pūblius, hīs rēbus impulsus, litterās longās prīmā nocte ad patrem amīcī mittit.

Just take the words as they come; at the same time, try to see what words belong together in phrases:

**Pūblius:** The ending shows that it is nominative singular—for this reason it is probably the subject. In English, it will probably come first.

hīs rēbus: These words seem to go together (demonstrative and noun) and are either dative or ablative plural. You have to wait until you read more of the sentence, however, before their meaning will be clear.

impulsus: This word, which is nominative singular masculine, looks like "impulse," which comes from the Latin verb meaning "impel." It must agree with Pūblius, since it has the same gender, number, and case. The punctuation shows that hīs rēbus depends upon it; the latter is therefore the ablative of means. The sentence so far reads: "Publius, impelled by these things (facts)."

**litterās longās:** These words clearly belong together, both being in the same case, number, and gender. They are in the accusative plural and must be the direct object of some verb or else the subject of an infinitive—we cannot tell which until we go on.

**prīmā nocte:** the long **a** in **prīmā** shows that it is ablative singular in agreement with **nocte.** The latter suggests "nocturnal" but is a noun. The phrase, therefore, probably means "on the first night"—or could it possibly mean "at the first (part of) the night"?

ad patrem amīcī: The sense seems clear as it stands: "to the father of (his) friend," for ad always is followed by the accusative and patrem must be its object; amīcī is genitive singular and evidently depends upon patrem.

mittit: At last the sense of the whole passage is clear! Mittit is the verb and it agrees with the first word, Pūblius, for it is third person singular. Now it is evident that litterās longās is the direct object of mittit. All the words seem to fall into line and make sense just as they stand.

You may notice, as you go over the words with the thought of the whole sentence more or less clearly in mind, that the first meaning of a word is not always the best, and that the general sense of the passage (i.e., the context) helps you decide the exact meaning to be given to each word. The complete sentence reads as follows:

Publius, urged by these considerations, sends a long letter in the evening to the father of his friend.





ūx erat: Pūblius praeceps ad patrem P. Caecilium cucurrit et eī salūtem dīxit.

"Cūr properās?" pater rogāvit.

"Nonne memoria tenes? Tempus adest quo Q. Furius erit noster."

Q. Fūrius amīcus firmus Pūblī erāt. Familia Quīntī humilis fuit. Pater 5 eius sex līberōs sed pecūniam nōn magnam habuit. M. Caecilius, frāter P. Caecilī, magnam pecūniam sed nūllōs līberōs habuit.

"Nonne cupis fīlium adoptāre?" Pūblius Mārco dīxerat.

"Certē," respondit Mārcus. Omnēs Rōmānī fīliōs habēre cupiēbant, quod fīliī nōmen familiae servābant, deōs familiae colēbant, "patriam potestātem" 10 cōnfirmābant. Multae erant adoptiōnēs inter Rōmānōs. Multī clārī Rōmānī adoptātī sunt. Fīlius minimus L. Aemilī Paulī ā P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne, fīliō ducis clārī, adoptātus est, et posteā P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus Āfricānus appellābātur. Augustus posteā P. Cornēlio Caesare adoptātus erat, et nōmen tōtum quod sūmpsit erat C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus Augustus.

Pūblius Q. Fūrium ad M. Caecilium dūxerat.

"Quīntus puer magnī animī est. Eum adoptāre cupiō," dīxit Mārcus. "Cum meā familiā habitābit, sed saepe patrem, mātrem, frātrēs, sorōrēs vidēbit."

Id grātum patrī Quīntī fuerat, et nunc tempus aderat. Multī clientēs ad P.20 Caecilium iam veniēbant et salūtem dīcēbant. Cum clientibus et fīliō Caecilius in Forum processit et ad aedificium praetoris accessit. Q. Fūrius, pater eius, M. Caecilius, amīcī iam aderant. Q. Fūrius novam togam gerēbat.

Praetor condiciones adoptionis proposuit.

"Quīntum, fīlium meum, ā patriā potestāte meā līberō," pater Quīntī 25 ter dīxit.

Tum M. Caecilius dīxit, "Meus fīlius nunc est."

"Tuus fīlius nunc est," praetor dīxit. "In tuā potestāte nunc est. Nōmen ( nōn iam)Q. Fūrius est, sed M. Caecilius Fūriānus."

no longer





Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> An honorary surname (the "revered" or "reverend"), conferred by the Roman Senate upon Octavian when he became emperor.

- Omnēs Fūriānō novō et M. Caeciliō salūtem dīxērunt; tum discessērunt.
  - "Nunc noster Fūriānus es," Pūblius Fūriāno dīxit.
  - "Tibi grātiās agō," Fūriānus respondit, et cum patre novō discessit. Plūra dē Fūriāno et dē Pūblio audiētis.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who adopted Quintus and why?
- 2. Where did the adoption take place?
- 3. What was the name of Publius' uncle?



## Form Review

#### Nouns

Third declension nouns are characterized by -is in the genitive singular. They can be regular masculine, feminine, neuter, or i-stem masculine, feminine, or neuter. Both the masculine and the feminine, whether regular or i-stem, are declined alike.

#### REGULAR NOUNS MASCULINE FEMININE **NEUTER** SING. PLUR. SING. PLUR. SING. PLUR. mīlit**ēs** mīles lēx lēgēs corpus corpora mīlitis mīlitum lēgis lēgum corporum corporis mīlitī mīlit**ibu**s lēgī lēgibus corporibus corporī mīlitem mīlitēs lēgem lēgēs corpora corpus mīlite mīlitibus lēge lēgibuscorporibus corpore

	I-STEM NOUN	S	
MASCULINE AND	FEMININE	NEUTER	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
cīvis	cīv <b>ēs</b>	mare	mar <b>ia</b>
cīvis	cīv <b>ium</b>	maris	marium
cīvī	cīv <b>ibus</b>	marī	maribus
cīvem	cīv <b>ēs</b>	mare	mar <b>ia</b>
cīve	cīv <b>ibus</b>	marī	maribus

To be an i-stem. a masculine or feminine noun must fulfill one of three conditions: (1) have the nominative ending in -is or -es and bave the same number of syllables in the genitive, (2) be a one-syllable word whose base nants, or (3) have the nominative singular ending in -ns or -rs. Neuter i-stems have the nominative singular in -e, -al, or -ar.

# **Adjectives**

Third declension adjectives fall into one of three categories, based on the number of endings they have in the nominative singular. Third declension adjectives are declined like i–stems.

THREE ENDINGS						
S	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
ācer	ācris	ācre	ācr <b>ē</b> s	ācr <b>ē</b> s	ācria	
ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	
ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	
ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācr <b>ēs</b>	ācr <b>ē</b> s	ācr <b>ia</b>	
ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	

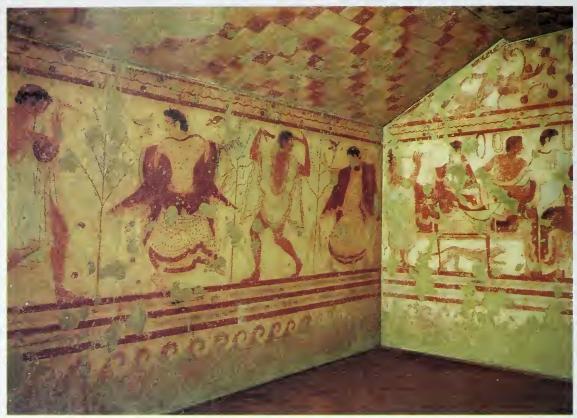
TWO ENDINGS				
SINGULAR		PLURAL		
M AND F	N	M AND F	N	
fortis	force	fort <b>ēs</b>	fortia	
fortis	fortis	forti <b>um</b>	fortium	
fortī	fortī	fo <b>rtibus</b>	fortibus	
fortem	forte	fort <b>ēs</b>	for(ia)	
forti	forti	fort <b>ibus</b>	fortibus	

ONE ENDING						
SINGUI	LAR	PLUF	RAL			
M AND F	N	M AND F	N			
pār	pār	par <b>ē</b> s	paria			
paris	paris	par <b>ium</b>	parium			
parī	parī	par <b>ibus</b>	paribus			
parem	par	par <b>ē</b> s	par <b>ia</b>			
parī	parī	par <b>ibus</b>	paribus			

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Decline frater humilis, potestas nostra.
- 2. Give the form of condiciones, patri, sororum, omnium, filium, salūte, togis, nominibus, matrum, duces.

LESSON II - A NEW COUSIN



Nimatallah/Art Resource, NY

A wall painting from an Etruscan tomb at Tarquinia, northwest of Rome, shows dancers performing to the accompaniment of lyres and flutes. The Etruscans, precursors of the Romans, taught them many aspects of painting, dance, and architecture.

# Syntax Review

# Ablative of Accompaniment

Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum. When cum is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it is attached to the end of the pronoun.

Anna cum matre suā ambulābat.

Anna was walking with her mother.

Possumne tēcum venīre? Can I come with you?

# Dative: Indirect Object

The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. It is used with verbs of giving, showing, telling, reporting, etc. and in English is often preceded by to or for.

Magister librum puellae dedit. The teacher gave the book

to the girl.

Mönsträ praemium mihi. Show me the reward.

### TRANSLATION CO

- 1. Who came to the Forum with Publius?
- 2. A new name is given to the humble boy.
- 3. I shall tell everything (neut. plur.) to my father and mother.
- 4. Publius proceeds to the leader with his father and Marcus.

# Vocabulary Review

n) istens

## Nouns

condiciō māter salūs
dux nōmen soror
frāter pater toga
lūx potestās

# Adjectives

humilis omnis

#### Verbs

respondeō rogō servō

## **Word Studies**

Review the prefixes **ab-**, **dē-**, **ex-**, and **sē-** in the Appendix, noting that each has a basic "from" meaning.

Select the proper form of each prefix and define its English derivative:

 $(ab) - rogate, -vert, -tain; \\ (d\bar{e}) - duct, -cease, -scribe; \\ (ex) - tract, -vent; \\$ 

(sē) -parate, -cede.

# Reading Strategies

Reading Latin as Latin implies acquaintance with a certain number of Latin words. We shall assume that at the beginning of the second year you know all the ordinary prepositions and conjunctions and several hundred of the most common nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and verbs that occurred almost every day in your first year work.

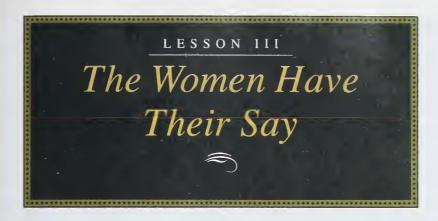
In your reading you will discover many new words. Your first impulse may be to turn at once to the Vocabulary at the end of the book for the meaning, but that always takes time and should be done only if other methods fail. There are three easier and better ways of getting at the meaning of a new word. Sometimes just one of them, more often a combination of two or of all three of them, makes it possible for you to get the meaning of the word. Try all three before you turn to the Vocabulary:

- 1. Think of an English derivative from the Latin word (about sixty percent of our English words come from Latin). The English derivative, if the same part of speech as the Latin original, will at least serve as a stopgap until you can find a synonym that may suit the sense better.
- 2. If you can think of no related English word, try to recall a related Latin word; for example, amīcitia suggests amīcus, which you already know.
- 3. If no related English or Latin word suggests itself, guess at the meaning from the context and later check your guess by looking up the word in the Vocabulary.

Children, especially boys, were taught to read from an early age. Of course, Roman books were not bound as ours are today, but rather written on long sheets of papyrus that were rolled into a scroll.



Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY





ulvia, māter Pūblī, cum sorōribus eius, Caeciliā et Secundā, Pūblium Rūfumque exspectābat.

"Dūrum est semper exspectāre," Secunda clāmāvit. "Virōs exspectāmus, nihil ipsae agimus. Vīta puerǫrum et virōrum grātior est. In lūdum, in Forum, in loca pūblica procēdunt. Sed Rōma puellīs inimīca est."

"Quid? Nonne Roma clārās mulierēs Romānās semper memoriā tenet?" rogāvit Caecilia.

"Vērum est," erant verba Fulviae. "Quis Veturiam, quae Rōmam servāvit.

memoriā nōn tenet? Coriolānus, fīlius Veturiae, lēgem prōposuerat, quae

vetvitātī nōn grāta erat. Itaque inimīcī Coriolānum in fugam dedērunt, et is 10

ad Volscōs, hostēs Rōmānōrum, fūgit. Dux Volscōrum factus, ad portās

Rōmae veniēbat et urbem occupāre parābat. Veturia cum aliīs ēgregiīs

mulieribus Rōmānīs ad castra Coriolānī prōcessit pācemque petīvit.

Coriolānus, verbīs mātris affectus, dīxit, 'Māter. Rōmam servāvistī.' "

"Et quī Rōmānus factīs Cloeliae non permotus est?" dīxit Caecilia. 15 "Captīva, ex castrīs Etrūscorum, hostium Rōmānorum, fūgit et trāns flūmen trānāvit."

"Eīs temporibus facilius erat fāmam merēre quod Rōmānī bellum gerēbant," dīxit Secunda. "Sed nunc pāx est. Quid mulierēs in pāce efficere possunt?"

"Multa!" respondit Caecilia. "Nonne Virgines Vestāles officiīs sacrīs saepe 20 Romam servāvērunt, deis inimīcīs? Et quis non Līviam bonam memoriā tenēbit?"

"Sed in Forum non procedunt."

"Nonne Laelia orātionēs ēgregiās facere poterat?" Fulvia rogāvit. "Nonne Hortēnsia causam Romānārum in Foro ēgit? In bello cīvīlī triumvirī, mulierēs 25 Romānās pecūniam dare iussērunt. Sed Hortēnsia in Foro dīxit: 'Cūr nos

when the gods were unfriendly (ablative absolute)

<sup>2</sup> Livia, wife of Augustus

<sup>3</sup> triumvirs, a board of three officials



Northwind Picture Archives

Although men are mentioned more frequently in Roman literature and in everyday life, the influence of many women, especially the Vestal Virgins, cannot be overstated. They had enormous prestige. Chosen by lot from patrician families and inducted between the ages of six and ten, Vestals served for 30 years. In this engraving, the Vestal Virgins tend the sacred fire, one of their chief duties. They were to ensure that it never went out.

pecūniam dare dēbēmus? Nūllam auctōritātem in cīvitāte habēmus. Sī hostēs venient, pecūniam vōbīs dabimus, sed numquam prō cīvīlī bellō auxilium dabimus.' Hīs verbīs triumvirī concēdere coāctī sunt.

"Puerī Rōmānī dē hīs et dē Cornēliā, Claudiā, Lucrētiā, Tucciā, ipsā Caeciliā Metellā nostrā in lūdīs legunt audiuntque, et semper legent audientque dum Rōma manēbit. Mulierēs Rōmānae bonae cīvitātem mūniunt. Ubi perīcula venient, parātae semper erunt."

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What did Cloelia do?
- 2. Who was Veturia's son?
- 3. Why did Coriolanus flee?
- 4. To what did Hortensia object?
- 5. What light does this story shed upon the status of women in Rome?

# Grammar Command

## Form Review

Like the present system of first and second conjugation verbs, the present, imperfect, and future of third, third –io, and fourth conjugations are formed by starting with the present stem and adding the tense sign (if any) and the personal endings.

3rd	PRESENT	
pōn <b>ō</b>	capiō	mūni <b>ō</b>
pōnis	capis	mūnīs ()
pōnit	capit	mūnit (
põn <b>imus</b>	capimus	mūnīmus
pōnitis	capitis	mūnītis
pōn <b>unt</b>	capiunt	mūn <b>iunt</b>
	IMPERFECT	
ponē <b>bam</b>	capi <b>ēbam</b>	mūni <b>ēbam</b>
ponē <b>bās</b>	capiēbās	mūni <b>ēbās</b>
ponē <b>bat</b>	capi <b>ē bat</b>	mūni <b>ēbat</b>
ponē <b>bāmus</b>	capi <b>ēbāmus</b>	mūni <b>ēbāmus</b>
ponē <b>bātis</b>	capiēbātis	mūni <b>ēbātis</b>
ponē <b>bant</b>	capi <b>ēbant</b>	mūni <b>ēbant</b>
	FUTURE	
pōnam	capi <b>am\</b>	mūnia <b>m</b>
pōn <b>ēs</b>	capies	mūni <b>ē</b> s
pōn <b>et</b>	capilet	mūniet
pōn <b>ēmus</b>	capiemus	mūni <b>ēmus</b>
pōn <b>ētis</b>	cap ētis	mūniētis
pōn <b>ent</b>	caplent	mūnient

frop re

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Conjugate **fugiō** and **veniō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active.
- 2. Give the second singular of **gerō** and the first plural of **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active.
- 3. Decline magna cīvitās.



Livia Drusilla (58 B.C. - A.D. 29) was the second wife of the emperor Augustus. She was also the mother of Tiberius, Augustus' successor. During Augustus' reign, she became his esteemed counselor and ran his domestic life with integrity and grace.

# Syntax Review

## The Ablative of Means

The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Mīlitem gladiō interfēcit.

He killed the soldier with a

sword.

Id litteris nūntiāvērunt.

They announced it in a letter.

# The Infinitive Used as Subject and Object

Although the infinitive is a verb, it it sometimes used as the subject of a conjugated verb, generally the verb *to be*. In this case it is called a verbal noun and is singular and neuter.

Natāre facile est.

Esse grātum bonum est.

It is easy to swim./To swim is easy.

To be pleasant is good.

The infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of certain verbs that cannot stand alone. When it is used this way, it is called a complementary infinitive.

Adesse nön potest. Excēdere mox debēmus. He is not able to be here.
We ought to leave soon.



- 1. Can girls in these times win fame by good deeds?
- 2. Coriolanus did not occupy the city with his troops.
- 3. It was not easy for many Roman women at that time to earn money.
- 4. Will the men order the women to give money or will Hortensia's words compel the men to yield?



Women were responsible for the early education of their children, especially their daughters. They also got together to plan parties or celebrations. This scene of a Roman domestic interior is an early 19th century reconstruction. It portrays women's domestic activities.

PHOTRI/AISA

# Vocabulary Review

### **Nouns**

cīvitās fuga pāx

# Adjectives

ēgregius facilis

# Verbs

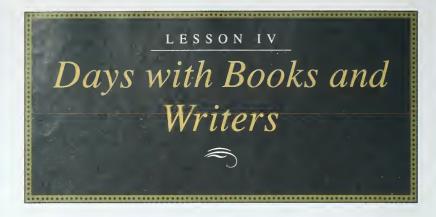
afficiō faciō mūniō
agō fugiō occupō
cōgō gerō veniō
dō iubeō

#### **Word Studies**

Review the prefixes ad-, in-, and con-, noting carefully that assimilation may take place, depending upon the initial sound of the base to which the prefix is attached.

Define admoveō, inveniō, cōnfundō, commoveō; accede, impel, inquire, comprehend.

Apply the proper form of the prefix and define the resulting English compound: (ad) -similate, -gressive, -sent, -tribute; (in) -duce, -pede, -vert; (con) -fection, -lect, -mission, -rupt.



1 hung

n pulchrō templō Apollinis, quod Augustus in bellō vōverat et posteā in Palātīnō cōnfēcerat, erat bibliothēca pūblica ubi multī librī, et Graecī et Latīnī, continēbantur. Ibi Pūblius et Fūriānus saepe diū manēbant. Saepe per partem urbis in quā librāriōrum tabernae erant 5 ambulābant. Prō tabernīs pendēbant¹ librī ab auctōribus et novīs et nōtīs scrīptī. In tabernīs servī librāriōrum semper librōs dēscrībēbant. Magna taberna Sosiōrum grātissima Fūriānō Pūbliōque erat.

Quondam P. Ovidius Nāsō, poēta Rōmānīs eō tempore grātus, carmina legere parāvit. P. Caecilius Rūfus, pater Pūblī, amīcum poētae nōverat; itaque 10 Rūfus cum amīcō et cum fīliō Fūriānōque ad aedificium in quō Ovidius habitāvit prōcessit. Magnum erat studium Pūblī et Fūriānī; multa enim carmina Ovidī in tabernā Sosiōrum vīderant et explicāverant, et saepe Ovidium ipsum vidēre cupīverant. In viā Rūfus amīcusque multa dē poētīs dīcēbant.

"Ovidius poēta optimus est," amīcus clāmāvit. "Ubi hominēs nomina 15 omnium aliorum poētārum quī nunc sunt ex memoriā dēposuerint, nomen Ovidī remanēbit."

"Bonus est, sed non est melior quam Vergilius et Horatius, quos puerī audiebāmus. Meliorēs quam illī erant Roma neque vīdit neque audīvit," dīxit Rūfus.

20 "Certē, certē, Aeneidem, Carmen Saeculāre, non scrīpsit; Amorēs et aliī librī eius grātī, non ēgregiī sunt. Sed multa dē novo libro eius, quī Metamorphosēs, appellātur, audīvī."

"Augustusne eum librum vīdit?"

"Id non scio. Ovidius autem Augusto non grātissimus esse vidētur. 25 Augustus Horātium et Vergilium memoriā tenet."

The Aeneid, an epic poem by Vergil

The Secular Hymn, a poem by Horace written for Secular (i.e., Century) Games

<sup>3 &</sup>quot;Transformations," a long poem dealing with supernatural changes, or miracles, from the creation of the world out of chaos to the fabled transformation of Julius Caesar into a star

Ad aedificium in quō Ovidius habitābat vēnerant, et Ovidius iam librum novum recitābat. Carmen dē Orpheō et uxōre eius lēgit. Pūblius et Fūriānus magnō cum studiō audīvērunt. Carmine lēctō, ex aedificiō tardē excessērunt. "Poēta certē est!" erant verba Pūblī.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. In what library did Publius read?
- 2. Where else did he see many books?
- 3. How did he come to appreciate Ovid's Metamorphoses?
- 4. Which poets did Augustus prefer?



## Form Review

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses make up the perfect system. For all conjugations, these tenses are formed by dropping the -i from the third principal part (which gives you the perfect stem), then adding a tense sign if necessary and the personal endings.

•		PERFECT		
portāvī	docuī	posuī	cēpī	mūn <u>ī</u> vī.
portāvistī	docuistī	posuistī	cēpisti	mūnīvistī /
portāvit	docuit	posuit	cēpit	mūnīvit bed
portāv <b>imus</b>	docuimus	posu <b>imus</b>	cēpimus	mūnīv <b>imus</b>
portāvistis	docuistis	posuistis	cēpistis	mūnīvistis
portāv <b>ērunt</b>	docu <b>ērunt</b>	posu <b>ērunt</b>	cēp <b>ērunt</b>	mūnīv <b>ērun</b> t
		PLUPERFECT		
port <u>ā</u> veram	docueram	posueram	cēperam	mūnīveram
portāv <b>erās</b>	docu <b>erās</b>	posu <b>erās</b>	cēperlās	mūnīve <b>rā</b> s
portāv <b>erat</b>	docu <b>erat</b>	posuerat	cēperat	mūnīverat Lo
portāv <b>erāmus</b>	docu <b>erāmus</b>	posu <b>erāmus</b>	cēpe <b>rāmus</b>	mūnīve <b>rāmus</b>
portāv <b>erātis</b>	docu <b>erātis</b>	posu <b>erātis</b>	cēp <b>erātis</b>	mūnīve <b>rātis</b> /
portāv <b>erant</b>	docuerant	posuerant	cēperant	mūnīverant /
	F	UTURE PERFEC	CT	2
portāv <b>erō</b>	docu <b>erō</b>	posu <b>erō</b>	cēpe <b>rō</b>	mūnīverō
portāv <b>eris</b>	docu <b>eris</b>	posu <b>eris</b>	cēperiis	mūnīv <b>eris</b>
portāverit	docu <b>erit</b>	posuerit	cēperit	mūnīverit
portāv <b>erimus</b>	docu <b>erimus</b>	posuerimus	cēperimus	mūnīverimus
portāv <b>eritis</b>	docu <b>eritis</b>	posueritis	cēperitis	mūnīveritis
portāverint	docuerint	posuerint	cēperint	mūnīv <b>erint</b>



Augustus was the first emperor in the Julio-Claudian line. The adopted son of Julius Caesar, he understood well the importance of propaganda. He eucouraged the leading writers and poets of his day, especially Vergil and Horace, to glorify Rome's and Augustus' achievements in their works.

# MOTA-BENC

The personal endings in the perfect tense are different from all others.

The perfect, and future perfect of sum are formed

regularly.

12000 FUTURE PERFECT PERFECT PLUPERFECT fuimus fueram fuerāmus fuerō fuerimus fuī fuistis fuistī fuerās fuerātis fueris fueritis

fuerant

fuerint

fuerit

#### ORAL PRACTICE

1. Conjugate videō and occupō in the perfect indicative active.

fuerat

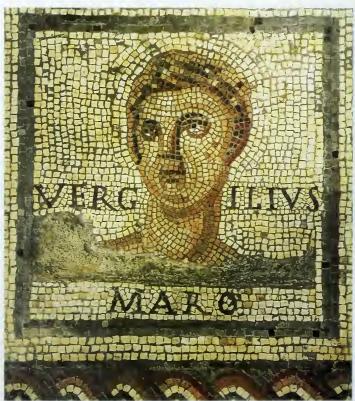
fuit

fuērunt

2. Give the third person singular of dīcō and the third plural of veniō in all tenses of the indicative active.

#### TRANSLATION CO

- 1. Augustus completed a beautiful temple of Apollo on the Palatine.
- 2. Publius had read many books written by Greek and Latin authors.
- 3. Publius had read many poems of Ovid but had not seen the poet himself.
- 4. "Ovid is certainly a good poet," said Publius to his father, "but Rome will always remember Vergil."



Publius Vergilius Maro, or simply Vergil, was one of Rome's finest poets. His works include the Eclogues, ten poems praised for their beautiful and charming descriptions of pastoral landscapes; the Georgics, a poem in four books dedicated to the art of farming; and the Aeneid, an epic poem that tells of the wanderings of Aeneas and the founding of Rome.

# Vocabulary Review

#### **Nouns**

amīcus

homō

pars

auctor

# **Adjectives**

grātus

novus

#### Verbs

clāmō cōnficiō cupiō dīcō

nōscō scrībō

contineō

maneō

videō, videor

#### Adverb

autem

#### Word Studies

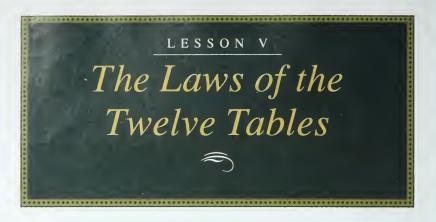
Review the prefixes **re-**, **pro-**, **sub-** in the Appendix. Only **sub-** is assimilated. **Re-** adds a d before vowels and before forms of  $d\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ .

Define according to the prefix: recēdō, redigō, reddō, redūcō, prōmoveō, prōpellō, succēdō, sustineō; recession, refer, proclaim, provide, subtract.

Use the proper form of the prefix **sub-**: *-ficient*, *-ject*, *-cession*, *-gest*, *-port*.

Explain by derivation: resurrection, cogent, remain, subvention, refugee, affection, repatriation, resumption.

10300 NO OLUMBER





uondam haec verba ā Pūbliō recitābantur, Secundā, sorōre parvā, audiente: "Adversus hostem aeterna auctōritās."

Dē hīs verbīs Secunda Pūblium rogātūra erat, sed hic in Forum excesserat. Itaque Rūfus pater ā Secundā petītus est. Rūfō inventō, Secunda rogāvit:

5 "Quid est 'Adversus hostem aeterna auctõritās'? Pūblium haec dīcentem audīvī."

Pater explicāvit: "Haec sunt verba dē Lēgibus Duodecim Tabulārum lēcta, quae ab omnibus puerīs Rōmānīs memoriae semper mandātae sunt, ab eō tempore quō scrīptae sunt."

10 "Quō tempore scrīptae sunt?"

"Prīmīs annīs cīvitātis, ubi Decemvirī potestātem habuērunt. Diū lēgēs Rōmānōrum. memoriā hominum retentae, nōn scrīptae erant. Sed ā populō Rōmānō scrīptae lēgēs petītae sunt, quod multae gravēs iniūriae ab hominibus verba lēgum nōn scientibus acceptae erant. Cōnsiliō clārissimōrum hominum 15 cīvitātis petītō, hic modus, optimus inventus est: trēs virī clārī in Graeciam missī sunt, ubi lēgēs Graecōrum cognōvērunt. Alíī ad Hermodōrum. Graecum in Ītaliā habitantem, missī sunt. Etiam nunc statua Hermodōrī, ā Rōmānīs posita, in Comitiō stat. Tum summa potestās cīvitātis decem virīs data est, quī iussī sunt lēgēs Rōmānās dēscrībere. Ubi hī virī, Appiō Claudiō prīncipe, 20 diū labōrāvērunt, magnum opus cōnfectum est. Lēgēs, in tabulīs duodecim scrīptae, in Forō positae sunt. Ibi ab omnibus per multōs annōs vīsae sunt, et ibi nunc videntur."

"Eās saepe vīdī. Sed quae sunt illae lēgēs?"

"Multae sunt—dē poenīs, dē iniūriīs, dē familiīs, dē patriā potestāte, dē 25 dēbitīs, dē viīs, dē sepulchrīs—dē iūre Rōmānō. Multae aliae lēgēs posteā lātae¹ sunt, sed Lēgibus Duodecim Tabulārum potestās Rōmāna confirmāta est. Ubi illae lēgēs āmissae erunt, tum potestās Rōmae āmissa erit; illīs manentibus, Rōma aeterna erit."

<sup>1</sup> proposed

Against a foreigner the right (in property shall be) everlasting; e.g., a Roman citizen could obtain legal possession of public land by settling on it, a foreigner could not.



Tablets containing the Laws of the Twelve Tables. They were first put together in the 5th century B.C. They include important information on the rules of court procedure (lawsuits, witnesses, etc.), property (wills, protection), crimes, rights, damage, the relationship between a patronus and his clientes, the disposal of the dead, as well as rules against bewitching crops or making incantations.

Archivio e Studio Folco Quilici

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What were the Twelve Tables?
- 2. What is meant by squatter's rights?
- 3. Who was the most important of the Decemvirs?
- 4. Compare the origin of the Twelve Tables with that of the United States Constitution.



# Form Review

### The Passive Voice

The passive voice is used to indicate that the action of the verb is being received by the subject, rather than being done by the subject. The present system is formed from the present stem. A different set of personal endings is used.



	PRESENT								
	port <b>or</b>	doceor	pōn <b>or</b>	capior	mūni <b>or</b>				
	portā <b>ris</b>	docēris	pōne <b>ris</b>	caperis	mūnī <b>ris</b>				
	portā <b>tur</b>	docētur	põni <b>tur</b>	capi <b>tur</b>	mūnī <b>tur</b>				
	portā <b>mur</b>	docēmur	pōni <b>mur</b>	capimur	mūnī <b>mur</b>				
	portā <b>minī</b>	docēminī	pōni <b>minī</b>	capi <b>minī</b>	mūnī <b>minī</b>				
	porta <b>ntur</b>	docentur	pōnu <b>ntur</b>	capi <b>untur</b>	mūni <b>untur</b>				
			IMPERFECT						
ı	portā <b>bar</b>	docēbar	pōnē <b>bar</b>	capi <b>ēbar</b>	mūni <b>ēbar</b>				
H	portā <b>bāris</b>	docē <b>bāris</b>	pōnē <b>bāris</b>	capi <b>ēbāris</b>	mūni <b>ēbāris</b>				
l	portā <b>bātur</b>	docē <b>bātur</b>	pōnē <b>bātur</b>	capi <b>ēbātur</b>	mūni <b>ēbātur</b>				
	portā <b>bāmur</b>	docēbāmur	põnē <b>bāmur</b>	capi <b>ēbāmur</b>	mūni <b>ēbāmur</b>				
	portā <b>bāminī</b>	docē <b>bāminī</b>	põnē <b>bāminī</b>	capi <b>ēbāminī</b>	mūni <b>ēbāminī</b>				
1	portā <b>bantur</b>	docēbantur	pōnēbantur	capi <b>ēbantur</b>	mūni <b>ēbantur</b>				
			FUTURE						
1	portā <b>bor</b>	docē <b>bor</b>	pōn <b>ar</b>	capia <b>r</b>	mūni <b>ar</b>				
	portā <b>beris</b> .	docē <b>beris</b>	pōn <b>ēris</b>	capi <b>ēris</b>	mūni <b>ēris</b>				
	portā <b>bitur</b>	docēbitur	pōn <b>ētur</b>	capi <b>ētur</b>	mūni <b>ētur</b>				
I	portā <b>bimur</b>	docēbimur	pōn <b>ēmur</b>	capi <b>ēmur</b>	mūni <b>ēmur</b>				
	portā <b>biminī</b>	docēbiminī	pōn <b>ēminī</b>	capi <b>ēminī</b>	mūni <b>ēminī</b>				
	portā <b>buntur</b>	docēbuntur	pōn <b>entur</b>	capientur	mūni <b>entur</b>				
	Part Proc. No. March Communication								

The perfect system passives of all verbs are formed by using the fourth principal part (perfect passive participle) plus a conjugated form of **sum**.

PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
doctus, -a, -um eram	positus, -a, -um erō
doctus, -a, -um erās	positus, -a, -um eris
doctus, -a, -um erat	positus, -a, -um erit
doctī, -ae, -a erāmus	positī, -ae, -a erimus
doctī, -ae, -a eratis	posit <b>ī</b> , <b>–ae</b> , <b>–a</b> eritis
doctī, -ae, -a erant	posit <b>ī</b> , –ae, –a erunt
	doctus, -a, -um eram doctus, -a, -um erās doctus, -a, -um erat doctī, -ae, -a erāmus doctī, -ae, -a eratis

# **Participles**

There are four participles in Latin: present active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive. The future passive participle will be discussed in Lesson XXI.

The present participle is formed from the present stem and is declined like a third declension i-stem; the perfect participle is the fourth principle part; and the future participle is formed by dropping the -us from the perfect passive participle and adding -ūrus.

PRESENT ACTIVE  portāns - ( ) ) ) )   docēns  pōnens  capiēns  mūniēns	portātus doctus positus captus mūnītus	portātūrus doctūrus positūrus captūrus mūnītūrus

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Conjugate **āmittō** in the present passive, **inveniō** in the future passive, and **mandō** in the perfect passive.
- 2. Give the third singular of **āmittō** and the third plural of **cōnficiō** in the six passive tenses of the indicative.
- 3. Form and translate the participles of pono, do, video.
- 4. Give in Latin: having been said (acc. sing. neut.); recognizing (dat. plur.); going to entrust (gen. sing. fem.); standing (nom. plur. fem.); having been sent (abl. sing. neut.)

# Syntax Review

# Perfect Participles Used as Adjectives and Nouns

Perfect passive participles are often used simply as adjectives.

Mīlitēs parātī sunt. The soldiers are prepared/ready.

They can also be used as nouns.

Factum celeriter confectum est. The deed (done thing)
was finished quickly.

# Participles Used as Clauses

A participle can often be a one-word substitute for a whole clause introduced by who, which, when, after, since, because, although, or if in English.

Līberōs ludentēs spectāvī. I watched the children who

were playing.

**Librum lēctum eī dedistī.** After you read the book, you gave it to him.

MOTA · BENE

Participles are verbal adjectives and must agree with the noun they modify, whether it is stated or understood, in gender, number, and case.

#### Ablative Absolute

This commonly used construction in Latin is a combination of two words in the ablative: a noun plus a noun, a noun plus an adjective, or a noun plus a participle. The words must not be grammatically connected to the rest of the sentence.

Marcō patre, sententia facta est. Flūmine altō, līberī terrēbant. Urbe oppugnātā, fugere cōnstituimus. Since Marcus was the father, the decision was made. Because the river was deep, the children were afraid. After the city was attacked, we decided to flee.

# Ablative of Agent

The ablative is used with the preposition  $\bar{a}$  or ab after a passive verb to show the person (or animal) by whom something is done.

Ab equīs portābāmur. Ā nuntiō dictī sumus. We were being carried by the horses. We were told by the messenger.



Since the Roman Forum was the area where business was transacted and political speeches were made, it was fitting that the Laws of the Twelve Tables would be displayed here for all to see and use as a reference. That way, plebeians were assured of fairness. Prominent in the photo is the Senate House (the Curia) and near it the Arch of Septimius Severus.

ivio e Studio Folco Quilici



- 1. Secunda heard Publius reciting strange words.
- 2. Having found her father, Secunda asked about the words (which she had) heard.
- 3. Her father said: "The words (which you have) heard were selected from the laws."
- "These words were written on tablets under the direction of Appius Claudius."
- 5. "These laws, placed in the Forum, can be seen by all Romans. While they remain,2 we shall be free."

# Vocabulary Review

#### Nouns

iūs

annus lēx opus auctōritās modus prīnceps

# **Adjectives**

gravis hostis e .....

## Verbs

āmittōmandōpōnōaudiōmittōsciōcognōscōpetōstōinveniō

#### Adverb

ubi

#### **Word Studies**

Review the prefixes in– (negative), dis–, per– in the Appendix. All three may be assimilated. Per–, like con–, may have the intensive meaning "very," or "thoroughly." Define according to the prefix: inimīcus, impius, dispōnō, diffundō, perficiō, perlegō; inaudible, independent, disperse, permission.

Select the proper form of each prefix: (in) *legal*, *proper*, *responsible*; (dis) *lest*, *vert*, *legal*; (per) *legal*, *legal*. Explain by derivation: *imperfect*, *incognito*, *command*, *differ*, *invisible*, *ignoble*.

0

<sup>2</sup> Use ablative absolute.





üblius per iānuam vēnit, ad quam Fulvia māter diū exspectāverat. "Ubi fuistī?" Fulvia rogāvit. "Tardus es."

"Ad Cūriam Iūliam cum patre prōcessī," Pūblius respondit. "Putō patrem mox ventūrum esse. In Comitiō, ad Cūriam, stābam. Iānuā nōn clausā, 5 multa audīvī et vīdī. Multī patrēs,¹ inter quōs clārissimōs cīvitātis vīdī, per viās in Cūriam convēnērunt. Quibus iam sedentibus, cōnsulēs accessērunt, tum Augustus ipse Post) sacrificium nūntiātum est ōmina bona esse. Tum Augustus litterās multās et longās lēgit."

"Dē quō?"

"Audīre non poteram, quod multī puerī ad iānuam stābant, viros prementēs et clāmantēs. Quem putās eos dīmīsisse? Fūriānus hoc fēcit! Puerīs dīxit Augustum, prīncipem cīvitātis, patrēs dē gravibus rēbus consulere; deos vocātos esse et adesse; eos pueros clāmantēs deīs iniūriam facere; eos poenam datūros esse—haec et multa alia. Quo modo, non vīdī; sed coēgit 15 pueros discēdere. Magnam vocem habet; pueros eum timuisse puto. Augustus iam rogābat, 'Quās litterās habētis?' et patrēs litterās legere iubēbat. Litterīs omnibus lēctīs, consul verba fēcit; multos Romānos clāros ā servīs oppressos et interfectos esse; aliīs auxilium ā servīs non datum esse; hoc malum esse; servos cīvis Romānī interfectī prehendī et torquērī dēbēre et tum interficī."

"Cuius modī erant sententiae?"

"Paene omnēs patrēs sēnsērunt consilium consulis bonum futūrum esse; paucī putāvērunt dūrum futūrum esse. Augustus nūntiāvit maiorem partem patrum consilium consulis probāre."

"Quae erat sententia patris tuī?"

25 "Verba multa nan fēcit, et ea audīre non poteram; sed puto eum in parte consulis sēnsisse. Sententiis datis, Augustus dīxit: 'Nihil² vos teneo,' et omnēs patrēs ex Cūriā discessērunt."

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What did Furianus do?
- 2. What was the consul's motion?
- 3. In what way was the meeting of the senate opened?
- 4. Compare the Roman senate with that of the United States senate.



 $^2$  not

32



Roman Senators wielded much power. It was before the Senate that legal cases were argued. They met in the Curia. (See photo and caption on page 30.)

Robert E. Bright/Photo Researchers

# Grammar ~~~

# Form Review

### **Infinitives**

Infinitives have three tenses—present, perfect, and future, and two voices—active and passive. There is no future passive infinitive.

#### PRESENT ACTIVE

The present active infinitive is the second principal part.

portāre

docēre

pōnere

capere

mūnīre

#### PRESENT PASSIVE

To form the present passive infinitive, the first, second, and fourth conjugations change the -e of the present active infinitive to -ī. Third conjugation verbs change -ere to -ī.

portārī

docērī

pōnī

capī

müniri

#### PERFECT ACTIVE

The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **–isse** to the perfect stem.

portāvisse docuisse posuisse cēpisse mūnīvisse

#### PERFECT PASSIVE

To form the perfect passive infinitive, use the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part) plus esse.

portātus, -a, -um esse positus, -a, -um esse doctus, -a, -um esse captus, -a, -um esse

mūnītus, -a, -um esse

#### FUTURE ACTIVE

To form the future active infinitive, use the perfect passive participle, drop the **–us**, and add **–ūrus** plus **esse**.

portātūrus, -a, -um esse positūrus, -a, -um esse doctūrus, -a, -um esse captūrus, -a, -um esse

.

mūnītūrus, -a, -um esse

The infinitives of **sum** are as follows:

PRESENT ACTIVE

esse

PERFECT PASSIVE

fuisse

FUTURE ACTIVE

futūrus, -a, -um esse

# Relative Pronouns and Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

The relative pronoun and the interrogative adjective are declined as follows.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
M	F	N	M	F	N
quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus



Vanni/Art Resource, NY

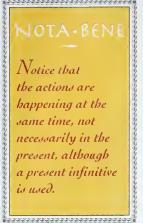
The interrogative pronoun is declined as follows in the singular. The plural is declined the same as quī.

M+F quis cuius cui quem quō	N quid cuius cui quid quō
quo	quo

Exterior of the Pantheon.
The inscription says, "Marcus
Agrippa, son of Lucius, having
been consul three times, built it."
(M. AGRIPPA. L. F. COS.
TERTIUM. FECIT). Note the
great dome which holds the crown
or oculus, the round opening which
lets the light into the building.
The Pantheon was probably a
temple to all the gods before it
was converted into a church in
A.D. 609. (See page v for more
information.)

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- Give the present infinitive, active and passive, of sentio, cogo, and appello; the future infinitive active of accedo, exspecto, and respondeo; the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of afficio, nuntio, and probo.
- 2. Give the Latin for *whose* (plur.); *whom?* (fem. sing.); *to whom* (masc. sing.); *what?* (nom. sing.); *who?* (fem. sing.); *by whom* (plur.); *whose?* (masc. sing.); *to whom?* (plur.); *by whom* (fem. sing.); *what?* (acc. sing.).



# Syntax Review

#### Tenses of the Infinitive

You know that the infinitive has three tenses—present, perfect, and future. The *present infinitive* is used to indicate that the action of the infinitive is occurring at the same time as that of the main verb.

Sciō tē pugnāre. Scīvī tē pugnāre. I know that you are fighting.
I knew that you were fighting.

The *perfect infinitive* is used to indicate that the action of the infinitive happened before that of the main verb.

Sciō tē pugnāvisse. Scīvī tē pugnāvisse. I know that you were fighting. I knew that you had fought.

The *future infinitive* is used to indicate that the action of the infinitive happened after that of the main verb.

Sciō tē pugnātūrum esse. Scīvī tē pugnātūrum esse. I know that you will fight.
I knew that you would fight.

## Indirect Statement

Indirect statements retell (indirectly) someone else's words. In Latin, this is done by using the infinitive after a verb of *saying*, *knowing*, *telling*, *hearing*, *perceiving*, etc. The preceding sentences are all in indirect statement because they are reporting the words that were once a direct quote, "You are fighting."

Dīxit Caesarem magnum ducem esse.

He said that Caesar was a great leader.

# **Relative Pronouns**

Relative pronouns are used to join two sentences or clauses. The relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number, but takes its case from its own clause. In Latin, a relative pronoun can be used at the beginning of a sentence to refer to the thought of the preceding sentence. Generally, in English, this is translated by using a demonstrative.



Est nauta quem vidi. Quā dē causā, excessī. He is the sailor whom I saw. For this reason, I left.

# TRANSLATION

- 1. Publius had heard that the consuls would come to the Forum.
- 2. The consul reported that many Romans were being killed by slaves.
- 3. Fulvia asked: "Did your father feel that the consul's opinion was good?"
- 4. Fulvia did not know that Publius had been with her father in the Forum.

# Vocabulary Review



#### Nouns

auxilium vōx poena consilium sententia

## Adjective

tardus

#### Verbs

accēdō \exspectō probō adsum interficiō putō claudō nūntiō sentiō dēbeō opprimō vocō dīmittō premō

#### **Word Studies**

The suffix -ia and its various combinations (-cia, -tia, -antia, -entia) form many nouns in Latin. Note the way they change in English.

LATIN **ENGLISH** -ia -y (usually) -tia (or -cia) -ce

-antia -ance, -ancy -entia -ence, -ency

Give the English forms of gloria, provincia, iniūria, clementia,

#### constantia, Germania, iūstitia.

What are the Latin words from which come memory, providence, science, Thessaly, audience, instance?

Occasionally. the antecedent is omitted in Latin. and sometimes it represents an entire clause. In this case. the pronoun is best translated by a thing which.



ēnsis Mārtius iam aderat—ōlim prīmus novī annī inter Rōmānōs.

Omnēs Caeciliī servīque eōrum vestibus, novīs īnsignēs erant.

Negōtium nūllī hominī mandābātur, quod mūnera tōtīus cīvitātis ob fēriās dēposita erant Pūblius Fūriānusque per Forum prōcēdēbant inter multōs hominēs, aliōs ad templum properantēs, aliōs stantēs, omnēs vestēs novās gerentēs. Pūbliō et Fūriānō<sub>1</sub> aedificia adōrnāta spectantibus, per Forum nūntiātum est Vestālēs Virgīnēs ignem Vestae cum cūrā exstīnxisse māteriamque ad novum ignem iam collēgisse. Duo virī ad Pūblium stābant; alter alterī dīxit, "Bonum est. Illō igne semper mānente Rōma superārī nōn potest."

Nunc vōcēs audīrī poterant: "Saliī! Saliī veniunt!"

Illī per viās veniēbant, armātī et ancīlia ferentēs, Ūnum ex ancīlibus temporibus antīquīs dē caelō cecidisse dictum est. Rōmānī, nōn cupientēs hoc sacrum rapī, iusserant virum callidum alia huic similia facere. Itaque nēmō illud sacrum ancīle nunc cognōscere poterat. Saliī currēbant, ancīlia 15 quae ferēbant ostendentēs. Officium hōrum erat mala ē portīs Rōmānīs expellere

expellere.

Aliae antiquissimae feriae erant multae numero, variae natūra et auctoritatel Cereālia et Parīlia (vel Palīlia), hae feriae pāstorum, quorum dea Palēs erat, illae agricolārum, quo Cererem colēbant; feriae Latīnae, ubi omnēs 20 Latīnī Iovem in monte Albāno colēbant; Consuālia, ubi equo pede celeres in Circo currēbant; Lupercālia, ubi duo virī per viās currēbant, rīdentēs et omnēs feminās quās vidēbant verberantēs; Parentālia, ubi sepulchra totīus Romae adornābantur, et aliae Pontificēs solī illās omnēs memoriā tenēre potuērunt, sed Pūblius aliīque puerī Romānī multās memoriā tenuērunt,

25(quod, studiīs intermissīs, lūdere potuērunt.)

QUESTIONS

- 1. What did the Vestal Virgins do on March 1st?
- 2. What three festivals had something to do with the food supply?
- 3. What method was adopted of preventing the theft of the sacred shield?

Ablative absolute

A ROMAL FAMILY

quoru: od whom/ whoole



Roman festivals frequently included a parade or procession. Often the celebrants would march to the temple of a particular god or goddess, bringing offerings and gifts. The New Year, the Saturnalia, and the Lupercalia were joyous celebrations for all. This painting is a 19th century reconstruction of such a festival.

The Bettma

# Grammar

### Form Review

# Irregular Adjectives

There are a few groups of irregular adjectives in Latin. Their declensions are as follows.

M	F	N	M+F	N
ūnus	ūna	ūn <b>um</b>	tr <b>ē</b> s	tria
ūn <b>īu</b> s	ūnīus	ūn <b>īu</b> s	trium	trium
ūn <b>ī</b>	ũnī	ūnī	tribus	tr <b>ibu</b> s
ūn <b>um</b>	ũn <b>am</b>	ũn <b>um</b>	tr <b>ē</b> s	tria
ūn <b>ō</b>	ũn <b>ā</b>	ūnō	tribus	tribus
M	F	N		
duo .	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
du <b>ōrum</b>	du <b>ārum</b>	du <b>ōrum</b>	mīlle	mīl <b>ium</b>
du <b>ōbus</b>	du <b>ā bu</b> s	duōbus	mīlle	mīl <b>ibus</b>
duōs	duās	duo	mīlle	mīl <b>ia</b>
du <b>ōbus</b>	du <b>ā bu</b> s	du <b>ōbu</b> s	mīlle	mīl <b>ibu</b> s

Adjectives that are declined like **ūnus** are: alius, alter, **ūllus**, n**ūllus**, s**ōlus**, t**ōtus**, uter, uterque, and neuter. The plurals are regular. Ambō is declined like duo.

### The Demonstratives Hic and Ille

The demonstratives hic (this) and ille (that) have irregular declensions.

M	F	N	М	F	N
hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
hörum	hārum	hōrum	illiōrum	illārum	illōrum
hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

### The verb Possum

The verb **possum** is a compound of **sum** and many of its forms are similar. Remember that **possum** is generally followed by a complementary infinitive.

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
pos <b>sum</b>	pot <b>eram</b>	pot <b>erō</b>
potes	pot <b>erās</b>	poteris
potest	pot <b>erat</b>	pot <b>erit</b>
possumus	pot <b>erāmus</b>	poterimus
potestis	pot <b>erātis</b>	pot <b>eritis</b>
pos <b>sunt</b>	pot <b>erant</b>	pot <b>erunt</b> /
PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
potuī	potueram	potu <b>erō</b>
potu <b>istī</b>	potu <b>erās</b>	potueris
potu <b>it</b>	potu <b>erat</b>	potu <b>eri</b>
potu <b>imus</b>	potu <b>erāmus</b>	potu <b>erimus</b>
potu <b>istis</b>	potu <b>erātis</b>	potu <b>eritis</b>
potu <b>ērunt</b>	potuerant	potu <b>erint</b>



C. M. Dixon

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Decline hoc mūnus, alius nūntius, illa lēx.
- 2. Give the third singular of **possum** in all tenses of the indicative.
- 3. Give all the participles and infinitives of ostendo and exspecto.
- 4. Give the third plural of lūdo in all tenses of the indicative, active and passive.

# Syntax Review

# Ablative of Respect

The ablative of respect, with no preposition, tells how a certain statement applies.

Magister mē sapientiā superat.

Qui exercitus fortior virtūte est?

The teacher surpasses me in wisdom.

Which army is stronger in courage?

Not only adults, but children took part in various celebrations and processions during the year. This wall painting from Ostia is from the late imperial period.

### Use of Mille and Milia

Mīlle is an indeclinable adjective; mīlia is a neuter i–stem noun that is followed by the genitive.

Mīlle mīlitēs urbem oppugnāvērunt. Mīlia mīlitum urbem oppugnāvērunt. A thousand soldiers attacked the city. Thousands of soldiers attacked the city.

# TRANSLATION

- 1. Roman holidays were strange in nature and many in number.
- 2. At these times the business of the entire people was always laid aside.
- 3. Some hastened to the Forum; others quickly proceeded to the temples.
- 4. The former looked at the decorated buildings; the latter worshiped the gods.



Behind the House of the Vestal Virgins in the Roman Forum was a beautiful garden. In addition to ensuring that the sacred fire never went out, the Vestals tended the garden. The three pillars in the background are part of the Temple of Venus and Rome.

Ild Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

# Vocabulary Review

#### **Nouns**

mēnsis mūnus

numerus

pēs

# **Adjectives**

alius alter celer nūllus similis tōtus

#### Verbs

cadō currō expellō lūdō ostendō possum

properō rapiō spectō

### Adverb

semper

#### **Word Studies**

Review the suffixes  $-t\bar{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{s}$  (-ty),  $-\mathbf{or}$  (-or), and  $-i\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  (-ion). (See the Appendix.)

Give the English forms of nobilitas, gravitas, condicio, vocatio.

What are the Latin words from which are derived *utility*, *facility*, *paucity*, *production*, *retention*?

Give and define, according to their derivation, four English words formed by adding the suffix -or to the present base of Latin verbs which you have studied, and four others formed by adding this suffix to the stem of the perfect participle.

Give five English words formed by adding the suffix –*ion* to Latin verbs and five formed by adding the suffix –*ty* to Latin adjectives.





uondam Rūfus. in Forum ad negōtium prōcēdēns, caelum spectāvit avēsque trēs in dextrā parte vīdit.

"Signum est!" dīxit. "Fortūna negōtiō meō amīca erit."

Ita accidit: negōtium bene ēvēnit; itaque Rūfus semper putāvit avēs 5 fortūnam bonam eī negōtiō dedisse.

Plūrimī Romānī signa et omina semper exspectābant—in caelo, in terrā, in flūminibus. Putābant deōs ipsōs ad hominēs somnō oppressōs saepe accēdere et eos monēre. Multī Romānī in templīs consilium ā deīs petēbant; etiam ibi somnum capiēbant. Eī quī non valēbant Aesculāpium 10 hoc modo consulebant; sed omnes Apollinem hominibus ūtilissimum deorum esse ob responsa eius putābant. Haec responsa plūrima, sed non saepe clārissima, per pontificēs eius dabantur.

Rūfus, deōs familiae colēns, eadem verba semper dīcēbat, eadem mūnera sacra eodem modo semper efficiebat, familia spectante. Putabatur, deis 15 non ita vocātīs, familiam gravissimam poenam datūram esse.

Etiam mortuos Romanī cum cūrā colēbant, quod putābant hos facillimē et celerrime ad amīcos in terrā manentes venīre posse et eos terrēre; et mortuos, sepultūrā non datā, per omnēs terrās iter dūrum facientēs, multos annōs in labōre gravī agere cōgī.

- Tempore magnī perīculī deī et virī mortuī in viās ipsās vēnisse dictī sunt. Post pugnam Rēgillēnsem, Castor Polluxque in Forum vēnisse nūntiābantur. Caesare interfectō, virī mortuī et novissima animālia in viīs vidēbantur—ōmina gravissima, quae monstrāre putābantur fortunam inimīcīs Caesaris dūram futūram esse.
- Eō tempore fortūnam graviōrem et sacriōrem esse crēdēbant quam nunc. Virī quibus haec diū bona fuerat grātiōrēs deīs erant (ita putābant) quam eī quibus inimīca fuerat. Omnēs mīlitēs fortius et ācrius sub duce quī fortūnae grātus erat pugnābant—et ob eam causam saepius vincēbant.

Romānī, mala timentēs, stultī nobīs videntur; sed nonne ipsī multa eius-30 dem generis nunc facimus vel audīmus?

The responses of the oracles were often so worded that they could be interpreted in two exactly opposite ways. So they were always right!

The victory of the Romans at Lake Regillus, 498 B.C.



One of the Laws of the Twelve Tables decreed that cemeteries had to be built outside the city limits. As a result, they were usually placed along the main highways near the city, as is this family tomb on the Via Appia.

rich Lessin

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. How does the belief in dreams among the Romans and among people today differ?
- 2. How does the belief in ghosts among the Romans and among people today differ?
- 3. How does the belief differ among the Romans and among people today that some persons are naturally lucky?

# Grammar

# Form Review

# The Declensions of Is, Idem, and Ipse

The demonstratives is (he, she, it, this, that) and **īdem** (the same, likewise) and the emphatic **ipse** (himself, herself, itself, the very) are declined as follows:

				DI VID . I	
	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eõrum
eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
eō	eā	eõ	eīs	eīs	eīs
	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eõrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsõrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

# Comparison of Regular Adjectives and Adverbs

Adverbs formed from first and second declension adjectives add  $-\bar{\mathbf{e}}$  to the base. Adverbs formed from third declension adjectives add  $-\mathbf{iter}$  to the base. The comparative adjectives add  $-\mathbf{ior}$  (m...f.) and  $-\mathbf{ius}$  (n.) to the base and the comparative adverbs add  $-\mathbf{ius}$ . The superlative adjectives add  $-\mathbf{issimus}$   $(-\mathbf{rimus}, -\mathbf{limus})$  to the base and the superlative adverbs add  $-\bar{\mathbf{e}}$  to the base of the superlative adjective.

POSITIV	POSITIVE		COMPARATIVE		ATIVE
ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
altus	alt <b>ē</b>	altior	alt <b>ius</b>	altissimus	altissimē
fortis	fort <b>iter</b>	fortior	fortius	fortissimus	fortissimē
līber	līber <b>ē</b>	līber <b>ior</b>	līberius	līberrimus	līber <b>rimē</b>
ācer	ācriter	ācr <b>ior</b>	ācr <b>ius</b>	ācerrimus	ācer <b>rimē</b>
facil <b>is</b>	facile	facilior	facilius	facillimus	facillimē

Adjectives in –er are like **ācer** or **līber**. Other adjectives that are compared like **facilis** are **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **gracilis**, and **humilis**, but their positive degree adverbs vary (and are not used in this book).

# MOTA·BENE

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

Remember that comparative adjectives are declined like a third declension non i-stem—they have—e in the ablative singular,—um in the genitive plural, and—a in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Decline idem iter, ipsa lēx.
- 2. Give the forms of ipsī, eius, illud, eundem, ipsō, eī, haec, id, hoc, ipsīus.
- 3. Compare ūtilis, celer, tardus, humilis, clārus; grātē, ācriter, amīcē, facile, graviter.



# NOTĀ BENI

Remember that the comparative is sometimes best translated by too, more, or rather, and the superlative by very or most.

# Syntax Review

# Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

To join the two words that are being compared, you use **quam** (*than*). Remember that the two things being compared must be in the same case.

**Ego celerius quam tū currō.** I run more swiftly than you. **Hic puer altior quam ille est.** This boy is taller than that one.

Quam is also used with superlative adverbs to express as ... as possible.

possible.

Quam fortissimēWe shall fight as bravely aspugnābimus.possible.Ea quam celerrimē aderit.She will be here as quickly as





# Dative with Adjectives

The dative is used after certain adjectives that are often followed by to or for in English. These adjectives include: amicus, idoneus, par, proximus, similis, utilis, and their opposites. Others will be identified in the Vocabulary sections as they appear in the reading selections.

Anna tibi par virtūte est. Anna is equal to you in courage. Rōmānī nōbīs inimīcī sunt. The Romans are unfriendly to us.

### TRANSLATION

- 1. The Romans consulted the gods themselves about signs.
- 2. They thought that Fortune was a goddess friendly to some, unfriendly to others.
- 3. Soldiers fought more bravely under a leader to whom fortune was most friendly.
- 4. When<sub>3</sub> Caesar was killed, very strange omens of the same kind were seen.

# Vocabulary Review

#### Nouns

flūmen	iter	signum
genus	mīles	

# Adjectives

ūtilis

#### Verbs

accidō	efficiō	valeō
capiō	moneō	vincō
cōnsulō	terreō	



#### **Word Studies**

Review the prefixes inter-, ob-, ante-, trāns- in the Appendix.

Define according to the prefix: intercipiō, occurrō, oppugnō, antecēdō, trānsmittō, trādūcō; intercede, interscholastic, opposition, antedate, transcription, transportation.

Select the proper form of **ob-:** *-casion.-fer,-ject,-lige,-press.*Explain by derivation *admonition, deterrent, invalid, public utility.* 

<sup>3</sup> Use ablative absolute.



x extrēmīs viīs, ē Forō, dē summō monte Aventīnō et dē Caeliō, ex omnibus partibus Rōmae hominēs ad lūdōs gladiātōriōs¹ prōcēdēbant. Proximō diē Augustus maxima mūnera gladiātōria datūrus erat; nunc gladiātōribus cēna lībera in lūdīs dabātur, et multī Rōmānī, ad hōs properantēs, gladiātōrēs spectātūrī erant. Pūblius et Fūriānus magnō studiō 5 per viās cucurrērunt. Gladiātōribus prīmīs spectātīs, Pūblius clāmāvit, "Haec mūnera meliōra quam omnia alia erunt; hī sunt optimī gladiātōrēs quōs vīdī."

<sup>1</sup> gladiatorial (training) schools

Nunc diēs mūnerum aderat. Amphitheātrum hominibus complētum est. In īnferiore parte Pūblius cum Fūriāno sedēbat. Vir Pūblio proximus dīxit 10 Augustum duo mīlia gladiātorum ad haec mūnera parāvisse. Pūblius, coniūrātionem Spartacī memoriā tenēns, spērāvit nūllum perīculum Romae futūrum esse; sed Augustus ipse aderat, et Pūblius scīvit illīus potestātem maximam esse.

In arēnam prōcēdēbant plūrimī gladiātōrēs, armīs variīs īnsignēs. Firmō 15 pede inter clāmōrēs spectantium ad Augustum accessērunt et eī salūtem dīxērunt.

"Vidēsne illōs decem quī arma eiusdem generis gerunt?" rogāvit Fūriānus.

"Videō. Putō eōs esse captīvōs, ex ulteriōre Galliā missōs. Ācrēs videntur, sed nōnne putās illōs septem Aethiopēs melius pugnātūrōs esse? Sed 20 quis est ille? Veturiumne, cīvem Rōmānum, in arēnā videō?"

"Ipse est. Pessimus ille homō damnātus est, quod patrem et amīcum interfēcerat."

Prīmum octō paria servōrum eiusdem gentis, Hispānae, prōcessērunt; sed minus ācriter pugnāvērunt quam populus exspectābat et, omnibus irrī-25 dentibus, ex arēnā discessērunt. Posteā decem Thrācēs cum decem Britannīs melius pugnāvērunt. Ūnus ē Britannīs, quī valēbat et optimē pugnābat, spectantibus grātus erat. Hic, ā Thrāce difficillimē superātus, nōn interfectus est et clāmōribus populī līberātus est. Tum hominēs cum animālibus, animālia cum animālibus pugnāvērunt. Tandem Veturiō sōlō adductō, leō 30 ācer in arēnam missus est. Leō ā Veturiō vulnerātus est, sed hunc interfēcit.

Mūnera huius modī nunc crūdēlissima videntur; sed auctōritātem Augustī plūrimum cōnfirmāvērunt, quod populō Rōmānō maximē grāta erant.



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

An emperor, probably Theodosius I (A.D. 378-395), holding a victor's laurel crown and flanked by two princes, presides over the games. The frieze is part of the base of an obelisk in Istanbul, Turkey.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Veturius fight?
- 2. What three kinds of fights were there at the Roman games?
- 3. What six nationalities were represented among the gladiators?

# Grammar October

# Form Review

# Comparison of Irregular Adjectives

In Latin as in English, some commonly used adjectives and adverbs are compared irregularly. You must simply memorize them. Notice that some adjectives are lacking certain degrees. All but **plūs** are declined regularly.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	peior	pessimus
magnus	maior	maximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	—, plūs	plūr <b>imus</b>
multī	plurēs	plūr <b>imī</b>
īnfer <b>u</b> s	īnferior	īnfimus or īmus
superus	superior	supr <b>ēmus</b> or sum <b>mus</b>
<del></del>	exter <b>ior</b>	extr <b>ēmus</b>
_	interior	intimus
_	prior	prīmus
_	propior	proximus
_	ulter <b>ior</b>	ultimus
senex	senior	_

# Comparison of Irregular Adverbs

The irregular adverbs are as follows. Remember that adverbs do not decline.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene	melius	opt <b>imē</b>
male	pe <b>ius</b>	pess <b>imē</b>
magnopere	magis	maximē
_	minus	minimē
mult <b>um</b>	plūs	plūr <b>imum</b>
multī	plūrēs	plūrimī
diũ	diūt <b>iu</b> s	diūtissimē
prope	propius	prox <b>imē</b>
saepe	saep <b>ius</b>	saep <b>issimē</b>

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Compare multus, malus, dūrus, parvus, ācer.
- 2. Compare bene, magis, līberē, multum, celeriter.
- 3. Give the positive of **optimus**, **minimus**, **humillimus**; the comparative of **minimē**, **bonus**, **ācerrimus**; the superlative of **magnus**, **facilius**, **graviter**.

# Syntax Review

#### The Uses of the Ablative

You know that the ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express several different things in Latin. Let's review them here.

#### Ablative of Place Where

The ablative case with the preposition **in** or **sub** is used to indicate *where* something is or is happening. Sometimes the preposition is omitted, especially in poetry.

Hostēs in Galliā sunt. Neptūnus sub marī habitat. The enemy are in Gaul. Neptune hives under the sea.

### Ablative of Time When/Within Which

The ablative without a preposition is used to express *time when* or within which.

Aestāte natāre amō. Paucīs horīs cēnam edent. In the summer, I like to swim.
Within a few hours, we shall eat
dinner.

# Ablative of Accompaniment

Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**. When **cum** is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it is attached to the end of the pronoun.

Rūfus cum equō venit. Quis est cum patre tuō?

Rufus is coming with the horse. Who is with your father?

## The Ablative of Means

The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Nova litterīs mē mīsit. Frumentum carrō portāvērunt. He sent me the news in a letter.
They carried the grain with
a wagon.

#### Ablative Absolute

This commonly used construction in Latin is a combination of two words in the ablative: a noun plus a noun, a noun plus an adjective, or a noun plus a participle. The words must not be grammatically connected to the rest of the sentence.

Caesare dūce, ōmina bona erant. Campō latissimō, diūtissimē laborāvimus. Carro fracto, excedere non potuerunt.

With Caesar as leader, the omens were good. Because the field was very wide, we worked for a very long time. Since the wagon was broken, they were unable to leave.

# Ablative of Agent

The ablative is used with the preposition  $\bar{a}$  or ab after a passive verb to show the person (or animal) by whom something is done.

Ā magistrō doctī sunt. Ā mīlite vulnerātus est. We were taught by a teacher. He was wounded by a soldier.

# Ablative of Respect

The ablative of respect, with no preposition, tells how a certain statement applies.



A mosaic in Rome honors several gladiators. The Romans appreciated a good game. Clearly, each of these gladiators excelled for a different reason: some have little or no armor, others appear well protected.

Equus mē celeritāte superat.

Ouae patria maior

Quae patria m virtūte est? The horse surpasses me in speed.
Which country is greater in courage?

# Ablative of Comparison

When the two nouns or pronouns you are comparing are in the nominative or accusative, you may omit **quam** and put the second noun or pronoun in the ablative.

Hoc flūmen altius illō. Equus meus melior tuō.

This river is deeper than that (one). My horse is better than yours.



- 1. Do you not think that these shows were very cruel?
- 2. Many prisoners and slaves were killed in the arena (while) Romans looked on.
- 3. In the gladiatorial schools were very many men sent from the farthest parts of Gaul.
- 4. To these shows many thousands of the best citizens hurried with the greatest eagerness.
- 5. In those times condemned (men) often fought with the gladiators and were killed by them.

# Vocabulary Review

In addition to the following words, be sure you know the meanings of the irregular adjectives and adverbs presented in this lesson.

# Nouns

arma cīvis diēs gēns mōns

perīculum

Adjective

pār

Verbs

addūcō

cōnfirmō

spērō

#### Adverb

äcriter

#### **Word Studies**

The spelling of English words is often made easier by considering the Latin words from which they come.

The Latin double consonant is usually kept in English, except at the end of a word: *expelled*, but *expel* (from **pello**). Give five additional examples.

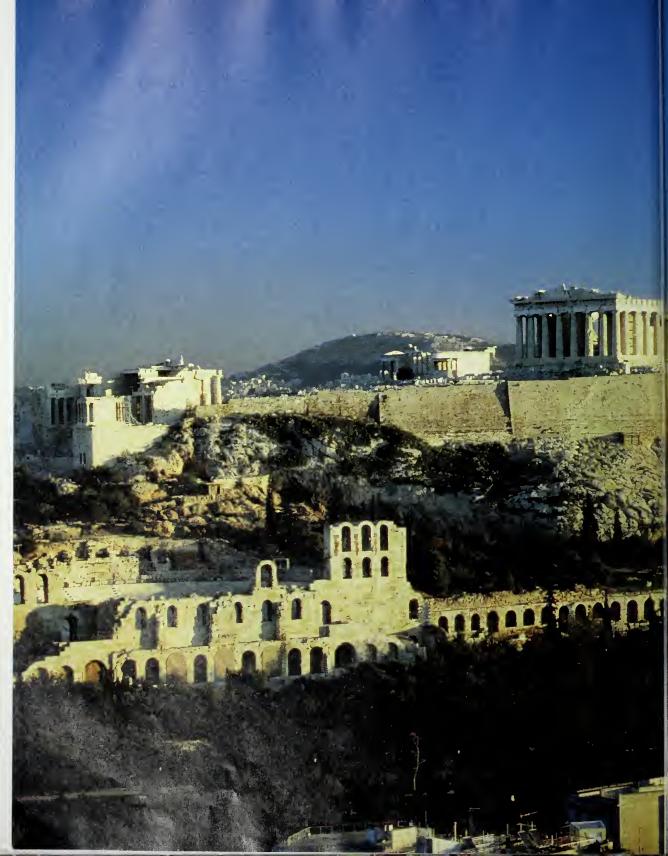
As assimilation of prefixes often caused a doubling of consonants, it is frequently possible to obtain help in spelling by analyzing the word. Compare *de-ference* and *dif-ference*, *ac-com-modate* and *re-com-mend*. Give five additional examples in English.

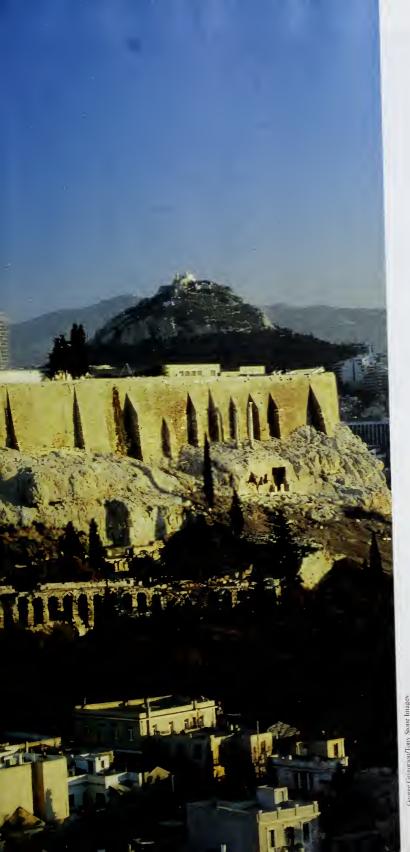


Gianni Tortoli/Photo Researchers

Sports and spectacles were important not only in Rome but also in the provinces. The remains of this Roman amphitheater in El Djem, Tunisia indicate that it was a substantial size. Built in A.D. 238 by the emperor Gordianus, it had 35,000 seats. It has been partially dismantled over the centuries to build the Arab city around it.







# Unit II

# Two Roman Students in Athens

The Acropolis in Athens is the ancient hill upon which the Greeks built their most famous monument to civilization, the Parthenon, which we see here. The Propylaea, or entrance to the Acropolis, is to the left.



uondam domus nōbilis familiae Rōmānae, Caeciliae, maximē perturbābātur. Pūblius, fīlius P. Caecilī Rūfī, et Fūriānus, fīlius adoptātus M. Caecilī, diū in animō habuerant ad Graeciam nāvigāre et clārōs philosophōs Graecōs audīre; et nunc proximum diem exituī cōnstituerant. 5 Nōna hōra fuit—hōra cēnae. Cēna in ātriō domūs, nōn in trīclīniō, parāta erat, quod adfutūrī erant paucī. In ātrium, in quō mulierēs exspectābant, ē balneīs vēnērunt virī.

Rūfus manibus signum dedit et clāmāvit: "Cēna ponātur."

Virīs accumbentibus<sub>I</sub> et mulieribus sedentibus, soleae sunt dēpositae, et 10 mēnsa ā servīs in ātrium portāta est. Mēnsā positā, aqua et mappae<sup>I</sup> omnibus datae sunt.

Prīma pars cēnae, prōmulsis,<sup>2</sup> in ātrium allāta est<sup>3</sup>—ōva et lactūca;<sup>4</sup> tum mulsum.<sup>5</sup> Aquā et mappīs iterum datīs, cēna ipsa allāta est. Cibus bonus erat, nostrō similis. Per cēnam multa dē Graeciā et Graecīs dicta sunt.

Magnum erat studium Pūblī et Fūriānī, quod in Graeciam prōcessūrī erant et tempus exitūs aderat. Sed Rūfus verba gravia Mārcō dīxit: "In terram illīs novam prōcēdere constituērunt. Cupiāmus eos vītam dignam āctūros esse." "Semper memoriā teneant sē Romānos esse," respondit Mārcus. "Nē iniūstē faciant—tum vītam dignam agent."

20 "Servus Graecus audiātur," clāmāvit Pūblius.

"Et Graecum carmen canat," dīxit Fūriānus.

Postquam servus carmen cecinit, Rūfus dīxit: "Nunc linguīs faveāmus,<sub>2</sub> et deōs colāmus."

Ubi Larēs in mēnsā positī sunt, Rūfus cibum et vīnum ad eōs posuit. 25 Omnibus stantibus, silentium factum est. Tum, Laribus magnā cūrā remōtīs, secunda mēnsa<sub>3</sub> in ātrium portāta est—dulcia et frūctūs. Cēnā

The men reclined on couches, resting on their left elbows.

<sup>1</sup> napkins

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Literally, "let us favor with our tongues," i.e., by refraining from evil words; therefore, let us keep silent.

As the dessert was brought in on a separate table, secunda mēnsa came to mean dessert.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> first course

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> was brought in

<sup>4</sup> eggs and lettuce

<sup>5</sup> honeyed wine



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

perfectā "ab ovo usque ad māla," Rūfus dīxit, "Servus Dāvus veniat." Ille in manibus, tum in capite stetit, et multa alia fēcit.

Sed nunc erat tempus discēdere. Servī soleās parāre iussī sunt, et omnēs magnō silentiō discessērunt.

At this family dinner, the whole family is eating together, including the children. When this course is done, servants will remove the table top and replace it with the next course.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Where was the dinner?
- 2. Who stood on his head?
- 3. Who sang a Greek song? Surus Group
- 4. What was the last course? First & Sweets 5. Who did not recline at the table?

## Grammar Cocoo

## Review of the Fourth Declension

Fourth declension nouns can be recognized by the  $-\mathbf{u}$  in the endings.

<sup>4</sup> A proverbial expression which came to mean from beginning to end (cf. "from soup to nuts"), from the Roman practice of beginning a dinner with eggs and ending with apples or other fruits.

## NOTA BENE

Most fourth declension nouns are masculine; the chief exceptions are manus and domus, which are feminine. The only neuter used in this textbook is cornu.

いないれば

usm Sons Ybns

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
cāsus -	cās <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	cornua
cās <b>ūs</b> e	cās <b>uum</b>	corn <b>us</b>	cornuum
cāsuī	cāsi <b>bus</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	cornibus
cāsum	cās <b>ūs</b>	cornū	cornua
cāsū	cāsi <b>bus</b>	cornū	cornibus

#### ORAL PRACTICE

Decline exitus ipse, illa manus.

## Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive is a mood. Other moods you have studied are the indicative and the imperative. The subjunctive is used to express several things in Latin, although its use in English is primarily limited to expressing ideas that are not facts.

The subjunctive has four tenses: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect—and two voices, active and passive. We will just work with the present subjunctive, active and passive, in this lesson.

To form the present subjunctive, you need to make a vowel change in the present stem; then you add the personal endings that you already know.

		PRESENT ACT	IVE	
portem	doceam	põn <b>am</b>	capiam	mūnī <b>am</b>
portēs	doceãs	pōn <b>ās</b>	capi <b>ās</b>	mūnī <b>ās</b>
portet	doceat	pōn <b>at</b>	capiat	mün <b>īat</b>
portēmus	doceāmus	põn <b>āmus</b>	capiāmus	mūnī <b>āmus</b>
port <b>ētis</b>	doceātis	pōn <b>ātis</b>	capi <b>ātis</b>	mūnī <b>ātis</b>
portent	doceant	pōn <b>ant</b>	capiant	mūnī <b>ant</b>

	F	PRESENT PASS	IVE	
porter	docear	pōn <b>ar</b>	capi <b>ar</b>	mūnī <b>ar</b>
port <b>ēris</b>	doceāris	pōn <b>āris</b>	capi <b>āris</b>	mūnī <b>āris</b>
port <b>ētur</b>	doceātur	pōn <b>ātur</b>	capi <b>ātur</b>	mūnī <b>ātur</b>
port <b>ēmur</b>	doce <b>āmur</b>	pōn <b>āmur</b>	capi <b>āmur</b>	mūnī <b>āmur</b>
port <b>ēminī</b>	doceāminī	põn <b>āminī</b>	capi <b>āminī</b>	mūnī <b>āminī</b>
port <b>entur</b>	doceantur	pōn <b>antur</b>	capi <b>antur</b>	mūnī <b>antur</b>

Notice that the -a of the first conjugation becomes -e; the -e of the second conjugation becomes -ea, the -e of the third becomes -a and the -ī of the fourth and third -iō verbs becomes -ia. If you remember the phrase "we beat a liar." you will always remember the order of the vowel changes. 3 410

C73C 5')3



#### ORAL PRACTICE

Give the present subjunctive, active and passive, of **laudō** in the first singular; of **perficiō** in the first plural; of **colō** in the second singular; of **cōnstituō** in the second plural; of **teneō** in the third singular; and of **audiō** in the third plural.

# Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive

A command or imperative in the first or third person is expressed in Latin by the *hortatory or jussive* subjunctive. We translate it into English using *Let*.

Cōpiās moneāmus. Mīlitēs urbem oppugnent.

Let us warn the troops.

Let the soldiers attack the city.



Reclining at the dinner table was a city custom not always followed in the countryside or in the provinces, as shown in this relief from Germany.

To make a sentence negative, you use ne instead of non.

Nē captīvos spectēmus. Nē mala faciat.

Let us not look at the captives. Let him not do evil.

#### ORAL PRACTICE

Translate the following phrases into Latin: let us praise, let him not fear, let them read, let us not flee, let him hear, let them not seize.

1. Let us hear about the departure of Publius and Furianus.)
2. A great dinner was prepared, during which Publius' father spo

- 3. Then the father said, "Lettiny boysalways remember that Romans are brave."
- 4. "Let him live a worthy life in Greece; let him remain dutiful and remember home and,the gods." terrail memorie (cs)

# Vocabulary ~

#### Nouns

- \* ātrium, ātrī, n. atrium, hall
- ·balneum, -ī, n. bath
- cibus, -ī, m. food •
- **domus**, **-ūs**, *f. home*, house exitus, -ūs, m. outcome, departure
  - fructus, -ūs, m. fruit
  - manus, -ūs, f. hand 'silentium, -tī, n. silence
- solea, -ae, f. sandal, shoe
- \*trīclīnium, -nī, n. dining room

(atrium)

(balneology)

(dome, domicile)

(fructify, fructose)

(manual, manufacture)

(sole, solely)

## Adjectives

dignus, -a, -um, worthy nonus, -a, -um, ninth

(dignify, dignitary)

Case ! 4



#### Verbs

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus,
 cultivate, inhabit, worship
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī,
 -stitūtus, determine
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,
 finish
perturbō, -āre, āvī, ātus,
 disturb, throw into confusion

cult, cultivate

(constituent, constitute)

(perfect, perfecto)

(perturb, perturbation)

pok up-Sparsh Cryp

## Adverb

maxime, very greatly, especially

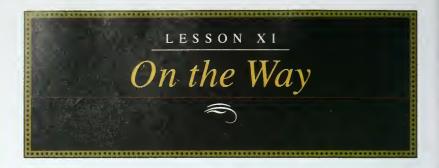
#### **Word Studies**

In Latin, when a prefix is added to a word, as in to capiō, or con to teneō, the root vowel is often changed. This change is carried over into English.

- 1. Short **-a-** and short **-e-** before any single consonant except **-r-** usually become short **-i-**.
- 2. Short -a- before two consonants usually becomes short -e-.
- 3. The diphthong -ae- usually becomes long  $-\bar{\imath}$ -, and -au- becomes long  $-\bar{u}$ -.

Prefix	+	Word	=	New Word	(English)
in	+	capiō	=	incipiō	(incipient)
ex	+	faciō	=	efficiō	(efficient)
con	+	teneō	=	contineō	(continent)
in	+	aequus	=	inīquus	(iniquity)
ex	+	claudō	=	exclūdō	(exclude)

Give some additional examples of these rules by using different prefixes with the Latin words above; give also the English derivatives. Apply these rules to agō, cadō, caedō, damnō, habeō, and statuō, and give English derivatives. Not all the prefixes can be attached to each of these words.



unc diēs aderat. Impedīmentīs et servīs parātīs, familia tōta domum relīquit et ex urbe ad portam Capēnam pedibus prōcessit, quod ob viās angustās nūllae raedae in urbe erant. Ad portam Pūblius et Fūriānus et servī in raedam, quattuor equīs trāctam, ascendērunt, mātre et sorōribus 5 flentibus et omnibus "Valēte!" clāmantibus.

Portā relīctā, in Appiā Viā prōcessērunt, quae iam ad flūmen parvum dēscendēbat. Tum via plāna multa mīlia passuum per agrōs tetendit. Pūblius Fūriānō dīxit. "Cōnsistāmus ut sepulchrum clārae nostrae cognātae.\(^1\) Caeciliae Metellae, videāmus." Multa alia sepulchra vīdērunt, inter quae 10 īnsigne erat id Messālae Corvīnī. Vīdērunt Campum Sacrum Horātiōrum, ubi Horātiī cum Cūriātiīs temporibus antīquīs pugnāverant.

Posteā ad palūdēs Pomptīnās vēnērunt. trāns quās nautae nāvigiō parvō prīmīs hōrīs noctis multōs hominēs trānsportāre parābant. "Properāre dēbēmus," Fūriānus dīxit, "ut in nāvigium ascendāmus, nam multī aliī 15 ascendere cupiunt." Ob numerum ascendentium magnum perīculum erat. "Iam satis est!" eī clāmāvērunt quī in nāvigiō locum invēnerant; "prōcēdāmus nē omnēs occīdāmur." Tandem nautae nāvigium solvunt et omnēs gaudent. Sed ob culicēs² et rānās nēmō dormīre poterat. Praetereā nauta dē amīcā suā absentī cantābat. Duōs hominēs īrātōs nautam in aquam ēicere cupientēs 20 aliī nautae retinuērunt. Tandem septimā hōrā noctis ad terram accessērunt sed plūrimī in nāvigiō ad hōram octāvam vel decimam mānsērunt.

Tum Pūblius dīxit, "Celerius prōcēdāmus nē in hīs palūdibus pessimīs vītam āmittāmus et ut noctem quārtam in vīllā hospitis patris meī agāmus." Hōc factō, sextō diē in forum Capuae, ultimae urbis Appiae Viae, pervēnērunt.

Quid in hāc urbe accidit? Aliō diē dē hōc legētis.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Where was the tomb of Caecilia Metella?
- 2. How many days did the boys take for this part of the journey?
- 3. Why did the two men want to throw the sailor into the water?
- 4. Compare traffic problems and restrictions in Rome and in our cities.

<sup>1</sup> relative <sup>2</sup> mosquitoes



The tomb of Caecilia Metella can be seen along the Appian Way. The Metellus family was well regarded in ancient Rome and produced a long and distinguished line of military generals. Caecilia was the daughter of Quintus Caeciliius Metellus Creticus, who subdued Crete in 68-66 B.C. She was also the wife of Crassus.

Grammar 🗢

Purpose Clauses with *Ut* and *Nē* 

Latin uses the subjunctive to express purpose; in English, the infinitive or any one of several phrases are generally used. In Latin, the conjunction ut is used to introduce the purpose clause; if the clause is negative, you use nē.

Celeriter currimus

We run fast to catch him.

ut eum capiāmus.

We run fast in order to catch him.

We run fast so as to catch him.

We run fast for the purpose of

catching him.

We run fast that we may catch him.

We run fast so that we may catch him.

Celerius currit nē capiātur.

He runs faster so as not to be caught. He runs faster in order that he may

not be caught.

He runs faster that he may not

be caught.

He runs faster so that he may not

be caught.

#### ORAL PRACTICE

Find all examples of purpose clauses in the lesson's reading. Try to translate them in a variety of ways.



- 1. Is the sailor singing to scare the frogs?
- 2. Hurry, Furianus, in order not to be left behind.
- 3. Publius will hurry in order to proceed to Greece.
- 4. So as not to see Mother weeping, we will not wait.
- 5. Let us often stop to see famous places near the road.





facultās, -tātis, f. faculty:

(pl.) means

palūs, palūdis, f. swamp

·rāna, -ae, f. frog

(paludal)

## **Adjectives**

antiquus, -a, -um, ancient

decimus, -a, -um, tenth octāvus, -a, -um, eighth

quartus, -a, -um, fourth septimus, -a, -um, seventh

sextus, -a, -um, sixth

(antique, antiquate)

(decimal, decimate)

(octave, octet)

(quarter, quartet)

(sextant, sextet)

## Verbs

dēdūcō, -ere, dēdūxī,

(deduct, deduction)

deductus, lead away from dēscendō, -ere, dēscendī,

(descendant, descender)

dēscēnsus, descend

fleo, flere, flevi, fletus, weep (for)

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, (tendency, tendon)

stretch, go

## Conjunctions

 $n\bar{e}$ , (so) that . . . not ut, (in order) that, so that

decersors



AKG/Photo Researchers

## Word Studies

From the following English words derive the Latin ordinal numerals (*first*, etc.) and arrange them in the proper order: *tertiary*, *quintuplet*, *noon*, *quartet*, *secondary*, *octave*, *primary*, *decimal*.

Give the Latin cardinal numerals (one, etc.) for the following Spanish cardinal numerals: tres, cinco, siete, dos, ciento, nueve, cuatro, ocho, seis, diez.

Roman biremes (with two banks of oars) were fairly common in ancient Rome. Notice how protected the rowers are. Smaller boats with just one bank of rowers worked well for coastal trips.



descedt descensus fleut flety

The state of the way of the way of



1 a certain

 $^2$  inn

<sup>3</sup> At (the Sign of)

4 at (the house of)

apua hōc tempore urbs amplissima atque pulcherrima erat, maxima omnium in hāc parte Ītaliae. In plānissimō locō posita, viās lātās optimāsque habuit. Ut urbem vidērent, Fūriānus Pūbliusque ūnum diem manēre cōnstituērunt. Homō quīdam¹ eōs vidēns dīxit: "Ut omnia 5 bene hodiē videātis ducem habēre dēbētis. Ego vōbīs omnia mōnstrābō; deinde vōbīs optimam cēnam dabō; meliōrem enim cibum in nūllā urbe inveniētis." Puerī auxilium ducis accēpērunt. Sed paucīs aedificiīs mōnstrātīs, homō in viā angustā pecūniam ex manū Pūblī rapuit et fūgit. Sed clāmōre puerōrum audītō, duo mīlitēs hominem pessimum comprehendērunt.

Itaque puerī grātō animō Capuam relīquērunt. Iter nunc per montēs et silvās faciēbant, et via mala erat. Fūriānus Pūbliō dīxit, "Raedae adhaereāmus, nē ēiciāmur." In hīs regiōnibus nūllī hospitēs Rūfī habitāvērunt; itaque in caupōnam,² appellātam "Ad³ Elephantum," accēdere coāctī sunt, ut noctem ūnam agerent. Sed caupōna sordida erat, neque dormīre facile erat. Proximō diē hominēs armātōs in viā vīdērunt; sed servī arma cēpērunt, et hominēs fūgērunt. Deinde maxima tempestās commōta est, et ad vīllam dēsertam properāvērunt nē tempestāte opprimerentur. Tandem, quārtō decimō diē, ad portās Brundisī pervēnērunt. In hōc locō raedam relīquērunt nāvemque celeriter petīvērunt, nē morā impedīrentur et ut quam mātūrissimē ad 20 Graeciam veherentur. Sed gubernātor dīxit, "Magna nunc tempestās in marī est. In hōc locō hodiē maneāmus, nē perīculum suscipiāmus." Itaque, litterīs ad familiam missīs, Pūblius et Fūriānus apud⁴ hospitem mānsērunt.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What happened to the boys in Capua?
- 2. How long did they stay in Capua? Why?
- 3. How many days did the whole journey take?



Roman inkpot and pen date from the 1st century A.D. Originally, the inkpot had a hinged lid. With the attached chain, travelers could easily take their writing implements with them to correspond with those at home. In Roman times, ink was made from a pouch in the body of the cuttlefish.

Michael Holford

## Grammar -

## Imperfect Subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive of verbs of all conjugations, regular and irregular, is formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

IMPERFECT ACTIVE					
portā <b>rem</b>	docērem	põne <b>rem</b>	caperem	mūnīrem	
portā <b>rēs</b> `	docērēs	pōne <b>rēs</b>	caperēs	mūnī <b>rēs</b>	
portā <b>ret</b>	docēret	pōneret	caperet	mūnīret	
portā <b>rēmus</b>	docērēmus	pōne <b>rēmus</b>	caperēmus	mūnī <b>rēmu</b> s	
portā <b>rētis</b>	docē <b>rētis</b>	pōne <b>rētis</b>	caperētis	mūnīrētis	
portārent	docērent	pōne <b>rent</b>	caperent	mūnīrent	
	IN	IPERFECT PAS	SIVE		
portā <b>rer</b>	docērer	põnerer	caperer	mūnīrer	
portā <b>rēris</b>	docē <b>rēris</b>	pōne <b>rēris</b>	caperēris	mūnī <b>rēris</b>	
portā <b>rētur</b>	docē <b>rētur</b>	põne <b>rētur</b>	caperētur	mūnī <b>rētur</b>	
portā <b>rēmur</b>	docērēmur	pōne <b>rēmur</b>	caperēmur	mūnī <b>rēmur</b>	
portā <b>rēminī</b>	docē <b>rēminī</b>	pōne <b>rēminī</b>	caperēminī	mũnī <b>rēminī</b>	
portā <b>rentur</b>	docērentur	pōnerentur	caperentur	mūnīrentur	

 $_{1}$  The -e- before the ending is long except before final -m, -r, -t, -nt, and -ntur.



Alinari/Art Resource, NY

These friezes show scenes of food and dining preparation for a Roman family in the provinces. Whether at home or at an inn, daily tasks, often performed by slaves, included shopping, cooking, serving, and cleaning up.

## The Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum

The imperfect subjunctive of sum is formed regularly.

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis -
esset	essent

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- Conjugate vehō in the present and imperfect subjunctive active; terreō in the present and imperfect subjunctive passive.
- 2. Give the forms of flēmus, constituatur, descenderetis, perficiemus, sentiretur, possetis, confirmaremur, accident, valetis, opprimatur.

## Tense Sequence in Purpose Clauses



Since the subjunctive has no future tense in Latin, the only tenses that can be used in the dependent purpose clause are present and imperfect.

If the verb in the main clause is present, future, or future perfect, you use the present subjunctive in the subordinate clause.

Venīmus ut tē videāmus. Aderit ut tē audiat. We are coming to see you.

He will be here so that he might hear you.

If the verb in the main clause is in the past (imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect), use the imperfect subjunctive in the dependent clause.

Vēnimus ut tē vidērēmus. We came to see you. Aderat ut tē audīret. He was here in order to hear you.

1. They remained one day to see Capua.

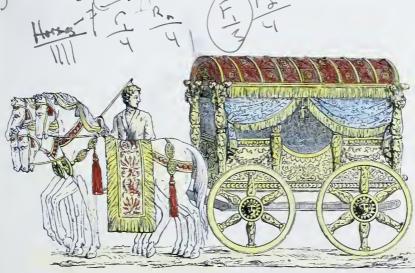
another night in Italy.

2. So as not to lose their money, they left Capua.

3. They sought fresh horses so as not to be hindered by the bad roads.

4. They hurried (on) to spend the night in the villa of a guest-friend.

5. They hurried to the ship in order to sail to Greece and not spend



A very elaborate Roman traveling carriage. Notice that the horses are harnessed four abreast, rather than two and two. Certainly whoever owned this carriage was going to travel in style.

North Wind Picture Archives

# Vocabulary ~

#### **Nouns**

aedificium, -cī, n. building hospes, -pitis, m. guest,

guest-friend, host

mora, -ae, f. delay

raeda, -ae, f. carriage, b)

tempestās, -tātis, f. storm vīlla, -ae, f. farmhouse, villa (hospice, hospital)

(moratorium)

(tempest, tempestuous)

## Adjectives

amplus, -a, -um, great, (ample, amplify)

magnificent
angustus, -a, -um, narrow (anguish)
sordidus, -a, -um, dirty, mean (sordid)

#### Verbs

adhaereō, -ēre, adhaesī, (adhere, adhesive)
adhaesus, stick (to)
ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, (eject. ejectment)
throw (out), stick out, expel
vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, carry (vector)

#### Adverbs

deinde, then hodië, today mātūrē, soon

## Conjunction

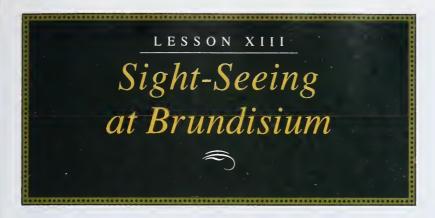
enim, for (never first word)

#### **Word Studies**

The following suffixes have no sharply defined meanings, but if you know them you can recognize many English derivatives:  $-\mathbf{ium}$  (English -e or -y),  $-\mathbf{tium}$  (English -ce),  $-\mathbf{men}$  (English -men, -min, -me),  $-\mathbf{t\bar{u}s}$  (English -tue).

Give the English form of studium, officium, aedificium, sacrificium, spatium, volūmen, crīmen, virtūs.

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *silence*, *commerce*, *remedy*, *prodigy*, *culmin(ate)*, *lumin(ous)*, *crimin(al)*? Explain by derivation *amplifier*, *descendant*, *immature*, *manual*, *moratorium*, *vehicle*.



ūblius et Fūriānus Brundisī¹ diū mānsērunt ut sine perīculō trāns mare nāvigārent. Hōc tempore urbem explōrāvērunt. Namque in hāc urbe multa loca clāra erant. Multī ad hunc portum vēnērunt ut ad Graeciam Asiamque nāvigārent—mercātōrēs, imperātōrēs, exercitūs, nūntiī litterās ferentēs.

Fūriānus Pūbliō dīxit: "Haec urbs clāra est. Nōnne memoriā tenēs Cicerōnem in exsilium ēiectum ad hunc locum vēnisse ut nāvis eum ad Graeciam ferret? Ūnus amīcus eum dolentem excēpit, cui numquam satis grātiās agere poterat. Sed posteāquam Cicerō ex exsiliō revocātus Brundisium² diē nātālī colōniae ipsīus vēnit, omnēs cīvēs cum maximō 10 gaudiō eum excēpērunt."

Tum Pūblius dīxit: "Rēctē dīcis. Posteā in hōc oppidō Pompeius cōpiās collēgit ut trāns mare fugeret. Caesar ad oppidum properāvit ut eum interclūderet. Sed sine nāvibus eum retinēre nōn poterat. Prōcēdāmus ad portum et propriīs oculīs spectēmus locum in quō Caesar exitūs portūs 15 impedīre temptāvit." "Bene." respondit Fūriānus. Itaque duo amīcī prīmum ad locum ēditum prōcessērunt ut tōtam regiōnem vidērent. Deinde dē locō ēditō dēscendērunt et portum ipsum spectāvērunt. Quā parte³ portus angustissimus erat Caesar opera et ratēs collocāverat, sed Pompeius, nē interclūderētur, nāvibus opera rūperat et fūgerat.

"Certē haec urbs multa clāra facta vīdit et multōs et gravēs cāsūs tulit," inquit Pūblius.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Caesar hurry to Brundisium?
- 2. What did Publius and Furianus see?
- 3. Why did many people go to Brundisium?

1 at Brundisium

<sup>2</sup> to Brundisium

<sup>3</sup> where (literally, in which part)



G. Tortoli/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

The Appian Way began in Rome and originally ended in Capua. It was eventually extended to Brundisium, on the southeast coast of Italy. This original Roman column marks the end of the Appian Way at Brundisium.

## Grammar Occionation

## Conjugation of Ferō

The indicative of **ferō** is irregular in the present tense only; in all other tenses it is conjugated like a verb of the third conjugation. Its principal parts, however, require memorization. They are **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**.

A	CTIVE	PA	SSIVE
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferrīs	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

The infinitives, active and passive, are **ferre** and **ferrī**. The imperative is **fer**. The other forms of **ferō** are as follows (the first person singular is given):

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
IMPERFECT	ferēbam	ferēbar
FUTURE	feram	ferar
PERFECT	tulī	lātus sum
PLUPERFECT	tuleram	lātus eram
FUTURE PERFECT	tulerō	lātus erō

Like many other important Latin verbs, ferō has several meanings, including *bear*, *carry*, *bring*, *receive*, *report*, *propose*. You will have to decide which one is best in your translations.

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- indicative, active and
- 1. Give the third singular of **ferō** in all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, and in the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive.
- 2. Give all the infinitives and participles of fero.
- 3. Conjugate in the present and imperfect subjunctive, active and passive: colligō, cōnfirmō, dēbeō.
- 4. Tell the form of dolent, excipiāmur, nūntiētur, ferrētis, properent, rumperet, constituantur, perficient, moneāminī, occupās.

Mosaics were used to decorate not only homes but business offices. This mosaic comes from an office building that housed the representatives of Roman and overseas shipping and trading companies.



LESSON XIII

## TRANSLATION

- 1. Publius and his friend proceeded toward the harbor to sail to Greece.
- 2. "Let us hurry (on), so that we shall not be left behind," said Publius.
- 3. His friend replied, "Let us proceed to an elevated place to see the" whole region."
- 4. Caesar obstructed this harbor in order that Pompey's ships might not escape.

# Vocabulary ---

#### **Nouns**

exsilium, -lī, n. exile mercator, -oris, m. merchant oculus, -ī, m. eye (ocular, oculist) portus, -ūs, m. harbor (port) ratis, -is, f. raft

## **Adjectives**

ēditus, -a, -um, elevated proprius, -a, -um, (one's) own, (proper, property) characteristic of

## Verbs

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, (collection) collect doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, (dolor) grieve excipiō, -ere, excēpī, exceptus, (except, exception)

receive

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, (fertile, fertility) bear, carry

rumpo, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break (interrupt, interruption)

## Conjunctions

namque, for posteāquam, after

rectē, rightly satis, enough, rather (satisfaction, satisfy)

Aesculapius was the god of medicine. He was also the son of Apollo and Coronis, a young woman from Thessaly. Aesculapius was taught the art of healing by the wise centaur, Chiron. In this Greek relief from the 4th century B.C., Aesculapius treats a patient.





C. M. Dixon

## **Word Studies**

Physicians make use of Latin words and phrases every day. The science of anatomy, with which all physicians must be familiar, uses a large number of Latin terms. In writing prescriptions, physicians use Latin constantly, and druggists must be able to understand it. The symbol R at the top of a prescription stands for recipe, take. Other examples are: aq(ua) pur(a), pure water; aq(ua) dest(illata), distilled water; t(er) i(n) d(ie), three times a day; cap(iat), let him take; gtt. (abbreviation of guttae), drops; sig(na), write; stat(im), at once; a(nte) c(ibum), before meals; p(ost) c(ibum), after meals; det(ur), let it be given.

Explain condolence, corruption, dilated, inoculate, oculist, rupture.

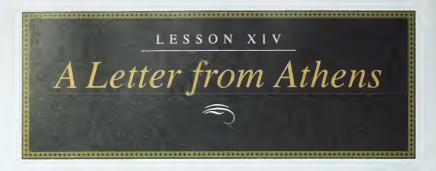




The stroke through the R is a sign of abbreviation, like our period.

This funerary slab shows that the person buried within was a surgeon. Notice the surgical instruments and the serpent, the

revered symbol of medicine.



ūblius patrī et mātrī et sorōribus suīs s. p. d.<sub>1</sub> Sī valētis, bene est; valeō. Nunc valeō; sed nōn semper valuī. Namque Brundisiō post longam moram relīctō, posteāquam nāvis parva in mare lātum prōcessit, tanta tempestās commōta est ut putārem undās altās nāvem frāctūrās esse. 5 Fūriānus autem dīxit, "Nautae ita perītī sunt ut nāvem facile servent." Sed ego respondī: "Hoc nōn iam ferre possum. In īnferiōrem partem properēmus ut ibi somnum capiāmus et clārum caelum spērēmus."

Dēscendimus. Nāvis ita volvēbātur ut mors ab omnibus spērārētur; sed post diem longum et noctem longiōrem ad urbem Graecam Dyrrachium 10 pervēnimus. Viīs tam malīs iter per Graeciam fēcimus ut paene cōnficerēmur. Per oppida dēserta, per agrōs nōn cultōs, per urbēs bellīs cīvīlibus oppressās prōcessimus. Tandem ad clāram urbem Athēnās pervēnimus, quae est forum Athēnārum, et Acropolis, Capitōliō Rōmānō similis, ita ēgregiae sunt ut nōn satis laudentur. Sed in proximīs litterīs plūs dē urbe 15 scrībam. Nunc dē studiīs audīre cupitis.

Ubi ad portam Athēnārum accessimus, 2 vīdimus multōs vestem scholasticam gerentēs et tantīs clāmōribus vocantēs ut cōnsisterēmus et cum silentiō eōs spectārēmus. "Nōnne petitis scholam Philippī?" "Nōnne petitis scholam Lycurgī?" et alia clāmābant. "Ad scholam Enchōriōnis rhētoris 20 prōcēdimus," dīximus. Deinde ab aliīs relīctī sumus, ab aliīs prehēnsī. In aedificium parvum ductī sumus, et iānua clausa est. Tam diū ibi mānsimus ut putārēmus illōs numquam reversūrōs esse. Tandem līberātī sumus nē perterrērēmur et ab illīs rīdentibus ad cēnam ductī sumus, post quam omnibus modīs lūdificātī sumus. Tum ad balnea ductī vestem scholasticam 25 accēpimus. Posterō diē ad numerum scholasticōrum Enchōriōnis, quī grātus vidētur, ascrīptī sumus. Crās studia incipiēmus. Cum Graecā familiā ad Agoram habitāmus.

Vidētis omnia bona esse. Saepe scrībēmus et saepe litterās exspectābimus. Valēte.

<sup>1</sup> salūtem plūrimam dīcit, sends heartiest greetings. These words are regularly abbreviated.

<sup>2</sup> The following description of student life in Athens is based on that given by Libanius in the fourth century A.D., but it is not improbable that it is substantially correct for the age of Augustus.



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why wasn't Publius well?
- 2. What was the Agora of Athens?
- 3. Where did Publius live in Athens?
- 4. What did Publius see on entering the city?

Grammar Occionation

## Result Clauses with Ut and Ut non

A result clause is a subordinate clause used to express an action that results from the action of the main verb. In Latin, the result clause is introduced by the conjunction **ut**; for a negative, use **ut non**. The verb is in the subjunctive, following the rules for the sequence of tenses.

Tam celeriter cucurrit ut nön eum caperēmus.

Flümen tam altum est ut nāvēs maximae urbem perveniant.

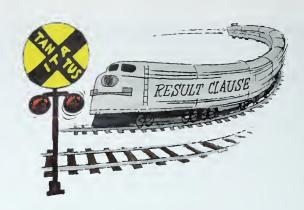
He ran so fast that we did not catch him.

The river is so deep that the biggest ships arrive at the city.

The Agora, or marketplace, of Athens has been partially excavated. Located just northwest of the Acropolis, it was a large public space on either side of the sacred way. The Painted Stoa, discovered in 1981, was decorated with paintings by Polygnotus and Micon done in the 5th century B.C.

# NOTA-KENE

Usually, one of the following words appears in the main clause. If you do not know any of them, check the wocabulary. ita sic tālis tam tantus, -a, -um tot



## **Summary of Purpose and Result Clauses**

#### **Purpose Clauses**

- 1. Subjunctive.
- 2. Introduced by ut, negative nē.

#### **Result Clauses**

- 1. Subjunctive
- 2. Usually prepared for by ita, tam, etc.
- 3. Introduced by ut, negative ut non.





- 1. We hurried into a building in order not to see the storm.
- 2. The storm on the sea was so great that all were frightened.
- 3. The waves were so high that the ship did not easily proceed.
- 4. Leaving the ship behind, we hurried toward the city (of) Athens.
- 5. This city is so adorned with beautiful buildings that it is praised by all.

# Vocabulary ----

#### **Nouns**

clāmor, -ōris, m. shout (clamor, clamorous)

forum, -ī, n. marketplace, Forum (at Rome)

mors, mortis, f. death (mortal, mortality)

vestis, -is, f. clothing (vest)

## **Adjectives**

perītus, -a, -um, skilled

posterus, -a, -um, following (posterior, posterity)

tantus, -a, -um, so great,

so much, so large

#### Verbs

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī,

-territus, scare thoroughly, alarm

prehendo, -ere, -hendo, (prehensile)

-hensus, seize

relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus, (relinquish, relinquishment)

leave (behind), abandon

## Adverbs

ita, so, in such a way, thus

paene, almost

saepe, often

sīc. so, thus

tālis, such

tam, so

tot, so many

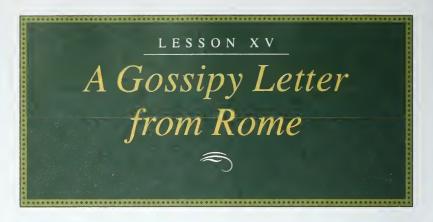
## Word Studies

Difficulties of English spelling due to silent or weakly sounded letters or to other causes are often cleared up by examination of the Latin. Give the Latin originals of the following words: ascension, assign, comparative, conscience, consensus, debt, deficit, desperation, doubt, laboratory, receipt, reign, repetition, separate.

Derivatives of compounds of **capiō** have *ei: receive, deceive, conceive, perceive.* Explain by derivation *apprehension, penultimate, posterity, vestments.* 



Caryatid is a term for an architectural support that is wholly or partly in human form. The Porch of Maidens, on the south face of the Erechtheum on the Acropolis, was done in 421-413 B.C. The porch was a great inspiration to the Romans, who made best use of the style at Hadrian's Villa at Tivoli.



Caecilius Fūriānō suō. Rogāvistī, "Quid agit rēs pūblica?" Cōnsulēs proximī annī creatī sunt—Lepidus et Taurus. Ille Augustō cārus est. Maiōrēs eius erant Sulla et Pompeius, Caesaris inimīcus, sed Augustus tam concordiam cupit ut memoriam rērum eius modī dēpōnere possit.

5 Hic nūntius multō gravior erit: Corellius, tribūnus, iam₁ decem diēs mortuus est. Omnēs amīcī eius spem habuerant eum aegrum paucīs diēbus diūtius vīctūrum esse, ut frātrem, ex Galliā properantem, vidēre posset; sed hoc nōn permissum est. Fūnus īnsigne erat—ōrātiō ante domum habita, pompa longa, cornicinēs,¹ plūrimae imāginēs,² rogus² multōs pedēs altus 10 (sed tot hominēs aderant ut difficile esset rogum vidēre), sepulchrum ēgregium.

Ovidius poēta, ex urbe ad oppidum barbarum expulsus, iam paene duōs annōs litterās supplicēs ad Augustum scrībit, sed hic nōn commovētur. Augustī autem silentium tantum est ut nēmō causam poenae Ovidī 15 cognōscere possit. Ovidius librum novum ēdidit, quem emam et mittam ut legere possīs.

Novistīne Calpurnium, quī tantam pecūniam habet ut domus ūna eam capere non possit—illum quī aedificia incēnsa celeriter emit, tum, igne operā servorum exercitorum³ exstīncto, reficit? Agrum magnum ēmit. 20 Multos dies iam cupio agrum parvum emere, ut agricola in otio sim. Pulchrum agrum in Sabīnīs, quī non multīs mīlibus passuum ab eo Horātī poētae abest, invēnī. Quid dē hoc putās?

Diēs omnēs paene similēs sunt. Surgō; clientibus audītīs, in Forum prōcēdō, ut aut iūdicia audīre possim aut senātuī adsim; prandium<sup>4</sup> capiō; 25 dormiō; exerceor;<sup>5</sup> in thermās Agrippae prōcēdō, et ibi amīcōs videō. Tum est cēna, tum quiēs. Haec cotīdiē agimus. Quid agit Fūriānus meus?

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> buglers, i.e., a band

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> funeral pyre

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Not from exercitus, army!

<sup>4</sup> lunch

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> train myself, exercise

<sup>1</sup> The present tense is used with iam where the English idiom calls for the present perfect: has now been dead.

<sup>2</sup> wax masks of ancestors who had held high public office. These were kept in a special room in the house and served as a portrait gallery. At funerals they were worn by hired mourners, so that it seemed as if all of a man's great ancestors were at his funeral.



Brian Blake/Photo Researchers

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Where was Ovid?
- 2. Why was he punished?
- 3. Of whom was Augustus fond?
- 4. Where was Corellius' brother?

# Grammar Occionation

## Review of the Fifth Declension

There are relatively few words in the fifth declension, but two, such as rēs and diēs, are very common and must be mamorized. All nouns in the fifth declension are feminine, except dies, which is usually masculine.

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
di <b>ēs</b>	di <b>ēs</b> '	rēs	r <b>ēs</b>
di <b>ēī</b>	di <b>ērum</b>	reī	r <b>ērum</b>
di <b>ēī</b>	di <b>ēbus</b> (	reī	rēbus
di <b>em</b> -	di <b>ēs</b>	rem	r <b>ē</b> s
di <b>ē</b>	di <b>ēbus</b> '	r <b>ē</b>	rēbus

A visit to the baths was a frequent daily ritual, especially for well-to-do Romans, even far from home. These baths at Bath, England, were built around magnificent natural springs in A.D. 44. The upper gallery with busts of famous Romans was added in the 18th century. Bath is still today one of Britain's spas.



755

## Subjunctive of Sum and Possum

The present subjunctive of sum and possum has -ī- as its mood sign:

sim	sī <b>mus</b>	pos <b>sim</b>	possīmus
sīs	sī <b>tis</b>	possīs	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Decline ipsa rēs pūblica, multī diēs.
- 2. Give the second singular of **sum** and the second plural of **possum** in all tenses of the indicative and in the present and imperfect subjunctive.
- 3. Tell the forms of sumus, erunt, potuistī, posset, fuērunt, possint, esset, poterō, posse, fuerāmus.

## Ablative of Degree of Difference

The ablative without a preposition is used with comparatives and with ante and post to express the degree or measure of difference between two things.

Vīlla mea multō maior est quam tua.

Paucīs post horīs puellam parvam invēnimus.

My house is much larger (larger by much) than yours. A few hours later (after by a few

A few hours later (after by a few hours) we found the little girl.



- 1. Consuls were elected a few days before.
- 2. Ovid was banished to a town which was many miles away.
- 3. For two years Marcus had desired to buy a small farm so that he might be a farmer.
- 4. For many months Calpurnius had been setting buildings on fire so that he could buy them.

## Vocabulary -

#### **Nouns**

cliēns, -entis, m. client
cōnsul, -ulis, m. consul
ignis, -is, m. fire
maiōrēs, -um, m. pl. ancestors
opera, -ae, f. work, effort
quiēs, -ētis, f. rest
rēs, reī, f. thing, matter, affair
spēs, speī, f. hope

(clientele)
(consulate)
(ignite, ignition)

(quiescence, quiescent)

## Adjectives

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick
mortuus, -a, -um, dead,
 having died

(mortuary)

## **Verbs**

emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus,
take, buy
incendō, -ere, incendī,
incensus, set on fire, burn
reficiō, -ere, refēcī, refectus,
repair
surgō, -ere, surrexi,
surrecturus, rise
vīvo, -ere, vīxi, vīctus, live

-S of income

(incinerate, incinerator)

(resurrection, surge)

(refect, refectory)

(vivacious, vivid)

Ovid was born in 43 B.C., just a year after the assassination of Julius Caesar. Though his father had wanted him to pursue a political life, Ovid was drawn to the literary circles in Rome and very early on established himself as a major player in the poetry scene. He had a loyal following before the age of 20 and by the time he was 30 was considered Rome's leading poet.

## Adverb

. cotīdiē, daily

(quotidian)

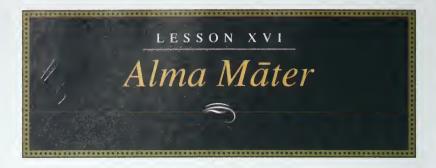
## Word Studies

For meaning and use of **prae**– (*pre*–), **contrā**– (*contra*–, *counter*–), **bene**– (*bene*–), **male**– (*male*–), see the Appendix. Define according to the prefix: *prevent*, *premonition*, *predict*, *preclude*, *prerequisite*, *counter-irritant*, *contradict*, *counterrevolutionary*, *benefactor*, *benediction*, *malefactor*, *malediction*.

What is the difference between a modern consul and an ancient Roman consul?

Explain ignition, incendiary, refectory.





1 to Athens

um Pūblius Fūriānusque Athēnās¹ iter facerent, multōs Rōmānōs in viā vīdērunt. Paucīs diēbus postquam Athēnās¹ pervēnērunt, multō plūrēs Rōmānōs vīdērunt. Namque plūrimī aliī Rōmānī eiusdem aetātis ad hanc urbem īnsignem vēnerant ut philosophōs rhētorēsque 5 Graecōs audīrent. Tam clārī erant illī quī multōs annōs in hāc urbe docuerant ut multī discipulī ad eōs ex omnibus terrīs venīrent.

Cum amīcī duo paucōs diēs in urbe fuissent et multōs magistrōs audīvissent, Fūriānus Pūbliō dīxit: "Nōnne exīstimās magistrum nostrum Enchōriōnem acūtum et optimum omnium esse?" "Rēctē dīcis," respondit amīcus. "Gaudeō 10 quod patrēs nostrī eum ēlēgērunt. Cēterōs quidem nōn contemnō, sed ille certē optimus est. Eō ōrātiōnem habente, mīrō modō affectus sum. Praetereā ea quae ille docet Rōmānīs ūtilissima sunt. Nam Rōmānī in forō, senātuque ōrātiōnēs habent." Tum Fūriānus dīxit: "Etiam ea quae philosophī docent ūtilia sunt ut vītam bonam agāmus. Rōmānī quidem sumus, et 15 Rōmānīs ūtilissimum est ōrātiōnēs habēre posse. Sed etiam hominēs sumus, et vīta bona ūtilior est quam ōrātiō bona."

Cum haec aliaque ab amīcīs duōbus nostrīs dē philosophīs rhētoribusque dicta essent, tandem Fūriānus dīxit: "Cōnsentīmus Enchōriōnem optimum esse. Gaudeāmus igitur quod in eius scholā sumus. Vīvat schola Enchōriōnis!"

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why was Publius glad?
- 2. What was useful to the Romans?
- 3. Why did many Romans go to Athens?
- 4. What is more useful than a good speech?



Young men used to gather around their favorite orator or philosopher to learn the fine art of rhetoric. This mosaic from the 1st century depicts several students clustered around their teacher, the great Plato.

Scala/Art Resource, NY

## Grammar Occorden

## Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

The pluperfect active subjunctive for all verbs, regular and irregular, is formed by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive.

PLUPERFECT ACTIVE						
portāvissem	docuissem	posuissem	cēpissem	mūnīvissem		
portāvissēs	docuissēs	posu <b>issēs</b>	cēp <b>issēs</b>	mūnīvissēs		
portāvisset	docuisset	posu <b>isset</b>	cēpisset	mūnīvisset		
portāvissēmus	docuissēmus	posu <b>issēmus</b>	cēpissēmus	mūnīvissēmus		
portāvissētis	docuissētis	posu <b>issētis</b>	cēpissētis	mūnīvissētis		
portāvissent	docuissent	posuissent	cēpissent	mūnīvissent		

#### ORAL PRACTICE

Conjugate the following verbs in the pluperfect active subjunctive: incendō, cōnsentiō, possum.



## Time Clauses: Ubi, Postquam, Cum

The conjunctions ubi. postquam, and cum are regularly used in Latin to express time clauses in the past. Cum is generally translated as when, since, or although and ubi and postquam mean when or after in English. When simply establishing the time that something took place, ubi, postquam, and cum are followed by the perfect indicative.

Cum pueri in Graeciā erant. Lepidus consul creatus est. Postquam urbem vidērunt, Brundisiō excessērunt. When the boys were in Greece, Lepidus was made consul. After they saw the city, they left Brundisium.

## NOTA BENI

The subjunctive is only used for cum clauses in the past—if the action takes place in the present or future, you use the indicative.

When a **cum** clause is expressing the circumstances under which or around which the action of the main verb has taken place, you use the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

Cum pueros Athenas iter facerent, multos Romanos viderunt.

Cum primum consensissent. pugnāre constituērunt.

When the boys were on their way to Athens, they saw many Romans.

Although they had agreed at first, they decided to fight.

## TRANSLATION

- 1. When Publius was traveling with his friend, he saw many noted men.
- 2. A few days later the two friends arrived at (ad) the most beautiful city of Greece.
- 3. When they had seen and heard all the teachers, they said that their own teacher was the best.
- 4. After they had been in the city for a long time, they agreed that their fathers had chosen most wisely.

Le perfect indicative.

# 

#### **Nouns**

aetās, -tātis, f. age, time of life fidēs, -eī, f. trust, protection (fidelity)

## **Adjectives**

acūtus, -a, -um, sharp cēterī, -ae, -a, the other(s) īnsignis, -e, noted mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful (acute, acuteness)

(insignia, insignificant)

2 miracle

## Verbs

cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, (consensus, consent)
-sēnsus, agree
contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, (contempt, contemptuous)
-temptus, despise
ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus, (elect, election)
pick out
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think
gaudeō, -ēre, —, gāvīsus, (gaudery, gaudy)

## **Adverbs**

rejoice, be glad

igitur, therefore
praetereā, besides
quidem, at least, to be sure
(follows emphasized word)

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, arrive (at), come (through)

## Conjunction

cum, when, since, although



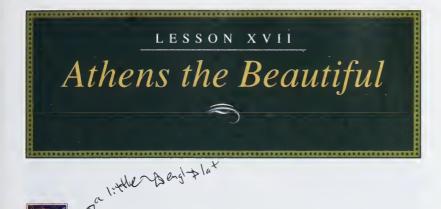
## **Word Studies**

Most of our musical terms come from Italian and thus ultimately from Latin. Explain the following, all derived from Latin words used in this book: accelerando (celer), allegro (alacer), alto, cantabile, cantata, con amore, contralto, crescendo, da capo (de capite), diminuendo (minuo), duet, finale, forte, fortissimo, libretto, mezzoforte (medius), octave, opus, piano, quintet, ritardando (tardus), sextet, solo, sonata, soprano (super), tempo, trio, vivace.

Young women were taught the fine arts of needlework and music. This wall painting from Pompeii shows a young lady playing the cithara, an ancient stringed instrument resembling a lyre.



The Metropolitan Museum of Art, Rogers Fund, 1903. (03.14.5) Copyright © 1986 By The Metropolitan Museum of Art.



P

aulō post<sup>1</sup> Pūblius litterās ad patrem mātremque mīsit, in quibus multa mīra dē urbe Athēnīs nārrāta sunt.

<sup>1</sup> adverb <sup>2</sup> ivory

"Cum ad hanc urbem accessissēmus," scrīpsit, "cupīvimus quam prīmum Parthenōnem, templum Minervae, vidēre. In monte stat quī Acropolis appellātur. Huius montis portae, quārum nōmen est Propylaea, tam pulchrae 5 sunt ut eō tempore diū spectantēs steterīmus. Ad Propylaea est templum parvum in quō est statua Victōriae sine ālīs facta. Cum dē hāc rogāvissēmus, respōnsum est: 'Dea Victōria ita facta est nē ab urbe discēderet.' Saepe dictum est Parthenōnem pulcherrimum esse omnium aedificiōrum; cum per Propylaea prōcessissēmus et ad Parthenōnem ipsum vēnissēmus, hoc intel-10 legere poterāmus. In eō est statua Athēnae, altior quam sex virī. Dea ipsa ex ebore² facta est, vestis et arma ex aurō. Ita īnsignis est ut nēmō eam nōn permōtus spectāre possit, nēmō memoriam eius dēpōnere possit. Cum Parthenōnem vīdissēmus, ad aliud templum Athēnae prōcessimus, in porticū cuius sunt statuae virginum. Cum Acropolis relīcta esset, in Agoram 15 dēscendimus. Ibi, inter alia, aedificium ā Caesare Augustōque factum vīdimus.

"Cum in urbe multōs diēs fuissēmus, et cotīdiē multa alia clāra loca invenīre potuissēmus, haec optima vīsa sunt: Stadium; Olympiēum, maximum templum Graeciae; Acadēmia, quae mīlle passibus ab urbe abest et in quā clārī philosophī docent. Tempus tam breve est et nōs tam dēfessī 20 sumus ut lūdīs in theātrō habitīs nōndum adfuerīmus; theātrum autem vīdimus, et exīstimāmus id pulcherrimum esse.

"Sed urbs tanta est ut nondum omnia loca aedificiaque amplissima ā nobīs inventa sint. Sed quam prīmum ea petēmus et dē eīs scrībēmus."

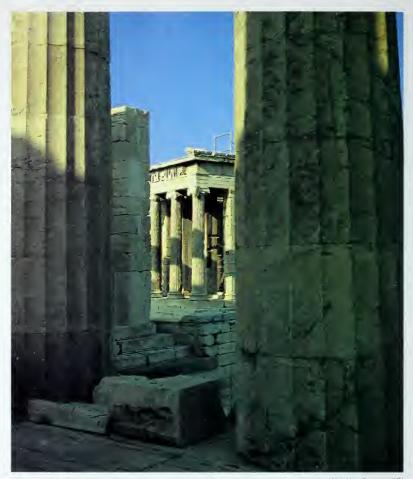
Cum litterae lēctae essent, Rūfus multa alia dē Athēnīs tam grāta nārrāvit 25 ut tandem Secunda dīceret, "Ōh! Cūr puer nōn sum! Ad eam urbem pulchram statim prōcēdere cupiō!"

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Of what material was the statue of Athena made?
- 2. What other places did Publius visit?
- 3. What did Publius want to see as soon as possible?
- 4. Why was the statue of Victory made without wings?



From this angle, you can see the Propylaea, or entrance to the Acropolis at Athens. In the distance is the Temple of Athena Nike.



Vanni/Art Resource, NY

# Grammar Occionation

# Perfect Active and Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

The perfect active subjunctive looks very much like the future perfect indicative, except for the first person singular.

1	4						
	PERFECT ACTIVE						
I	portāv <b>erim</b>	docu <b>erim</b>	posu <b>erim</b>	cēp <b>erim</b>	${\tt m\bar{u}n\bar{i}verim}$		
	portāv <b>erīs</b>	docu <b>erīs</b>	posu <b>erīs</b>	cēp <b>erīs</b>	mūnīv <b>erīs</b>		
	portāv <b>erit</b>	docu <b>erit</b>	posuerit	cēp <b>erit</b>	mūnīv <b>erit</b>		
	portāv <b>erīmus</b>	docu <b>erīmus</b>	posu <b>erīmus</b>	cēp <b>erīmus</b>	mūnīv <b>erīm</b> u	ıs	
The Party Street, or other Persons	portāv <b>erītis</b>	docu <b>erītis</b>	posu <b>erītis</b>	cēp <b>erītis</b>	mūnīv <b>erītis</b>		
1	portāv <b>erint</b>	docuerint	posuerint	cēp <b>erint</b>	${\tt m\bar{u}n\bar{i}verint}$		

For the passive voice of both the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, use the perfect passive participle with the present or imperfect subjunctive of sum. Verbs of the first three conjugations are shown as models; the others are formed the same way.

$-\mathbf{p}$	ED	HH	CT	DΛ	SS	1 // [

portātus, -a, -um sim doctus, -a, -um sim positus, -a, -um sim portātus, -a, -um sīs doctus, -a, -um sīs portātus, -a, -um sit doctus, -a, -um sit portātī, -ae, -a sīmus doctī, -ae, -a sīmus positī, -ae, -a sīmus portātī, -ae, -a sītis doctī, -ae, -a sītis docti, -ae, -a sint portātī, -ae, -a sint

positus, -a, -um sīs positus, -a, -um sit positī, -ae, -a sītis positī, -ae, -a sint

#### PLUPERFECT PASSIVE

portātus, -a, -um essēs doctus, –a, –um essēs portātus, -a, -um esset doctus, -a, -um esset portātī, -ae, -a essēmus doctī, -ae, -a essēmus positī, -ae, -a essēmus portātī, -ae, -a essētis doctī, -ae, -a essētis portātī, -ae, -a essent doctī, -ae, -a essent

portātus, -a, -um essem doctus, -a, -um essem positus, -a, -um essem positus, -a, -um essēs positus, -a, -um esset positī, -ae, -a essētis positī, -ae, -a essent



This statue of the goddess Victory, or Nike, was probably sculpted to commemorate a great naval victory by a Greek king. This figure, from Samothrace, is quite massive and has a very powerful effect. It was created around 190 B.C. and is now in the Louvre in Paris.

ing/Art Resource, NY

# NOTA-BENE

The perfect subjunctive, like the
perfect indicative,
states an act as
finished from the
present point of
view; while the
pluperfect subjunctive, like the pluperfect indicative,
represents an act
as finished from
the past point
of view.

and a to the total and the tot

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Give the first singular of **intellego**, the second singular of **fero**, the third singular of **lībero**, and the third plural of **reficio** in all tenses of the subjunctive, active and passive.
- Tell the form of prehendātur, consensisset, contemni, contempsi, potueris, incensus sit, dolērent, rupti essent, vexissēmus, existimārem, sitis.

# **Summary of Sequence of Tenses**

As you know, *sequence of tenses* is the term used to describe the relationship between the main verb and the subjunctive verb in the subordinate clause. There are two sequences, primary and secondary.

*Primary sequence* means that the main verb is in the present, future, or future perfect. The present subjuctive is used if the action in the subordinate clause is going on at the same time as or after the main verb. The perfect subjunctive is used if the action in the subordinate clause happened before the main verb.

MAIN VERB	SUBORDINATE VERB
present	present subjunctive (same time or time after)
future	perfect subjunctive (time before)
future perfect	

Secondary sequence means that the main verb is in the imperfect, perfect, or plurperfect. The imperfect subjunctive is used if the action in the subordinate clause is going on at the same time or after the main verb. The pluperfect subjunctive is used if the action in the subordinate clause happened before the main verb.

MAIN VERB	SUBORDINATE VERB
imperfect	imperfect subjunctive (same time or time after)
perfect	pluperfect subjunctive (time before)
pluperfect	



The Olympeium, in Athens, is one of the largest Greek temples known. It was built by the emperor Hadrian in the 2nd century A.D. Note the majestic height of the Corinthian columns.

The Bettmann Archive

1. When Publius had been in the city a few days he sent a letter to his dad +acc father.

2. When Publius' sister had read his long letter, she asked many things

3. The city was so large that he had not been able to see all the famous

4. A little later, when he stood before the Parthenon, he exclaimed, "This is the most beautiful of all temples!'

# Vocabulary ~

#### **Nouns**

āla, -ae, f. wing

aurum, -ī, n. gold

passus, -ūs, m. step, pace;

mīlle passūs, mile

porticus, ūs, f. colonnade

rūmor, -ōris, m. rumor statua, -ae, f. statue

(alate)

(auric)

(portico)

(rumormonger) ~

(statuesque, statuette)

LESSON XVII - ATHENS THE BEAUTIFUL

# Adjectives

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired potēns, potentis (gen.), powerful (potent, potential)

## Verbs

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus,
 realize, understand
narrō, 1,1 tell, relate
pācō, 1, pacify, subdue
(intelligent, intelligible)
(narrate, narrative)

## **Adverbs**

diū, long
nōndum, not yet
prīmum, first (prime, primeval)
quam prīmum,
as soon as possible
statim, at once, immediately

#### **Word Studies**

For the meaning and use of -ilis, (-ile, -il), -bilis (-ble, -able, -ible),  $-\bar{a}ris$  (-ar),  $-\bar{a}rius$  (-ary), see the Appendix. Give the English forms of agilis, fertilis, memorābilis, possibilis, volūbilis, particulāris, necessārius.

What are the Latin words from which are derived facile, docile, delectable, defensible, fragile, noble, popular, primary? Find five other examples of each of the suffixes -ble (-able, -ible). -ar, and -ary in English words derived from Latin words already studied.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> From now on verbs of the first conjugation whose principal parts are regular (i.e., like portō) will be indicated by the figure 1.



ūblius patrī et mātrī et sorōribus suīs s. p. d. Sī valētis, bene est; valeō. Cum magnō gaudiō litterās vestrās hodiē accēpī, quās ante vīgintī quīnque diēs¹ scrīpsistis. Cum litterās lēgissem, Fūriānō eās dedī ut legeret. Cum dē Rōmā et amīcīs nostrīs locūtī essēmus, Fūriānus dīxit Rōmam longē abesse. Sed fēlīcēs sumus, nam amīcōs hīc² habēmus, et 5 urbs pulcherrima est.

<sup>1</sup> twenty-five days ago (literally, before twenty-five days) <sup>2</sup> here

Vīta nostra tam quiēta est ut paene nihil scrībere possim. Sed tamen ūna rēs est dē quā scrībere necesse est. Potesne, pater, sine morā pecūniam mittere? Doleō quod haec scrībere necesse est, sed nōn est mea culpa. Omnia enim in hāc urbe tam cāra sunt ut paene tōta pecūnia mea cōnsūmpta sit. 10 Enchōriō magister tam amīcus est ut multī mē fīlium, nōn discipulum eius esse arbitrentur. Sum tōtōs diēs cum eō et saepe noctis partem; nam mēcum saepe cēnat. Hīs temporibus dē multīs rēbus ita bene loquitur ut multa ūtilia audiam. Ob hanc causam eum saepe ad cēnam vocō. Hōc modō pecūnia celeriter cōnsūmitur.

Etiam ob aliam causam pecūniam habēre necesse est. Cum ab Enchōriōne multa dē partibus Graeciae dicta essent, dē Delphīs eum rogāvī. Ille respondit omnēs Delphōs propriīs oculīs vidēre dēbēre. Itaque quam celerrimē proficīscī cupimus ut illum locum videāmus. Enchōriō pollicitus est nōbīscum proficīscī et omnia mōnstrāre atque explicāre. 20 Arbitror eum omnia scīre. Ita bene verba facit ut omnēs discipulōs mīrō modō affēcerit. Valēte.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why was Publius happy?
- 2. What trip did he plan to take?
- 3. Whom did he often invite to dinner?
- 4. How long did it take his father's letter to reach Publius?

Ancient Roman coinage often commemorated various exploits or buildings erected by the emperor. These coins, from 60-44 B.C. illustrate some of the special moments in Caesar's life. Do you know why the elephant was significant?



# Grammar -

# **Deponent Verbs**

Some Latin verbs are active in meaning but passive in form. They are called deponents, because they have put away (depono) their active forms. Deponent verbs are conjugated throughout the indicative and subjunctive like the passive of regular verbs of the four conjugations.

arbitror loquuntur I think they talk

Some of the participles and infinitives of deponent verbs, however, are active in both form and meaning. The present and future participles and the future infinitive (formed from the future participle) are active in both form and meaning. The perfect participle, while passive in form, is active in meaning.

1				
	PARTICIPI	LES	FORM	MEANING
	PRESENT	arbitrāns, thinking	active	active
	PERFECT	arbitrātus, having thought	passive	active
	FUTURE	arbitrātūrus, going to think	active	active
	INFINITIV	ES ·		
	PRESENT	arbitrārī, to think	passive	active
	PERFECT	arbitrātus esse, to have thought	passive	active
ı	FUTURE	arbitrātūrus esse,	active	active
ı		to be going to think		
1				

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Give and translate the third singular of **proficiscor** and the third plural of polliceor in all tenses of the indicative.
- 2. Give the second singular of arbitror and the second plural of loquor in all tenses of the subjunctive.
- 3. Give all the participles of **proficiscor** and the infinitives of **loquor**.

TRANSLATION

When Publius had spent all his money, he sent a letter to his father.
 He said that his teacher spoke so well that he often invited him to dinner.

3. He wrote that his teacher had promised to set out with him (secum) to see Delphi.]

4. Publius was with him almost night and day) and many thought that he was the teacher's son?

Abl Agent passure vebs a/ab w/abl

Delphi, a city in central Greece, is where Apollo killed the Python and founded the most famous center for prophesy in the ancient world. Here you can find the omphalos, or beehive-shaped stone that indicated the center of the earth.

E-76 from





fēlīx, fēlīcis (g
fortunate, st
necesse, neces
quiētus, -a, -u

Vocabulary —

fēlīx, fēlīcis (gen.), happy,

(felicific)

(quietude)

fortunate, successful, lucky

necesse, necessary (indeclinable)

quiētus, -a, -um, quiet

totidem, the same number

(indeclinable)

vīgintī, twenty (indeclinable)

# Verbs

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus,

(arbitrate, arbitration)

think

consumo, -ere, -sumpsi,

(consume, consumption)

-sūmptus, use up, spend

loquor, loqui, locutus, talk

(loquacious, soliloquy)

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus,

promise

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus,

set out, start

sollicitō, 1, stir up

(solicitate, solicitor)

versō, 1, turn over; (passive) live (verso)

# Adverb

longē, far

# **Word Studies**

Here are a few scientific terms: antenna in Latin means "sail yard": carbon is from carbo, "coal"; detector (de, tego); deterrent (de, terreo); exhaust (ex, hauriō); flux (fluō); neutron (neuter); nucleus, nuclear, thermonuclear (nucleus, nux; thermo- is from a Greek word meaning "heat") operational (opus); radar, radiation, ray (radius, "ray"); rotate (rota, "wheel"); sensor (sentio); vehicle (vehō).

100

In this book the principal parts of deponent verbs are given as present indicative, present infinitive, and perfect participle: arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus. Regular deponent verbs of the first conjugation will be indicated by the figure 1 in the vocabularies.



ūbliō in Graeciā studente, rēs grātissima Rōmae¹ agēbātur—nūptiae Caeciliae, sorōris Pūblī, et M. Iūnī Vorēnī. Paucīs mēnsibus ante Caeciliās Iūniīsque in ātrium Rūfī cum amīcīs ingressīs, pater Vorēnī cum fīliō prō Rūfō et Caeciliā cōnstiterat Rūfumque rogāverat: "Spondēsne fīliam tuam fīliō meō uxōrem?"² Rūfus responderat: "Spondeō." Tum Vorēnus 5 Caeciliae ānulum,³ Caecilia Vorēnō pulchrum servum dederat, et patrēs inter sē dē dōte⁴ ēgerant—quantum Rūfus in animō habēret dare, quō modō pecūnia parārī posset.

Tandem diēs nūptiārum aderat. Prīdiē Caecilia mūnera Laribus dederat; anunc, sole oriente, ominibus optimīs nūntiātīs, ā mātre ad nūptiās parābātur, to to the bride's new home, where the cum eā amīcae loquēbantur. Māter flammeum<sup>5</sup> et deinde coronam in caput her husband was waiting for her. After a ceremony, the groom capital bis heide a portule.

"Mīror quid frāter meus agat," dīxit Caecilia, "et quid arbitrātūrus sit, nūntio dē mē allātō."

Nunc Caecilia/cum mātre amīcīsque in ātrium adōrnātum dēscendit, ubi 15 sarcophagus in Rome. Rūfus et pontifex exspectābant. Cum Vorēnus et amīcī in ātrium ingressī essent, prōnuba<sub>2</sub> manūs Caeciliae et Vorēnī iūnxit, et Caecilia dīxit, "Ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia." Eīs nunc sedentibus, pontifex deōs (maximē Iūnōnem) vocāvit. Deinde omnēs "Fēlīciter!" clāmāvērunt. "Spērō vōbīs omnia bona futūra/esse, vītam vestram longam!"

"Non iam nostra est," Rūfus Vorēno dīxit, "sed tua."

Nona horā dena maxima allāta est, et Rūfus nūntiāvit, "Nos cibo reficiāmus." Omnēs uxorem pulchram mīrātī sunt.

Vesperī omnēs in viam sē recēpērunt. Ibi, mātre flente et Caeciliam retinente, aliī pompam parāvērunt. Subitō Vorēnus Caeciliam rapuit, et pompa 25 profecta est, amīcīs canentibus, rīdentibus, "Talassiō!" 4 clāmantibus. Cum

1 at Rome

<sup>2</sup> (as) wife

<sup>3</sup> ring

4 dowry
5 bridal veil (flame-colored)

Just as today, weddings were a special day in the lives of Romans. The bride and groom ate a special cake. Then there was a procession to the bride's new home, where her husband was waiting for her. After a ceremony, the groom carried his bride over the threshold. This husband and

wife are depicted on a

20

art Resource, NY

 $_{\rm I}$  On the eve of her marriage, the Roman girl dedicated her toys and childish garments to the household gods.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> The matron who attended the bride.

<sup>3</sup> An old formula, equivalent to "Where you go, I will go."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> An ancient marriage cry, the meaning of which is unknown.

ad iānuam domūs Vorēnī accessissent, Caecilia eam adōrnāvit. Postquam Vorēnus uxōrem per iānuam portāvit, Caecilia iterum dīxit, "Ubi tu Gāius, ego Gāia." In ātriō Vorēnus mātrōnae novae ignem aquamque dedit.6 30 Posterō diē cēna altera data est, ubi Caecilia deīs sacrificāvit. Familia eius nōn iam Caecilia, sed Iūnia erat.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What did the priest do?
- 2. What did the matron do?
- 3. By whom was a slave given?

# Grammar

#### Form Review

#### **Personal Pronouns**

The personal pronouns for the first and second persons are as follows. The third person personal pronoun is **is**, **ea**, **id**, which was reviewed earlier. If you do not remember the declension, refer to Lesson VIII.

Ī				
Į	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
l	ego	nōs	tū	võs
ı	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	tuī	vestrum (vestrī)
	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	võbīs
	mē	nõs	tē	vōs
ı	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs
H				

# Reflexive Pronouns

The reflexive pronouns for the first and second persons are the same as the personal pronouns, except that there is no nominative. Since a reflexive refers back to the nominative, it can't be one.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	Sie
1	suī	suī	-
-/>	sibi	sibi	3
	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)	3
	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)	- 5%

<sup>&</sup>lt;sub>5</sub> So that she might not stumble on the threshold—an unlucky omen.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sub>6</sub> With these gifts, symbols of the essentials of domestic life, the bride becomes the mistress of the house.

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Give and translate the dative singular and plural of **ego**, **tū**, **is**, **suī**; give the ablative singular and plural of the same.
- 2. Conjugate reflexively and translate the present and perfect tenses of **ego mē moneō**, **tū tē monēs**, etc.
- 3. Give the third singular of sē contemnere in all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive.

# **Indirect Questions**

An indirect question in Latin includes an interrogative word and a verb of asking, knowing, saying, perceiving, etc. The verb in the indirect question is in the subjunctive, following the rule for sequence of tenses.

Compare the following direct and indirect questions.

"Ubi id invēnistī?" Mē rōgāvit ubi id invēnissēm. Where did you find it? He asked me where I had found it.



In this 2nd century A.D. relief you can see the priest officiating at the wedding ceremony. Notice that the bride and groom have joined their hands.





If the indirect question has a yes/no answer, it is introduced by num. Rogavit num id invenissem. He asked if I had found it.

In this case, **ubi** is the question word after a verb of asking, knowing, etc. It is in the secondary sequence, so the pluperfect subjunctive is used. To review the sequence of tenses, study the following sentences, paying attention to the clocks.

Ι

Time: 3 P.M.

Place: Schoolroom

you



Rogō quid faciās.

I ask (now) what you are doing (now).





Rogō quid fēcerīs.

I ask (now) what you did (earlier).





Rogāvī quid facerēs.

I asked (then) what you were doing (then).





Rogāvī quid fēcissēs.

I asked (then) what you had done (earlier).





1. Caecilia wondered what Publius thought about the wedding

2. Her (girl) friends asked her how much money was being given

3. She kept asking herself where Publius then was and what he was doing.

4. When the procession had started, the friends asked themselves how Vorenus and Caecilia would enter.

# Vocabulary

# Nouns

pontifex, pontificis, m. priest sōl, sōlis, m. sun uxor, -ōris, f. wife vesper, -erī, m. evening;

vesperī, in the evening

(pontiff, pontificate) (solar, solarium) (uxorial, uxorious) (vespers, vespertine)

prosicisto

# Adjectives

plērīque, -aeque, -aque, most
quantus, -a, -um, how great,
how much
(quantity, quantum)



#### **Verbs**

cano, -ere, cecini, cantus, sing, (cant, cantabile) tell (about) experior, experiri, (experience, experiment) expertus, try\_ (ingredient) ingredior, ingredī, ingressus, step into, enter mīror, 1, wonder, admire orior, orīrī, ortus, rise spondeo, -ēre, spopondi, (respond, response) sponsus, promise, engage studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, (student, studious)

#### **Adverbs**

paulisper, for a little while prīdiē, on the day before subito, suddenly

be eager (for), study

# **Word Studies**

The base ending of the Latin present participle (-ant, -ent, -ient, according to conjugation) is used as a suffix in English. All English words derived from the first conjugation have -ant; most of those derived from the other conjugations have -ent; but some derived through the French have -ant. Give examples.

The addition of -ia to the base ending of the present participle gives a suffix -antia, -entia (-ance, -ence, -ancy, -ency). The same rule for spelling which was given above holds true. Give samples.

Explain ingredient, loquacity, miracle, orient, quantity, soliloquy, solstice, uxoricide, vespers.



# LESSON XX The Trip to Delphi

1 to Delphi

<sup>2</sup> so to speak (literally, to say (it) so)

treasuries

5 savings

6 nothing in excess

ater Pūbliō pecūniam praebuerat ut is et Fūriānus Delphōs<sup>1</sup> īrent. Cum dies constitutus adesset, ad Enchorionem ierunt, qui pollicitus erat cum eīs īre. Itaque hī trēs cum servīs aliquibus ex urbe Athēnīs exiērunt.

Cūr cupīvērunt Delphōs vidēre? Quod hic locus erat, ut ita dīcam,2 5 templum tötīus Graeciae. In hōc locō erat īnsigne ōrāculum Apollinis. Multī ex omnibus partibus terrae vēnērunt ut orāculum consulerent Praetereā locus ipse pulcherrimus erat—et est.

Itaque amīcī nostrī duo per sacram viam (eunt) quae ad urbem clāram Eleusim ducit et ex illa urbejad aliam urbem claram, Thebas, procedunt. 10 Cum post paucos dies ad finem itineris venissent, gaudio et admiratione complētī sunt. Namque urbs sub monte Parnassō posita pulcherrima erat. Formam maximī theātrī habēbat. Ab<sup>3</sup> ūnā parte erant saxa alta; ab alterā, arborēs et flumen et alter mons.

Haec omnia diu mīrātī/ad fontem īnsignem Castalium vēnērunt. Omnēs 15 qui oraculum consulebant aqua huius fontis se lavabant. Hic fons Apollini Műsísque sacer erat. /

Tum viātōrēs nostrī aedificia aliqua conspexērunt quae thēsaurī4 appellāta sunt. Haec cīvitātēs quaedam Graecae propter victoriam aliquam aedificāvērunt. Auctor quīdam Graecus dīxit Cnidios non up rēs in proelio bene estās thesaurum aedificāvisse sed ut opes suās ostenderent. In hīs aedificiīs et in aliīs partibus urbis erant tria mīlia statuārum. Port

Hīs ledificije vivis, templum Apollinis ingressī statim sententiās septem sapie num Graecorum litteris magnīs īnscrīptās conspexerunt: "Cognosce të ipsum," "në quid nimis," et cëtera ded in oraculum ipsum ingredi non 25 potuerunt, quod ōrāculum tam sacrum erat ut paucī ingrederentur.

Itaque ad fontem rediērunt et eum et saxa et arborēs et caelum iterum mīrātī ad cēnam vesperī discessērunt.

#### OUESTIONS

- 1. What spring did the boys see?
- 2. What cities did they see after they left Athens?
- 3. Why did the Greek states erect buildings at Delphi?
- 4. What mottoes did the boys see in the temple of Apollo?

926 met



Vanni/Art Resource, NY



The Treasury of the Athenians at Delphi was where the Athenians housed their trophies and offerings to Apollo. It dates from the late 6th century B.C.

# **Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives**

Indefinite pronouns and adjectives refer to persons and things in an indefinite way. They are usually translated as *someone* or *something*. There are three levels of indefinite pronouns and adjectives.

**Quīdam** means a *certain or definite someone or something*; someone or something I know of.

Quendam vīdī quī tē esse magnum dīxit.

I saw someone who said you were great.

The declension is similar to **quī** with a **-dam** as a suffix. The pronoun and the adjective are declined the same EXCEPT in the neuter nominative and accusative singular which is **quiddam** for the pronoun. The adjective declension is as follows:

5	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
M	F	N	M	F	N
quīdam	quaedam	quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	$qu\bar{o}rundam\\$	quārundam	quōrundam
cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
quendam	quandam	quoddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
quõdam	quādam	quõdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

Aliquis, which is a compound of quis, means someone or something—I don't know who; someone/something or other. It is less definite than quidam.

Puto aliquem ibi habitare. I think that someone lives here.

The pronoun is declined like **quis** with an **ali-** as a prefix EXCEPT in the neuter nominative and accusative plural, which is **aliqua**; the adjective is declined much like **qui**, as follows:

	;	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
N	М	F	N	M	F	N
a	liqui	aliqua	aliquod	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
a	licuius	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
a	licui	alicuī	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
a	liquem	aliquam	aliquod	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
a	liquō	aliquā	aliquo	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

Quis, the indefinite pronoun (declined like the interrogative quis EXCEPT in the nominative singular feminine and neuter nominative and accusative plural, which is qua) is the least definite of all. It means *some* or *any*, and it is only used after sī, nisi, num, and nē.

Sī quis me vidit, timēbitur.	If anyone sees me, he will be
	frightened.
Curram në quis më videat.	I shall run so that no one
	sees me.

# Conjugation of Eō

The verb eo, go, is irregular in the present, future, and perfect tenses:





The Temple of Apollo contains the ancient home of the Delphic Oracle, who was consulted by Oedipus, Socrates, and many others. Two maxims are inscribed on the walls of the temple, "Know Thyself" and "Nothing in Excess."

Boltin Picture Library

	PRE	SENT	FUTUR	E	PERFE	СТ	
l	eō	īmus	ībō	ībimus	iî	iimus	
	īs	ītis	ībis	ībitis	iīstī	īstis	
l	it	eunt	ībit	ībunt	iit	iērunt	

The principal parts of **eo** are **eo**, **ire**, **ivi**, **iturus**. Although the present subjunctive is conjugated regularly, it has an irregular stem and the present participle has a stem change in the genitive.

PRESE	NT SUBJUNCTIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
eam	eāmus	iēns, euntis
eās	eātis	
eat	eant	

# MOTA-BENE

The stem vowel —ī
is changed to e—
before a, o, u. Since
eō is intransitive,
passive forms are
rare.

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Decline duo oculi, tres arbores, mille consules, duo milia villarum.
- 2. Give the third singular of **eo**, the first plural of **exeo**, and the third plural of **redeo** in all tenses of the active indicative and subjunctive.



- 1. Some often returned to see the place and to consult the oracle.
- 2. Delphi was so famous that many thousands of people went to see it.
- 3. This beautiful place was called by some the temple of entire Greece.
- 4. Publius got money from his father in order to go to the city (of) Delphi.
- 5. If any one desired to consult the oracle about a certain matter, do you know what he did first?

# Vocabulary —

## **Nouns**

arbor, -oris, f. tree caelum, -ī, n. sky fons, fontis, m. spring gaudium, gaudī, n. joy ops, opis, f. aid; (pl.) wealth ōrāculum, -ī, oracle, prophesy saxum, -ī, n. rock

(arboreal, arboretum)

Cillertin (gaudery, gaudy)

00-100 (oracular)

aliquis aliquid quidam quaedan

Complex Erelvi stas Sell

eo ire vi ituras que existentem

place hote exiting four Not

reder = electricishors

#### **Pronouns**

aliquis, aliquid, some(one), any quidam, quaedam, quiddam, certain (one)

# Adjectives

aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some(one), quidam, quaedam, quoddam, certain (one)

# Verbs

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill, cover, complete eō, īre, iī, itūrus, go exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus, go out (from), go forth praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, furnish redeō, -īre, rediī, reditūrus, go back, return

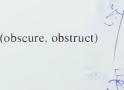
(completion)

(exit)

**Prepositions** 

ob (+ acc.). because of, on account of propter (+ acc.), because of, on account of

(obscure, obstruct)



#### **Word Studies**

Here are some legal phrases in English:

**Supersedeas,** (I command that) you suspend (proceedings).

Ne exeat, Let him not go out (of the jurisdiction of the court).

Caveat emptor, Let the buyer beware (for he buys at his own risk).

**Scire facias,** (I demand that) you cause to know (why a certain court action should not be carried out).

**Habeas corpus**, (I command that) you have the body (of a certain person brought into court), a writ issued by a judge to see whether a person is justly imprisoned.

Look up the meanings of mandamus, nunc pro tunc, post mortem, prima facie, pro bono publico.

# The Seven Wise Men of Greece

A common practice of the scholars of antiquity was the drawing up of lists (called *canons*) of persons considered outstanding in their fields. Thus there have been preserved for us lists of "The Ten Attic Orators," "The Nine Lyric Poets," and "The Seven Wise Men." Here is one version of the names of the Seven Wise Men, with one of the sayings each is supposed to have made famous. Many of these men were politicians or poets, as well as philosophers. All of them lived between 620 and 550 B.C.

Cleobulus of Rhodes

Periander of Corinth

Pittacus of Mytilene

Bias of Priene

Thales of Miletus

"Moderation is the chief good"

"Forethought in all things"

"Know your opportunity"

"Too many workers spoil the work"

"To go bond brings ruin"

Chilon of Sparta "Know thyself"
Solon of Athens "Nothing in excess"



In addition to attending school, young Romans learned the art of oratory, or speech-making, by listening to famous speakers and trying to imitate them.

# Totalitarianism and Democracy

<sup>1</sup> at the age of seven (literally, born seven years)

Pericles, 495-429 B.C., was a major political leader in Athens during a time when Athenian culture and military power were at their height. Among other things, he initiated a great public building program that included the Parthenon.



C. M Dixon

uōdam diē Pūblius Fūriānusque cum aliīs adulēscentibus dē Spartā Athēnīsque loquēbantur. "Certē omnibus concēdendum est Spartānōs antīquōs omnium fortissimōs fuisse," ūnus ē Graecīs dīxit; "nōnne Leōnidam memoriā tenēs, quī cum CCC cīvibus apud Thermopylās<sub>1</sub> tam fortiter 5 pugnāvit? Alacrī animō suōs ad id proelium hortātus est quō peritūrī erant."

"Ea quae dīcis nōn negō." alter dīxit. "sed Athēniēnsēs quoque fortēs fuērunt. Fortēs quidem Spartānī fuērunt sed aliās virtūtēs nōn habuērunt. Lycurgus, 2 dux ille antīquus, ob sevēritātem lēgum accūsandus est.

Deinde Fūriānus rogāvit quid Pūblius arbitrārētur. "Concēdō Athēniēnsēs 10 meliōrēs esse," hic respondit. "Vīta dūra puerīs Spartānīs agenda erat. Septem annōs nātī¹ mātrēs relinquēbant ut ad bellum instituerentur. Cēnās ipsī parābant ex pessimīs cibīs, nam Spartānī crēdēbant famem optimum condīmentum cibī esse. Puerī flagellīs caesī sunt, patribus ad patientiam hortantibus, ut dolōrem ferre discerent."

"Etiam peior," quīdam adulēscēns Athēniēnsis dīxit, "erat vīta eōrum quōs Spartānī vīcērunt. Nōn sōlum servī factī sunt sed multae iniūriae eīs ferendae erant. Ā quibusdam sēcrētō observābantur. Ille servus quī faciem hominis līberī habuit occīsus est. Vestis servīlis omnibus servīs gerenda erat. Cotīdiē caesī sunt ut memoriā tenērent sē servōs esse."

"Non nego vītam servorum miserrimam esse," Fūriānus dīxit, "sed pessima erat vīta Spartānorum ipsorum. Etiam in pāce semper in castrīs habitābant. Lībertās eīs non nota fuit. Omnia pro patriā facienda erant; nihil tamen patria pro populo fēcit. 'Pro bono pūblico' significāvit 'pro bono reī pūblicae,' non 'pro bono cīvium.' "

25 "Vērum dīcis," Athēniēnsis dīxit. "Memoriā teneāmus verba nobilis Periclis, quī dīxit rem pūblicam Athēniensium in manibus plūrimorum, non paucorum, esse; cīvibus ēgregiīs omnium generum mūnera pūblica

<sup>2</sup> Lycur'gus, the king who was supposed to have originated the Spartan way of life

at Thermop 'ylae, a mountain pass in Greece

praemia esse; iūra paria omnibus esse. Athēniēnsibus lībertās cārissima fuit; itaque illī non īrātī fuērunt sī aliī fēcērunt id quod volvērunt. Puerī eorum in pāce vīxērunt nec ad bellum semper īnstitūtī sunt. Alacrī tamen 30 animo in bello pugnāvērunt et periērunt. Artēs līberālēs coluērunt; itaque eorum urbs schola Graeciae fuit."

"Vērum est," Pūblius dīxit; "etiam nunc haec urbs schola est, non solum Graeciae sed orbis terrārum. Athēnae statuās pulcherrimās, aedificia ēgregia, libros optimos nobīs dedērunt. Spēro omnēs gentēs semper Athēnīs, 35 non Spartae, similēs futūrās esse."

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who died at Thermopylae?
- 2. In what way were Spartan slaves worse off than any others?
- 3. What did the Athenians consider to be of highest importance?

# Grammar October

# Formation and Use of the Future Passive Participle

The *future passive participle*, often called the *gerundive*, is formed by adding  $-\mathbf{ndus}$ ,  $-\mathbf{a}$ ,  $-\mathbf{um}$  to the present stem of any verb. In the case of  $-\mathbf{i}\bar{\mathbf{o}}$  verbs add  $-\mathbf{endus}$ . The stem vowel is shortened before  $-\mathbf{nd}$ .

portandus, –a, –um	to be carried
docendus, -a, -um	to be taught
ponendus, -a, -um	to be put
capiendus, -a, -um	to be taken
mūniendus, -a, -um	to be built

The future passive participle is often used with a form of **sum** as a predicate adjective to express obligation or necessity. In English, we insert the words *must*, *had to*, *ought to*, etc. The person upon whom the obligation rests is in the dative; this is called the dative of agent. This construction is sometimes called the passive periphrastic.

**Hic liber legendus est.** This book is to be read.

This book has to be read. This book must be read.

This book must be read.

This book ought to be read.

Hic liber tibi legendus est. This book must be read by you.

You must read this book.

A Roman mosaic shows a skeleton pointing to the Greek motto gnothi sauton, which in Latin is cognosce te ipsum. The point here is that life is short.



The Bettmann Archive

#### ORAL PRACTICE

Give the future passive participle of caedo, nego, compleo, and excipio.



- 1. Must boys always be trained for war?
- 2. What ought to be done by us for our country?
- 3. Publius asked why Lycurgus had to be blamed by us.
- 4. Why did dinner have to be prepared by the girls themselves?

# Vocabulary ---

#### **Nouns**

adulēscēns, -entis,

m. young man

famēs, -is (abl. fame),

f. hunger

flagellum, -ī, n. whip

(adolescence, adolescent)

(famine, famish)

(flagellate)

# Adjective

alacer, -cris, -cre, eager

(alacrity)

#### Verbs

adeō, adīre, adiī, aditūrus, (adit)

go to, approach

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, (caesura)

cut, beat, kill

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, (concede)

withdraw, grant

discō, -ere, didicī, —, learn

hortor, 1, urge, encourage

instituō, -ere, instituī, (institute, institution)

institūtus, establish, train

negō, 1, deny, say . . . not (negate, negation)

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, perish

significo, 1, mean (signify, significant)

#### Adverbs

fortiter, bravely

prōtinus, immediately

quoque, too (follows the word it emphasizes)

#### **Word Studies**

Spanish is so much like Latin that it is easy for those who know Latin to recognize hundreds of Spanish words, especially if you know a few simple principles. Spanish nouns are usually not derived from the Latin nominative but from a common form made from the other cases.

If you remember that the final letters and syllables are often lost in Spanish, you can give the Latin for *alto*, *ánimo*, *ceder*, *constituir*, *dar*, *fácil*, *gente*, *libro*, *orden*, *responder*.

If you know that double consonants become single, you can give the Latin from which are derived *aceptar*, *común*, *difícil*, *efecto*.

If you know that *e* often becomes *ie*, and *o* becomes *ue*, you can give the Latin for *bien*, *ciento*, *cierto*, *tierra*; *bueno*, *cuerpo*, *fuerte*, *muerte*, *nuestro*, *puerto*.

Since c and q sometimes become g, and t becomes d, what must be the Latin words from which are derived agua, amigo, edad, libertad, madera, madre, padre, todo?

Since *li* becomes *j*, and *ct* becomes *ch*, from what Latin words are the following derived: *ajeno*, *consejo*, *dicho*, *mejor*, *noche*, *ocho*?

# LESSON XXII Athletics and Patriotism

uōdam diē Pūblius et Fūriānus ē scholā cum duōbus adulēscentibus Graecīs exiērunt. Accidit ut per viās gradientēs statuam virī currentis, ā clārō Myrōne<sub>1</sub> factam, conspicerent. Itaque constiterunt ut eam spectārent. "Nonne Graecī semper viros currentes amant?" Pūblius quaesīvit.

"Sī quis celerrimē currit," respondit ūnus ē Graecīs, "cārissimus urbis suae est; et sī quis in lūdīs Olympicīs vincit, cārissimus est tōtīus Graeciae. Illī lūdī, quī antīquī et īnsignēs sunt, Iovī in urbe Olympiā hōc ipsō annō habentur et post quattuor annos iterum habebuntur. Ad hanc urbem virī ex 10 omnibus urbibus Graeciae eunt ut ibi contendant. Virō sē non digno modo gerentī, virō quī fraudem fēcit, nōn permittitur ut contendat. Victōrēs coronas, statuas, carmina accipiunt."

"Nonne audīvī dē quodam viro quī tempore magnī perīculī longē cucurrit?" Fūriānus quaesīvit.

"Philippidēs<sub>2</sub> erat," respondit alter ē Graecīs. "Nūntius eī portandus erat. Ducēs Persārum, cum multīs mīlibus mīlitum in Graeciam progressī, ad campum quī Marathōn appellātur dēscendērunt. Athēniēnsēs constituerunt ut Philippidēs quīdam ad urbem Spartānōrum īret ut auxilium peteret. Etsī haec urbs circiter centum quīnquāgintā mīlia passuum aberat, ille secundo 20 die ad eam pervenit et eos hortatus est ut auxilium mitterent. Spartanī autem ob fēriās constituērunt nē īrent. Itaque Athēniensibus solīs Persae dūrī expellendī erant, et Graecia servāta est. Post hoc proelium īdem nūntius Philippidēs ad urbem Athēnās celeriter cucurrit sed posteāquam in urbem pervēnit 'Victōria!' clāmāns subitō mortuus est."3

"Graecī fortēs sunt," dīxit Pūblius, amīcīs suīs Graecīs relīctīs. "Nonne mīrāris quō modō accidat ut Rōmānōs nōn vīcerint?"

Athletics and fitness were not only 5 important parts of a man's daily workout ritual, but they also provided great entertainment. Boxing has been popular for hundreds of years; in fact, it was one of the original Olympic sports. The gloves used then are not quite like those used today, however.



Scala/Art Resource, NY

116

Myron, a Greek sculptor

<sup>2</sup> In Greek the name seems to have been Pheidippides.

<sup>3</sup> The marathon race of today is so named because its length (about 26 miles) equals the distance which Philippides ran from Marathon to Athens.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What did Philippides do?
- 2. What were the prizes for the winners at the Olympic Games?
- 3. How do these prizes compare to today's Olympians?

# Grammar Occordon

#### **Indirect Commands**

Indirect commands, sometimes called substantive clauses of purpose, follow verbs of asking (**rogō**, **petō**, etc.), ordering (**mandō**, **imperō**, etc.), advising (**moneo**, **persuadeō**, etc.). They are followed by **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive following the sequence of tenses. The verb that is used to ask, order, or advise takes one of the following three cases:

impero, mando, and persuadeo take the dative:

Mihi imperāvit ut librum

He ordered me to read

legerem.

the book.

moneō, ōrō, and rogō take the accusative:

Mē rogāvit ut librum

He asked me to read the book.

legerem.

**petō**, **quaerō**, and **postulō** take the *ablative* with the preposition **ā** or **ab**:

Ā mē petīvit ut librum

He asked me to read the book.

legerem.

#### Noun Clause of Result

Verbs that mean to *happen* (such as **accīdō**) or to *cause* or *effect* or *bring about* (**efficiō**) are followed by **ut** or **ut non** and the subjunctive, following the sequence of tenses.

Accidit ut exercitus oppugnāret.

It happened that the army

attacked.

Effēcērunt ut hostēs fugerent.

They caused the enemy

to flee.

In ancient times, women were not allowed to participate in the Olympic games. The modern games, which began in 1896, allowed women to compete beginning in 1900. Today, women athletes train just as hard as their male counterparts.



Bill Ross/Westlight





- 1. Did the messenger ask the Spartans<sub>4</sub> not to send aid?
- 2. By his speed he caused the Persians<sub>4</sub> to be defeated.
- 3. A messenger had to be sent to the city by the Greeks.
- 4. The Greeks determine that the defeated general should pay the penalty.

# Vocabulary



#### Nouns

campus, -ī, m. plain fraus, fraudis, f. fraud, wrong tumultus, -ūs, m. uproar

(campus) (fraudulence, fraudulent) (tumult, tumultuous)

<sup>4</sup> In Latin this will be the subject of the verb in the subordinate clause.

# Adjective

**inferior**, -ius, lower, inferior (inferiority)

#### Verbs

```
adorior, adorīrī, adortus,
  rise up to, attack
gradior, gradī, gressus, walk
                                    (grade, gradient)
ōrō, 1, beg, ask, pray (for), plead
                                    (oration, oratory)
perspiciō, -ere, -spexī,
                                    (perspicacious, perspicuous)
  -spectus, see (clearly)
postulo, 1, demand
                                    (postulant, postulate)
progredior, progredi,
                                    (progress, progression)
   progressus, step forward.
  advance
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī,
  quaesītus, seek, inquire
                                    (query)
```

#### Adverbs

circiter, about itaque, and so, therefore

# Conjunction

etsī, although

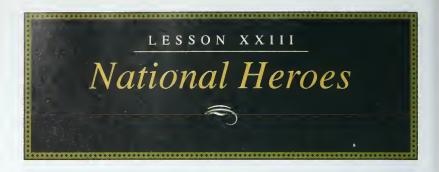
# **Word Studies**

For the meaning and use of the suffixes  $-\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ nus (-an, -ane, -ain),  $-\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ lis (-al),  $-\mathbf{i}$ cus (-ic),  $-\mathbf{i}$ lis (-ile, -il),  $-\mathbf{i}$ vus (-ive),  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ sus (-ous, -ose), see the Appendix. Give the English forms of hūmānus, urbānus, mortālis, cīvicus, virīlis, āctīvus, cūriōsus, bellicōsus.

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *meridian*, *certain*, *liberal*, *classic*, *passive*, *morose*? Give three other examples of each of the above suffixes in English words.

Frequently several suffixes are used together in the same word. Sometimes these are joined together so closely that we think of them as one suffix. Particularly common is the attachment of noun suffixes to adjectives to form nouns, and vice versa: simil-ari-ty, luun-ani-ty, fert-ili-ty, act-ivi-ty. Sometimes several adjective suffixes are used together: republ-ic-an.

Out of the Latin participle **nātus** we make the noun *nat-ion*, then the adjective *nat-ion-al*, then the verb *nat-ion-al-ize*, then the noun *nat-ion-al-iza-tion*. Sometimes even more suffixes are used.



ē virīs clārīs Pūblius et Fūriānus saepe cum adulēscentibus duōbus Graecīs loquēbantur. Pūbliō maximē grātum erat dē Graecō Dēmosthene audīre—quī puer vōcem pessimam habuerat, sed quī eam exercuerat loquendō ad lītus maris, clāmandō dum currit, prōnūntiandō 5 dum aliquid in ōre habet; et quī tandem prīmum locum inter omnēs ōrātōrēs attigerat. "Ille sōlus melior quam Cicerō erat et etiam Rōmānīs laudandus et in honōre habendus est," quondam dīxit Pūblius.

Fūriānus dē rēbus mīlitāribus locūtus est factaque Caesaris, Scīpiōnis, Pompeī, Marī nārrāvit. Sed ūnus ē Graecīs dīxit: "Mihi grātissimus 10 imperātōrum Graecōrum est Themistoclēs. Tempore maximī perīculī, auctōritātem Athēnārum nāvibus summam fēcit, Athēnās optimē mūnīvit, Persārum exercitum tandem ē Graeciā expulit."

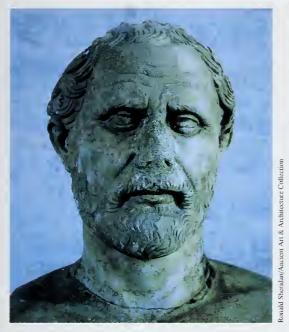
"Multī Rōmānī Graecīs similēs sunt," quōdam diē Pūblius dīxit. 
"Vergilius, clārissimus poēta Rōmānus, quī carmen dē Troiānīs et dē Rōmā 15 cōnstituendā scrīpsit, similis Homērō est, quī dē bellō Troiānō scrīpsit. 
Numa autem, quī temporibus antīquīs lēgēs quās ā deīs accēperat Rōmānīs dedit, similis Solōnī est, quī lēgēs fēcit ad Athēnās reficiendās."

"At quī Rōmānus philosophīs Graecīs pār est?" alter ē Graecīs quaesīvit. 
"Cicerō, Lucrētius, quī dē atomīs et dē orīgine hominum rērumque scrīp20 sit, aliī philosophī Rōmānī—hī ad Graeciam audiendī et discendī causā vēnērunt. Quis Sōcratem memoriā nōn tenet, quī puerōs interrogandō docēbat et eōs ad bene vīvendum īnstituēbat; quī malī<sub>2</sub> expellendī et bonī<sub>2</sub> mōnstrandī grātiā semper labōrābat; quī ob sententiās suās occīsus est?"

"At quī Graecus Augustō nostrō pār est?" respondit Fūriānus. "Periclēs 25 quidem īnsignis erat—Athēnās adōrnāvit, auctōritātem urbis auxit, pāce regēbat. Augustus autem nōn sōlum Rōmam adōrnāvit auxitque—urbem quam ex latere factam accēpit nunc marmoream relinquit—sed nunc omnēs terrās pāce, sapientiā, iūstitiā regit."

Et duo Graecī concessērunt Augustum īnsignem esse.

In English the past tense is used. Neuter noun forms: *evil*, *good* 





nald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collec

Demosthenes was the greatest orator of ancient Greece. Tradition has it that he practiced his delivery by putting pebbles in his mouth and by carefully studying the masters. He had an explosive and exciting style. The blind poet Homer is credited with being the author of two of the earliest and finest examples of epic poetry. It is likely that he lived in the Ionian part of Greece in the 8th or 9th century B.C.

#### **QUESTIONS**

- 1. Who beautified Rome?
- 2. What Greek was like Vergil?
- 3. What Roman was like Solon?
- 4. What was (and is) the Socratic method of teaching?

# Grammar ~~~

# The Gerund

The gerund corresponds to the English verbal noun in -ing, as in We learn to do by doing. It is formed by adding  $-nd\bar{\imath}$ ,  $-nd\bar{o}$ , -ndum,  $-nd\bar{o}$  to the present stem of any verb.<sub>3</sub> It is declined in the singular only, in all cases except the nominative. For the nominative constructions of the English verbal noun, Latin uses the present active infinitive:

Vidēre est crēdere.

Seeing is believing.

Note these differences between the gerund and the future passive participle:

#### GERUND

- 1. Is a verbal noun.
- 2. Has only four endings  $(-\bar{i}, -\bar{o}, -um, -\bar{o}).$
- 3. Is always *active* (translate "-ing").
- 4. Never agrees with anything.

#### FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

- 1. Is a verbal adjective.
- 2. Has thirty forms (-us, -a, -um, etc.).
- 3. Is always passive (translate "to be -ed," "must be -ed").
- 4. Always agrees with a noun or pronoun.

#### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Give the gerunds of laudo, moneo, fugio, rego, audio.
- 2. Decline the gerunds of nārrō and pōnō, and the future passive participles of capiō and exigō.

#### Uses of the Gerund and the Gerundive

• Since the gerund is a noun, it may have typical noun constructions, such as object of a preposition or ablative of means.

Copiās ad pugnandum collēgit.

Celeriter currendo pervenit. He arrived quickly by running. He gathered the troops for fighting.

• Since the gerund is a noun, it usually does not take a direct object. Instead, use the gerundive, modifying the noun.

Carmen de Roma constituenda scripsit. He wrote a poem about founding Rome.

• The gerund or the gerundive is used with the preposition ad (plus the accusative) to express purpose.

Hostēs pervēnērunt ad praedam petendam.

The enemy arrived looking for loot.

• The gerund or the gerundive is used with causa or gratia (plus the genitive) to express purpose. Both causa and gratia can be translated as for the sake of.

Hostes pervenerunt praedae The enemy arrived looking petendae causā.

for loot. Hostes pervenerunt praedae The enemy arrived looking

for loot.

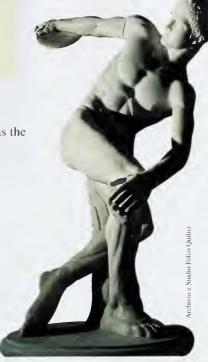


Translate the words in italics, using the gerund or the gerundive, as the case may be:

- 1. He sat down to read.
- 2. We felt the joy of giving.

petendae grātiā.

- 3. I have come to tell a story.
- 4. This is not time for talking.
- 5. He gained fame by writing.
- 6. He sat down to read a book.
- 7. We felt the joy of giving money.
- 8. He gained fame by writing books.
- 9. He leaned forward for-the-sake-of seeing.
- 10. He leaned forward for-the-sake-of seeing the man.



# Vocabulary -

# **Nouns**

exercitus, -ūs, m. army honor, -ōris, m. honor imperātor, -ōris,

(exercise, exercitation) (honorable, honorary) (emperor)

m. commander, general later, lateris, m. brick, tile

(laterite)

lītus, lītoris, n. shore

(littoral)

orīgo, originis, f. origin

# Verbs

attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus,

touch, reach

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, (augment, augur)

increase, enlarge, make grow

dēcertō, 1, fight (it out)

interrogō, 1, ask, question

occīdo, -ere, occīdi,

occisus, kill pronuntio, 1, recite (interrogate, interrogation)

(pronounce, pronunciation)

A copy of the Discus Thrower, or Discobolus, by the Greek sculptor Myron (5th century B.C.), noted for his ability to portray figures in action. Unfortunately, the original bronze statue has been lost.

# Adverbs

audācter, boldly
sōlum, only

(audacious, audacity) (sole, solely)

# Conjunction

at, but

# **Word Studies**

Animis opibusque parati, Prepared in spirit and resources (motto of the state of South Carolina).

Qui transtulit sustinet, (God) who transported (us here) sustains (us) (motto of the state of Connecticut).

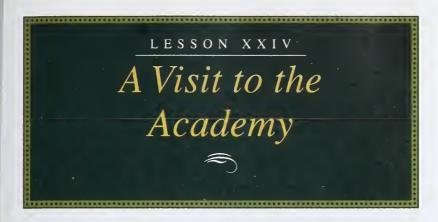
Crescit eundo, *It grows by going (forward)* (motto of the state of New Mexico, from the Roman poet Lucretius).

Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam, circumspice, If you are seeking a pleasant peninsula, look about you (motto of the state of Michigan).

Find the Latin words for which the following abbreviations stand and their meanings: etc., et al., s.v., ult., prox., e.g., A.B., A.M., S.B., LL.D

This painting by Raphael (1483-1520), called **School** of **Athens**, shows Plato and Aristotle in a discussion surrounded by their followers, who listen intently to every word.





aepe Pūbliō et Fūriānō grātum erat per urbem Athēnās ambulāre et virōs maximae auctōritātis causās ōrantēs audīre. Saepe autem grātius vidēbātur urbem relinquere sēque ad locum pulchrum et quiētum, Acadēmiam, legendī grātiā recipere.

Quodam die eo tarde procedebant, libros carminum ferentes.

"Quot Rōmānī dignī per hanc ipsam viam ambulāvērunt!—-Rōmānī quī posteā clārissimī factī sunt," dīxit Pūblius. "Nōs quoque in studiīs dīligentēs sīmus ut clārī fīāmus—tū ut dux īnsignis fīās, ego ōrātor."

Nunc inter arborēs Acadēmiae stābant. Hae erant novae sed iam altae.

"Quā magnitūdine arborēs fīunt!" Pūblius dīxit. "Audīvī quōsdam 10 Athēniēnsēs dīcere hās paucīs annīs tam altās quam illās antīquās futūrās esse. Nam Sulla, quī illās cecīdit ut ē māteriā īnstrūmenta bellī fierent, rēs pulchrās contempsit. Statuās quidem ē Graeciā tulit; hoc autem fēcit ut magnam praedam in urbem Rōmam referret."

Nunc sub arbore altā librōs quōs sēcum tulerant legunt. Tum Fūriānus 15 dīxit, "Mihi grātissimum est ad hunc locum venīre carminum Horātī legendōrum causā, quod hīc Horātius ipse carmina legēbat et scrībēbat. Horātius, quī vir corpore parvō et rotundō erat, bellō erat inimīcus—Sullae dissimillimus. Nūntiō bellī allātō, nōn perturbātus est. Brūtus<sub>1</sub> sōlus eum permovēre potuit (saepe mīror quō modō) ut tribūnus mīlitāris fieret et ad 20 bellum proficīscerētur. Brūtō et Cassiō ad urbem Philippōs victīs, Horātiō scūtum relinquendum fuit (memoriāne tenēs?) ipseque fūgit. Posteā ab Augustō, contrā quem arma tulerat, amīcus dēlēctus est, et nōtissimus poēta factus est."

"Hīc saepe dē philosophīs admoneor," dīxit Pūblius; "de Platōne, quī prī- 25 mus hīc docuit; dē Aristotele, quī rēgem Alexandrum īnstituit; dē Carneade, quī nunc prō iūstitiā, nunc contrā eam, verba īnsignia facere potuit."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Brutus, together with Cassius and others, had killed Caesar and fled from Rome, pursued by Antony, Caesar's friend, and Octavian, Caesar's nephew, later called Augustus.

Subitō accessērunt duo Graecī. Ab hīs certiōrēs factī rhētorem clārum causam in Agorā ōrātūrum esse et tempus adesse. Pūblius et Fūriānus 30 librōs celeriter volvērunt et nōn iam morātī ex Acadēmiā exiērunt.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Against whom did Horace fight?
- 2. How was Horace different from Sulla?
- 3. What did Sulla do in the Academy?

# Grammar Conjugation of Fīō

Faciō has no passive in the present, imperfect, or future tenses. To express *be made*, *be done*, *become* in these tenses, the Romans used the irregular verb, fīō, which, although it is for the most part active in form, has passive meanings:

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE	PRESENT	IMPERFECT
fīō	fīēbam	fīam	fĭam	fierem
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs	fīās	fieres
fit	fīēbat	fīet	fĭat	fieret
fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus	fīāmus	fieremus
fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis	fīātis	fieretis
fĭunt	fīēbant	fĭent	fĭant	fierent

The imperatives are regular: fī, fīte.

The verb fīō as well as some other passive forms, such as **appellor** (be called) and **dēligor** (be selected, chosen) are often used with a predicate noun or adjective.

Imperator fiet.
Dūcēs dēlectī sunt.
Anna appellor.

He will be made commander. They were chosen leaders. I am called Anna.

# TRANSLATION CO

- 1. Horace, who had borne arms against Augustus, became a noted poet.
- 2. "Let us strive to become men of the greatest influence," said Publius to Furianus.
- 3. "Leaving the city behind, let us retire to the Academy, carrying our books with us."
- 4. Sulla, who had come to Greece for the sake of waging war, carried back many beautiful things.

1. The perfect
tenses of facio
are regular in the
passive: factus
sum, factus
eram, etc.
2. The gerundive
and the gerund are
also formed from
facio: faciendus.

-a, -um; faciendī.

3. Compounds

of facio, such

conficuer,

126

effici (tc.

as conficio and

efficio, form the

passine regularly:

# 

#### **Nouns**

aditus, -ūs, ni. approach,

access

carmen, -minis,

n. song, poem

contumēlia, -ae, f. insult

magnitūdō, -dinis,

(magnitude)

f. greatness, size

scūtum, -ī, n. shield tribūnus, -ī, m. tribune (escudo, escutcheon) (tribunal, tribunate)

(contumelious, contumely)

Adjectives

dīligēns, (gen.) -entis, careful

quot, how many; as (many as)

(diligence, diligent)
(quote, quotient)

(admonish, admonition)

(indeclinable)

Verbs

admoneō, -ēre, admonuī, admonitus, remind, advise

dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus,

select

fīō, fierī, —, (factus), be made,

become: certior fio,

be informed

moror, 1, delay

perturbō, 1, disturb

roforā roforno nottulā

bring back

(fact, factitious)

(moratorium)

(perturb, perturbation)

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, (refer, referendum)

Adverb

eō, there

# **Word Studies**

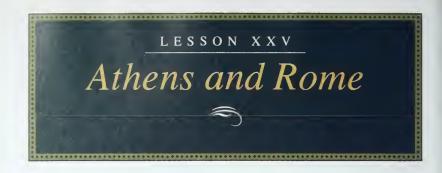
For the meaning and use of **circum**– (*circum*–) and **super**– (*super*–, *sur*–), see the Appendix. Define according to the prefix: *circumscribe*, *circumference*, *circuit*, *supervise*, *survive*.

Prefixes often have intensive force: this is especially true of con-, ex-, ob-, per-: conficio, "do up," do thoroughly: efficio, make out, complete: occido, cut up, kill; perficio, do through and through, finish. Define according to the intensive use of the prefix: complement, commotion, conserve, experience, emotion, extensive, obtain, persist, permanent.

Explain fiat, gradual, inquisitive, interrogation, littoral, perturbation, progressive.



Sulla, after defeating Mithradates VI of Anatolia, returned to Rome. Supported by the aristocratic families in Rome, he took over the government and succeeded in making himself dictator from 82-81 B.C. There were many massacres that followed. After serving as consul from 81-80 B.C., he retired.



from each other

2 sewers

inger the more disagreeable things

5 whether

ūriānus patrī s. p. d. Quaeris quibus modīs Rōma et Athēnae inter sē¹ differant et utram urbem magis amem. Mihi quidem respondēre difficile est. Rōma patria mea est et ob eam rem mihi cārissima est. Num vīs mē Rōmam et Rōmānōs accūsāre? Iam dē aedificiīs amplissimīs quae 5 hīc vīdimus scrīpsī. Sed Rōma quoque aedificia pulchra habet. Viae Rōmānae certē meliōrēs sunt. Omnia sordidiōra hīc sunt—viae, aedificia prīvāta, hominēs. Nūllae cloācae² sunt. Aliquis Rōmānus hūc mittendus est ad cloācās faciendās. Aqua ita mala est ut multī pereant. Nōnne vult aliquis Rōmānus aquaeductum hīc facere?₁ Cum autem Acropolim cōnspiciō, tum haec urbs 10 pulcherrima omnium esse vidētur, neque iam³ peiōra⁴ memoriā teneō.

Haec dē urbe ipsā; nunc dē populō quaedam dīcere volō. Concēdō Graecōs multās virtūtēs habēre, sed hae nōn sunt virtūtēs Rōmānae. Nostrī sunt fortēs atque prūdentēs, maximē labōrant et optimē regunt. Graecī autem optimī philosophī, rhētorēs, poētae, medicī sunt et optima templa pulcher-15 rimāsque statuās faciunt.

Multōs amīcōs Graecōs habeō; itaque nōlō omnēs Graecōs accūsāre. Sed Rōmānī mihi cāriōrēs sunt. Perfidia Graecōrum nōta est; quamquam nōn negō Graecōs loquī dē perfidiā Rōmānā. Interest utrum<sup>5</sup> Rōmānus an Graecus sīs. Ita omnēs populī aliōs contemnunt. Nōnne nōs loquimur etiam 20 dē Pūnicā perfidiā? Sed vērum est in tabernīs Graecīs fraudēs frequentiōrēs esse quam in Rōmānīs.

Etsī multī servī in Ītaliā sunt, numquam tot servōs vīdī quot in hāc urbe. Omnia ā servīs fīunt; cīvēs enim ipsī nōn labōrant.

Maximē autem condiciō mulierum differt. Mulierēs Graecae non habent 25 eandem lībertātem quam Romānae. Apud nos mātronae in honore sunt, sed non hīc. Virī volunt uxorēs nihil vidēre, nihil audīre, nihil quaerere. Sed tamen puellae quās vīdī pulchrae fuērunt.

This was actually done later at the Emperor Hadrian's expense.



Like the Romans, Greek women went to a community well to bring water back home. Publius and Furianus, however, thought the quality of the Greek water was not up to Roman standards.

- Walter Colonial Col

# QUESTIONS

- 1. Did the Greeks or the Romans have better roads? Why?
- 2. Did Rome or Athens have a better water supply? Why?
- 3. Which city had better doctors? Which had more slaves? Why?

# Grammar -



# Conjugation of Volō and Nōlō

The present indicative and subjunctive of both  $vol\bar{o}$  and  $n\bar{o}l\bar{o}$  are irregular. The other tenses are formed regularly. There is no passive.

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUB	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		
volō	nōlō	velim	nōlim		
vīs	nōn vīs	velīs	nōlīs		
vult	nōn vult	velit	nōlit		
volumus	nōlumus	velīmus	nōlīmus		
vultis	nōn vultis	velītis	nōlītis		
volunt	nōlunt	velint	nōlint		

Although volō has no imperative, the imperative of nōlō plus the present infinitive is used to form negative commands in Latin.

Nölī eō īre. Nölīte eī audīre. Do not go there!

Don't listen to him!

### ORAL PRACTICE

- 1. Give the second singular of **volo** and the third plural of **nolo** in all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive.
- 2. Conjugate the following verbs in all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive. giving the first singular of the first verb, the second singular of the second verb, etc.: prōgredior, sum, ferō, fīō, possum, eō.



- 1. Do you wish to know which city (of the two) I like more?
- 2. It is very difficult for me to say, because they are so unlike.
- 3. I don't wish to criticize the Greeks, but they do not seem to be willing to work.
- 4. I have always been willing, however, to say that the Greeks excel us in all the arts.



Roman married women enjoyed far more liberty than did their Greek counterparts. Roman men thought very highly of their wives and many wives acted as their husbands' advisors.

# 

### **Nouns**

mulier, mulieris, f. woman (muliebrity)

perfidia, -ae, f. treachery (perfidious, perfidy)

# Adjectives

prūdēns, (gen.) prūdentis, (prudent, prudential)

sensible

uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)

# Verbs

differo, differre, distuli, dilātus, (difference, differential)

differ

interest, it makes a difference

nölö, nölle, nölui, —, not want (nolo contendere) (volition, volitive) volō, velle, voluī, —, want, wish

# Adverbs

hīc, here (hic jacet)

hūc, to this side, here num, introduces question expecting negative answer

sīc, so, thus

# Conjunctions

an, or num, whether

quamquam, although

# **Word Studies**

per se, by itself

bona fide, in good faith

in re, in the matter (of)

nolens volens, willy-nilly

Deo volente, God willing

me iudice, in my judgment

Pax vobiscum, Peace (be) with you!

sui generis, of its own kind, i.e., unique

sine die, without a day (being set); used for adjournment by a parliamentary body

Fiat panis, Let there be bread; motto of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.



andem dies aderat quo, studis perfectis, Athenae Publio Furianoque relinquendae erant.

"Illīs invideō quī nunc in Graeciā, nunc in Ītaliā habitant," dīxit Fūriānus, volēns Rōmam vidēre, nōlēns tamen Athēnās dēserere.

5 Certiōrēs autem ā mercātōre factī viās bonās esse, sibi persuāsērunt ut sine morā proficīscerentur. Nūntiō allātō latrōnēs viātōribus nocēre, servīs armātīs ut praesidiō impedīmentīs essent, per Graeciam iter fēcērunt. Marī quiētō, in portum Brundisī sine cāsū nāvigāvērunt, et ibi duōs diēs mānsērunt, quod quaedam vidēre volēbant: locum ubi Augustus nōmen 10 Caesaris accēperat, et aedificium in quō Vergilius mortuus erat postquam ē Graeciā rediit. Hoc tam grātum Pūbliō erat ut discēdere nōllet. Fūriānus autem dīxit, "Nōnne dēsīderās quam prīmum domum tuam vidēre?"

"Dēsīderō!", respondit Pūblius. Itaque quam celerrimē profectī sunt.

Magnum erat gaudium familiae Caeciliae, adulēscentibus duōbus dēfes15 sīs vesperī reversīs. Sōle oriente, clientēs vēnērunt, et paene tōtum diem 
ātrium clientibus et amīcīs salūtem dīcentibus complētum est. Posteā 
Caeciliī ad Campum Mārtium in pulchrās thermās Agrippae iērunt. Ibi 
cum aliīs amīcīs locūtī. sē exercuērunt et lāvērunt.

Proximō diē, rogātus quid facere vellet, Pūblius dīxit sē velle in Circum 20 īre. Pater respondit nōn circēnsēs lūdōs, sed scaenicōs eō diē darī; quendam poētam quoque carmina sua lēctūrum esse. Pūblius dīxit sē nōlle istum poētam ignōtum audīre: lūdōs autem scaenicōs sibi placēre et eōs vidēre velle.

Fābula, ā Plautō dē lārvīs scrīpta, grāta erat. Tum pantomīmus¹ victōriās 25 Augustī exprimēns tam bene saltāvit ut populus alacer clāmāret, ad pantomīmum curreret, pecūniam iaceret. Etiam Augustus eī corōnam dedit, quam accipere maximō honōrī pantomīmō erat. Lūdīs perfectīs, omnēs per Forum reversī sunt.

<sup>1</sup> pantomime, ballet dancer

Yes was often expressed in conversation by repeating the verb.



C. M. Dixon

Pūblius et Fūriānus nunc vītam cīvium Rōmānōrum iniērunt. Pūblius quaestor creatus est, perque totum cursum honorum îre parâvit. Fürianus, 30 The Romans loved the comedies tribūnus mīlitum factus, auxiliō ducī ab hostibus circumventō missus est, sēque tam fortiter gessit ut lēgātus fieret. Itaque et Pūblius et Fūriānus vītā suā magnam auctōritātem familiae Caeciliae et servāvērunt et auxērunt.

Mosaic by Dioskorides of Samos showing masked actors in a play. of Plautus, which were enjoyed by the plebeians as well as the patricians.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. Whom did Furianus envy?
- 2. To whom did Augustus give a wreath?
- 3. What did Publius and Furianus do after their return to Rome?



# The Dative with Special Verbs

With some verbs, such as impero, permitto, and persuadeo, an indirect personal object (dative) is used in addition to a subordinate ut clause as a direct object. The ut clause is in the subjunctive following the sequence of tenses.

Eī imperō ut urbem circumveniat.

Eīs persuāsimus ut hīc manērent.

I order him to surround the city.

We persuaded them to remain here.

A few other verbs are followed by the dative, but not by an ut clause. These verbs include invideo, noceo, and placeo.

Saxa līberīs nocuērunt. Voluērunt nōbīs placēre. The rocks injured the children.
They wished to please us.

# The Datives of Reference and Purpose

First, the dative case alone, like several other constructions you have seen, can be used to express purpose.

Locum scholae dēlēgit.

He chose a place for the school.

The dative of reference is used to indicate the person concerned or referred to.

Līberī bonī mihi esse volunt. The children want to be good for me.

These two functions of the dative, when used together, are often called the double dative. This often happens after a form of **sum**.

Mīlitēs praesidiō urbī erant.

The soldiers served as a

garrison to the city.

Puella auxiliō matrī erat.

The girl was a help to her

mother.



- 1. They were informed that bandits were molesting travelers.
- 2. Furianus, however, persuaded Publius to start as soon as possible.
- 3. They armed the slaves as a protection for themselves and the baggage.
- 4. It was pleasing to them to see home again, and they said that they wanted to make the journey as swiftly as possible.

# 

### **Nouns**

cāsus, -ūs, m. chance, (case, casual)

misfortune

lēgātus, -ī, m. envoy, general (legate, legation)

poēta, -ae, m. poet (poetic, poetry)

quaestor, -ōris, m. quaestor,

treasury official

# Verbs

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, (circumvent)

-ventus, surround

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus,

surrender

**dēsīdero**, 1, long for (desirable, desire)

ineō, inīre, iniī, initūrus, (initial)

enter upon

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, (nocent, nocuous)

do harm to, injure

perfero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus,

endure

persuadeo, -ere, -suasi, (persuasion, persuasive)

-suāsūrus, persuade

placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitūrus, (placate, placater)

please

revertō, -ere, revertī, reversus, (reversion, revert)

(sometimes deponent) turn back, return

### **Word Studies**

For the meaning and use of  $-t\bar{u}d\bar{o}$  (-tude), -mentum (-ment),  $-\bar{u}ra$  (-ure),  $-faci\bar{o}$ ,  $-fic\bar{o}$  (-fy), see the Appendix. Give the English forms of multit $\bar{u}d\bar{o}$ , servit $\bar{u}d\bar{o}$ , argūmentum, agricult $\bar{u}ra$ , pict $\bar{u}ra$ .

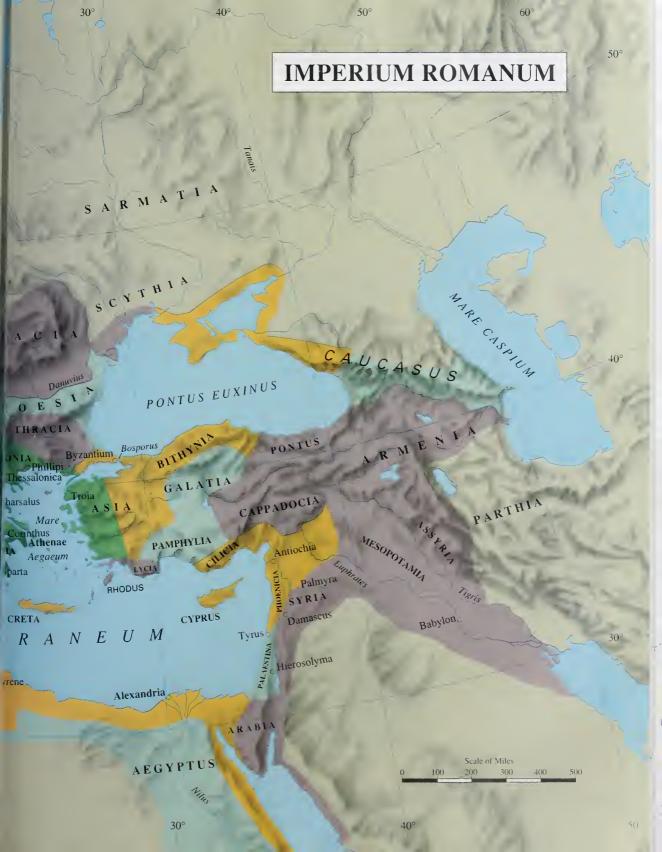
What must be the Latin words from which are derived *altitude*, *solitude*, *instrument*, *moment*, *conjecture*?

Give three other examples of each of the above suffixes in English words.

Explain casualty, circumvent, imprudence, initiative, innocent, legation.

From your knowledge of the basic verbs, assign a meaning to these Latin nouns: arbitrātus, cāsus, cōnsēnsus, cursus, flētus, gressus, habitus, impulsus, ingressus, intellēctus, monitus, reditus, status.





# Our Heritage

# GREEKS AND ROMANS

Although we may sometimes think of the civilizations of the Greeks and Romans as identical, the Roman people differed in many respects from the Greeks. The languages of the two peoples were about as different as French and German today.

The Greek cities and states retained their independence for a long time and each contributed to Greek civilization, although Athens played a more prominent part than the rest. The Greeks excelled in philosophy, science, mathematics, art, and literature.

The Greeks developed their civilization earlier than the Romans. The fifth and fourth centuries B.C. mark the high point of Athenian culture. At that time Rome was still a struggling small town, but gradually it extended its influence, first over Italy, then over the rest of what was then the civilized world. The Romans were a practical people, with a genius for both law and government.

The earliest important contact of the Romans with Greek culture was an indirect one, through the Etruscans. This mysterious people who lived north of Rome borrowed a number of things from the Greeks, such as the alphabet, forms of architecture, and some religious practices, and transmitted them to the Romans. Later the Romans met Greek culture directly as they moved south to the Greek colonies in Italy and Sicily. In the second century B.C. Greece itself came under Roman rule which directly inspired the influence of Greek culture and customs. The poet Horace noted: Graecia capta ferum victorem cepit et artes Intulit agrestī Latio...

Though Greece was defeated by Roman arms, uncivilized Rome was conquered by Greek art. The Romans began to develop art and literature in imitation of the Greek but usually added the stamp of their own individuality. So Vergil, inspired by Homer, produced a masterpiece quite like Homer's. Greek architecture was imitated, but one can always tell a Roman building from a Greek building. The Romans generally preferred the Corinthian style and, unlike the Greeks, often placed their temples and other buildings on a high base. The round temple with dome is distinctly Roman. Greek sculpture attained a beauty never since equaled, but the Romans excelled in making realistic portrait statues. The Greeks were superior in mathematics, especially geometry (the name of their greatest geometrician, Euclid, still is a synonym

for geometry); the Romans developed applied mathematics, such as surveying and engineering.

For a thousand years after the fall of the Roman Empire, Greek thought and art were preserved in western Europe only through Latin literature and tradition. The civilization of western Europe, and therefore of the United States, was developed from this Roman tradition, with its Greek borrowings. Just as the Romans had been inspired by Greek culture, so now the world was imbued with the Greco-Roman. Then, through the interest created by the praise of Greek literature found in the works of Roman writers, Greek began to be studied again during the Renaissance and the world supplemented its huge Roman inheritance by direct borrowing from the Greeks.



An Etruscan tomb painting at Tarquinia depicts a lyre player. Notice the two birds in the tree at the left, charmed by the music of the player.

Nimatallah/Art Resource, NY

So it has come about that two such different peoples as the Greeks and Romans have, through Roman hospitality to Greek ideas, transmitted to us a joint Greco-Roman civilization. But it must be said that without Rome, Greek culture might not have been preserved at all or at least the modern world would not have been prepared to appreciate and welcome it.

Vergil, the great poet who describes Rome's ideals, stated that others (meaning the Greeks) were better sculptors, orators, astronomers, but:

Tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō. Hae tibi erunt artēs pācīque impōnere mōrem, parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.



### QUESTIONS

- 1. What do we owe to the Greeks? To the Romans?
- 2. Which modern nations are more like the Greeks than the Romans? Which are more like the Romans?

The Greek Temple of Neptune (Hera) at Paestum, in southern Italy. It is the best preserved and most handsome of the Doric temples. It was built in the 5th century B.C.



J Sheridan/Ancient Art & Archi

# Unit II Review LESSONS X-XXVI



# A Latin Play

# Bulla concentration

### Personae

Aelia, parva puella Rōmāna

Lāneis, serva

Q. Aelius Frontō, Rōmānus, pater Aeliae

LOCUS: In oppidō Paestō, ante templum. (Ē dextrā parte accēdunt

Frontō, Aelia, Lāneis.)

Lāneis: Aelia! Bulla tua aurea! Eam nōn videō. Estne āmissa?

AELIA: Ecce! Non āmissa est—sub tunicā est.

LĀNEIS: Quam¹ terrēbar! Necesse est tē eam semper dīligenter servāre, 5¹ how quod tē ē malīs servābit.

FRONTŌ: Hoc est templum: Aelia, volō tē cum Lāneide hīc remanēre. Ego deōs ōrābō ut nōbīs iter fēlīx dent. Lāneis, manē cum Aeliā, quod magna perīcula adsunt.

LĀNEIS: Ita, ita. Manēbō. (Frontō in templum it.)

AELIA: Quandō domum² ībimus, Lāneis?

LĀNEIS: Quandō deī iter fēlīx nōbīs dare volent. Nōnne autem Paestum pulchrum oppidum est? Nōnne Titūrius, hospes patris tuī, nōbīs in hōc oppidō manentibus semper bonus est?

AELIA: Ita; et Titūrium maximē amō, sed—

LĀNEIS: Multōs servōs habet—labor meus hīc levis est. Nōnne vīs labōrem Lāneidis tuae levem esse?

AELIA: Sed mātrem vidēre volō. Iam diū eam nōn videō. (Ante templum nunc cōnsīdunt.)

LĀNEIS: Quam calidus est diēs! Confecta sum.

AELIA: Lāneis, quandō pater sciet iter fēlīx futūrum esse?

LĀNEIS: Quandō ōmina bona erunt.

AELIA: Ōh! (Lāneis dormīre parat.) Lāneis, nōnne cupis Rōmam rūrsus vidēre?

LĀNEIS: Quid? Ita, ita.

10

15

20

# Unit II Review LESSONS X-XXVI

# CANALAR TORING T

AELIA: Multa agam. Prīmum mātrī salūtem dīcam. Tum omnibus amīcīs multa dē Paestō, dē Titūriō. dē itinere nārrābō. Nūlla ex amīcīs meīs iter tam longum fēcit. Quam mē mīrābuntur! (Lāneis nunc dormit.) Tum omnia illa dōna quae prō amīcīs ēmī eīs dabō—bene erit. (Ē sinistrā parte 30 accēdunt Damyx et Thoa.)

DAMYX: Vidēsne illam?

AELIA: Per viās ībō, et omnia aedificia nova spectābō.

THOA: Pulchra est. Et callida vidētur. Eam rapiāmus.

AELIA: Prō pūpīs³ meīs novās vestēs faciam.—

35 DAMYX: Cum magnā autem cūrā agere dēbēmus. Serva adest.

THOA: Illa dormit. (Aelia Thoam et Damycem videt. Prōcēdit ut eās spectet.)

DAMYX: Puella pulchra es. Nonne vis nobiscum ambulare? Multa gratissima tibi monstrabimus.

40 AELIA: Nolo. Pater iussit mē hīc remanēre.

THOA: Oho! Bona puella es. Nōs autem nōn longē prōcēdēmus. Brevī tempore revertēmur. Praetereā dōnum pulchrum dabimus.

AELIA: Non ībo.

DAMYX: (Thoae): Quid faciemus?

45 THOA: (Aeliae): Sī nōbīscum veniēs, tē multa grāta docēbimus.

Servants not only ran the household but helped and protected their masters. The servant on the left is pouring liquid in a bowl for her mistress. The servant on the far right brings a tray of food for her.



/Art Resource, NY

3 dolls

4 thieves



AELIA: Mäter mē multa docet. Quid vos mē docēre potestis?

THOA: Docēbimus quō modō magnam pecūniam sine labōre semper parāre possīs. Tum semper poteris emere omnia quae cupis.

trare possis. Fulli semper poteris emere omina qua

AELIA: Vōbīscum nōn ībō. Fūrēs<sup>4</sup> estis.

DAMYX: Non fūrēs, sed Furiae sumus. Audīsne? Sī nobīscum libenter 50 non ībis, tē īre cogēmus.

THOA: Et sī clāmābis, tē interficiēmus.

AELIA: Vos non timeo.

DAMYX: Quid?

AELIA: Furiae malae sunt, et malae rēs mihi nocēre nōn possunt. 55

THOA: Cūr?

AELIA: Ex omnibus malīs mē servat bulla. (Bullam monstrat.)

DAMYX: Ecce!

THOA: Aurea est. (Eōdem tempore et Damyx et Thoa bullam rapere cōnantur; inter sē pugnant.) 60

DAMYX ET THOA: Au—au! (Lāneis sē movet.)

THOA: S-st! Serva sē movet. Prehendēmur.

DAMYX: Fugiāmus. (In sinistram partem celeriter exeunt.)

LĀNEIS: Aelia!

AELIA: Adsum, Lāneis.

LÃNEIS: Paene dormiēbam. Calidissimus est diēs. (*Ē templō venit Frontō*.) FRONTŌ: Aelia! Lāneis! Ōmina optima sunt. Deī nōbīs iter fēlīx dant.

Hōc ipsō diē proficīscēmur.

AELIA: Bene, bene est.

FRONTŌ: Et quid agēbat Aelia mea?

70

AELIA: Duās Furiās vīdī. FRONTŌ ET LĀNEIS: Quid?

AELIA: Ita. Mē sēcum īre cupiēbant. Cōnābantur mihi nocēre. Malae erant—sed bulla mea mē servāvit.

FRONTŌ (parvā vōce): Quid dīcit, Lāneis?

7.

LĀNEIS (*parvā vōce*): Nihil est. Calidus diēs est, et puella cōnfecta dormiēbat. Haec in somnō vidēbat; nunc putat omnia vēra esse.

FRONTŌ: Intellegō. Prōcēdāmus, Aelia. Memoriam Furiārum dēpōnāmus, et nōs ad iter parēmus.

AELIA: Ita. Sed bullam meam semper amābō, quod haec mē ā Furiīs 80 dēfendit.

LĀNEIS: Rēctē. (Frontō et Lāneis rīdent. Exeunt omnēs in dextram partem.)





# Unit III Livy

In this painting by Jacques-Louis David (1748-1825), we see the contest between the Horatii and the Curiatii that decided the outcome of the war between the Romans and the Albans.



ivy was one of Rome's most famous historians. Living nearly 2000 years ago in the time of Augustus, the most glorious period in Roman literature, he wrote a history of Rome from its beginnings to his own time. The purpose of the work was to give Roman citizens a better appreciation of the courageous acts and the moral integrity that had brought Rome into world prominence.

The work was divided into 142 books. Of these only 35, including the first ten, still exist. On account of the great importance of the work for the history of Rome, it has always been the dream of historians to find the lost books.

The old Roman tales that Livy weaves into his early history of Rome may be mere legends, but they are, nonetheless, like the story of George Washington and the cherry tree, of great importance and interest and give a good insight into Roman character and ideals. One historian says of them:

If now we take a general view of this wonderful collection of legends, caring little whether the details be wholly or in part imaginary, but regarding the heroes and heroines as at least a gallery of moral types, we may gain a fair notion of the kind of greatness that carried Rome, the city of the Tiber, to the headship of the ancient world. It is simple enough. There is a plain devotion to duty, a disregard of personal inclinations, a pride that disdains submission, a constancy of the finest temper. There is a clear grasp of the object of the hour and a willingness to take the necessary steps... We are not dealing with a clever people, like the Greeks. Here there is no constellation of brilliant stars, but a succession of good citizens, able to cooperate and to obey, and preeminent among peoples ancient or modern in steadiness of nerve.

The stories in the following thirteen lessons are adapted chiefly from Livy. However, some parts are based on Eutropius, a writer in the fourth century A.D., who wrote a very brief history of Rome, in the early portion of which he used an abridged edition of Livy.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. Can you name any prominent citizens of the world today with qualities similar to those mentioned in the quotation?
- 2. What are some of the legends in our history that have become part of our historical tradition?



Livy, born Titus Livius in 64 B.C., wrote a history of Rome that was immediately recognized as a classic in his own time. He was an eyewitness to civil wars, the fall of the Republic, and the establishment of the Principate by Augustus, although his history only went up to 9 B.C. In all, there were 142 books, of which 35 exist. This rendition of the great historian was done in the 19th century.

The Bettmann Archive



ōmānum imperium ā Rōmulō initium habet, quī urbem parvam in Palātīnō cōnstituit. Cīvitāte conditā, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ēgit: multitūdinem fīnitimōrum in cīvitātem recēpit et centum ex seniōribus dēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit quod senēs erant. 5 Hōrum cōnsiliō omnia ēgit.

Post mortem Rōmulī Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī nūllam partem quidem Rōmae adiēcit, sed nōn minus cīvitātem quam Rōmulus iūvit; nam lēgēs mōrēsque Rōmānīs cōnstituit, quī cōnsuētūdine¹ proeliōrum ā fīnitimīs sēmibarbarī putābantur. Annum dīvīsit in decem mēnsēs et multa sacra ac 10 templa Rōmae² cōnstituit.

Huic successit Tullus Hostīlius. Hōc rēge, Rōmānī cum Albānīs bellum gerēbant. Forte in duōbus exercitibus erant trigeminī<sup>3</sup> frātrēs et aetāte et vīribus parēs. Horātiī erant Rōmānī; Cūriātiī, Albānī. Cum hīs agunt<sup>4</sup> rēgēs, ut hī sōlī prō suā patriā exercitūque pugnent.

Tempore constituto, arma capiunt. Duo Romani, vulneratis tribus Albanis, interfecti sunt. Forte tertius Romanus integer fuit; tribus Cūriātiis solus non par erat, sed contra singulos ferox. Itaque, ut cum singulis pugnāret, fūgit. Tum respiciens videt eos magnīs intervallis sequentes; ūnus non multo abest. In eum magno impetū rediit; et dum Albanus exercitus clamat Cūriātiīs, ut opem ferant frātrī, iam Horatius, caeso hoste, secundam pugnam petēbat et alterum Cūriātium interficit. Iamque singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs. Tertio Cūriātio quoque interfecto, Romanī cum gaudio Horatium accipiunt.

Horātī soror spōnsa ūnī ex Cūriātiīs erat. Cum Horātius ad urbem 25 accēderet, soror eum vīdit gerentem palūdāmentum<sup>6</sup> Cūriātī quod ipsa cōnfēcerat. Eam flentem<sup>7</sup> frāter interfēcit. "Abī<sup>8</sup> ad spōnsum," inquit, "oblīta<sup>9</sup> frātrum mortuōrum vīvīque,<sup>10</sup> oblīta patriae. Sīc eat quaecumque Rōmāna<sup>11</sup> lūgēbit hostem."

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> because of their habit of battles (fighting)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> at Rome

<sup>3</sup> triplet

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> arranged

<sup>5</sup> far

<sup>6</sup> cloak

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> because she wept

<sup>\*</sup> Go

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> having forgotten, with genitive <sup>10</sup> your one living brother refers

to himself:

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>11</sup> So may every Roman woman go (to her death) who

indirect object of clamat

from supersum



PHOTRI/J. A. Cash

### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who was killed first in the battle of the Horatii?
- 2. Who was wounded first?
- 3. Under what king did the Horatii fight?
- 4. How would you apply the Latin motto "Dīvide et imperā" to the story of the Horatii?

The story of the founding of Rome by Romulus was spread throughout the Roman empire. This reproduction of the famous Etruscan statue of the she-wolf is in Spain. Romulus was the first of the seven kings of Rome.

# 

# The Dative with Compounds

You have seen that many important verbs are compounded by adding a prefix. Very often, the compounded verb changes its meaning and is followed by the dative. The English equivalent frequently calls for *to* or *for*. The most common prefixes are:

ad	circum	in	ob	prae	sub
ante	cum	inter	post	prō	super

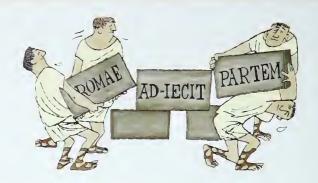
If the uncompounded form of the verb is transitive, the compounded form can be followed by both a dative and an accusative.

Huic successit Tullus Hostīlius.

Nüllam partem Römae adiēcit.

Tullus Hostilius succeeded him.

He added no part to Rome.





- 1. Whom did Tullus Hostilius succeed?
- 2. After killing two Albans, Horatius approached the third.
- 3. Numa added no hill to Rome, but he gave the Romans laws.
- 4. Numa divided the year into months and established many customs.

# 

# Nouns

cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, f. custom

fors, fortis, f. chance

initium, -tī, n. beginning

intervāllum, -ī, n. distance mōs, mōris, m. custom; (pl.)

character

spōnsa, -ae, f. a betrothed woman

spōnsus, -ī, m. a betrothed man

(customary, customize)

(fortuity, fortune)

(initial, initiate)

(interval)

(mores)

(sponsor) (sponsor)

# Adjectives

 ${\tt fer\bar{o}x, fer\bar{o}cis \, (gen.), \it bold, fierce}$ 

(ferocious, ferocity)

finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring; (as a noun) neighbor

integer, -gra, -grum, untouched,

(integrate, integrity)

fresh, unharmed

ilvus. -a, -um, living

(vivarium)

# Verbs

adiciō, -ere, adiēcī, (adjective, adjectival)

adiectus, add

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, aid

**sequor**, **sequi**, **secūtus**, *follow* (sequel, sequence)

 $succ\bar{e}d\bar{o}, \, \text{-ere}, \, \text{-cess}\bar{i}, \, \text{-cess}\bar{u}rus, \quad (\text{succedent}, \, \text{success})$ 

succeed

vulnerō, 1, wound (vulnerable)

# **Word Studies**

There are many interesting derivatives of **sequor**. From it was derived **secundus**, English "second," whose chief meaning therefore is *following*. Its use as a measure of time arose thus: **hōra** means *hour*; **hōra minūta** means a *diminished hour*, or "minute" (from **minuō**, *make less*, which comes in turn from **minus**); **hōra minūta secunda** means a *seconddegree minute*, or smaller division of a minute. The "sequence" of tenses refers to the way one verb *follows* another in the use of a tense. A "suit" of clothes is one which the various pieces *follow* or match one another. A "suite" of rooms consists of several rooms *following* one another, i.e., one after the other. What is a "suitor"? An "executive"? A "prosecutor"?



SUITOR



1 noun

ost Hostīlium Ancus Mārtius suscēpit imperium, tum Prīscus Tarquinius. Circum¹ Rōmae aedificāvit. Lūdōs Rōmānōs īnstituit. Vīcit īdem Sabīnōs. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās. Capitōlium aedificāvit.

Eō tempore rēs mīra accidit. Servius Tullius puer erat rēgis servus. In 5 capite huius puerī dormientis flamma appāruit multōrum in cōnspectū. Cum quīdam aquam ad exstinguendum ferret, ab rēgīnā retentus est, quae movērī vetuit puerum. Tum cum somnō etiam flamma abiit. Tum rēgīna rēgī sēcrētō "Vidēsne, Tarquinī," inquit, "hunc puerum tam humilem? Hic lūmen rēgnō nostrō erit praesidiumque nōbīs; eī amīcī sīmus et bonīs art-10 ibus īnstituāmus." Hōc factō, puer fit vir īnsignis. Cum marītus quaererētur fīliae Tarquinī, nēmō Rōmānus cum Tulliō cōnferrī potuit, rēxque eī sē fīliam suam spondēre mālle dīxit. Post mortem Tarquinī Servius, quī servus fuerat, rēx factus est.

Tullius montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Vīminālem, Ēsquilīnum, urbī adiūnxit; 15 fossās circum mūrum dūxit. Prīmus<sup>3</sup> omnium cēnsum habuit, quī adhūc per orbem terrārum non cognitus erat. Sub eo Roma, omnibus in cēnsum dēlātīs, 4 habuit LXXXIIII mīlia cīvium.

L. Tarquinius Superbus, fīlius Prīscī Tarquinī, Tullium occīdit et Rōmae rēgnāvit. Cum fīlius eius nōbilissimam mātrōnam Lucrētiam iniūriā affēcis-20 set, eaque dē iniūriā marītō et patrī et amīcīs dīxisset, in omnium cōnspectū Lucrētia sē occīdit. Propter quam causam L. Iūnius Brūtus populum contrā Tarquinium incitāvit. Posteā exercitus quoque eum relīquit. Cum imperāvisset annōs XXV, cum uxōre et līberīs suīs fūgit. Septem rēgēs CCXXXXIIII annōs rēgnāverant. Mors fortis mulieris cīvitātem līberāvit, nam post hoc 25 duo cōnsulēs, quī singulōs annōs imperium habuērunt, ā populō creātī sunt.

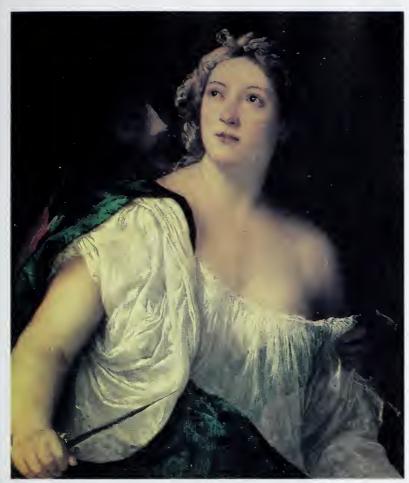
### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who was the fifth king?
- 2. How many kings did Rome have?
- 3. Who was the father of Tarquin the Proud?
- 4. Who was the son in law of Tarquin the Elder?

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> let us train (him) in good arts

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> He was the first of all to

<sup>4</sup> enrolled



This painting by Tiziano shows the noble Roman matron Lucretia and Tarquin. Tarquin was the last of the seven kings to rule Rome. He was expelled by the Senate after his son, Sextus, raped the beautiful and virtuous Lucretia. The overthrow of Tarquin led to the establishment of the Republic.

Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY

# Grammar Common C

# The Conjugation of Mālō

The irregular verb  $m\bar{a}l\bar{o}$ , prefer, has the same irregularities are  $vol\bar{o}$ . The present infinitive is  $m\bar{a}lle$ .

mālint		

## The Locative Case

As you know, to express "place where" in Latin, you use in plus the ablative. However, with the names of cities, towns, small islands, domus (home), and rus (country), "place where" is expressed using the locative case. The endings for the locative are the same as the genitive for first and second declension nouns in the singular, and the same as the ablative for the third declension and all nouns in the plural. The locative of rus is rūrī.

There are no locatives in the fourth or fifth declension.

Rōmae domī sunt. Pūblius Athēnīs erat. In Ītaliā rūrī mansērunt. They are at home in Rome.
Publius was in Athens.
They stayed in Italy in the country.

# Review: Cum Clauses

Review cum clauses in Lesson XVI and find those used in the reading.



- 1. "Dear Servius," the gueen said, "we prefer to be your friends."
- 2. The power of the state was given to the boy when the king had died.
- 3. When the flame appeared on the boy's head, the king adopted him.
- 4. When he had ruled many years, he lost his power on account of his own son.

Scala/Art Resource, NY



Walls and trenches were typically built to help defend a settlement from outsiders. This picture shows part of the reconstructed wall around the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

# 

### **Nouns**

cloāca, -ae, f. sewer
cōnspectus, -ūs, m. sight
flamma, -ae, f. flame
fossa, -ae, f. trench
lūmen, lūminis, n. light,
lamp, glory, eye
marītus, -ī, m. husband
mūrus, -ī, m. wall
orbis, -is, m. circle, world

(flammability, flammable) (fossil) (luminary, luminous)

(marital)
(mural)
(orb, orbicular)

The Cloaca Maxima was the greatest of the sewers and drains built by the Tarquins in the 6th century B.C. to drain Rome's marshlands. Though rebuilt many times, it remains in use to this day.

# Verbs

adiungō, -ere, adiūnxī, adiunctus, join to aedifico. 1. build (edifice, edify) conferō, conferre, contuli, (confer. conference) collatus, bring together, compare, give, place dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, (defer, deference) dēlātus, offer, enroll inquit, he/she says (never first word) mālō, mālle, māluī, —, prefer retineō, -ēre, retinuī, retentus, (retain, retention) hold back, restrain, keep vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid (veto)

# **Word Studies**

The prefix sēmi— means half or partly: sēmibarbarus, semibarbarous. Semiannual means occurring every half year.

The prefix **bi-** or **bis-** means *twice* or *two:* **biennium**, a period of two years (from **annus**). Distinguish carefully semiannual and biennial, semimonthly and bimonthly. **Bi-** is often found in chemical terms: bicarbonate, bichloride.

The prefix  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{n}$ -,  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{i}$ - (from  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{s}$ ) means *one: uniform*.

The prefix **multi-** (from **multus**) means *much*, *many*: *multiform*, *multi- graph*, *multimillionaire*.

Give three other examples of each of these prefixes.

Explain adjutant, fortuitous, initiate, successor, vulnerable.

# How Brutus Got His Name

1 slipping

<sup>2</sup> to Delphi

<sup>3</sup> with **ex**: on purpose

4 wait for, bide

<sup>5</sup> łaughingstock

6 to chance

<sup>7</sup> had another meaning (looked in another direction, literally)

ltera fābula dē Brūtō nunc nārranda est. Dum Tarquinius, ultimus rēgum Rōmānōrum, Iovis templum Rōmae aedificat, ōmen terribile vīsum est: anguis ex columnā ēlāpsus, rēgis pectus anxiīs cūrīs implēvit. Itaque duos fīlios Delphos<sup>2</sup> ad orāculum consulendum mīsit. 5 Comes eīs additus est L. Iūnius. Hic ex industriā<sup>3</sup> imitātus stultitiam, cum sē suaque praedae esse rēgī sineret, Brūtī, quoque non recūsāvit cognomen, ab Tarquiniō datum, ut sub eō cognōmine latēns, līberātor ille populī Rōmānī opperīrētur4 tempora sua. Is tum ab Tarquiniīs, fīliīs rēgis, ductus est Delphos, lūdibrium<sup>5</sup> vērius quam comes. Quo postquam vēnērunt, per-10 fectīs patris mandātīs, cupīdō incessit animōs iuvenum rogandī ad quem eorum regnum Romanum esset venturum. Ex înfimo vocem redditam audiunt: "Imperium summum Romae habebit qui vestrum primus, o iuvenēs, ōsculum mātrī dederit." Tarquiniī sortī<sup>6</sup> permittunt uter prior, cum ad patriam rediissent, mātri ōsculum daret. Brūtus aliō putāns spectāre<sup>7</sup> 15 võcem õrāculī, velut si prõlāpsus cecidisset, terram õsculõ contigit, quod ea commūnis māter omnium mortālium erat. Et sīc ēvēnit: post fugam Tarquinī et fīliörum suōrum, Brūtus imperium Rōmae obtinuit.

# QUESTIONS

- 1. What is the point of the story?
- 2. Who went to Delphi and why?
- 3. How did Junius get the name Brutus?

The name means stupid.



Boltin Picture Library

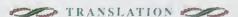
The sons of Tarquin went to consult the oracle at Delphi to learn the significance of the snake omen. The oracle often gave answers that were ambiguous so that no matter what the outcome, the prophesy was accurate. What happened when the Tarquins posed their question?

# Grammar Commonwell

# Review: Future Passive Participle and Gerund

Review the future passive participle, the gerund, and the dative of agent in Lessons XXI and XXIII.

Find all the examples of these in the reading.



- 1. Who did Brutus think was the mother of all people?
- 2. A temple had to be built at Rome by the citizens.
- 3. Brutus did not think that he had to fear<sub>2</sub> the king.
- 4. The two young men went to the oracle for the purpose of asking<sub>3</sub> which would be king.

<sup>2</sup> Use the passive.

<sup>3</sup> Use the gerund with ad or causā.

# 

### **Nouns**

anguis, -is, m., f. snake, serpent
cognōmen, -minis, n. surname
comes, -itis, m., f. companion
iuvenis, -is, m. young man (juvenile)
pectus, pectoris, n. breast, heart (pectoral)
stultitia, -ae, f. stupidity (stultification, stultify)

# **Adjectives**

ānxius, -a, -um, troubled (anxiety, anxious) terribilis, -e, frightful (terrible)

# **Verbs**

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, (contact, contagion)

touch

ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventūrus, (event, eventual)

turn out, happen

impleō, -ēre, implēvī,

implētus, fill

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, (latent)

hide, escape notice

sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, allow

# Adverb

velut, velutī, just as, as

# **Word Studies**

Comes (cum, īre) is one who "goes with" you; a companion (cum, pānis) is one who shares "bread with" you.

Explain additive, comity, contingency, elapse, juvenile, latent, narrative, osculatory, pectoral, ultimatum.

Statue of an Etruscan soldier lielping a wounded comrade. The Etruscans flourished in central Italy from the 8th to the 1st centuries B.C. They were well regarded for their seamanship and established a relationship with the Phoenicians in Carthage. Eventually, they were assimilated into the Roman population.



The Metropolitan Museum of Art, Rogers Fund, 1947. (47.11.3) Copyright © 1991 By The Metropolitan Museum of Art.

# LESSON X X XHow "Lefty" (Scaevola) Got His Name

arquinius, ut reciperet rēgnum, bellum Romānīs intulit, Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium ferente. Illō tempore Horātius Coclēs pontem dēfendit et Rōmam servāvit. Urbs tum obsidēbātur ā Porsenā, et frūmentī erat inopia. Sedendō¹ expugnātūrum sē urbem Porsena spērābat. Tum C. Mūcius in hostium castra īre constituit. Nē forte ā mīlitibus 5 Romānīs retraherētur, senātum adiit, "Trānsīre Tiberim," inquit, "patrēs,<sup>2</sup> et in castra hostium īre volō. Deīs iuvantibus, magnum in animō factum fīxum habeō." Probant patrēs. Abditō intrā vestem gladiō. proficīscitur. Ubi eō vēnit, in multitūdine hostium ad rēgis tribūnal3 constitit. Ibi stīpendium mīlitibus forte dabātur, et rēgis scrība,4 quī rēgī simillimus 10 9 Look you ōrnātū5 erat, multa agēbat, Mūcius Porsenam non cognoverat, neque rogāre volēbat, nē ipse aperīret quis esset; itaque scrībam, quem rēgem esse crēdidit, prō rēge occīdit. Deinde postquam per hostēs territōs gladiō viam sibi ipse fēcit, rēgis mīlitēs eum prehēnsum retrāxērunt. Ante tribūnal rēgis stāns, tum quoque in tanto perīculo timendus<sup>6</sup> magis quam 15 timēns, "Romānus sum," inquit, "cīvis; C. Mūcium mē vocant. Hostem occīdere voluī, sed morī sciō. Nec ego sõlus in tē7 hös animōs habeō. Nüllus exercitus timendus tibi, nüllum proelium timendum est; ünī tibi cum singulīs rēs erit."8 Tum rēx simul īrā commōtus perīculōque perterritus, ignem circumdarī iussit ut Mūcius īnsidiās statim explicāre cōgerētur. 20 Mūcius autem, "Ēn tibi," inquit, "ut sentiās quam¹0 vīle corpus sit eīs quī magnam glöriam vident," dextramque manum ignī ad sacrificium factō iniēcit. Rēx, tantam virtūtem mīrātus, Mūcium līberum dīmīsit. Huic Mūciō posteā, quod dextram manum āmīserat, nomen Scaevolae<sup>11</sup> datum est.

1 by remaining encamped

<sup>2</sup> senators

<sup>3</sup> tribunal, platform

4 secretary

5 dress

6 to be feared

7 toward you

8 the decision will be between you and individual (enemies)

10 how

11 Left-handed ("Leftv"); pronounced Sev'ola

# QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Mucius kill Porsena's secretary?
- 2. How did Mucius get the name Scaevola?
- 3. Why did Mucius want to cross the Tiber?
- 4. Why was there a crowd at the king's tribunal?

# Grammar Andrews

# The Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing

After verbs meaning *fear*, such as **timeo** and **vereor**, Latin uses the conjunction **ne** followed by the subjunctive to introduce a positive clause and **ut** to introduce a negative clause. Follow the normal sequence of tenses.

Timēmus ut veniat. Verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster adducerētur. We fear that he will not come. They feared that our army would be led against them.

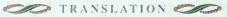
## Latin Sentence Structure

You may have noticed a striking difference between Latin and English sentence structure. In Latin, it is preferable to vary constructions by using participles, the ablative absolute, and various subordinate clauses. English tends to use coordinate or parallel constructions connected by *and*.

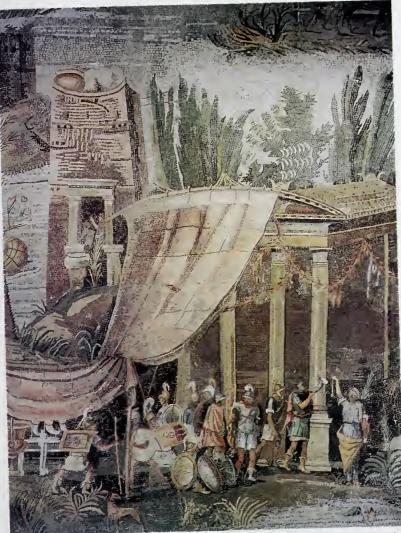
Mīlitēs eum prehēnsum retrāxērunt.

The soldiers caught him and pulled him back.

For this reason, it is important to pay attention to the sense of the whole sentence before trying to translate it, word for word, into good English. You may often have to add or delete words to make it flow better.



- 1. Mucius said that Rome was to be saved by him.
- 2. When Rome was being besieged, Mucius approached the senate.
- 3. He was to be feared by the enemy, for he had come to free Rome by fighting.
- 4. Do you fear that the slaves will not help you with the grain?



This detail of what is called the Nile Mosaic was discovered in the sanctuary of a temple dedicated to Fortuna in Praeneste, just east of Rome. It depicts a Roman garrison detachment on the Nile.

Prenestino Museum, Rome/E.T. Archives, London/SuperStock, Inc.

# Vocabulary -----

# Nouns

inopia, -ae, f. lack īnsidiae, -ārum, f. pl. plot, ambush põns, pontis, m. bridge stīpendium, -dī, n. pay

(insidious)

(pontoon) (stipend, stipendiary)

# Adjective

vīlis, -e, cheap, worthless

(vile, vilipend)

# Verbs

abdō, -ere, abdidī,

abditus, put away, hide

aperio, -īre, aperuī,

(aperture)

apertus, open, reveal

circumdō, -dare, -dedī,

-datus, put around

fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, fix

(fixate, fixture)

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus,

(infer, inference)

bring in, to, or against; inflict obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī,

(obsess, obsession)

obsessus, beseige

retrahō, -ere, retrāxī,

(retract, retractor)

retrāctus, drag back

vereor, verērī, veritus,

(revere, reverence)

fear, respect

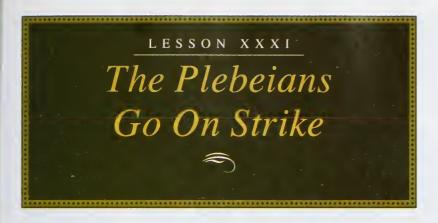
# Preposition

intrā (+acc.), within

(intragalactic, intramural)

# **Word Studies**

We have many silent consonants in English words. They cause trouble in spelling. In some cases the difficulty is cleared up by taking thought of the Latin original, for Latin has no silent letters. Compare the following, often misspelled: *debt* (dēbitus), *honor* (honor), *assign* (signum), *mortgage* (mortem), *receipt* (receptus). Can you find other instances?



aulō post rēgēs exāctōs¹ bellum cīvīle propter aes aliēnum² inter senātōrēs et plēbem oritur. Hōrum<sup>3</sup> multī dīxērunt sē in fīnibus hostium pro lībertāte et imperio pugnantēs ā cīvibus domī oppressos esse, tūtiōremque in bellō inter hostēs lībertātem plēbis esse quam in pāce inter cīvēs. Quīdam, quī Sabīnō bellō fortis mīles fuerat, "Mē absente," inquit, 5 7 for the stomach "ager vāstātus est, vīlla incēnsa, tribūtum imperātum. Aes aliēnum facere4 mē oportēbat. Posteā agrum āmīsī et ā crēditōribus in vincula coniectus sum." Hōc audītō, multitūdō postulāvit ut senātus vocārētur. Senātū convocātō, nūntiātur Volscōs ad urbem oppugnandam venīre. Omnēs, inimīcitiā dēpositā, pugnant, hostēsque vincuntur. Sed post bellum senātus nihil 10 dē plēbe ēgit. Tum aliud bellum oritur. Consules nomina cīvium legunt. Cum ad nomen nemo responderet, omnes dicunt libertatem reddendam esse priusquam arma danda,5 ut prō patriā cīvibusque, nōn prō dominīs pugnent. Dictātor plēbī meliōrem condicionem post bellum pollicitus est. Sed, bellö cönfectö, nihil äctum est.

Tum plēbs in Sacrum montem sēcessērunt. Hic mons trāns Anienem flūmen est tria ab urbe mīlia passuum. Patribus<sup>6</sup> placuit ad plēbem mittī Menēnium Agrippam. Is hoc nārrāvit:

"Olim reliquae partes corporis hūmānī īrātae erant quod suā cūrā, suō labore ventrī<sup>7</sup> omnia quaerēbantur, quī ipse nihil agēbat. Coniūrāvērunt nē 20 manūs ad ōs cibum ferrent, nec ōs acciperet, nec dentēs conficerent.8 Dum ventrem hoc modo vincere volunt, ipsa membra paene moriuntur. Inde appāret ventrem non magis alī quam alere." Cum Menēnius ostendisset quam<sup>9</sup> corporis discordia similis esset īrae plēbis, pāx facta est hāc condicione, ut tribūnī plēbis creārentur neque ūllī patrī<sup>10</sup> licēret eum magistrātum 25 capere. Tribūnī accēpērunt potestātem auxilī dandī; contrā consules.

<sup>1</sup> after the expulsion of the kings

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> another's money, i.e., debt

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> i.e., the plebeians

<sup>4</sup> go into debt

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> before arms are given (to them)

<sup>6</sup> senators

<sup>8 &</sup>quot;do up," i.e., chew up

<sup>9</sup> how

<sup>10</sup> patrician

They called the roll in the draft.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> 494 B.C. As **plēbs** is plural in thought, the plural verb is used.

<sup>3</sup> i.e., to a citizen who appealed to them



The Bettmann Archive

The Sabines were an ancient people who lived in the hills northeast of Rome. Tradition says that the abduction of the Sabine women, supposedly to provide wives for the followers of Romulus, may have developed to explain the Sabine population in Rome.

# QUESTIONS

- 1. How did the civil war start?
- 2. Where was the Sacred Mount?
- 3. Who was permitted to be a tribune?
- 4. What power did the tribunes have?

# Grammar ~



# Impersonal Verbs

Impersonal verbs are always used in the third person singular. They may have no subject or they may have a clause or an infinitive for a subject. Some impersonal verbs take special cases.

licet, it is permitted, takes the dative of the person

Mihi hoc facere licet.

It is permitted to me to do this. I may do this. placet, it is decided; it is pleasing, takes the dative

Mihi discēdere placet.

It is decided by me to leave.
I have decided to leave.
It is pleasing to me to leave.

oportet, it is necessary, takes the accusative

Mē hoc facere oportet.

It is necessary that I do this. I must (ought to) do this. NOTA·BEILE

Commence and the second second

Remember that necessity may also be expressed in two other ways: Hoc facere dēbeō. or Hoc mihi faciendum est.

......

# TRANSLATION

- 1. No senator will be allowed to oppress the common people.
- 2. It will not be necessary (for) them to demand better conditions.4
- 3. The citizens ought not to be seized and thrown into chains by creditors.4
- 4. It has been decided by the senate to make peace by promising certain conditions.

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection



The Roman Senate was the dominant branch of the government. It began with a membership of 300, then grew to 600 under Sulla, increased to 900 under Julius Caesar, and was reduced back to 600 by Augustus. Senators were primarily large landowners who were forbidden to engage in large-scale business.

<sup>4</sup> Translate in two ways.

# 

### **Nouns**

aes, aeris, n. bronze, money

dēns, dentis, m. tooth (dental, dentist) magistrātus, -ūs, (magistracy)

m. magistrate, office

ōs, ōris, n. mouth, face, (oral)

expression

plēbs, plēbis, f. common people

venter, -tris, m. belly,

stomach

vinculum, -ī, n. bond, chain

(plebeian, plebiscite)

(ventral, ventricle)

# Adjective

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

(tutelage, tutor)

# Verbs

alō, -ere, aluī, alitus, (alimony, coalition)

feed, nourish

coniūrō, 1, conspire (conjure)
licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, (illicit, licit)

it is permitted

oportet, -ēre, oportuit,

it is necessary

oppugnō. 1, attack (oppugn)

postulō, 1, demand (postulant, postulate)

# Adverb

ōlim, once

# **Word Studies**

The following words are commonly used in geometry. Define them and find other geometrical or mathematical terms derived from Latin.

acute (acūtus) lo
adjacent (ad-, iaceō) m
circumscribe (circum-, scrībō) p
coincide (co-, incidō) m

complementary (compleō)
concurrent (con-, currō)

equidistant (aequus, dis-, stō) equilateral (aequus, latus)

inscribe (in-, scrībō)

locus (locus)

median (medius)
plane (plānus)

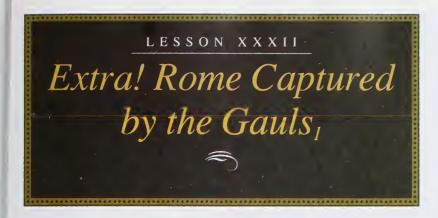
quadrilateral (quattuor, latus)

Q.E.D. (quod erat dēmönstrandum) Q.E.F. (quod erat faciendum)

subtend (sub-, tend $\bar{o}$ )

tangent (tangō)

transversal (trāns-, vertō)



allī, Ītaliae dulcibus frūctibus maximēque vīnō captī, Alpēs trānsiērunt et contrā Romānos processērunt. Sed cum Romānī pugnantes cum finitimis populis saepe dictatorem creavissent, eo tempore nihil extraordināriī, imperī aut auxilī quaesīvērunt. Plūrimum terroris ad Rōmānōs celeritās hostium tulit. Ad flūmen Alliam Rōmānī superātī sunt. 5 Maxima pars eōrum ad urbem Veiōs fūgit; nihil praesidī Rōmam¹ mīsērunt. Aliī Rōmam petīvērunt et, nē clausīs quidem portīs urbis, in arcem fūgērunt. Tam facile Romani victi erant ut Galli mirantes primum starent, insidias verentēs. Deinde ad urbem progressī sunt. Cum equitēs rettulissent non portās urbis clausās, non mīlitēs in mūrīs esse, īnsidiās et noctem veritī, 107 stroking his (i.e., the old man's) inter Romam atque flumen Anienem castra posuerunt.

Cum spēs nūlla urbis dēfendendae esset, Romānī constituerunt ut iuventūs mīlitāris<sup>2</sup> cum mulieribus ac līberīs in arcem Capitōliumque concēderet. Ibi, frūmentō collātō, deōs hominēsque et Rōmānum nōmen dēfendere parant.

Senēs autem in aedibus³ suīs adventum hostium obstināto⁴ ad mortem animō exspectāre māluērunt. Eī quī magistrātūs gesserant, augustissimā veste vestītī in medio aedium in eburneīs sellīs<sup>5</sup> sēdērunt. Postero die Gallī urbem ingressī ad praedam properant. Venerābundī<sup>6</sup> spectābant sedentēs virōs, quī ob vestem et maiestātem gravitātemque deīs simillimī vidēban-20 tur. Cum Gallī, ad eos sedentēs velut ad imāginēs versī, stārent, ūnus ē senibus Gallum barbam suam permulcentem<sup>7</sup> scīpione eburneo<sub>3</sub> percussit. Hoc initium caedis fuit. Cēterī in aedibus suīs interfectī sunt. Post prīncipum caedem nēminī parcitur,8 dīripiuntur aedificia, iniciuntur ignēs. Sed arcem capere Galli nondum conantur.

<sup>2</sup> capable of bearing arms

3 houses

4 resolved

5 ivory

6 full of reverence

<sup>8</sup> No one is spared

<sup>1</sup> This was in 390 B.C. Rome was not again captured by a foreign enemy for 800 years.

The genitive of -ius adjectives is not contracted like that of nouns.

<sup>3</sup> ivory staff—part of the insignia of a triumphing general. He was seated, as we might say, in full uniform, wearing all his medals, awaiting his doom.



The Gauls were attracted to the Romans initially because of their food and wine. Some Gallic dinners, however, lacked the refinement that one would expect to see in Rome.

## QUESTIONS

- 1. When did the Gauls enter Rome?
- 2. What did the old Roman men do?
- 3. Why did the Gauls come into Italy?
- 4. Why did the Gauls not enter Rome as soon as they arrived there?

# Grammar ~~~



# Genitive of the Whole

The genitive of the whole, or partitive genitive, is used to represent the *whole* of which a *part* is mentioned. It is very similar to the English construction.

Hostēs plūrimum terrōris fēcērunt. Pars exercitūs in urbe

Pars exercitūs in urbe mānsit.

The enemy created a great deal of terror.

Part of the army remained in the city.

The partitive genitive is often used after nihil, satis, and quis/quid.

Plēbēs nihil imperī The plebeians had no power.

habuērunt.

Non erat satis cibī. There was not enough food.

Quis vestrum ītis? Which of you is going?

# More About Cum Clauses

You already know that **cum** can be translated *when* in a time clause. In some clauses, **cum** is best translated by *since*, in others by *although*. These are sometimes called *causal* or *concessive* clauses. In such clauses the subjunctive is always used.

Cum tē nōn vidērem, discessī. Since I didn't see you, I left.
Cum vulnerārētur, fortiter Although he was wounded, he pugnāvit. fought bravely.

Find at least one example of each of these uses in the reading.

# TRANSLATION

- 1. Nothing (of) good is inspired by a great deal of terror.
- 2. Of all the Romans the old men alone determined to die in the city.
- 3. Although the gates had not been closed, the rest withdrew to the citadel.
- 4. Since the Romans feared the approach of the enemy's horsemen, they fled and left no (nothing of a) guard.

# Vocabulary

### Nouns

adventus, -ūs, m. arrival (adventure, adventuresome)

arx, arcis, f. citadel

 ${\bf caed\bar{e}s, \text{-}is}, f. \ slaughter$ 

eques, equitis, m. horseman, (equestrian)

knight; (pl.) cavalry

fructus, -ūs, m. fruit

sella, -ae, f. chair, seat, stool

terror, -ōris, m. terror (terrorism, terrorize)
vīnum, -ī, n. wine (vine, vinegar)

KOTA-BENE

With cardinal numbers and quidam, it is preferable to use the ablative with de or ex: unus e senibus, one of the old men.

(fructification, fructify)

# **Adjectives**

```
augustus, -a, -um, magnificent
dulcis, -e, sweet (dulcet)
mīlitāris, -e, military
```

# **Verbs**

```
cōnor, 1, try. attempt
dīripiō, -ere, dīripuī,
dīreptus, plunder
parcō, -ere, pepercī,
parsūrus, spare (+ dat.)
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit (sedate, sedentary)
```

# Adverb

nē... quidem, not even

# **Word Studies**

Review the prefix inter—in the Appendix. The preposition intrā (within, inside) is also used as a prefix in English. The two must be carefully distinguished: an intercollegiate contest is one between two (or more) colleges, as Harvard and Yale; an intracollegiate contest is one within a single college, as when the freshmen and sophomores of Yale play a game. What is the difference between interscholastic and intrascholastic, interstate and intrastate?

**Intrō–** (within) is also used as a prefix: **intrōdūcō**, introduce, introspection.

Extrā- (*outside*) is found in *extraordinary* (from ōrdō). Define *extralegal*, *intranural*, *extramural*.

170



rx Capitoliumque in magno periculo fuerunt. Nam Galli nocte tantō silentiō in summum ēvāsērunt ut non custodēs solum fallerent sed në canës quidem excitarent. Ānserēs<sup>1</sup> non fefellërunt, quos sacrōs<sup>2</sup> Iūnōnī in summā inopiā cibī<sup>3</sup> Rōmānī tamen nōn occīderant. Quae rēs Romānīs salūtī fuit; nam clangore4 eorum excitatus est M. Mānlius, 5 of food quī, armīs raptīs, ad arma cēterōs vocāvit. Eī Gallōs facile dēiēcērunt.

Sed posteā non solum cibus sed etiam spēs dēfēcit. Tum tribūnīs mīlitum negotium datum ut pācem facerent. Ācta rēs est, et mīlle pondo<sub>1</sub> aurī pretium factum est. Pondera<sub>2</sub> ab Gallīs allāta inīqua et, tribūnō Rōmānō recūsante, additus est ā Gallō ponderī gladius, audītaque vox Romānīs 10 non ferenda.5 "Vae6 victīs!"

Sed dī<sub>4</sub> et hominēs prohibuērunt esse redēmptos Romanos. Nam nöndum omnī aurō pēnsō, Camillus, quī absēns iterum dictātor creātus erat, vēnit. Gallos discēdere iubet et eīs imperat ut sē ad proelium expediant. Suōs ferrō, nōn aurō, recipere patriam iubet. Gallī in Rōmānōs currunt 15 sed vincuntur; castra capiuntur; nē nūntius quidem proelī relīctus.

Sed nunc plēbs voluit ruīnās Romae relinquere et in urbem Veios migrāre. Camillus ōrātiōnem vehementem habuit et eōs mōvit:

"Nonne tenet vos haec terra quam matrem appellamus? Mihi quidem, cum patria in mentem venit, haec omnia occurrunt: collēs campīque et 20 Tiberis et hoc caelum sub quo natus educatusque sum. Non sine causa di hominēsque hunc urbī constituendae locum ēlēgērunt, marī propinguum, regionum Italiae medium. Argūmento est ipsa magnitūdo tam novae urbis. Non singulae urbes, non coniuncti cum Aequis Volsci, non tota Etruria bello vobis par est. Hīc Capitolium est, quod a deo responsum est caput 25 imperī futūrum esse. Hīc Vestae ignēs, hīc ancīlia dē caelō dēmissa, hīc omnēs dī propitiī manentibus vobīs "

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> (being) sacred

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> (although) in the greatest need

<sup>4</sup> cackling

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> intolerable to Romans

<sup>6</sup> woe

<sup>7 (</sup>serves as) proof

Used as an indeclinable noun: pounds.

<sup>2</sup> weights, for weighing the gold. When the Romans complained that the weights were too heavy, the Gaul insolently threw in a sword as an additional weight.

<sup>3</sup> i.e., the weights

<sup>4</sup> for deī



Northwind Picture Archives

The Capitoline Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome, was the center of state religion. The least inhabited of the hills, it was really a fortified citadel and religious sanctuary. According to legend, the sacred geese of Juno alerted the Romans to a sneak attack by the Gauls in 390 B.C.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. How was the Capitol saved?
- 2. What river flows through Rome?
- 3. Why did the Romans want to make peace?
- 4. Why was the gold not given to the Gauls?

# 

# Review: Datives of Purpose and Reference

Review the datives of purpose and reference in Lesson XXVI. Find all the examples of these constructions in the reading.

# Omission of Sum

A form of sum is often omitted either when it might be used as a connector or in compound tenses of the indicative or infinitive of verbs.

Marcus in īnsulā est; Anna in urbe. Marcus is on the island;
Anna in the city.

Can you find five examples in the reading?



- 1. What circumstance was a source of safety to the Romans?
- 2. "The gods," said he, "have chosen Rome as a home for themselves."
- 3. The Romans had made peace with the Gauls by paying (*gerundive*) money.
- 4. When the Gauls were already near the top of the hill, the Romans threw them down.

# 

### **Nouns**

ancīle, -is, n. shield collis, -is, m. hill custōs, -ōdis, m. guard

custōs, -ōdis, m. guard mēns, mentis, f. mind (custodian, custody) (mental, mentality)

# Adjectives

inīquus, -a, -um, uneven, unjust
propinquus, -a, -um, near
propitius, -a, -um, favorable

vehemēns, vehementis

(gen.), vigorous

(iniquitous, iniquity)

(propitiatory, propitious)

(vehemence, vehement)



The summit of the Capitoline Hill is now occupied by a square designed by Michelangelo. Palaces surround the square on three sides. In the middle of the square is a Roman bronze statue of the the emperor Marcus Aurelius. The statue, erected in the 16th century, was preserved for many centuries because it was believed to be the 4th century Christian emperor, Constantine.

# Verbs

dēficiō, -ere, dēfēcī,
dēfectus, fail
dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectus,
throw (down), dislodge
ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus,
go out, escape
expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus,
set free, prepare
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus,
(deficiency, defective)
(deficiency, defective)
(deficiency, defective)
(deficiency, defective)
(deficiency, defective)

deceive

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, be born (nascency, nascent)

occurrō, -ere, occurrī, (occurrence, occurrent)

occursūrus, meet, occur

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, (pendant, pendulous)

# **Word Studies**

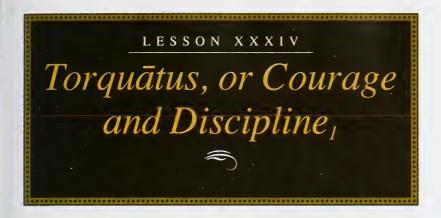
hang, weigh, pay

Many English words containing c, g, or s sounds are often misspelled. When these are derived from Latin, it will be helpful to think of the Latin original: circumstance, voice, concern, suggest, legislation, origin, cordial, graduate, presume, vision, decision.

Explain alimentary, custodian, deficient, dementia, expenditure, illicit, impend, iniquitous, nascent, nativity, occurrence, propinquity. Explain the difference between liberty and license.



Roman armor pieces included body armor (arma, lōrīca), shield (scūtum), helmet (galea), a short stabbing dagger (sīca, pūgiō), a sword (gladius), and a heavy and a light jayelin (pīlum).



allī contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. Quīdam ex Gallīs quī et vīribus et magnitūdine et virtūte cēterīs praestābat prōcessit et vōce maximā clāmat: "Sī quis mēcum pugnāre vult, prōcēdat." Omnēs recūsant propter magnitūdinem eius atque immānem faciem. Deinde Gallus irrīdēre incipit atque linguam ēicere. Tum T. Mānlius, mīles Rōmānus, prōcessit et 5 contrā Gallum cōnstitit. Gallus, quī duōs magnōs gladiōs habuit, scūtō prōiectō, exspectābat; Mānlius scūtō scūtum percussit¹ atque Gallum dē locō dēiēcit. Eō modō sub Gallī gladium successit atque parvō suō gladiō eum interfēcit. Torquem² eius dētrāxit eamque sibi in collum impōnit. Quō ex factō ipse posterīque eius Torquātī sunt nōminātī.

Postquam Torquātus consul factus est, bellum contrā Latīnos susceptum est.<sup>2</sup> Latīnī Romānīs similēs erant linguā, moribus, armorum genere, īnstitūtīs mīlitāribus. Itaque Torquātus et alter consul constituērunt cum maximā cūrā pugnāre et imperāvērunt nē quis extrā ordinem in hostēs pugnāret.

Forte inter cēterōs quī ad explōrandum et pābulandum dīmissī erant T. Mānlius, cōnsulis fīlius, ad castra hostium ēvāsit. Cum equitem Latīnum vidēret, imperī patris oblītus³ est et cum hoste pugnāre coepit. Quod ubi audīvit cōnsul, statim mīlitēs convocārī iussit. Tum fīliō, "quoniam tū," inquit, "neque imperium cōnsulis neque maiestātem patris veritus, extrā 20 ōrdinem cum hoste pugnāvistī et disciplīnam mīlitārem, quā stetit ad hanc diem Rōmāna rēs,⁴ solvistī, trīste exemplum₃ sed salūbre posterīs nostrīs erō. Mē quidem et amor līberōrum et virtūs tua movet; sed tū quoque, sī quid in tē nostrī sanguinis est, volēs disciplīnam mīlitārem poenā tuā restituere." Hōc dictō, imperāvit ut fīlius statim morte afficerētur.

Post hoc Latīnī magnā pugnā superātī sunt.

15

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> struck (the Gaul's) shield with his own

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> 340 B.C.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> forgot with the genitive imperī

 $_{10}$  <sup>4</sup> = rēs pūblica

<sup>1</sup> From Aulus Gellius and Livy. The incident referred to look place in 361 B.C., on the occasion of the second invasion of the Gauls.

<sup>2</sup> collar of gold, worn by soldiers as a military decoration, like our medals

<sup>3</sup> Predicate nominative: I shall be an example.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. What happened to Torquatus?
- 2. How did Manlius get the name Torquatus?
- 3. Why was Manlius so cautious in his war against the Latins?

# 

# **Indirect Command**

Review the indirect command in Lesson XXII. Find examples of such clauses in the reading.

# The Indefinites Quis, Aliquis, and Quidam

After sī, nisi, num, and nē, quis is used as an indefinite pronoun (some, any) in place of aliquis. Find at least three examples in the reading. Review the declension of quis, aliquis, and quīdam in Lessons VI and XX.

### ORAL PRACTICE

Tell the form of quid, cuidam, aliqua, quoddam, quaedam, alicuius, quōrundam, aliquī.



- 1. The two consuls had warned their (men) to obey the order.
- 2. The consuls had asked that no one fight with the enemy unless ordered.4
- 3. So as to be a wholesome example to the rest the consul ordered his own son to be killed.
- 4. Certain of the soldiers were sent out to reconnoiter, and the consul's son too begged to go with them.

# 

### **Nouns**

faciēs, -ēī. f. face, appearance (facial) sanguis, sanguinis, m. blood (sanguinary, sanguine)

# Adjectives

immānis, -e, huge, savage (immane, immanence)
salūbris, -e, wholesome, healthy
trīstis, -e, sad (triste)

<sup>4</sup> Use iubeō.

# Verbs

afficio, -ere, affeci, affectus, (affection, affective)

affect, afflict, visit

coepī, coeptus, began

(perfect tenses only)

praestō, -āre, -stitī,

-stitūrus, stand before, excel

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, (project, projection)

throw, thrust (forward)

restituō, -ere, restituī, (restitute, restitution)

restitūtus, restore

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, (susceptibility, susceptible)

-ceptus, undertake, incur

# Preposition

extrā (+ acc.), out of, outside of (extraordinary)

# Conjunctions

forte, by chance quoniam, since

# **Word Studies**

The following aviation terms are all derived from Latin.

accelerometer (ad-, celer)

aileron (āla)

airplane (āēr, plānus)

altimeter (altus)

aviator (avis)

contact (con-, tangō)

interceptor (inter-, capiō)

jet (iaciō)

motor (moveō)

propeller (prō-, pellō)

retractable (re-, trahō)

stabilizer (stō)

supersonic (super-, sonus)

turbo-prop (turbō, prō-, pellō)

visibility (videō)

See if you can find other aviation terms.



rīmō bellō Pūnicō Rōmānī prīmum in marī pugnāvērunt et hostēs vīcērunt. Neque ūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit, quod, invictī in terrā, iam etiam in marī plūrimum poterant. Postquam Sicilia capta est et Corsica Sardiniaque vāstātae sunt, bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Victī 5 Carthäginiënsës pācem ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt. Illō tempore Rēgulus, dūx Römānorum, senātuī persuāsit nē pācem cum Poenīs faceret. Tandem consul Catulus profectus est cum CCC navibus in Siciliam; Poenī contra ipsum CCCC nāvēs parāvērunt. Numquam in marī tantīs copiīs pugnātum est.1 Carthāginiēnsēs superātī sunt.

Bellum Pūnicum secundum Rōmānīs ab Hannibale illātum est. Cum magnō exercitū Alpēs trānsiit. Post complūrēs parvās victōriās Hannibal Rōmānōs ad lacum Trasumennum gravissimē vīcit.

Rōmae ad prīmum nūntium proelī populus cum magnō terrōre in Forum concurrit. Mulierēs rogāvērunt omnēs quae fortūna exercitūs esset. Tandem 15 praetor, "Pugnā," inquit, "magnā victī sumus." Posterīs diēbus ad portās maior prope multitūdō mulierum quam virōrum stetit, quae aut suōrum aliquem aut nūntios de eis exspectabat. Ūnam feminam in ipsa porta incolumī fīliō<sub>2</sub> subitō occurrentem in complexu eius exspīrāvisse dīcunt; alteram, cui mors fīlī falsō nūntiāta erat, sedentem domī ad prīmum 20 conspectum redeuntis fili gaudio mortuam esse dicunt.

Proximō annō Rōmānī ab Hannibale pulsī etiam maius dētrīmentum ad Cannās accēpērunt. Multae Ītaliae cīvitātēs ad Poenos dēfēcērunt. Quae tamen rēs Romānos non movit ut pācis umquam mentio apud eos fieret. Servos mīlitēs<sup>2</sup> fēcērunt, quod<sup>3</sup> numquam ante factum erat. Hannibal trēs 25 modiōs4 ānulōrum aureōrum Carthāginem mīsit, quōs ex manibus equitum Rōmānōrum mortuōrum dētrāxerat.

Romani tamen post multos annos Hannibalem vicerunt.

<sup>1</sup> was (a battle) fought

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> They made soldiers (of) the slaves 10

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> (a thing) which

<sup>4</sup> pecks of rings

First Punic War, 264–241 B.C.; Second Punic War, 218–201 B.C. The word "Punic" is derived from Poenī, another name for the Carthaginians, who originally came from

<sup>2</sup> dative, depending on occurrentem



The Roman navy helped ensure Rome's domination of the Mediterranean. With the help of the navy, Rome destroyed Carthage in the Punic Wars. During the Battle of Actium in 31 B.C., the navy under Augustus defeated Mark Antony.

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

### QUESTIONS

- 1. What was the first war the Romans won on the sea?
- 2. Why did the victory on the seas please the Romans?
- 3. What visible evidence did the people of Carthage have of the greatness of Hannibal's victory at Cannae?
- 4. What other great victory did Hannibal win?

# Grammar ~~~



# The Relative as Connective

In Latin the relative pronoun or adjective is often used to connect a sentence with a preceding sentence. In English a personal or demonstrative pronoun with or without a conjunction (*and*, *but* etc.) is more common.

Gallus immānis erat. Quae rēs, tamen Manlium nōn terruit.

The Gaul was savage. This fact, however, did not frighten Manlius.

Find at least one more example of this construction in the reading.

# This construction is used under the same conditions as the locative.

The remains of a Roman villa at

Carthage, near modern Tunis, date from the 3rd century A.D.

# Place to Which

Ordinarily *place to which* is expressed by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in**. The preposition is omitted before names of cities, towns, and a few other words, such as **domus**.

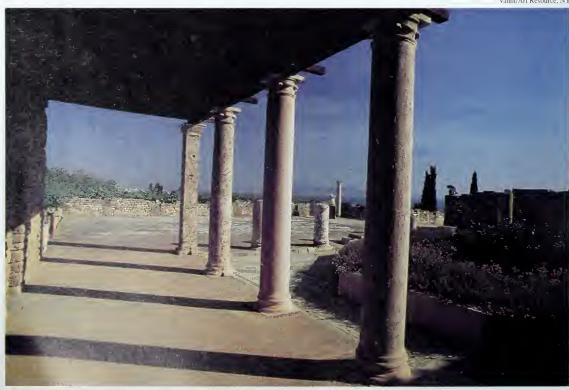
Pūblius Furiānusque Athēnās īērunt. Unō diē, Delphōs īre constituērunt. Publius and Furianus went to Athens. One day, they decided to go to Delphi.

Find at least one example of this construction in the reading.



- 1. You all know that the Romans received a great loss the next year.
- 2. Not moved by the words of women and friends, Regulus returned to Carthage.
- 3. Although terrified by reports of the defeat, nevertheless Rome did not make peace.
- 4. Regulus, when sent unharmed to Rome, persuaded his country to make war upon the enemy.

Vanni/Art Resource, NY



180

# 

### **Nouns**

calamitās, -tātis, f. disaster complexus, -ūs, m. embrace dētrīmentum, -ī, n. loss fēmina, -ae, f. woman lacus, -ūs, m. lake (calamitous, calamity)
(complex, complexion)
(detriment, detrimental)
(female, feminine)
(lacustrine)

# Adjectives

**complūrēs**, -a or -ia, several **falsus**, -a, -um, false

incolumis, -e, unharmed

(falsify, falsity)

# Verbs

exspīrō, 1, breathe out, expire pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus,

(expiration)
(pulse, pulsion)

*drive*, *defeat* **prōficiō**, -**ere**, -**fēcī**, -**fectus**.

(proficiency, proficient)

accomplish

vāstō, 1, destroy, ruin (devastate, devastation)

# Adverb

prope, almost

# Conjunction

nisi, unless, except

# **Word Studies**

The suffix -idus (English -id) is added chiefly to verb stems to form adjectives: **timidus**, *timid*. When the noun suffix  $-t\bar{a}s$  (English -ty) is added, -idus becomes  $-idi-: timidit\bar{a}s$ , timidity.

The suffix -īnus (English -ine) is added to noun and adjective stems to form adjectives: equīnus, equine. When the suffix -tās is added, -īnus becomes -īni-: vīcīnitās, vicinity.

Define the following and give the Latin words from which they are derived: *fluid*, *placid*, *rapid*, *valid*, *vivid*, *feminine*, *marine*, *submarine*. Give additional examples of these suffixes in English words.

# LESSON XXXVI The Romans Give Liberty to the Greeks

<sup>⊥</sup> 200-197 B.C.

<sup>3</sup> no one could really believe that he had heard correctly

4 one said to another

<sup>5</sup> if you agree (conditional)

6 Cf. "United we stand, divided we fall."

7 flowed for all

ost Pūnicum bellum secūtum est Macedonicum,1 quod cum Philippō rēge Rōmānī gessērunt ut Graecās cīvitātēs līberārent. T. Quīnctius

Flāminīnus contrā Philippum missus rem bene gessit. Corinthum processit ut ibi in lūdīs Isthmiīs, condiciones pācis deferret. Omnes ad spectāculum 5 consederant et praeco, ut<sup>2</sup> mos erat, in medium processit et, tuba silentio factō, prōnūntiat senātum Rōmānum et Quīnctium imperātōrem iubēre omnēs gentēs Graeciae līberās esse. Audītā võce praecōnis, vix satis crēdere potest sē quisque bene audīvisse.3 Tum tantus clāmor est ortus ut facile appārēret nihil omnium bonorum multitūdinī grātius quam lībertātem esse. Aliī aliīs 10 dīcēbant4 esse gentem quae suā pecūniā, suō labore ac perīculo bella gereret, pro lībertāte aliorum.

Duōbus annīs posteā Quīnctius in Ītaliam profectūrus Graecos hoc modō monet: "Concordiae consulite. Contra vos consentientes nec rex quisquam nec tyrannus satis valēbit.6 Aliēnīs armīs redditam lībertātem 15 vestrā cūrā servāte, ut populus Rōmānus dignīs datam esse lībertātem sciat." Hās velut parentis vocēs cum audīrent, omnibus mānāvērunt<sup>7</sup> gaudiō lacrimae, ita ut Quīnctium ipsum quoque confunderent dīcentem.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Flamininus go to Corinth?
- 2. What advice did he give the Greeks?
- 3. How did Flamininus' words affect the Greeks?
- 4. Why did the Romans start the war against Philip?

<sup>1</sup> Isthmian; similar to the Olympic Games. They got their name from being held on the Isthmus of Corinth.

<sup>2</sup> Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are in the subjunctive.



Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY

# Grammar Occionation

The Temple of Apollo at Corinth still shows its majestic Doric columns.

# The Imperative

Remember that the present active imperative is formed from the present stem. The plural is formed by adding -te.

portā	portāte	carry!
docē	docēte	teach!
pōne	pōnite	place!
cape	capite	take!
mūnī	mūnīte	build!

There is also a passive imperative, which is formed just like the active imperative, but with passive endings.

portāre	portãminī	be carried!
docēre	docēminī	be taught!
põnere	pōniminī	be placed!
capere	capiminī	be taken!
mūnīre	mūnīminī	be built!

# Quisque and Quisquam

Quisque, each, as a pronoun is declined like quis; as an adjective, more like quī. Quisquam (singular only) is like quis, except that quicquam is usually used for quidquam. Quisque is usually placed after a pronoun or a superlative adjective:

optimus quisque

all the best men

Quisquam, anyone, is stronger than aliquis and is usually found in sentences containing or implying a negative. It is often best translated any at all:

Estne quisquam fortior?

Is anyone braver?

### ORAL PRACTICE

Tell the form of quoque, quendam, aliquod, quicquam, quaeque, quid, cuiquam, quaedam, quidque, alicuius.

# **Result Clauses**

Review result clauses in Lesson XIV. Find two examples in the reading.



- 1. "Tell us what he said," each one asked.
- 2. All were so overcome that they could hardly speak.
- 3. "Agree among yourselves and no king will be so brave as to attack you."
- 4. The messenger had spoken, and not a single one could believe his words.

# Vocabulary

# **Nouns**

lacrima, -ae, f. tear praecō, praecōnis, m. announcer tuba, -ae, f. trumpet (lacrimation, lacrimator)

# Pronouns

quisquam, quicquam, anyone, anything, any quisque, quidque, each

# **Adjectives**

equester, -tris, -tre, (of) cavalry
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary
prīstinus, -a, -um, former (pristine)

## Verbs

adigō, -ere, adēgī, adāctus, throw (to)

confundō, -ere, fūdī, -fūsus, (confound)

confuse

consido, -ere, -sedi, -sessurus,

sit down

subsequor, subsequent) (subsequent)

subsecūtus, follow (closely)

# Adverb

vix, scarcely

# **Word Studies**

We have already seen that a few simple principles will enable you to recognize the Latin origin of many Spanish words. On the basis of these principles, explain Spanish *campo*, útil, vivo; ocurrir; desierto, puente; vida, virtud; mujer.

Since *d* is sometimes lost between vowels, what must be the Latin words from which Spanish *caer* and *juicio* are derived?

Since an *e* is added before *sc*, *sp*, and *st* at the beginning of a word, what must be the Latin words from which the following Spanish words are derived: *esperar*, *especie*, *escribir*, *estar*, *estudio*?

Since Latin ex sometimes becomes ej in Spanish, what is the Latin for ejemplo, ejército?





Tulliō Cicerōne ōrātōre et C. Antōnio cōnsulibus, L. Sergius Catilīna, vir nōbilissimī generis, ad dēlendam patriam coniūrāvit cum quibusdam clārīs quidem, sed audācibus virīs. Ā Cicerōne urbe expulsus est. Sociī eius comprehēnsī occīsī sunt. Catilīna ipse victus proeliō est 5 et interfectus.

Sed Cicerō Rōmānōs timōre bellī cīvīlis nōn līberāvit. C. Iūlius Caesar, quī Catilīnam iūvisse ā quibusdam dīcitur, cōnsul est factus. Dēcrēta est eī Gallia et Īllyricum cum legiōnibus decem. Annīs novem in potestātem populī Rōmānī ferē omnem Galliam redēgit.<sub>2</sub> Britannīs mox bellum intulit, 10 quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cognitum erat. Eōs victōs, obsidibus acceptīs, stīpendium pendere coēgit. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum aggressus proeliīs vīcit.

Caesar rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōnsulātum. Senātū negante, contrā patriam cum exercitū prōcessit.

Deinde in Graeciam trānsiit et contrā Pompeium pugnāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est, ēvāsit tamen, quod, nocte intercēdente, Pompeius sequī nōluit. Dīxit Caesar Pompeium nōn scīre¹ vincere et illō diē tantum² sē potuisse superārī.³

Deinde in Thessaliā ad Pharsālum pugnāvērunt. Numquam ante maiōrēs 20 Rōmānae cōpiae in ūnum locum convēnerant neque meliōrēs ducēs habuerant. Tandem Pompeius victus est et Alexandrīam petīvit ut ā rēge Aegyptī auxilia acciperet. Sed rēx occīdit Pompeium et caput eius ad Caesarem mīsit. Caesar lacrimās fūdisse dīcitur, tantī virī vidēns caput et generī<sub>3</sub> quondam suī. Caesar rēgnum Aegyptī Cleopātrae dedit.

<sup>1</sup> know how

<sup>2</sup> only

<sup>3</sup> could have been defeated

 $_{\rm I}$  Ablative absolute expressing time: in the consulship of (63 B.C.). The Romans used the names of the consuls to date the year.

<sup>58-50</sup> B.C.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sub>3</sub> his former son-in-law (genitive of **gener**); Pompey had married Caesar's daughter Julia in 60 B.C. After her death in 54 B.C. Caesar and Pompey drifted apart.



THE GRANGER COLLECTION, New York

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106-43 B.C.) was Rome's greatest orator. He was also a political leader and held all the positions in the cursus honōrum. He is especially well known for the four orations he delivered against Catiline that exposed a great conspiracy.

During the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, Cicero was one of the most popular Roman figures.

Caesar, bellīs cīvīlibus in tōtō orbe terrārum perfectīs, Rōmam rediit. 25 Agere coepit contrā cōnsuētūdinem Rōmānae lībertātis. Cum honōrēs<sup>4</sup> ex<sup>5</sup> suā voluntāte tribueret quī ā populō anteā dēferēbantur aliaque rēgia<sup>6</sup> faceret, coniūrātum est in eum ā LX vel amplius senātōribus equitibusque Rōmānīs, quōrum prīncipēs fuērunt C. Cassius et duo Brūtī. Itaque Caesar, cum Īdibus Mārtiīs<sup>7</sup> in senātum vēnisset, XXIII vulneribus acceptīs, mor-30 tuus est.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. How did Catiline die?
- 2. Where was Pompey killed?
- 3. How many years did Caesar fight in Gaul?
- 4. Why was there a conspiracy against Caesar?
- 5. Why did Caesar fight against his own country?

4 offices

<sup>5</sup> in accordance with

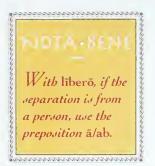
6 regal (kinglike) things

<sup>7</sup> the Ides of March (March 15)

# Grammar Common C

# Ablative of Separation

Separation is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. But with some verbs, such as **excēdō** and **līberō**, the preposition is regularly omitted. **Prohibeō** can be used with or without a preposition; **dēfendō** takes the preposition.



Līberī omnī timōre līberātī
sunt.
Prohibēte hostēs arce.
Manlius nōs Gallō dēfēnsit.
Graecōs ā hostibus līberāvit.

The children were freed from all fear.

Keep the enemy from the citadel.

Manlius defended us from the Gaul.

He freed the Greeks from

the enemy.

Try to find at least two examples of the ablative of separation in the reading.



- 1. Cicero drove Catiline from Rome after seizing his accomplices.
- 2. You all read that civil war occurred between Caesar and Pompey.
- 3. Since Caesar had not driven his personal enemies from the city, sixty or more of them later killed him.
- 4. Having conquered Gaul, Caesar also attacked the Britons, who were much braver than the Gauls.

# 

### Nouns

legiō, -ōnis, f. legion (legionary)
obses, obsidis,4 m. hostage
ōrātor, -ōris, m. speaker, orator
timor, -ōris, m. fear (timorous)
voluntās, -tātis, f. wish (voluntary)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> A hostage is a person of a conquered territory who is held by the conquering nation as a pledge that no unfriendly act will be committed.

# Adjectives

adversus, -a, -um, facing.

opposite

audāx, audācis (gen.), bold

(adverse, adversity)

(audacious, audacity)

# Verbs

aggredior, aggredī.

aggressus, attack

dēleō, -ēre, ēvī, -ētus, destroy

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus,

pour, shed

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —,

demand, call for

(aggression, aggressor)

(delete, deletion)
(confound, diffuse)

THE GRANGIBE COLLIFCTION, New York

Cleopatra, born in 69 B.C., was the seventh and most famous queen of Egypt by that name. She had a forceful personality and was politically skilled. She was well-known for her romantic liaisons with several prominent Romans. She went to Rome with Julius Caesar and stayed there until he was assassinated, after which she returned to Egypt.

# Adverbs

amplius, more anteā, before

ferē, almost, about, generally

# Words Easily Confused

Look up and distinguish carefully the following sets of words that are somewhat similar in pronunciation or spelling:

alius, alter, altus audeō, audiō eques, equus gēns, genus nē, -ne

cadō, caedō, cēdō

gēns, genus liber, līber, līberī post, posteā, postquam

cīvis, cīvitās mora, mors, mōs dīcō, dūcō morior, moror

quīdam, quidem reddō, redeō Rōma, Rōmānus

# Word Studies

In English, after the prefix *ex*-, a root word beginning with *s* drops the *s*: **ex-sequor**, *ex-ecute*; **ex-sist**ō, *ex-ist*; **ex-spect**ō, *ex-pect*.

Explain aggression, audacity, confusion, delete, indelible, infusion, legionary, projectile, timorous, voluntary.



<sup>1</sup> divorced

<sup>2</sup> married (with uxōrem)

<sup>3</sup> i.e., Rome

<sup>4</sup> *let an asp* (a poisonous snake) *bite her* 

5 was buried

ctāviānus, nepōs Caesaris.<sub>2</sub> ā Caesare adoptātus, posteā Augustus est dictus. Iuvenis fōrmā praestantī et vultū tranquillō erat. Post mortem Caesaris Octāviānō. adulēscentī XX annōrum, cōnsulātus datur. Nōn multō post cum M. Antōniō contrā Brūtum et Cassium, quī Caesarem 5 interfēcerant, profectus est. Ad Philippōs, Macedoniae urbem, Brūtus et Cassius victī et interfectī sunt.

Antōnius, repudiātā¹ sorōre Caesaris Augustī. Cleopātram, rēgīnam Aegyptī. dūxit² uxōrem. Tum magnum bellum cīvīle commōvit, cōgente uxōre Cleopātrā, quae cupīvit in urbe³ quoque rēgnāre. Victus est ab 10 Augustō nāvālī pugnā clārā apud Actium, quī locus in Ēpīrō est, ex quā fūgit in Aegyptum et, dēspērātīs suīs rēbus, ipse sē occīdit. Cleopātra sibi aspidem admīsit⁴ et venēnō eius exstīncta est. Aegyptus ab Augustō imperiō Rōmānō adiecta est.

Pāce Rōmānā cōnstitūtā, Augustus Rōmānōs timōre bellī līberāvit. Ex 15 eō annō rem pūblicam per XLIIII annōs sōlus obtinuit. In campō Mārtiō sepultus est,<sup>5</sup> vir quī meritīs quidem deō similis est putātus. Neque enim quisquam aut in bellīs fēlīcior fuit aut in pāce moderātior. Scythae et Indī, quibus anteā Rōmānōrum nē nōmen quidem cognitum erat, mūnera et lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

Pūblica opera plūrima Rōmae exstrūxit et cēterōs prīncipēs virōs saepe hortātus est ut monumentīs vel novīs vel refectīs urbem adōrnārent. Spatium urbis regiōnēs XIV dīvīsit. Contrā incendia vigiliās īnstituit. Viās et templa refēcit. Annum<sub>3</sub> ā lūliō Caesare in ōrdinem redāctum, sed posteā neglēctum, rūrsus ad prīstinam rationem redēgit. Sextīlem mēnsem ē suō nōmine 25 Augustum nōmināvit.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. Where was Cassius killed?
- 2. Where was Augustus buried?
- 3. Where and how was Antony killed?

Under Augustus (31 B.C.–14 A.D.) a long era of peace began.

<sup>2</sup> Actually Octavian was the grandson of Caesar's sister.

<sup>3</sup> i.e., the calendar, which was very inexact before Caesar's time



Scala/Art Resource, NY

The emperor Augustus established his government in 27 B.C., rebuilt Rome, reformed the Senate, made the taxation system more fair, revived the census, and patronized the arts. He ruled the Roman Empire at its height and began the 200 years of peace that came to be called the Pax Romana. He died in A.D. 14 and was buried in this tomb in Rome.

# Grammar ~



# Description

Both the genitive and the ablative can be used to describe. Both cases, if modified by an adjective, can be used to describe people or things. Most often, the genitive is used with permanent qualities. The ablative is most often used with temporary qualities.

Magister magnae sapientiae est. Gentēs inimīcō animō Rōmānīs erant.

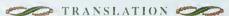
He is a teacher of great wisdom. They were tribes of an unfriendly spirit toward the Romans.

# NOTA · BEN

In Latin,
descriptions of
personal
appearance fall
into the temporary
category.

# Ablative of Degree of Difference

Review the ablative of degree of difference in Lesson XV. Find one example of each of these three constructions in the reading.



- 1. Cleopatra urged Antony to neglect his own interests ("things").
- 2. Antony was a man of the greatest courage; Augustus was a youth of twenty years.
- 3. Augustus erected monuments and temples of the greatest size in all parts of the Roman Empire.
- 4. Despairing of victory, Antony killed himself, and not much later all other enemies were defeated.

# 

### **Nouns**

incendium, -dī, n. fire, burning (ince iuvenis, -is, m. young man (juvenis, nepōs, nepōtis, m. grandson vigilia, -ae, f. watchman, watch vultus, -ūs, m. expression, features

(incendiary)
(juvenile, juvenalia)
(nepotism)

# Verbs

administrō, 1, manage, perform
admittō, -ere, admīsī, admissus,
send to, let in, admit
dēspērō, 1, despair (of)
dīmicō, 1, fight
extruō, -ere, extrūxī,
extrūctus, build
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lectus,
neglect
(administer, administration)
(administer, administration)
(administer, administration)

# **Adverbs**

magis, more rūrsus, again

# Etiam and Quoque; Quidem

Distinguish carefully the following words: etiam and quoque both mean *also*, but etiam generally precedes the word it emphasizes, quoque always follows. Quidem means *certainly*, to be sure, and follows the word it emphasizes. Nē... quidem means not even, and the emphatic word is placed between nē and quidem. Quidem alone never means even, nor is nē... etiam ever used for not even.

# **Word Studies**

The suffix **–ārium** (English *–arium*, *–ary*) is added chiefly to noun stems. The suffix **–ōrium** (English *–orium*, *–ory*, *–or*) is added chiefly to participial stems and so is usually preceded by **–t–**. Both suffixes mean a *place where*: granary, a *place where grain* (**grānum**) is kept. The plurals of *–ary* and *–ory* are *–aries* and *–ories*.

Define the following words according to their derivation and give the Latin words from which they come: aquarium, itinerary, library, laboratory, mirror (mīror), auditorium, factory, armory.

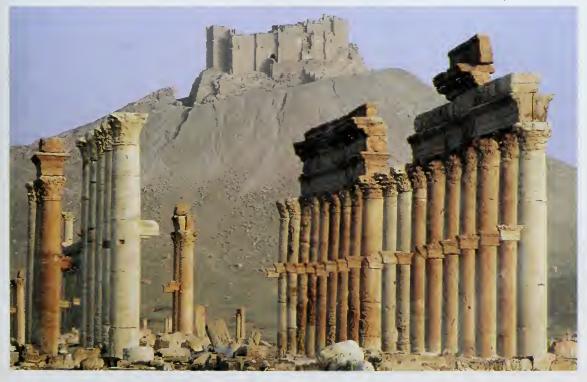
Syria came under Roman domination in the 2nd century B.C. with their victory over Antiochus III at Thermopylae in 190 B.C. as he tried to invade Greece. Evidence of the Roman influence can be seen in these ruins at Palmyra, Syria. Note the 13th century Crusader castle in the background.

HOTA · BENI

Other Latin
suffixes besides
-ārium and -ārium
sometimes take on
the English forms
mentioned above;
e.g., primary from
prīmārius, honor
from honor,
cursory from
cursõrius.

コンコンシンコンシンシンシンシンシンシンシンシンシン

N. Thiabaut/Explorer/Photo Researchers





# Roman Scandals

ē Nerōne<sub>1</sub> multa īnfāmia nārrābantur. Nerō erat prīnceps inūsitātae lūxuriae, adeō ut unguentīs lavāret et rētibus¹ aureīs piscārētur. Nūllam vestem bis gessit. Semper mīlle carrīs vel amplius fēcit iter. Soleae mūlārum eius ex argentō factae sunt. Domum ā Palātiō ad Ēsquiliās exstrūxit, quam auream nōmināvit. In eius vēstibulō locāta est imāgō 5 Nerōnis CXX pedēs alta. Erant lacūs, aedificia, agrī, silvae, cum multitūdine omnis generis animālium. In cēterīs partibus omnia aurō tēcta, ōrnāta gemmīs erant. Cum hanc domum dēdicāret, dīxit: "Tandem quasi homō habitāre coepī."

Etiam saltāvit et cantāvit in scaenā. In Graeciam profectus est ut ibi 10 cantāret. Cantante eō, excēdere theātrō nēminī licitum est. Multī, dēfessī audiendō laudandōque, clausīs oppidōrum portīs, aut fūrtim dēsiluērunt dē mūrō aut, morte simulātā, fūnere ēlātī sunt. In Ītaliam reversus studium nōn remīsit. Cōnservandae vōcis grātiā neque mīlitēs umquam appellāvit neque quicquam ēgit nisi prope stante phōnascō² quī monēret ut parceret 15 sibi ac sūdārium³ ad ōs applicāret.

Frätrem, uxōrem, sorōrem, mātrem interfēcit. Urbem Rōmam incendit $_2$  ut spectāculum simile incendiō Troiae antīquae cerneret. Magnam senātūs partem interfēcisse dīcitur.

Tandem ā senātū hostis iūdicātus est. Cum quaererētur ad poenam, fūgit 20 et sē interfēcit. In eō omnis Augustī familia cōnsūmpta est.

## QUESTIONS

- 1. Who killed Nero?
- 2. Whom did Nero kill?
- 3. Where did Nero sing?
- 4. Where was Nero's statue?

- 1 nets
- <sup>2</sup> singing teacher
- <sup>3</sup> handkerchief

A.D. 54-68

<sup>2</sup> This was a false charge, as Nero was not in Rome when the fire started, but at Antium. It burned six days and seven nights continuously and then started again.



A. K. G., Berlin/SuperStock, Inc.

The emperor Nero was born in A.D. 37 and ruled Rome from 54-68. He was infamous in his excesses and executed everyone who disagreed with him. He had a passion for art, drama, and music. When several governors rose up against him and the Praetorian Guard deserted him, he committed suicide in 68. In this painting, Nero is giving the death sentence signal to a gladiator.

# Grammar -

# Relative Purpose Clauses

The relative pronoun may be used instead of ut to introduce a purpose clause in the subjunctive when there is an antecedent. The pronoun must of course agree with the antecedent in gender and number.

Lēgatōs mīsit quī pacem facerent. Servös admīsit quī līberōs servärent.

He sent envoys to make peace.

He let the slaves in to guard the children.



- 1. Nero built a house covered with gold in which to live.
- 2. He summoned slaves who were to erect beautiful buildings.
- 3. He is said to have burned Rome to furnish a spectacle for himself.
- 4. He led a life of great luxury and cruelty and spent his time in singing.

# Vocabulary —

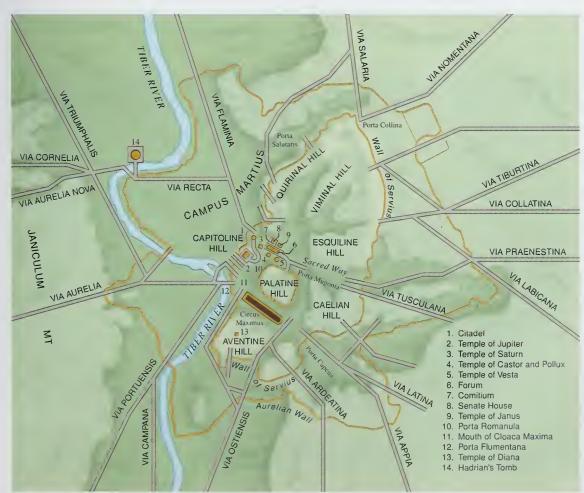
### **Nouns**

(argent, argentous) argentum, -ī, n. silver

mūla, -ae, f. mule

pedes, peditis, m. foot soldier; (pedestrian)

(pl.) infantry



THE CITY OF ROME AS IT WAS IN ANCIENT DAYS

# **Adjectives**

dīversus, -a, -um, different (diverse, diversity)
īnfāmis, -e, notorious (infamous, infamy)
inūsitātus, -a, um, unusual,
strange

# Verbs

efferō, efferre, extulī, (elate, elation)

ēlātus, carry out
locō, 1, place (locate, locative)
piscor, 1, fish
simulō, 1, pretend (dissimulate, simulate)
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tectus, cover (tectum)

# **Adverbs**

adeō, so, so much
bis, twice
furtim, secretly

# **Word Studies**

The prefix se— means apart from in Latin and English: separo, separate. Define according to the prefix: secret (cerno), secede, seclude, secure (cūra).

The Latin adverb **non**, meaning *not*, is freely used as a prefix in English: *nonsense*, *nonpartisan*. Give three other examples.

The preposition **ultrā** (related to **ultimus**) is used as a prefix in English with the meaning *extremely: ultrafashionable*. Give two other examples.

Explain admission, collocation, desperation, detective, negligence, simulated (pearls).

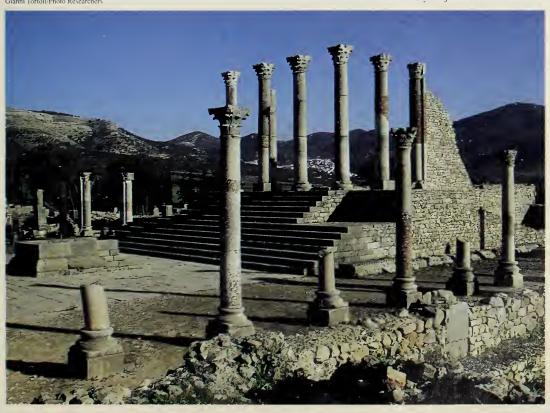
# Our Heritage

# THE ROMAN EMPIRE

The establishment of the extensive Roman Empire was a remarkable achievement at a time when communications were slow and difficult. A glance at the map (pp. 136–137) shows that, during the second century A.D., the Roman Empire encircled the Mediterranean and covered parts of three continents. Some of these territories have never recovered the prosperity they had in Roman times. Libya in northern Africa. for example, used to be a chief source of wheat for Italy, but today the United States is sending wheat to that country.

These Roman ruins in Volubilis, Morocco mark one of the most remote Roman bases of the empire. Can you identify the style of the columns?

Gianni Tortoli/Photo Researchers



The Empire brought not only prosperity but also peace and security to Roman citizens. Occasionally foreign wars were fought in remote parts of the Empire, but that meant nothing to most citizens. Sometimes there was a flare-up of civil war, but nothing damaged the stability of the Empire as a whole.

Political liberty was of course diminished during the Empire, compared with the Republic, but for most citizens this meant merely that the emperor and his officials ran things instead of the nobility who composed the senate during the Republic. The government was an efficient bureaucracy, and the emperors were, by and large, very capable administrators. Personal liberty was not affected, nor even the self-rule of the many communities scattered throughout the Empire. In the East the emperors did not force the people to give up their Greek language. In the West the people of their own accord gradually abandoned their native languages in favor of Latin.

The greatest freedom was allowed the individual. The Romans did not look upon themselves as a superior race, although there was of course some race prejudice especially towards the Greeks. There was also occasional persecution of the Christians, but that was not due to a desire to suppress individual religious beliefs but chiefly to the unwillingness of Christians to conform to practices that were considered part of one's duty to the state.

Something is to be said for the claim that the Roman Empire was based on the Stoic doctrine that all men are equal. This was felt by some to be true of slaves too. Roman slavery is not to be confused with some modern forms of slavery, for many Roman slaves won or bought their freedom. Citizenship was granted to men of the most diverse origins. A real world state, a kind of United Nations, was achieved, in which the chief right relinquished by its members was that of making war on their neighbors. The Empire was not an utterly despotic government that aimed at dominating the private lives of its subjects.

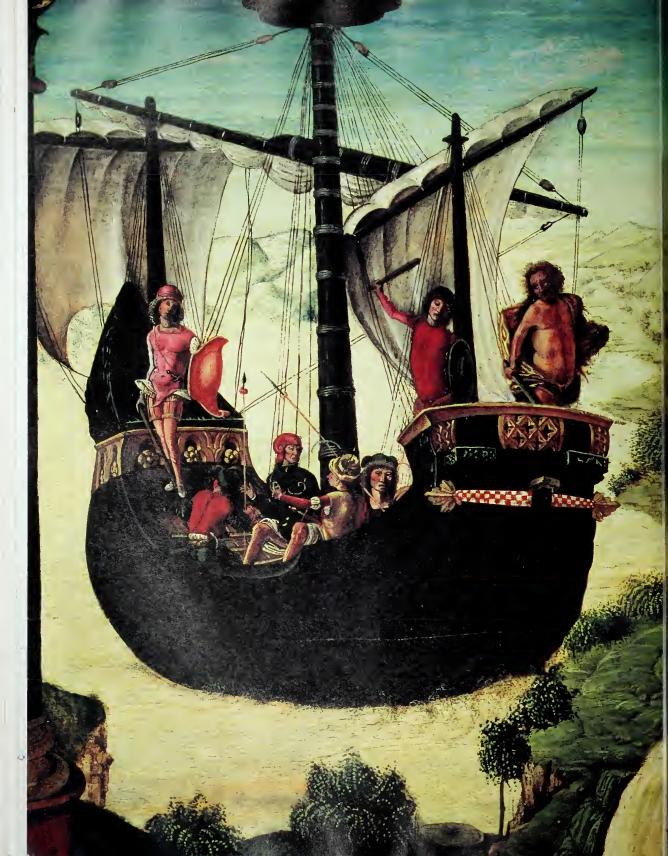
Pliny the Elder remarks on the mighty majesty of the Roman peace (immēnsae Rōmānae pācis maiestāte), which made the people and places and products of the whole world known to everyone, and prays that this gift of the gods may last forever, for, he says, the Romans are a gift to humanity comparable only to the sun which shines over all the world. In A.D. 400 the poet Claudian praised Rome for being the only nation that ever welcomed to her arms those she conquered, treating the whole human race as sons, not slaves, giving citizenship to the vanquished and uniting the most remote regions by the bonds of loyalty.

Exaggeration? Without doubt. But the reference to Rome's treatment of human beings as sons, not slaves, is of particular significance in estimating the place of the Roman Empire among the empires of history.



Scala/Art Resource, NY

This 3rd century sarcophagus relief portrays an early Christian agape, or love feast, during which Christians shared food and other goods. Sometimes these functions got out of hand, and the Apostle Paul sent stern words to the Corinthians on this matter (1 Corinthians 11:17-22).





## Unit IV The Argonauts

Jason and the Argonauts is a famous story from Greek mythology. It was one of many Greek tales admired and preserved by the Romans. In this painting by Lorenzo Costa (c. 1460-1535), we see Jason and his friends saihing toward Colchis in search of the Golden Fleece.

### The Story of the Golden Fleece

ne of the interesting tales told by the Greeks was about the Argonauts, those adventurers who sailed unknown seas in search of the Golden Fleece. A brief summary of the story is as follows:

Aeson (Ē'son), king of Thessaly, had a brother Pelias (Pe'lias) and a son Jason. Pelias drove out Aeson, seized the throne, and planned to kill Jason. But Jason escaped with the help of friends, who then told Pelias that his nephew had died.

An oracle told Pelias to beware of a man wearing only one shoe. Some years later Pelias announced a great festival, and crowds came to the city. Among them was Jason, now grown to manhood. On the way he lost one shoe. When Pelias saw him, he recalled the oracle. To get rid of Jason, he gave him the seemingly impossible task of obtaining the Golden Fleece. Jason asked Argus to build him a ship and gathered about him a group of brave friends. After many adventures they finally reached Colchis on the Black Sea.

From this point on the story becomes chiefly that of the enchantress Medea (Medē'a), daughter of Aeetes (Ēē'tēs), king of Colchis. She fell in love with Jason, and with her help he got the Golden Fleece. Jason and the Argonauts returned to Thessaly, taking Medea with them.

Medea now determined to get rid of Pelias so that Jason might be king. Pretending to make Pelias young again, she killed him. But the people were so incensed that they drove out Medea and Jason, who then went to Corinth. Here they quarreled, and Medea killed her own children. She fled to Athens, and Jason was later killed in an accident.

### The Argonauts and Latin Grammar

Remember that it is one thing to determine what a Latin sentence means, and another, often much more difficult, to put this meaning into good English. You should *understand* Latin as Latin, but *translate* it as English. Two hints for translation: if you can keep the natural English word order close to the Latin, so much the better; if you cannot, turn the whole Latin sentence upside down, if need be, to produce a smooth English version. Second, wherever you can, avoid the passive voice in English. The passive is very frequent in Latin, but its constant use in English makes the style flat, weak, and stilted.



MAP OF THE VOYAGE OF THE ARGONAUTS



<sup>1</sup> planned (with in animō)

rant ölim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quörum alter Aesön, alter Peliās appellābātur. Aesön prīmö rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucos annos Peliās rēgnī cupiditāte adductus non modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animo habēbat¹ Iāsonem, Aesonis fīlium, interficere. Quīdam tamen 5 amīcī Aesonis puerum ē tantō perīculō ēripere constituērunt. Noctū igitur Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum postero diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās¹ cum hoc audīvisset, speciem doloris praebuit et quae causa esset mortis quaesīvit. Illī autem cum bene intellegerent dolorem eius falsum esse, fābulam dē morte puerī fīnxērunt.

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus² nē³ rēgnum suum āmitteret, amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs prōcessit et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit. Ōrāculum monuit Peliam ut. sī quis venīret⁴ calceum ūnum gerēns, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset. Diē 15 cōnstitūtō magnus numerus hominum undique convēnit; inter aliōs vēnit etiam Iāsōn, quī ā pueritiā apud centaurum quendam habitāverat. Dum tamen iter facit,⁵ calceum alterum⁶ in trānseundō flūmine āmīsit.

### 

### Nouns

calceus, -ī, m. shoe
cupiditās, -tātis, f. desire
pueritia, -ae, f. childhood,
boyhood

calceus, -ī, m. shoe
(cupidity)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> fearing

<sup>3</sup> that

<sup>4</sup> for what reason

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> centaur

<sup>6</sup> one

<sup>1</sup> Subject of audīvisset but placed outside the **cum** clause, because it is also the subject of the following verbs. This is common in Latin.





Convrie

Chiron, the wise and just centaur, on a black-figured Greek vase now in the British Museum. The half-man, halfhorse Chiron was the teacher of many Greek heroes, including Jason.

On the other side of the same vase depicting Chiron, we see Achilles' father, King Peleus, handing over his small son for instruction. Chiron's dog greets the visitors.

### Adjective

brevis, -e, short

(abbreviation, brief)

### Verbs

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautūrus,

(caution, cautious)

beware, take precautions against

morior, morī, mortuus, die

(mortuary)

renūntiō, 1, report

(renounce)

### Adverbs

noctū, by night

(nocturne, nocturnal)

undique, from all sides

### **Word Studies**

Review: etsī, posterus, praebeō, quaerō, quīdam, redeō, tantus, vereor.

Explain abbreviate, cupidity, fratricide, inquisition, mortuary, nocturne, posterity, reverend.

# The Golden Fleece and the Building of the Argo

āsōn igitur, ūnō pede nūdō, in rēgiam pervēnit; quem<sub>1</sub> cum Peliās vīdisset, subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Cholchidis illō tempore obtinēbat.

- 5 Huic commissum erat vellus aureum quod Phrixus õlim ibi relīquerat. Cõnstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dare, ut hoc vellus obtinēret; cum enim rēs esset magnī perīculī eum in itinere peritūrum esse spērābat. Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit et quid fierī vellet docuit. Iāsōn autem, etsī intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.
- Cum Colchis multörum diērum iter<sub>3</sub> ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficīscī. Dīmīsit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent et diem certum conveniendī dīcerent. Intereā negōtium dedit Argō<sub>4</sub> ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt: Argus enim tantam dīligentiam praebēbat ut nē noctū quidem 15 labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis
- paulō erat lātior quam quibus, ūtī consuevimus.

 $_{\rm 1}$  quem is used for eum to connect closely with the preceding sentence; translate as if cum eum

<sup>2</sup> The clause is in apposition with negotium.

<sup>3</sup> accusative of extent

<sup>4</sup> from Argus, a man, not from Argo

<sup>5</sup> supply eae: those which.



This Roman terra-cotta relief shows Athena comfortably seated, helping rig the sails of the Argo. Although the story of the Argonauts is filled with myth and miracle, it probably records some dim memory of the Greeks' first exploration of the Black Sea.

### Vocabulary -

### Noun

**vellus**, **-eris**, *n*. *fleece*, *wool* 

(vellum)

### Verbs

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus,

summon

consuesco, -ere, -suevi, suetus,

become accustomed; (in perf.) be accustomed

pereō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, (perishable)

perish, pass away, be lost

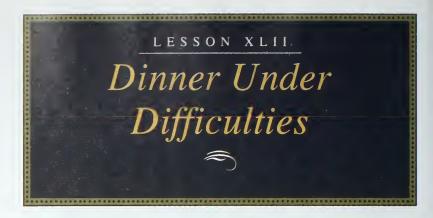
**ūtor**, **ūtī**, **ūsus**, *use* (+ abl.) (usage, useful)

### Adverbs

intereā, meanwhile libenter, willingly, gladly paulō, a little

### **Word Studies**

Review: circiter, cōnsūmō, enim, ineō, pereō, proficīscor, subitō. Explain consumer, corroborate, public utility, robust, solitary, usage.



<sup>1</sup> about

<sup>2</sup> weather

3 set sail

4 = quaesīvissent

5 his

6 as a result

ntereà is diès aderat quem Iason per nuntios edixerat, et ex omnibus regionibus Graeciae multi undique conveniebant. Traditum est autem in hoc numero fuisse Herculem. Orpheum, Castorem, multosque alios quorum nomina notissima sunt. Ex his Iason, quos, arbitratus est ad 5 omnia subeunda pericula paratissimos esse, eos ad 1 numerum quinquaginta delegit; tum paucos dies moratus ut ad omnes casus subsidia compararet, navem deduxit, et tempestatem² ad navigandum idoneam nactus solvit.3

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt et ibi in terram ēgressī sunt. Cum ab incolīs quaesīssent<sup>4</sup> quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret, 10 certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt hunc caecum esse et suppliciō afficī, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in fīliōs suōs praebuisset. Cuius<sup>5</sup> supplicī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam speciē horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpyiae appellābantur. Phīneō summam molestiam 15 afferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum appositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent,<sup>6</sup> Phīneus fame paene mortuus est.

The antecedent is eos (in the next line), which should therefore be translated first.



The Mediterranean world, much as Jason would have seen it. The geographical formations are the same today—mountains, forests, islands, and maybe a little mystery.

### 

### **Nouns**

cursus, -ūs, m. course molestia, -ae, f. annoyance volucris, -is, f. bird (cursive, cursory)
(molest, molestation)

### **Adjectives**

caecus, -a, -um, blind (caecilian)
crūdēlis, -e, cruel (cruelty)
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fitting

### Verbs

accumbō, -ere, accubuī, accubitūrus, recline (at the table)

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus,

bring (to), assign, report

auferō, auferre, abstulī,

(ablative)

ablātus, take away

comparō, 1, get ready (comparative, comparison)

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus,

(egress, egression)

go out, land

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus,

meet with

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus,

(tradition, traditional)

hand over, relate

### Adverb

quotiens, as often as, how often (quotient)

### **Word Studies**

Review: arbitror, cāsus, famēs, moror, paene. Explain convention, egress, moratorium, subsidy, tradition.



Caput virginis, corpus volucris habet. This terra-cotta Harpy once decorated the roof of an Etruscan building in the 5th or 6th century B.C. It is called an antefix.

# Two Good Turns

ēs igitur in hōc locō erant cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Nōn enim dubitābat quīn<sub>1</sub> Argonautae sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit quī Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus prōmīsit sē magna praemia 5 datūrum esse sī illī remedium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt et cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpyiae cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladīs volucrēs petīvērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, quī ālīs īnstrūctī sunt, in āera<sub>2</sub> sē sublevāvērunt ut dēsuper impetum facerent. 10 Quod cum sēnsissent Harpyiae, perterritae statim fūgērunt neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō grātiās referret, Iāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine. Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant 15 et sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant. Iāsōn, sublātīs ancorīs, nāvem solvit et mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit. Tum in prōrā stāns columbam¹ ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit et priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concur-20 rerent, Argonautae summā vī rēmīs contendērunt et nāvem perdūxērunt.

1 dove

<sup>1</sup> that, used after a negative expression of doubting to introduce a clause in the subjunctive (ferrent)

<sup>2</sup> accusative singular of āer

### 

### **Nouns**

āēr, āeris, m. air(aerial, aeronautics)impetus, -ūs, m. attack(impetuosity, impetus)ratiō, -ōnis, f. manner, reason(ration, rationale)rēmus, -ī, m. oar

### **Verbs**

appropinquō, 1, come near to,
approach
cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus,
dash together
cōnor, 1, try
reperiō, -īre, repperī,
repertus, find
sublevō, 1, raise; (reflex.) rise
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus,
raise
vītō, 1, ayoid

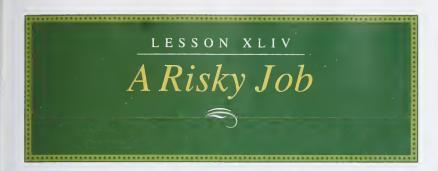
(conflict)
(repertory)
(repertory)
(repertory)

### Adverbs

magnopere, greatly
simul, at the same time (simulcast, simultaneous)
simul atque (ac), as soon as

### **Word Studies**

Review: eō (adv.), intervāllum, rūrsus, statim. Explain aerial, conflict, impetuous, repertory, simultaneous, volatile.



revī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnibus Colchōrum erat. Eō cum in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem prōcessērunt et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille īrā commōtus diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc 5 negōtium suscēpisse, prōmīsit sē vellus trāditūrum esse, sī Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs perfēcisset;¹ et cum Iāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum iungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs iūnctīs, ager arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs audītīs, Iāsōn, nē hanc 10 occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae² āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

At Mēdēa, rēgis fīlia, Iāsonem amāvit, et ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat) hoc cōnsil-15 ium iniit. Mediā nocte clam ex urbe ēvāsit et herbās quāsdam carpsit; ex hīs unguentum parāvit quod vī suā corpus aleret³ nervōsque⁴ cōnfirmāret. Hōc factō, Iāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō istī⁵ labōrēs cōnficiendī essent corpus suum et arma oblineret. Iāsōn, etsī paene omnibus magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praestābat, tamen hoc cōnsilium 20 nōn neglegendum esse cēnsēbat.

<sup>1</sup> would perform

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> of accomplishing his mission

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> would nourish

<sup>4</sup> muscles

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> the above-mentioned

### Vocabulary

### **Nouns**

dracō, -ōnis, m. dragon

(Draconian, draconic)

īra, -ae, f. anger

(ire)

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. opportunity

(occasion, occasional)

unguentum, -ī, n. ointment, salve (unguent)

### Verbs

arō, 1, plow

(arable)

carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus,

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus,

pick, take; consume

(censor, consensus)

think

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus,

(edit, editorial)

give out, inflict

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus,

(join, junction)

join, harness

oblino, -ere, oblevī, oblitus,

(obliterate)

smear

serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, plant, sow

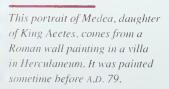
### **Adverbs**

aegrē, with difficulty clam, secretly

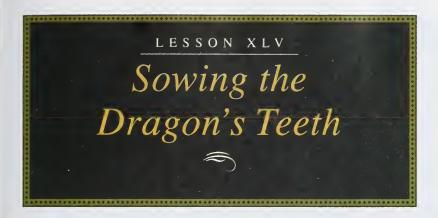
### **Word Studies**

Review: alō, diū, neglegō, postulō, praestō.

Explain dental, conjunction, liniment, postulate, Unguentine.







bi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat, Iāsōn, ortā lūce,¹ cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum prōcessit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit in quō taurī erant inclūsī; tum, portīs apertīs, taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte iugum imposuit. Tum Iāsōn, omnibus aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam dīligentiam 5 praebuit ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnficeret. Hōc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī essent virī armātī mīrō modō gignerentur.

Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāson lassitūdine exan-10 imātus quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī istī gignerentur. Paucās horās dormiēbat; sub² vesperum tamen ē somnō subitō excitātus rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine gladiīs galeīsque armātī mīrō modō ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Iāson cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse putābat. Saxum igi-15 tur ingēns in mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum sibi quisque id saxum habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs gladiīs, inter sē³ pugnāre coepērunt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī vulneribus cōnfectī ā Iāsone nūllō negōtiō⁴ interfectī sunt.

<sup>1</sup> at daybreak (ablative absolute)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> toward

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> with one another

<sup>4</sup> without trouble



Jason seizes the horns of a firebreathing bull. Once he yokes this one with the other, he will plow the field and sow the dragon's teeth.

### Vocabulary -

### **Nouns**

contrōversia, -ae, f. dispute galea, -ae, f. helmet iugum, -ī, n. yoke lassitūdō, -dinis, f. weariness merīdiēs, -ēī, m. midday, noon (controversial, controversy)
(galeate, galeiform)
(jugular)
(lassitude)
(meridian, meridional)

### **Adjectives**

ingēns, ingentis (gen.), huge iste, ista, istud, that

### Verbs

armō, 1, arm, equip

aspiciō, -ere, aspexī, aspectus,
look on
exanimō, 1, exhaust, kill
gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus,
produce; (passive) be born
imperō, 1, command, order
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus,
(disperse, sparse)

(armor, armament)
(aspect)
(exanimate)
(genius)

scatter, sprinkle

### **Word Studies**

Review: aperiō, at, coepī, occīdō, orior, quiēs, saxum, vesper. Explain aspect, disperse (from spargō), imperative, lassitude, quietus.

218

### LESSON XLVI Jason Gets the Fleece

t rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit lāsonem laborem propositum confēcisse, īrā graviter commōtus est: intellegēbat enim Mēdēam auxilium eī tulisse. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō esse perīculō, fugā salūtem petere constituit. Omnibus igitur rebus ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō¹ sub- 5¹ Argo (the ship) ducta erat processit. Eo cum venisset, ad pedes Iasonis se proiecit et multis cum lacrimīs eum ōrāvit nē in tantō perīculō sē<sup>2</sup> dēsereret. Ille libenter eam excepit et hortatus est ne patris iram timeret. Promisit autem se quam prīmum eam in nāvī suā āvectūrum.3

Postrīdiē Iāson cum sociīs suīs, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem 10 idoneam nactī ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt quo Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmonstrāvit. Eo cum vēnissent, Iāson in terram ēgressus, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās contendit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam progressus vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vīdit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultătis: non modo enim locus ipse egregie et natura et arte 15 mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō speciē terribilī arborem custōdiēbat. Tum Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmonstrāvimus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum quem ex arbore proximā arripuerat venēnō īnfēcit. Hōc facto, ad locum appropinquavit et draconem, qui faucibus apertis eius adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit; deinde, dum dracō somnō oppres-20 sus dormit, Iāson vellus aureum ex arbore arripuit et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.4

<sup>2</sup> i.e., Medea

3 would carry away

4 withdrew (with pedem)

### Vocabulary —

### Nouns

difficultās, -tātis, f. difficulty rāmus, -ī, m. branch

venēnum, -ī, n. poison

(difficult)

(ramification, ramify) (venom, venomous)



On this red-figured vase in New York City, Jason reaches up to steal the Golden Fleece, while Athena (center) looks on. At the right, one of the Argonauts holds the rail of the Argo. We might expect the hero Jason to be a little bigger and less awkward than this.

### Adjective

apertus, -a, -um, open

(aperture)

### Verbs

cēlō, 1, hide

 $contend\bar{o}, \text{-ere}, \text{-tend}\bar{\iota},$ 

-tentūrus, struggle, hasten

(contend, contention)

### Adverbs

postrīdiē, on the next day
quam, how, as (also conjunction)
suprā, above

(supranational, supraorbital)

### **Word Studies**

Review: arbor, excipio, hortor, passus.

Explain contention, dragon, hortatory, infection, projectile, suspension.

### LESSON XLVII Escape Through Murder

ostquam Iāson et Mēdēa, vellus aureum ferentēs, ad nāvem pervēnissent, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus conscenderunt et prīmā vigilia solvērunt. At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit fīliam suam non modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, nāvem longam¹ quam celerrimē dēdūcī iussit et fugientēs² īnsecūtus est. 5¹ a warship Argonautae omnibus vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingentī esset magnitūdine, non eādem celeritāte quā<sup>3</sup> Colchī progredi poterant. Quae cum ita essent, a Colchis sequentibus paene capti sunt. At Mēdēa, cum vīdīsset quō in locō rēs essent, nefārium cōnsilium cēpit.

Erat in nāvī Argonautārum fīlius rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, 10 ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa fugiēns sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa interficere constituit ut, membrīs eius in mare coniectīs, cursum Colchōrum impedīret; sciēbat enim Aeētem, cum membra fīlī vīdisset, non longius prosecuturum esse. Neque opinio eam fefellit.4 Aeetes, cum prīmum membra vīdit, ad ea colligenda nāvem dētinērī iussit. Dum tamen 15 ea geruntur, Argonautae mox ex conspectu hostium remoti sunt, neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Eridanum, pervenerunt.

Tandem post multa perīcula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus ad rēgem Peliam statim processit et, vellere aureō monstrato, ab eo postulavit ut regnum sibi traderetur. Pelias 20 prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem trīstitiā tacitus permānsit; tandem ita locūtus est: "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse confectum; certē dies suprēmus mihi adest. Liceat<sup>5</sup> igitur mihi, dum vīvam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre; cum autem tandem dēcesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāvisset.

<sup>2</sup> the fugitives

4 she was not mistaken

<sup>5</sup> let it be permitted

Medea is the subject. 2 the Po, a river of northern Italy

Jason returns to Thessaly and King Pelias, this time with the Golden Fleece.



PHOTRI/AISA

### Vocabulary ———

### Nouns

onus, oneris, n. weight opīniō, -ōnis, f. opinion trīstitia, -ae, f. sadness

(onerous, onus) (opinionated) (triste, tristful)

### **Adjectives**

dexter, -tra, -trum, right

(ambidextrous, dexterous)

(as opposed to left)

nefārius, -a, -um, unspeakable

(nefarious)

tacitus, -a, -um, silent

(tacit, taciturn)

### Verbs

conscendo, -ere, -scendi,

-scēnsus, climb (in), embark (in)

dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī,

(desist)

dēstitūrus, cease

īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus,

ригѕие

tardo, 1, slow up

(retardant, tardy)

### Adverbs

procul, far off

unde, from which (place)

### Conjunctions

cum prīmum, as soon as

nēve (neu), and not, nor

priusquam, before

### **Word Studies**

Review: colligō, cōnficiō, cōnspectus, licet, loquor, mora, ōlim, prōgredior, sequor, vehō.

Explain circumlocution, detention, fallacy, illicit, infallible, nefarious, opinionated, survivor, taciturn.



īs rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rēgnī cupiditāte adducta mortem rēgī per dolum înferre constituit. Ad filias regis venit atque ita locuta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte iam esse confectum neque ad laborem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūrsus iuvenem fierī?" 5 Tum fīliae rēgis ita respondērunt: "Num hoc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene iuvenis factus est?" At Mēdēa respondit: "Scītis mē medicīnae summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vobīs dēmonstrābo quo modo haec rēs fierī possit." Hīs dictīs, cum arietem aetāte iam confectum interfēcisset, membra eius in vāse aēneō posuit et, ignī suppositō,1 in aquam herbās 10 quāsdam īnfūdit. Tum carmen magicum cantābat. Mox ariēs ē vāse exsiluit et, vīribus refectīs, per agros currēbat.

Dum fīliae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vos igitur, sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vos patris membra 15 in vās conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbõ." Quod ubi audītum est, fīliae rēgis consilium quod dedisset Mēdēa non omittendum putāvērunt. Patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt et membra eius in vās coniēcērunt. At Mēdēa non easdem herbās dedit quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque postquam diū frustrā exspectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā<sup>2</sup> mortuum esse intellēxērunt. 20 Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniuge suo rēgnum acceptūrum esse; sed cīvēs cum intellegerent quō modō Peliās periisset, lāsone et Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

placed under (the pot) <sup>2</sup> in fact, really (with re)

> White-haired King Pelias watches Medea (center) perform her magic while the ram boils. At the right is one of Pelias' daughters. A slave, or perhaps Jason, tends the fire. Is this vase red-figured or black-figured?



### 

### Nouns

ariēs. -ietis, m. ram,
battering ram
coniūnx, -iugis, m.. f. (conjugal)
husband, wife
dolus, -ī. n. treachery, deceit,
trickery
vās, vāsis, n. kettle, pot, vessel (vase)

### Adjective

aēneus, -a, -um, (of) bronze, copper

### Verbs

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, (conjecture)

throw

exsiliō, -īre, exsiluī, —,

leap up or out

īnfundō, -ere, īnfūdī, īnfūsus, (infuse, infusion)

pour in

necō, 1, kill

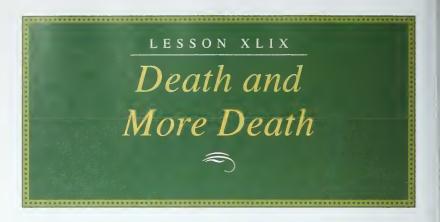
### Adverbs

frustrā, in vain (frustrate, frustration)
satis, enough (satiate, satisfy)
umquam, ever

### **Word Studies**

Review: ignis, ita, quantus, spērō.

Explain conjugal, dismember, frustrate, imperishable, infusion, internecine, intuition, miraculous, rejuvenate.



ost haec Iāsōn et Mēdēa ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, cuius urbis Creōn rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī<sub>1</sub> fīlia ūna nōmine Glaucē. Quam cum vīdisset, Iāsōn cōnstituit Mēdēam uxōrem suam repudiāre, ut Glaucēn<sub>2</sub> in mātrimōnium dūceret. At Mēdēa, ubi 5 intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, īrā graviter commōta iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāvit sē tantam iniūriam ultūram. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā arte contextam: hanc īnfēcit venēnō, cuius vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis eam vestem induisset, corpus eius quasi ignī urerētur. Hōc factō, vestem ad Glaucēn mīsit. Illa autem nihil malī suspicāns dōnum 10 libenter accēpit, et vestem novam, mōre fēminārum, sine morā induit.

Statim Glaucē dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit et post paulum summō cruciātū affecta ē vītā excessit. Tum Mēdēa furōre impulsa fīliōs suōs necāvit et ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō perīculō auxilium sibi ferret. Sōl autem hīs precibus commōtus currum 15 mīsit cui dracōnēs ālīs īnstrūctī iūnctī erant. Mēdēa currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera¹ vecta incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis in eam partem² ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subitō dēlāpsa virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.

<sup>1</sup> air (a Greek form of the accusative) <sup>2</sup> falling towards that side (with dēlāpsa)

### 

### Nouns

cruciātus, -ūs, m. torture

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,

n. oath

prex, precis, f. prayer

turris, -is, f. tower

(excruciating)

(deprecate, deprecatory)

(turret)

dative of possession

accusative (Greek form)



Roman ruins from the city of Corinth, showing a temple and acropolis of Corinth. Here is where the final chapter of the story of Jason took place, with the death of Glauce and the timely disappearance of Medea.

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

### Adjective

infēlix, infēlicis (gen.), unfortunate, unlucky

(infelicitous, infelicity)

### Verbs

induō, -ere, induī, indūtus,
put on, dress, impale
repudiō, 1, divorce
suspicor, 1, suspect
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, avenge
ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustus, burn

(repudiate, repudiation) (suspicion, suspicious)

### **Word Studies**

Review: fēmina, incolumis, opprimō, sentiō, sōl, uxor, vestis. Explain context, deprecate, excruciating, investiture, morale, morality, suspicion, tinge, uxoricide.









### Unit V Dē Bellō

Gallicō I

The Senate House in Rome. Originally an advisory group to the early kings, the Senate decreed an end to the kings and thus established the Republic. At this time, they became the dominant goverumental group. The cūria was the meeting place of the Senate. As Julius Caesar came to power and took up the cause of the general populace against the senatorial clique, he had the senate house rebuilt, renamed it the Cūria Jūlia, and increased the number of senators to 900 to reward his supporters. This number was reduced back to 600 under Augustus. During the Empire, the Senate was returned to its primarily advisory capacity.

C. M. Dixon

# Julius Caesar

o man is more immediately associated with Rome than is Julius Caesar. To most people the name Caesar symbolizes the dynamism and greatness of the republic that he did so much to turn into an empire. The word Caesar is preserved in the titles Kaiser and Czar, and has come so nearly to be a synonym for royal or dictatorial power that we speak of a minor autocrat as a "little Caesar." Most of us have heard or used many of the phrases that have grown up around him— "crossing the Rubicon," "the Ides of March," "Et tu, Brute," "great Caesar's ghost." No other Roman has been the subject of so much later attention: we have his biography in Latin by Suetonius, one in Greek by Plutarch, plays by Shakespeare and George Bernard Shaw; and several novels and films have celebrated his life and character.

Gaius Julius Caesar was born in 100 B.C. to a patrician family whose members flattered themselves on being so ancient that they could trace their line all the way back to a divine ancestress—Venus. But, in spite of their aristocratic lineage, the Julians became associated with the political program of the common people in the first century B.C. Whether it was from personal conviction or shrewd political insight into the way his ambitions could most easily be realized, Caesar early adopted the popular cause against the senatorial clique, made up of a small number of noble families who had ruled Rome well but autocratically for centuries. Caesar's stand alarmed the conservative dictator Sulla and nearly cost Caesar his life, but, by a combination of a gambler's daring, great acumen in wooing the favor of the people, and an almost irresistible personal magnetism, he steadily made his way up the political ladder.

Somewhat before 60 B.C. Caesar allied himself with Crassus, a wealthy politician (who underwrote the enormous debts Caesar had contracted), and in that year he joined Pompey, the greatest military hero of the time, and Crassus in the coalition called the First Triumvirate ("Three-man Rule"). As a result, in 59 B.C., Caesar was elected to the consulship, the highest office in the Roman government. He so dominated his colleague



The Temple of Venus and Rome, in the Roman Forum, was restored by the emperor Maxentius in A.D. 307. It was dedicated to Venus, the supposed ancestor of Julius Caesar's family, and to all the local divinities of Rome.

Scala/Art Resource NY

Bibulus that the year was jestingly called, not "the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus," but "the consulship of Julius and Caesar." Many senators, realizing the danger that Caesar presented to their conservative position, tried to restrict the importance of the command he would hold as an exconsul, but by political maneuvering Caesar won the proconsulship of Gaul and Illyricum. In all he spent nine years (58–50 B.C.) in subjugating and governing Gaul. In the following pages you will read his own account of that conquest, the *Commentaries* (or *Notes*) on the Gallic War.

Caesar is remarkably tight-lipped about his own personal motives. It is apparent, however, that at the start of his command his attitude was a defensive one of simply protecting Italy and the Roman Province in southern France from the barbarian tribes. He then shifted to a more aggressive attitude aimed at reducing all Transalpine Gaul to the status of a Roman province. Possibly he realized that "a good offense is the best defense." He often states that friendly Gallic tribes appealed to him for protection against

their more aggressive neighbors. Possibly he was driven farther and farther north by a consuming ambition for military power and glory. It is certain, however, that he used these years to develop his extraordinary military talents and to forge a highly loyal and efficient fighting force. There is also much evidence to show that even while Caesar was away in Gaul he used his prestige and captured gold to build a strong political party at Rome.

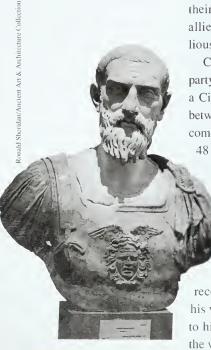
Unquestionably he was a great military commander; his absolute physical courage, self-confidence, iron will, fairness, and generosity with praise and rewards made him an unparalleled leader of men. He was a master tactician, relying on great mobility to surprise his enemies, quick to adapt his maneuvers to the terrain and to press every advantage in the field. He showed no less skill in dealing with the people of Gaul, capitalizing on their failure to unite and on their vacillation, trusting those who became his allies, and employing harsh punishments only when the offenders' rebelliousness was incorrigible.

Caesar's successes in Gaul, Britain, and Germany and the growth of his party at Rome led inevitably to conflict with Pompey and the Senate. In 49 B.C., a Civil War began when Caesar crossed the Rubicon, the boundary river between Cisalpine Gaul and Italy proper. The Senatorial army under Pompey's command abandoned Italy and was defeated near Pharsalus (in Greece) in 48 B.C. Within the next three years Caesar had overrun all opposition and

become virtually master of the Western world. In the few years before his assassination in 44 B.C., he brought about many reforms in Roman political and economic life, and laid the basis upon which his grandnephew and adopted son Octavian built the Roman Empire.

Caesar was also most expert in "public relations." He wrote his Commentaries (or Notes) on the Gallic War not only to provide a record of the campaigns for future historians, but also to keep himself and his victories before the eyes of the Roman voters. Since he regularly refers to himself in the third person (only occasionally using the modest "we"), the work takes on a deceptively impersonal air, and the reader is inclined to forget that the image of this dynamic and unconquerable, yet understanding and merciful, general is being created by the "hero" himself. The style is likewise deceptively straightforward and clear, and the facts apparently so complete that no ancient historian ever needed or dared to rewrite his story. His three-book account of the Civil War is a valuable document of that bloody period, but it is the earlier work on Gaul that assures Caesar a place among the first rank of military historians.

As a military man, Caesar ranks with such geniuses as Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon. Like Pericles, Washington, and Churchill, he was a great statesman, one whose military triumphs and political activities profoundly affected the future of the world. Yet, with all we know about him, there remains some of the mystery and controversy that surround all great



Pompey (106-48 B.C.) was supported by Julius Caesar for several important military assignments, where he performed well. Pompey, Caesar, and Crassus formed the first triumvirate in 60 B.C. The deaths of Pompey's wife, Julia (Caesar's daughter) in 54 and of Crassus in 53, combined with the huge success of Caesar in Gaul caused a split between Caesar and Pompey, who worked against Caesar for a second consulate.

men. Naturally he had his faults. He was a bit vain about his personal appearance, and particularly sensitive about his baldness. Although not especially superstitious about himself, he capitalized on the people's belief that fortune favored him. Even though "Caesar's wife must be above suspicion," Caesar himself was not. But the gossip that surrounded his personal life served only to spread his reputation and to aid him at the polls. Much more serious is the charge that he was nothing more than a tyrant, bent on destroying the Roman republican form of government to satisfy his own lust for power. This question is still hotly debated, and, as you read his own words in the pages that follow, you will have a chance to decide the answer for yourself.

THE GRANGER COLLECTION, New York



The assassination of Julius Caesar took place on March 15, 44 B.C. A brilliant general and formidable politician, it was feared that he wanted to be made king. A conspiracy of senators led by Brutus and Cassius Longinus ended this fear.



aesar's army (exercitus) was composed mainly of Roman citizens who served as foot soldiers (peditēs). It also contained a cavalry force (equitēs), which during the Gallic Wars averaged about 4,000 men. The cavalry were foreign mercenaries recruited in Spain, Germany, and Gaul. They were used mainly for scouting and surprise attacks. in preliminary skirmishing to test the enemy's strength, or in pursuit of a retreating foe.

The Roman army was organized as follows:

- I. Groupings
- A. Infantry (peditēs)
- 1. Legiō. The average size of one of Caesar's legions during the Gallic War was probably about 3,200, though the full strength was supposed to be 6,000.

C. M. Dixon



The Roman cavalry played a crucial role throughout Caesar's campaign in Gaul. This relief shows a Roman eques about to kill a barbarian.

- 2. **Cohortēs.** Each legion was divided into ten *cohorts* (cohortēs), averaging 360 men each.
- 3. **Manipuli**. Each cohort was divided into three *maniples* (manipuli) of 120 men each.
- 4. **Ōrdinēs**. Each maniple was divided into two *centuries* (**ōrdinēs**<sub>1</sub>), originally of 100 men each but averaging 60 in Caesar's army.

#### B. Cavalry (equites)

- 1. **Ālae.** The **āla**, or *squadron*, consisted of 300 or 400 men commanded by a **praefectus equitum** (*cavalry prefect*).
- 2. **Turmae.** Each **āla** was divided into **turmae**, or *troops*, of about 30 men each.
- 3. **Decuriae.** Each **turma** was divided into **decuriae**, or *squads*, of 10 men each.

#### C. Auxiliaries (auxilia)

- 1. Levis armātūrae peditēs. *Light-armed troops* recruited from allied or dependent states. Their officers were Romans. Caesar did not depend upon his auxilia to win battles but used them mostly for raiding and foraging.
- 2. **Funditōrēs.** *Slingers*, principally from the Balearic Islands (Majorca, etc.), near the east coast of Spain.
- 3. **Sagittāriī**. *Bowmen*, or *archers*, from Crete in the eastern Mediterranean and Numidia in Africa.

#### D. Noncombatants

- 1. Cālōnēs. *Camp servants*, including slaves attached to the officers' quarters. Each legion had about 500.
  - 2. Mūliōnēs. Muledrivers in charge of heavy baggage of the army.
- 3. **Mercātōrēs**. *Traders* allowed to accompany the army and conduct canteens outside the camp.

#### II. Personnel

- A. Enlisted Men
- 1. **Mīles legiōnārius**. A *legionary soldier* was usually a citizen volunteer who enlisted for the regular term of twenty years. Roman citizens between the ages of 17 and 46 were subject to military draft (dīlēctus).
- 2. **Ēvocātus.** A *volunteer* who had served his full time but had reenlisted. Such men were the flower of Caesar's army.
- 3. **Signifer.** *Standard bearer* of the maniple, resembling the modern color bearer.
  - 4. Aquilifer. Bearer of the eagle, emblem of the legion.
- 5. **Centurio**, **decurio**. Each of the 60 centuries of the legion was in charge of a *centurion*, a noncommissioned officer appointed from the ranks

This term is sometimes used in Caesar in the sense of line, position, or rank.

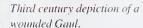
in recognition of brave and efficient service. The *first centurion* (**prīmipīlus**) was a fearless officer who fought in the ranks, leading his men in person. Much of the success of an army depended on such men. They maintained strict discipline, which they enforced with the **vītis**, similar to a policeman's club. The commander of a squad of cavalry was called a *decurion*.

#### B. Commissioned Officers

- 1. Tribūnus mīlitum, praefectus equitum. Each legion had six military tribunes, the lowest commissioned officers. They were usually young men, well educated and of good family, but untrained, and were entrusted with duties of minor importance, such as the command of a legion in camp or on the march. These men usually were in the army to get the military experience that was prerequisite to a political career. A cavalry prefect, similar in rank to a military tribune, commanded an āla.
- 2. Quaestor. Like a *quartermaster*, the **quaestor** supervised the pay of the men and the purchase of supplies; in battle he sometimes commanded a legion.



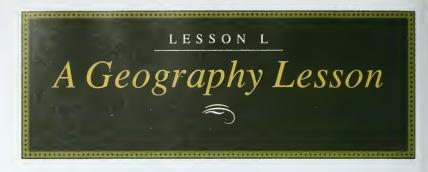
The Praetorian Guard was a privileged, politically influential bodyguard established in 27 B.C. to attend and protect the emperor. It consisted of 16,000 men. The Praetorian Guard was disbanded in A.D. 312 by Constantine I.





Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

- 3. Lēgātus. Caesar had a number of *staff officers* (lēgātī), who were appointed by the Roman senate with the rank of a modern *lieutenant general* or *major general*. In battle each legion was usually commanded by a lēgātus, but the lēgātī did not hold permanent command.
- 4. **Dux**, **imperātor**. The *general* (**dux**) assumed the title **imperātor** after winning his first important victory. After defeating the Helvetians, Caesar was regularly addressed as **imperātor**, a title which corresponds to that of *commanding general* in a modern army. Any staff officer appointed by the **imperātor** to command a division of troops became temporarily **dux** of that division.
  - C. Specialists Attached to the General Staff
- 1. **Fabrī.** Engineers specially trained or detailed from the ranks to build ships, bridges, siege engines, and winter quarters. Such work was in charge of the chief of engineers (**praefectus fabrum**).
- 2. **Speculātōrēs**. *Spies* employed singly by the general to obtain news by going within the enemy's lines, often in disguise.
- 3. **Exploratores**. Mounted *scouts*, or *patrols*, who scoured the country for information. They usually went out in small parties.





- 1 in their own language
- <sup>2</sup> supply linguā
- <sup>3</sup> from one another
- <sup>4</sup> Garonne, Marne, Seine
- <sup>5</sup> conjunction
- 6 i.e., Germānōrum
  - <sup>7</sup> on the side of; literally, from (the direction of)
  - 8 accusative

allia est omnis<sub>1</sub> dīvīsa<sub>2</sub> in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam<sub>3</sub> incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam eī quī ipsorum linguā<sup>1</sup> Celtae, nostrā<sup>2</sup> Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē<sup>3</sup> differunt. Gallos<sub>4</sub> ab Aquītānīs Garunna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona<sup>4</sup> et 5 Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque saepe mercātōrēs ad eōs veniunt atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important. Proximī sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum semper bel10 lum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum<sup>5</sup> aut suīs<sub>5</sub> fīnibus<sub>6</sub> eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum<sup>6</sup> fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garunnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab<sup>7</sup> 15 Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen<sup>8</sup> Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad<sub>7</sub> Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

as a whole, i.e., Greater Gaul. All Gaul would be omnis Gallia

<sup>2</sup> is divided (predicate adjective)

<sup>3</sup> supply partem

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> Caesar here limits the name *Gauls* to the natives of the central part, and this is the sense in which he usually employs the term.

<sup>5</sup> Note the emphasis on suis and eorum.

<sup>6</sup> ablative of separation

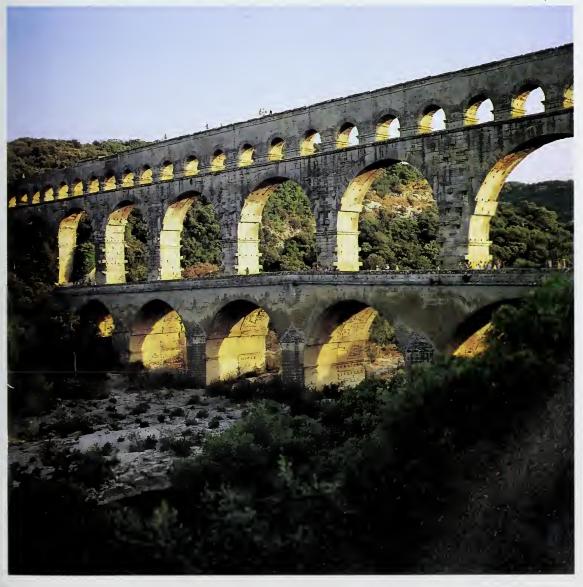
<sup>7</sup> near what part of the Spanish coast?

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why were the Helvetians brave?
- 2. What were three reasons for the bravery of the Belgians?
- 3. Find the three divisions of Gaul on the map (pp. 228–229) and indicate their boundaries.

Consisting of three tiers of arcades, the Pont du Gard in Nîmes, France, is a fine example of a Roman aqueduct. It was built in 19 B.C. over a deep gorge to carry water from a fresh-water source about 15 miles from the city.

Wayne Rowe



# Grammar Cococococo

- 1. Give the positive of fortissimus, longissime; the comparative of minime, saepe; the superlative of inferior, saepe.
- 2. Review the ablative of respect in Lesson VII.

#### TRANSLATION

- 1. The rest of the Gauls were surpassed by the Belgians in courage.
- 2. In what respects (things) did the Gauls differ from one another?

# 

#### **Nouns**

centuriō, -ōnis, m. centurion

cultus, -ūs, m. way of living. (cult, occult)

civilization

īnstitūtum, -ī, n. custom (institute, institution) oriēns, -entis, m. east (orient, Oriental)

septentriōnēs, -um, m. pl. north (septentrion, septentrional)

# Adjective

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, daily (quotidian)

#### Verbs

effēminō, 1, weaken (effeminacy, effeminate)

incolō, -ere, incoluī, —, inhabit, live

vergo, -ere, —, —, slope, lie (diverge, verge)

# Adverbs

ferē, almost proptereā, on this account

## Conjunction

proptereā quod, because

Review: differo, initium, mercator, occasus, orior, saepe, sol.

# **Foreign Names**

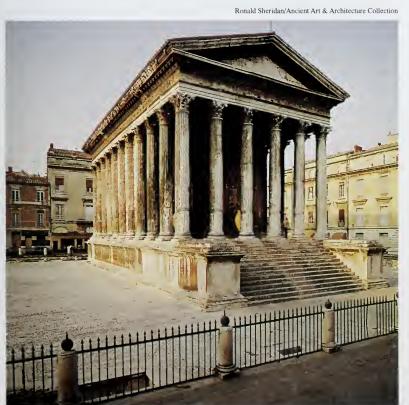
Add English endings to Latin proper nouns wherever possible, as in *Belgians, Aquitanians, Celts*. If you keep the Latin form, use the nominative case and pronounce the word as in English but keep the Latin accent. Always give the modern French forms of all Latin names of rivers, mountains, and lakes in Gaul. This will make your translation much smoother.

#### **Word Studies**

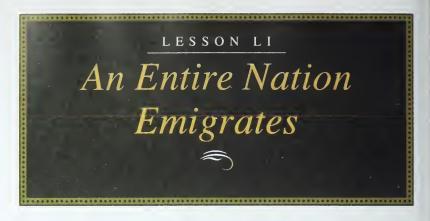
You may see the extent to which Spanish is like Latin from the following translation of the beginning and end of the first chapter of the *Gallic War*:

La Galia entera está dividida en tres partes, de las cuales los belgas habitan una, otra los aquitanos, y la tercera los que se llaman celtas en su lengua, galos en la nuestra. Todos estos difieren entre sí en cuanto a lengua, instituciones y leyes....Aquitania se extiende desde el río Garona hasta los montes Pirineos y aquella parte del océano que está cerca de España; mira hacia el ocaso y hacia el septentrión.

Explain culture, differential, effeminate, humanities, mercantile, occident, verge.



Maison Carrée. Throughout the Roman provinces smaller temples were found in the cities. This temple is one of the best preserved examples that has come down to us. It is located in Nîmes. An inscription says it was dedicated to Gaius and Lucius Caesar who were adopted sons of Augustus.



#### I. 2

<sup>1</sup> 61 B.C.

<sup>2</sup> on one side

<sup>3</sup> mountain range

<sup>4</sup> it happened

<sup>5</sup> in proportion to

6 for

<sup>7</sup> Dumnorix

pud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus et dītissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,¹ rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvibus persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.

- 5 Id<sub>1</sub> facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā<sup>2</sup> ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte<sup>3</sup> Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.
- Hīs rēbus fīēbat<sup>4</sup> ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā dē causā hominēs bellandī<sub>2</sub> cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō<sup>5</sup> multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.
- 3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coemere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse 20 existīmārērunt; in<sup>6</sup> tertium annum profectionem lēge confirmant.

Ad eās rēs conficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātionem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eo itinere persuādet Castico Sēquano ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduo, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī<sup>7</sup> eo tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plebī acceptus erat, ut idem conārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimonium dat. Dīxit sē ipsum suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrum esse.

direct object of persuasit

gerund depending on cupidī



It is said that an "army travels on its stomach." The same can be said for a whole community. The Helvetians sowed grain and then harvested it for two years before beginning their great journey.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who was Orgetorix?
- 2. With whom did Orgetorix conspire?
- 3. Why did the Helvetians want to migrate?
- 4. How did the Helvetians prepare for migration?

# Grammar Occorden

- 1. Review the conjugation of fīō in Lesson XXIV.
- 2. Review the gerundive with ad in Lesson XXIII.



- 1. An embassy was sent to other states for the purpose of encouraging their departure.
- 2. The Helvetians were always ready to carry on war with those who inhabited that part of Gaul.



S. Fiore/SuperStock, Inc.

In Orange, France, you can still see the well-preserved Roman theater. By 121 B.C. the Romans had established Transalpine Gaul as the first Roman province. Even far from home, the Romans expected to retain their important forms of entertainment, such as drama, dance, and music.

# Vocabulary -

#### Nouns

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. conspiracy dolor, -ōris, m. grief, pain, suffering lātitūdō, -dinis, f. width

suffering
lātitūdō, -dinis, f. width
lēgātiō, -ōnis. f. embassy
nōbilitās, -tātis, f. nobility
prīncipātus, -ūs, m. first place,
leadership
profectiō, -ōnis, f. departure

(dolor, dolorous)

(latitude, latitudinarian) (delegation, legation) (noble) (principate)

# Adjective

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous (Cupid, cupidity)

#### Verbs

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, (division, divisive)

divide

emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus,

take, buy

pateō, -ēre, patuī, —, (patent)

stand open, extend

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentūrus, (pertinence, pertinent)

extend (to), pertain to

vagor, 1, wander (vagabond, vague)

#### Adverb

item, also (itemization, itemize)

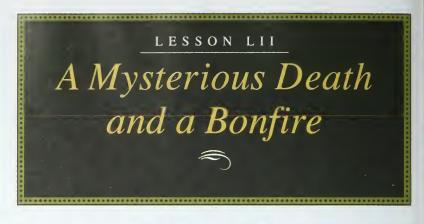
Idioms: inter sē, quā dē causā.

Review: angustus, arbitror, conor, deligo, persuadeo, proficiscor, undique.

#### **Word Studies**

*Item* was once used in English as in Latin, to mean "also" in a list: "2 lbs. sugar, item 3 lbs. flour," etc. Then it came to be used wrongly for every article in the list, including the first. *Item* occurs fourteen times in George Washington's will.

Explain biennial, cupidity, extravagant, itemize, latitude, patent, principate, vagabond, vagary, vagrant.



#### I. 4

in accordance with

2 in

<sup>3</sup> if condemned

<sup>4</sup> household (including all his slaves)

5 about

<sup>6</sup> nevertheless (with nihilō)

<sup>7</sup> as allies (apposition)

<sup>8</sup> from home

9 where

10 could be drawn

a rēs est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta. Mōribus¹ suīs Orgetorīgem ex² vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Eum damnātum³ oportēbat ignī

Diē cōnstitūtā Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam,<sup>4</sup> ad<sup>5</sup> hominum 5 mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est. Helvētiī autem arbitrantur ipsum sē interfēcisse.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus<sup>6</sup> Helvētiī id quod constituerant facere conantur, ut<sub>1</sub> ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātos esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vīcos ad quadringentos, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditūs spē sublātā. 15 parātiorēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur. Boiōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, ad sē sociōs<sup>7</sup> recipiunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus domō<sup>8</sup> exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, qua<sup>9</sup> vix singulī carrī dūcerentur;<sup>10</sup> mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum<sub>2</sub> per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et

<sup>2</sup> Supply iter.

Clause is in apposition with id.



Imagine the difficulty in transporting food, equipment, and other basic necessities through the mountains in all kinds of weather in carts such as these.

Allobrogum quī nuper pacātī erant Rhodanus fluit, isque non nūllīs<sub>3</sub> locīs 25 vado trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est.<sub>4</sub> proximumque Helvētiorum finibus, Genua.

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.<sub>5</sub> Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs exīstimābant<sup>11</sup> vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad 30 rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.<sub>6</sub> Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr.,<sub>7</sub> L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.<sup>12</sup>

#### **QUESTIONS**

- 1. Why was Orgetorix tried?
- 2. In what way did he escape?
- 3. How, apparently, did he die?
- 4. What was the effect of his death on the Helvetians?
- 5. What choice did the Helvetians have in leaving their country?

<sup>3</sup> two negatives made an affirmative: several, supply in

<sup>4</sup> in translating, put est after finibus

<sup>5</sup> Parts of this bridge have been found.

<sup>6</sup> on which all are to assemble; Note the variation in the gender of dies.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> Ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, the fifth day before the kalends (first) of April; i.e., March 28.

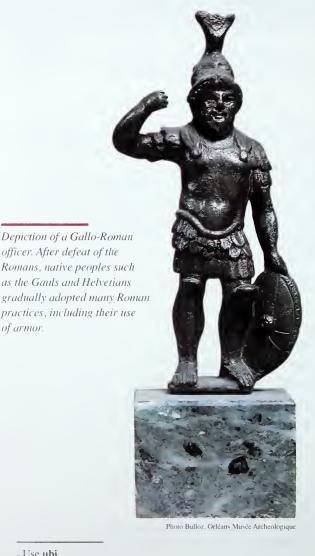


# Grammar -

- 1. Review indicative clauses with ubi and postquam in Lesson XVI.
- 2. Review subjunctive clauses with cum in Lesson XVI and XXXII.

#### TRANSLATION CO

- 1. After they saw that they could cross by a bridge, they were impelled to go with the Helvetians.
- 2. When this had been reported, the Helvetians suspected that he would bring together all his clients.
- 3. When, they were ready to burn their buildings, they persuaded their neighbors to set out with them.



8 Use ubi.

of armor.

# 

#### **Nouns**

iūdicium, -cī, n. trial,

(judicial, judicious)

investigation

vīcus, -ī, m. village

(vicinal, vicinity)

vinculum, -ī, n. bond, chain

(vinculum)

# **Adjectives**

expeditus, -a, -um,

(expedition)

unencumbered, easy

prīvātus, -a, -um, private

(deprivation)

#### Verbs

exsequor, exsequi, exsecūtus,

(executor, executrix)

follow up, enforce

fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus, flow

(fluid, flux)

recipiō, -ere, recēpī, receptus,

(receptacle, receptor)

take back, receive

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus,

(transition, transitive)

cross, pass

### Adverbs

eodem, to the same place

omnīnō, altogether, in all

quā, where

ūnā, along

# Preposition

praeter (+acc.), besides, except

Review: aedificium, cliens, incendo, magistratus, suspicor, vix.

## **Word Studies**

Translate the legal phrase a vinculo matrimonii which is used in English in divorce cases. Learn the phrase: sic transit gloria mundi.

Explain flux, incendiary, recipient, riparian, transient, transitory.

# Caesar Says: "You Shall Not Pass"

## O 1, 7

1 by as rapid marches as possible 2 near

aesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe<sub>1</sub> proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus<sup>1</sup> in Galliam ulteriōrem<sub>2</sub> contendit et ad<sup>2</sup> Genuam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat<sup>3</sup> (erat 5 omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna<sub>3</sub>), pontem quī erat ad Genuam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt.<sup>4</sup> lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis quī dīcerent, sibī esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per Prōvinciam facere. Caesar lēgātīs respondit diem<sup>5</sup> sē ad 10 dēlīberandum sūmptūrum.

8. Intereā ab lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIII mūrum<sup>6</sup> in altitūdinem pedum XVI fossamque<sup>6</sup> perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit,<sup>7</sup> castella mūnit, utī eōs trānsīre cōnantēs pro-15 hibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs quam constituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē more et exemplo populī Romānī posse iter<sup>8</sup> ūllī per Provinciam dare; et, sī vim facere<sup>9</sup> conentur, sē eos prohibitūrum ostendit. Eā spē dēiectī,<sup>10</sup> aliī Helvētiorum nāvibus ratibusque complūribus, aliī 20 vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdo flūminis erat, non numquam interdiū,<sup>11</sup> saepius noctū perrumpere conātī sunt. Sed operis mūnītione et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hoc conātū dēstitērunt.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> *he levied upon* (with dative and accusative)

<sup>4</sup> were informed

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> time; clearly more than a single day

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> rampart (of earth) and a trench

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> he stations at intervals

<sup>8 (</sup>right of) way

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> use force

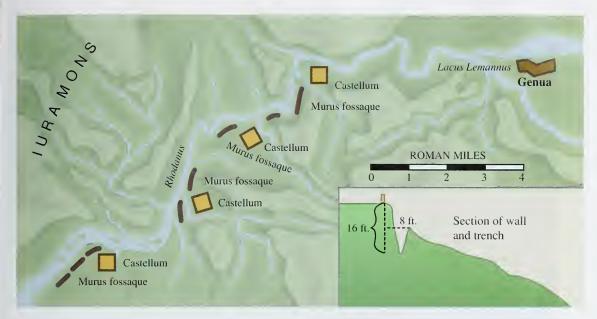
<sup>10</sup> disappointed in this hope

<sup>11</sup> in the daytime

The city is always Rome.

 $_{\rm 2}$  This term would ordinarily mean all of Gaul except the Roman Province. Here it includes the Province.

This one was the famous Tenth, soon to become Caesar's favorite.



PLAN OF CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE RIVER

#### OUESTIONS

- 1. Where was Caesar when he heard about the Helvetians?
- 2. What was Caesar's answer and what did he do?
- 3. What did the Helvetians ask him to let them do?

# Grammar Commandation of the Commandation of th

Review indirect statements in Lesson VI. A subordinate clause in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive, following the sequence of tenses.

Dīxit lēgātōs quī ad sē pervēnissent diūtissime exspectavisse. He said that the envoys who had come to him had waited for a very long time.

#### TRANSLATION

- 1. Caesar thought that the Helvetians would not cross the river.
- 2. He said that, if they tried to cross, he would prevent them by defenses.
- 3. When they were not able to persuade Caesar, they said that they would send envoys to the Haeduans.



SuperStock, Inc.

Modern-day Geneva still carries memories of ancient times, when Caesar aligned his troops and forbade the Helvetians to cross. Geneva was founded by the Allobroges, a Celtic tribe, who settled at the tip of Lake Geneva where it was convenient to cross over the Rhone.

# Vocabulary

#### **Nouns**

altitūdō, -dinis, f. height, depth(altitude)castellum, -ī, n. fort(castellum)

cornū, -ūs, n. horn, wing

(of an army)

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. fortification

tēlum, -ī, n. weapon vadum, -ī, n. ford (altitude, altitudinal)

(castellated, castle) (cornet, cornucopia)

(ammunition, munition)

## Verbs

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī,

dēfutūrus, be lacking

mātūrō, 1, hasten (maturation, maturity)

rescindō, -ere, rescidī,

rescissus, cut down

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, (resume

take, assume

(resume, sumptuous)

(rescind)

#### Adverb

non numquam, sometimes

Idioms: alter...alter, certiorem facio, certior fio, quam with superlative.

Review: complūrēs, dēsistō, fossa, intereā, negō, noctū, pōns, spēs.

#### **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: altitūdō, castellum, mūnītiō, noctū, quā?

Explain legionary, munitions, renegade.



### I. 9

elinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs<sub>1</sub> invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut hic ā Sēquanīs impetrāret. Dumnorīx grātiā et dōnīs apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et 5 Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus<sub>2</sub> studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās¹ volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sē dent perficit:<sub>3</sub> Sēquanī obsidēs dant<sub>4</sub> nē itinere 10 Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animo² per agrum Sēquanorum et Haeduorum iter in Santonorum fīnēs facere, quī non longē ā Tolosātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in Provinciā. Caesar intellegēbat magno cum perīculo Provinciae³ futūrum esse ut hominēs bellicosī, populī Romānī 15 inimīcī, haec loca patentia maximēque frūmentāria occupārent.⁴

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. Ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et proximō itinere in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre 20 contendit.

Summary of the End of Chapter 10. The Ceutrones try to block Caesar's way but are defeated. From Ocelum (near modern Turin) he proceeds to the Province, arriving on the seventh day, then to the Allobroges and Segusiavi.

<sup>1</sup> bound

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> that the Helvetians have in mind

<sup>3</sup> to the Province

<sup>4</sup> for men...to seize

Translate with *if*.

<sup>2</sup> In politics "new things" are a revolution.

The English order would be **perficit utī dent obsidēs inter sē.** i.e., *they guarantee* 



The Arch of Tiberius and Germanicus at Saintes. The name of the Santoni, mentioned in the text in this lesson, is preserved in the name of the city (Saintes) where this arch is found.

G. I. Garvey/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Dumnorix help the Helvetians?
- 2. Why did Caesar object to the Helvetians' plan?
- 3. Why did he go to Italy at this critical moment?
- 4. Of what fortifications did Labienus have charge during Caesar's absence?

# Grammar

Review cum clauses in Lessons XVI and XXXII.

#### TRANSLATION

- 1. What will you do since you cannot influence him by kindness?
- 2. Although they sent envoys to him, they did not obtain their request.
- 3. Since the Gauls were eager for a revolution, Caesar placed a general in charge of the legions.

# Developing "Word Sense"

Did you understand the idiom plurimum poterat ("was very powerful") in the third sentence of the reading? Here are some more sentences to

extend your mastery of this use of the accusative as an adverb with possum. Translate:

- 1. In omnibus rēbus hūmānīs consuetūdo multum potest.
- 2. Multum terror mortis potest, plūs tamen cupiditās glōriae.
- 3. Dīviciācus grātiā plūrimum poterat, Dumnorīx propter adulēscentiam minimum poterat.
- 4. Quantum in bellō Fortūna potest!
- 5. Helvētiī equitātū nihil poterant.
- 6. Caesar intelleget quid invictī Germānī possint.

Modern lives next to ancient throughout the former Roman empire. These ruins of a Roman arena are in Verona, in northern Italy.

Alan Smith/Tony Stone Images



# 

#### **Nouns**

dōnum, -ī, n. gift (donation, donative)
grātia, -ae, f. gratitude, grace,
favor, influence (gratis, ingratiate)

**hīberna**, **-ōrum**, *n*. *pl*. (hibernal, hibernate) winter quarters

# **Adjectives**

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling

#### **Verbs**

hiemō, 1, spend the winter

impetrō, 1, gain (one's request)

patior, patī, passus, permit (passive, patient)

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, (prefect)

put in charge of

#### Adverbs

# Preposition

**apud** (+acc.), among, at the house of, near, with

by his/her/their own influence, voluntarily

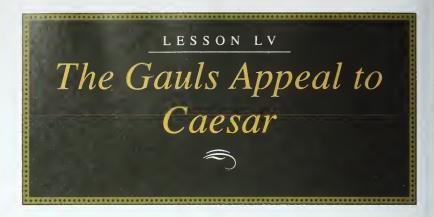
Idioms: alicui esse in animō, magnum iter, multum (plūs, plūrimum) posse, novae rēs.

## **Word Studies**

Things are not always what they seem: *invite* has no connection with **invītus**, nor *Hibernian* with **hīberna**.

From what Latin words are the following derived: angustiae, conscribo, hiberna, hiemo?

Explain conscription, hibernate, impatient, prefect, spontaneous.



#### I, 11

1 their possessions

2 soil

<sup>3</sup> on this side i.e., Caesar's side

<sup>4</sup> accusative

<sup>5</sup> during

6 attacking

7 mandā(vē)runt

8 in

<sup>9</sup> from home

10 within the memory of

13 father-in-law

elvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque¹ ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ut rogārent auxilium. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, 5 cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, vāstātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre posse. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum² nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum esse sibi statuit dum, omnibus 10 fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. Flümen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit incredibilī lenitālē. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac nāvibus iūnctīs trānsībant. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flümen trādūxisse, quārtam vērō partem citrā³ flümen Ararim⁴ 15 reliquam esse. Itaque dē⁵ tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flümen trānsierat.

Eōs impedītōs aggressus<sup>6</sup> magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sē fugae mandārunt<sup>7</sup> atque in<sup>8</sup> proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor partēs vel pāgōs dīvīsa 20 est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō<sup>9</sup> exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā<sup>10</sup> L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.<sup>11</sup>

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, ea pars cīvitātis Helvētiae quae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, prīnceps<sup>12</sup> poenam dedit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās 25 iniūriās ultus est; nam Tigurīnī L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum Caesaris socerī, <sup>13</sup> eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās<sub>1</sub> Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius

had sent under the yoke, equivalent to unconditional surrender

<sup>12 (</sup>was the) first (to)

<sup>1</sup> object of consequi



The Saône River, which in ancient times flowed through the lands of the Haeduans and the Sequanians, today crosses the region where burgundy wine is produced, joining with the Rhone at Lyon.

SuperStock, Inc.

adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē confēcerant, ut<sub>2</sub> flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūno diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātos ad eum mittunt. 30

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What reasons does Caesar give for attacking the Helvetians?
- 2. How long did it take Caesar to cross the Saône?
- 3. How many cantons of the Helvetians crossed the Saône safely?
- 4. Which canton did Caesar defeat and why did this particularly please him?

# Grammar Coccoccocco

## The Dative of Possession

The dative, with a form of **sum**, can be used to express possession. The possessor is in the dative.

Trēs līberī mihi sunt. Carrus novus servō est.

I have three children.
The slave has a new wagon.

<sup>2</sup> ut clause in apposition with id

If you are expressing an actual fact after dum, antequam, or priusquam, the indicative is used.

# The Subjunctive in Anticipatory Clauses

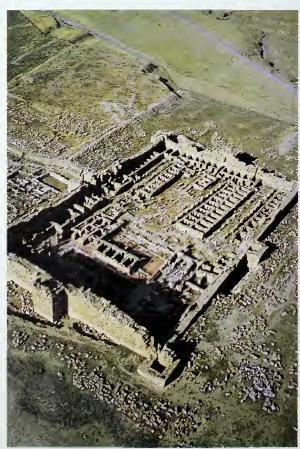
After dum (until), antequam (before), and priusquam (before), a clause that expresses an anticipated action is in the subjunctive.

Caesar exspectavit dum murī Caesar waited until the walls fossaeque aedificarent. Priusquam trānsīrent, Caesarem rogāvērunt.

and trenches should be built. Before they could pass through, they asked Caesar.

## TRANSLATION CO

- 1. The enemy had many ships and men.
- 2. The Haeduans have many villages across that river.
- 3. They were unwilling to wait until Caesar should arrive.
- 4. Caesar hurried in order to arrive before they could cross.



This aerial view of Timgad, Algeria, shows a typical foundation of a Roman settlement similar to those built in Gaul. Helvetia, and throughout the empire. This colony housed the Third Legion stationed at Lambaesis and contained several baths and a library.

# 

#### **Nouns**

calamitās, -tātis, f. disaster cōnsanguineus, -ī, m. (blood) relative

m. (blood) relative
explorator, -oris, m. scout
pagus, -i, m. district, canton

(calamitous, calamity)

(consanguineous, consanguinity)

(exploration, exploratory) (pagan, paganism)

# Adjective

repentinus, -a, -um, sudden

#### **Verbs**

populor, 1, destroy statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtus, decide, determine (depopulate, population) (constitution, statutory)

# Conjunctions

sīve (seu), or if; sīve... sīve,
 whether . . . or
vel, or; vel... vel, either . . . or

Idioms: dē... vigiliā, fugae mē mandō, mē recipiō.

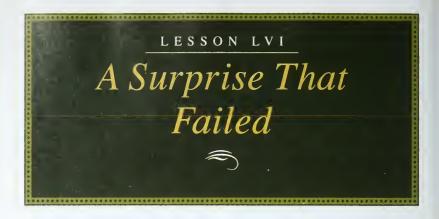
Review: abdo, iugum, nondum.

#### **Word Studies**

A "pagan" was really a person who lived in a *country district* (**pāgus**). During the time of the Roman Empire new things and ideas, such as Christianity, came to the country districts last of all, and so there was a time when the **pagānī** were pagans after the **urbānī** had become Christians.

From what Latin words are the following derived: abdō, concīdō, explōrātor, īnferō, nōndum?

Explain calamitous, concise, consanguinity, exploratory, inferential, influence, influenza.



Summary of Chapters 13–20. After crushing the rearguard of the Helvetians at the Saône, Caesar crosses in pursuit of the main body, who now send a deputation to Caesar. The discussion fails, and the Helvetians resume their march. Caesar follows: his cavalry is defeated in a skirmish. Meanwhile his supplies give out because the Haeduans, his Gallic allies, fail to furnish grain any longer. Caesar complains to the Haeduan chiefs who are in his camp and is told secretly that Dumnorix, a rich and powerful noble, is responsible: that he has a Helvetian wife and therefore favors the Helvetians; furthermore, that Dumnorix alone is to blame for the recent defeat of the Roman cavalry, for he led the retreat in person. Caesar decides that Dumnorix must be punished but fears to offend his friend Diviciacus, chief magistrate of the Haeduans and brother of Dumnorix. He therefore urges Diviciacus himsef to punish him. Diviciacus pleads so earnestly for his brother's life that Caesar pardons him.

# I, 21

<sup>1</sup> on the other side; literally, in going around
<sup>2</sup> appositive to eīs: (as) guides

<sup>3</sup> was considered

<sup>4</sup> top of the mountain

ōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte consēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octo, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū¹ ascēnsus, explōrātôrēs quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est ascēnsum facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T.

- 5 Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus² quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; suum cōnsilium ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur³ et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī 10 fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.
  - 22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus<sup>4</sup> mons ā Labiēno tenērētur et ipse ab hostium castrīs non longius MD passibus abesset, neque (ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit) aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Considius.



The Romans did battle with many tribes. In this relief, a Roman soldier fights a Celt.

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

equō admissō,5 ad eum accurrit. Dīcit montem quem ab Labiēnō occupārī voluerit<sub>1</sub> ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. 15 6 late in the day Caesar suās copiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labieno imperaverat ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus copiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret. Itaque Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō<sup>6</sup> dēnique<sup>7</sup> diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ab suis 20 tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod<sub>2</sub> non vīdisset pro8 vīso sibi renuntiāvisse. Eo die, quo intervallo3 consueverat, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

<sup>5</sup> with his horse at full speed (literally, with horse let go)

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What did Caesar tell Labienus to do?
- 2. What did Caesar tell Considius to do?
- 3. What was the mistake that Considius made?
- 4. What was Caesar's purpose in giving these orders?

<sup>7</sup> finally

<sup>8</sup> as seen

The subject is Caesar.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Supply **id** as antecedent.

<sup>3</sup> Translate as eō intervāllō quō; the antecedent is sometimes put in the subordinate clause.

# 

Review purpose constructions in Lessons XI, XXIII, and XXVI.

#### TRANSLATION

- 1. He ordered (imperō) them to wait until he should arrive.
- 2. He summoned the generals for the sake of showing his plan.
- 3. The Romans were accustomed to send ahead scouts who were to learn where the enemy were.

# 

#### **Nouns**

aciēs, aciēī, f. battle line

equitātus, -ūs, m. cavalry (equitation) ēruptiō, -iōnis, f. attack, (eruption)

a bursting forth

**insigne**, -is, *n. ornament* (insignia)

## Adjective

**quālis, -e,** what kind of, what, (qualify, quality) such as

#### Verbs

accurrō, -ere, accurrī,

accursūrus, run

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, (ascend, acension)

ascēnsus, climb

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus,

find out

consider, -ere, -sedi, -sessurus, (consider, considerable)

sit down, encamp, settle

Idioms: castra moveō, castra pōnō, prīmā lūce, rēs mīlitāris, summus mōns.

Review: consido, consuesco, peritus.

# Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: abstineō, equitātus, īnsigne, subdūcō?

Explain abstinence, ascension, circuitous, insignia.





#### I. 23

ostrīdiē eius diēī,¹ quod omnīnō bīdnum supererat² cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et copiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum duodēvigintī aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum₁ exīstimāvit. Itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte³ īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, 5 decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent,² seu quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse³ cōnfīderent, mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ab novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

- 24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem 10 subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō<sup>4</sup> triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia<sub>4</sub> collocārī ac totum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum locum ab eīs quī in superiōre aciē 15 cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī<sup>5</sup> cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.
- 25. Caesar prīmum suō,5 deinde omnium<sub>6</sub> ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs ut, aequātō omnium perīculō, spem fugae tolleret. Cohortātus suōs 20 proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfregerant. Eā disiectā, et gladiīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod,7 plūribus eōrum scūtīs

<sup>1</sup> next day (eius diēī is superfluous)

## supersum)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> two days were left before (from

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> accusative

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> halfway up the hill

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> i.e., the fighting men

<sup>1</sup> Supply esse; impersonal: he should provide for supplies.

<sup>2</sup> Subjunctive because Caesar assigns these as the reasons of the Helvetians and not as his own.

<sup>3</sup> Supply Romanos as subject.

<sup>4</sup> consisting of friendly Gauls and other foreign troops

<sup>5</sup> Supply equum from equos.

<sup>6</sup> i.e., all the mounted officers, not the cavalry; omnium modifies equōs

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> The clause is subject of erat.

ūnō ictū<sup>6</sup> pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflēxisset neque 25 ēvellere neque, sinistrā manū impedītā,8 satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū emittere et nūdō<sup>7</sup> corpore pugnāre.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Caesar go to Bibracte?
- 2. How did Caesar place his troops?
- 3. What advantages did Caesar have?
- 4. What disadvantages did the Helvetians have?



Before the arrival of the Romans, the inhabitants of Gaul had their own rites and rituals. These four Celtic death masks were found in Provence.

# Grammar 🛹

# Causal Clauses with Quod and Quoniam

A causal clause, so called because it is translated as *because* or *since*, can be introduced by **quod** or **quoniam** (both of which mean *because*, *since*). The verb is in the indicative when it expresses the writer's or speaker's reason, and in the subjunctive when it suggests that it is the reason of some other person.

Servus grātiās dominō ēgit quod carrum novum eī dederat.

Gallī ad Caesarem auxiliō rogāvērunt quoniam Helvētiī fīnēs populārentur.

The slave thanked the master because he had given him a new wagon.

The Gauls asked Caesar for help since the Helvetians were destroying their lands.

<sup>8</sup> by the shield, now pinned to that of another soldier



- 1. The enemy advanced crowded together because they did not have their baggage.
- 2. The Helvetians began to pursue him because (as they thought) he could be cut off.
- 3. Meanwhile, since Caesar had noticed this, he stationed his cavalry to check<sub>9</sub> them.

# 

#### **Nouns**

agmen, -inis, n. line of march fugitīvus, -ī, m. deserter pīlum, -ī, n. spear, javelin rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae,

(fugitive)

As soldiers travelled, they either lived off the land or used the grain they brought with them. This detail from Trajan's column shows soldiers reaping grain, possibly from the territory of a conquered tribe.



National Historical Museum, Bucharest/F. T. Archives, London/SuperStock, Inc.

Express in three ways.

# Adjectives

confertus, -a. -um,

crowded together

frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain

sinister, -tra, -trum, left

(frumentaceous)

(sinister, sinistral)

#### Verbs

aequō, 1, make equal

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī.

(adequate, equate)

(animadversion. animadvert)

-versus, notice

collocō, 1, place

confido, -ere, confisus, 10

be confident

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, attack

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus,

measure (out)

supersum, -esse, -fuī,

-futūrus, be left (over)

(collocate, collocation)
(confidant, confidential)

#### Adverb

interim, meanwhile

(interim)

Review: confero, facile, muto, iugum.

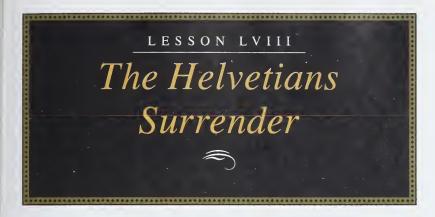
## **Word Studies**

The motto of Arkansas is **regnat populus**; of Arizona, **dītat** (*enriches*) **deus**.

From what Latin words are the following derived: **aequō**, **animad**vertō, **bīduum**, **collocō**, **cōnferō**, **convertō**?

Explain collation, collocation, conference, confidence, conversion, equation, prospective, sinister.

<sup>10</sup> Semideponent, i.e., active in the present stem, deponent in the perfect stem.



#### I, 26

ta ancipitî proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.1 Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs non possent, alterī sē ut coeperant in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, cum<sup>2</sup> ab horā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum³ hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem⁴ etiam ad impedī-5 menta pugnātum est, proptereā quod pro vāllo carros obiēcerant et ē loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniciebant, et non nulli inter carros trāgulās subiciēbant nostrosque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs, castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX 10 superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt. In fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum<sup>5</sup> et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occīsōrum nostrī triduum morātī eōs sequī non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas, litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eos frūmento nēve aliā rē iuvārent, quī sī iuvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvetiōs habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō inter-15 missō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī<sup>6</sup> cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent flentēsque pācem petīssent,<sup>7</sup> eōs<sub>4</sub> in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō<sup>8</sup> postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, 20 servōs quī ad eōs perfūgerant poposcit.

Dum ea<sub>5</sub> conquīruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timore perterritī,<sub>6</sub> sīve

<sup>1</sup> they fought

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> although

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> i.e., in retreat

<sup>4</sup> until late at night

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> since

<sup>6</sup> i.e., the ambassadors

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> short for **petīvissent** 

<sup>8</sup> there

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> early in the night

<sup>1</sup> ablative with potior

<sup>2</sup> accusative (Greek form)

<sup>3</sup> a command in indirect discourse

<sup>1</sup> i.e., the Helvetians, not the ambassadors

<sup>5</sup> neuter plural, referring to obsides, arma, servos

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> The grammatical subject is **mīlia**, but the logical subject is **hominēs**, with which **pert-erritī** agrees.

spē salūtis inductī, prīmā nocte<sup>9</sup> ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum 25 fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. How long did the battle last?
- 2. What were Caesar's peace terms?
- 3. Who refused to accept these terms?
- 4. How many Helvetians escaped to the Lingones?

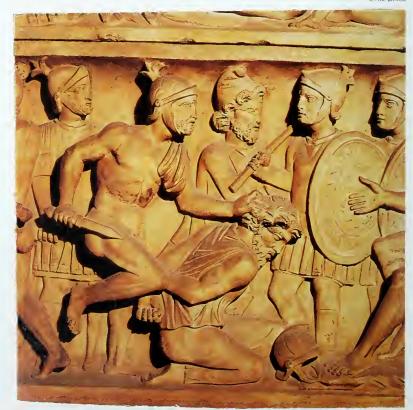
# Grammar Occordon

Review impersonal verbs in Lesson XXXI.

### TRANSLATION

- 1. They were not permitted, to keep their arms.
- 2. They fought<sub>7</sub> six hours before they were compelled to flee.
- 3. After they arrived<sub>7</sub> in the territory of friends, Caesar ordered them to await his arrival.

C. M. Dixon



This detail from a Roman sarcophagus from the 1st or 2nd century A.D. shows Roman soldiers and a captured barbarian. Notice that the barbarian is wearing long pants.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> Use an impersonal construction.

## 

### **Nouns**

```
dēditiō, -ōnis, f. surrender
sepultūra, -ae, f. burial
trāgula, -ae, f. javelin
trīduum, -ī, n. three days
vāllum, -ī, n. rampart, wall,
barricade
(interval, wall)
```

### Adjective

```
non nullī (nonnullī),
-ae, -a, some
```

### Verbs

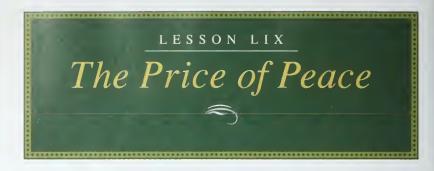
```
conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, (conquest, conquistador)
-quīsītus, seek for
obiciō, -ere, obiēcī, obiectus,
throw against, oppose
potior, potīrī, potītus,
gain possession of
(+ gen. or abl.)
```

### Adverb

circiter, about

### **Word Studies**

Some Latin-American countries and cities have names ultimately derived from Latin. Ecuador is the Spanish for our word equator; both are derived from aequo, because the equator divides the earth into equal parts. Argentina was so named because it was mistakenly thought to contain silver (argentum); its capital, Buenos Aires, is Spanish for good air (Latin bonus āer). Montevideo, the capital of Uruguay, has properly a longer name, ending in pure Latin, de Montevideo, de monte video, or, possibly, it stands for monte(m) video. The capital of Paraguay, Asunción, is named after the Assumption (from sūmō), i.e., the taking into Heaven, of the Virgin. The capital of Bolivia, La Paz, has the name of peace  $(p\bar{a}x)$ . Rio de Janeiro is from Latin (through Portuguese) rīvus Ianuārī, River of (St.) January. Honduras is from the Spanish hondo, Latin (pro)fundus, deep, perhaps on account of its deep coastal waters. Costa Rica is rich coast, and both Spanish costa and English coast come from Latin costa, rib or side. Puerto Rico is rich port, from portus. Salvador is from salvātor, the Savior.





1 = per quörum fīnēs

<sup>2</sup> they might satisfy

<sup>3</sup> for this reason

4 as

<sup>5</sup> sum total

6 i.e., 25 percent

uod ubi Caesar resciit, hīs quōrum per fīnēs¹ ierant imperāvit utī eōs conquīrerent et redūcerent; eōs reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et quod, omnibus frūgibus āmissīs, domī nihil erat quō famem sustinērent,² Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne³ fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in 10 Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae Prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs,¹ quod ēgregiā virtūte erant, Haeduī in fīnibus suīs collocāre voluērunt; hoc Caesar concessit. Eīs illī agrōs dedērunt, eōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque⁴ ipsī erant recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs confectae 15 et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nominātim ratio confecta erat, quī numerus domo exīsset<sub>2</sub> eorum quī arma ferre possent, et item puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rationum summa<sup>5</sup> erat Helvētiorum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingorum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrīgorum XIIII, Rauracorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia XCII.<sup>6</sup>
20 Summa omnium fuērunt<sub>3</sub> ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eorum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habito, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

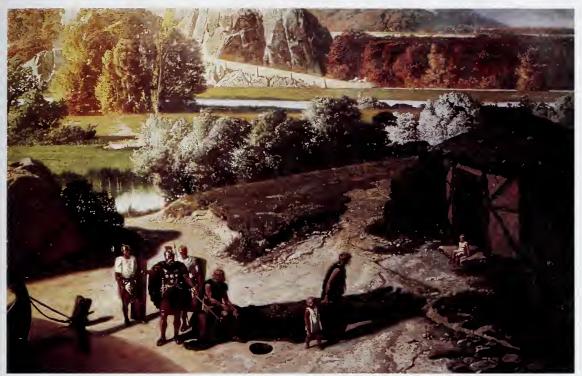
### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Caesar want the Helvetians to restore their former homes?
- 2. What proportion of the Helvetians and their allies returned home?
- 3. What did Caesar do to the canton which tried to escape after the surrender?

emphatic; direct object of collocare

<sup>2</sup> indirect question implied in the noun ratio and introduced by qui numerus

<sup>3</sup> agrees with the predicate nominative mīlia



SuperStock, Inc.

A Gallic town at the foot of the Alps after the Roman conquest. The Roman soldiers, as well as the civilian people that accompanied them, interacted with the Gauls on a regular basis as they went about their daily activities. There were even intermarriages.

## Grammar Occionation

Review indirect command in Lesson XXII. Also review the command construction with iubeō in the Appendix.

### TRANSLATION

- 1. Caesar persuaded the neighbors to give the Helvetians food.
- 2. He ordered<sub>4</sub> them to throw down their arms and return<sub>5</sub> the slaves.
- 3. He ordered<sub>4</sub> them to return<sub>5</sub> to their own territory and warned them not to flee.

<sup>4</sup> Express in two ways.

<sup>5</sup> Distinguish between transitive *return* in the sense of *give back* and intransitive *return* in the sense of *go back*. Two different verbs are used in Latin.

## 

### **Nouns**

bonitās, -tātis, f. goodness,
fertility
famēs, -is (abl. fame), f. hunger
frūgēs, -um, f. pl. crops
senex, senis, m. old man
(senile, senescence)
tabula, -ae, f. writing tablet
(tabulate, tabulation)

### Verbs

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus, find out, learn vacō, 1, be uninhabited, have leisure

### Adverb

nōminātim, by name

Review: ēgregius, iūs.

### **Word Studies**

The original Roman "senate" consisted of **senēs**, *old men*, i.e., men over forty-five, who were considered too old to fight. A "senior" is *older*; he really ought to be addressed as "sir," for "sir" is derived from **senior**.

Explain *circumvallation*, *exit*, *famish*, *incense*, *restitution*, *reversion*, *tabulate*.



### I, 31

oncilium tōtīus Galliae indictum est. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiëruntque utī sibi sēcrētō in occultō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus:

"Galliae tõtīus factiones sunt duae; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenent 5 Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum dē prīncipātū inter sē multos annos contenderent, factum est1 utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde2 arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et copias3 Gallorum homines ferī ac barbarī amāre coepērunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et XX 10 <sup>ana agann</sup> aworse thing mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum4 armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nöbilitätem, omnem senätum, omnem equitätum ämiserunt.

"Sed peius<sup>5</sup> victoribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedit tertiamque 15 partem agrī Sēquanī, quī est optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alteră parte tertia Sequanos decedere iubet, propterea quod, paucis mensibus ante, Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus parātur. Paucīs annīs omnēs Gallī ex Galliae fīnibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsībunt; neque enim conferendus est Gallicus ager 20 cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec consuetudo victus cum illa.

"Ariovistus autem, ut<sup>6</sup> semel Gallorum copias proelio vicit, superbe et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs, nobilissimī cuiusque<sup>7</sup> līberos poscit, et in eos omnia exempla<sup>8</sup> cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs non ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus et īrācundus; nōn possumus eius imperia 25 diūtius sustinēre. Tū vel auctoritāte tuā atque exercitūs recentī victoriā vel nomine populi Romani deterrere9 potes ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere."

#### cruciātūsque)

<sup>1</sup> it happened

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> for pay ("mercenary" troops)

<sup>3</sup> wealth

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> again and again (literally, once

<sup>6</sup> when

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> *of all the nobles* (from **quisque**) <sup>8</sup> all kinds of cruelties (with

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> prevent a larger number... from being brought over

in apposition with liberos



Although this may appear to be a battle scene, it actually represents a decursio, the military parade that took place when an emperor was deified after his death. In this case, the emperor was Antoninus Pius (A.D. 138-161). On the relief, a troop of cavalry gallop around two groups of infantrymen, each having its own standard-bearer (both at lower left). Note the many details of military dress.

### QUESTIONS

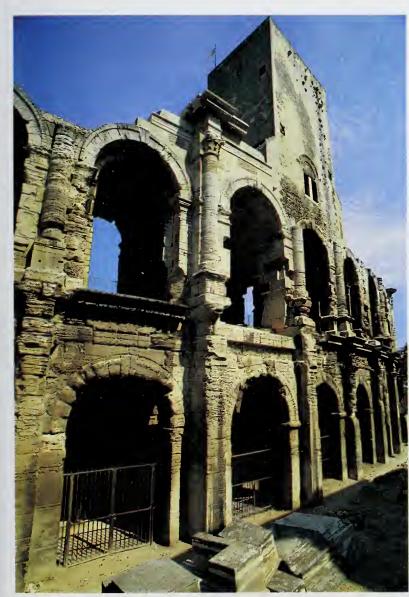
- 1. Which were the leading tribes in the Gallic factions?
- 2. What steps did one of them take to gain the supremacy?
- 3. What was the result and what did the Gauls want Caesar to do about it?

## Grammar Occorden

Review the use of perfect and future infinitives in indirect discourse in Lesson VI.



- 1. They showed that they themselves would endure tortures and slavery.
- 2. They said that certain tribes of Gauls had sent for the fierce Germans.
- 3. They stated that the king of the Germans had seized the best part of all Gaul.



George Haling/Photo Researchers

This Roman arena in Arles, France dates from the early years of colonization, about 45 B.C. It measures 446 by 351 feet and seated 21,000. It was restored in 1828.

## 

### **Nouns**

concilium, -lī, n. council (conciliate, conciliatory)
factiō, -ōnis, f. faction (faction, factional)
nūtus, -ūs, m. nod
victor, -ōris, m. victor
vīctus, -ūs, m. living, food (victuals, victualler)

### Adjectives

ferus, -a, -um, wild

īrācundus, -a, -um,
hot-tempered, quick-tempered
occultus, -a, -um, secret
recēns, recentis, (gen.) recent
victor. -ōris, (gen.) victorious

(feral, ferocious)
(occult, occultism)

### Verbs

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus,

summon
indīcō, -ere, indīxī, indictus,

call

(indite)

### Adverb

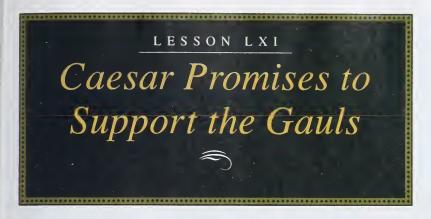
prīmō, at first

Review: consuetudo, cruciatus. loquor.

### **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: **conquīrō**. **cōnsuētūdō**. **dēditiō**. **ēdō**, **factiō**. **prīmō**, **victor**, **voluntās?** Explain *deterrent*, *factional*, *ferocity*, *occult*, *reiterate*.

Summary of Chapter 32. Caesar notices that during all the time that Diviciacus is speaking, the Sequanians remain silent. He asks the reason and is told that the Sequanians are in such fear of the cruelty of Ariovistus that they do not even dare complain or ask aid because they are so completely at the mercy of the Germans. who had occupied their towns.



### I, 33

īs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallorum animos verbīs confirmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: magnam sē habēre spem et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit. Et multae rēs eum hortābantur quāre1 sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: in 5 prīmīs quod Haeduōs, frātrēs, consanguineosque populī Romānī saepe ā senātū appellātos, in servitūte vidēbat Germānorum tenērī, eorumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanos intellegēbat; quod in² tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulātim autem Germānōs3 consuescere Rhenum trānsīre et in Galliam 10 magnam eörum multitüdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat. Hominēs feros ac barbaros exīstimābat, omnī Galliā occupātā, in Provinciam exitūros esse atque inde in Italiam contentūros, praesertim cum Sēquanos ā provinciā nostrā Rhodanus4 dīvideret; quibus rēbus5 quam mātūrrime6 occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantam sibi arro- 15 gantiam sümpserat ut ferendus<sup>7</sup> nön vidērētur.

**34.** Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium<sup>8</sup> utrīusque colloquiō dīligeret: velle<sup>9</sup> sē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit:

"Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum vēnissem; 10 sī quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audeō quās Caesar tenet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque difficultāte in ūnum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīcī, aut Caesarī 25 aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī 11 sit."

<sup>1 =</sup> nt

<sup>2</sup> in view of

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> for the Germans

<sup>4 (</sup>only) the Rhone

<sup>5</sup> this situation: he ought to meet

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> as promptly as possible

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> *unbearable* (with **non**)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> midway between them (literally, both)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> (stating) that he wished (indirect statement)

<sup>10 &</sup>quot;If I needed anything from Caesar, I should have come to him"

<sup>11</sup> with quid

<sup>1</sup> An honorary title, like that of amīcus, conferred upon foreign leaders for diplomatic reasons.



Wayne Rowe

A triumphal arch in Orange, France. Triumphal arches were freestanding ceremonial gateways erected in honor of a military victory.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Caesar think he might influence Ariovistus?
- 2. What reasons led Caesar to promise the Gauls support?
- 3. What answer did Ariovistus make to Caesar's request for a conference?

## Grammar October

Review the datives of purpose and of reference (double dative) in Lesson XXVI.



- 1. He decided to choose a place for a conference.
- 2. "It will be my concern," he said, "to defend you."
- 3. He said that the Roman army would be a protection to the Gauls.

## Vocabulary ---

### **Nouns**

colloquium, -quī, n. conference

(colloquia, colloquial)

commeātus, -ūs, m. supplies servitūs, -tūtis, f. slavery

(servitude)

## **Adjectives**

perīculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous

(perilous)

turpis, -e, disgraceful

(turpitude)



### Verbs

audeō, -ēre, ausus, dare

(semideponent)

cōgitō, 1, think, consider

(cogitate, cogitation)

(contraction, contractual)

(audacious)

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvi,

-suētus, become accustomed;

(in perf.) be accustomed

contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus,

draw or bring together;

contract

### Adverbs

paulātim, little by little
praesertim, especially

Idioms: opus est, quam ob rem.

Review: placeo, praeterea, uterque.

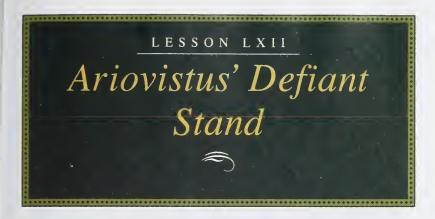
### **Word Studies**

The original meaning of **commeātus** was *coming and going*. Its use in the sense of *supplies* shows that supply trains for the Roman army must have been on the go all the time and gives an idea of the importance attached to provisioning the soldiers.

From what Latin words are the following derived: **colloquium**, **praetereā**, **servitūs**?

Explain arrogance, cogitate, contract, dividend, turpitude.

284



Summary of Chapter 35. After receiving Ariovistus' insolent reply, Caesar sends an ultimatum: first, that Ariovistus is not to bring any more Germans into Gaul; second, that he must return the hostages of the Haeduans; third, that he is not to wage war upon the Haeduans and their allies. If Ariovistus will agree to these demands, there will be peace; otherwise Caesar will protect the interest of the Haeduans.

1, 36

d haec Ariovistus respondit:

"Iūs est bellī ut victorēs victīs quem ad modum velint1 imperent; item populus Romanus victīs non ad<sup>2</sup> alterius praescrīptum, sed ad<sup>2</sup> suum arbitrium imperare consuevit. Sī ego populo Romano non praescrībo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me a populo Romano in meo 5 iūre impedīrī. Haeduī mihi,<sup>3</sup> quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressi ac superātī sunt, stīpendiāriī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī suō adventū vectīgālia4 mihi dēteriōra facit. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā<sup>5</sup> bellum īnferam, sī in eō manēbunt6 quod convēnit stīpendiumque quotannīs pendent; sī id non 10 11 let him come on fēcerint, longē hīs frāternum<sup>7</sup> nomen populī Romānī aberit.<sup>8</sup> Quod<sup>9</sup> mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniūriās non neglēctūrum, nēmo mēcum sine suā perniciē10 contendit. Cum volet, congrediātur;11 intelleget quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint."12 15

<sup>1</sup> as they wish

<sup>2</sup> according to

<sup>3</sup> depends on stīpendiāriī

<sup>4</sup> revenues

5 unjustly

6 if they will abide by that (with in eō)

<sup>7</sup> adj., = frātrum (a sneer at the honorary title)

<sup>8</sup> i.e., will be of little use to them

9 as to the fact that

10 destruction

12 can (do)

**Summary of Chapter 37.** On hearing of further German outrages Caesar advances rapidly against Ariovistus.

This marble relief of Caesar from the Louvre shows the great man whose name is synonymous with Rome complete with a laurel leaf crown.



38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque 20 oppidō, ibi praesidium collocat.

Summary of Chapters 39–41. Exaggerated reports about the Germans throw Caesar's army into a panic, and throughout the camp soldiers may be seen making their wills. The officers even predict mutiny when Caesar gives the order to advance. He restores confidence by recalling how

<sup>1</sup> Masculine: Besançon, one of the strongest natural fortresses in France.

Marius defeated the Germans and by stating that Helvetians, whom they themselves had just defeated, do not fear the Germans, for they have often beaten them in battle. This speech has a bracing effect and his men clamor for an immediate advance. Caesar marches against Ariovistus.

**42.** Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāvisset, id per sē<sup>13</sup> fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur.

13 as far as he was concerned

### QUESTIONS

- 1. How did Ariovistus defend his actions?
- 2. Why did he have such confidence in his Germans?
- 3. How did he explain his willingness to have a conference?
- 4. What do you think was the real reason for his changing his mind?

## Grammar Command Comman

Review the hortatory and jussive subjunctives in Lesson X. Review the subjunctive in indirect questions in Lesson XIX.

### TRANSLATION

- 1. Let us not tempt fortune too often.
- 2. Let Caesar meet (in battle) with us and learn how Germans conquer.
- 3. The Germans did not know whether (**utrum**) to kill the prisoner or (**an**) reserve him for (**in**) another time.

## 

### Noun

tēctum, -ī, n. roof, house

### Adjective

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, tributary (stipend

### Verbs

congredior, congredī, (congress, congressional)
congressus, meet
praescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, (prescribe, prescription)
-scrīptus, direct
respuō, -ere, respui, —, reject
temptō, 1, try, test (tempt, temptation)

### Adverb

hūc, to this side, here

Idiom: quem ad modum.

Review: pendō, stīpendium, ūtor.

### **Word Studies**

Explain convention, covenant, denunciation, deteriorate, journal, journey, pernicious, prescription, sanitation.





Reading Caesar's Gallic War sometimes gives the impression that every eligible Gallic male fought against the Romans. Men were still needed for building and agricultural occupations. This 3rd century bronze shows a farmer. The odd way in which he is holding his hands shows us that a wheelbarrow or plow is missing from this piece.

Summary of Chapters 42–54. Caesar grants the request but guards against treachery. In his speech Caesar pleads for peace but insists upon his former demands. Ariovistus is as arrogant as before and demands that Caesar withdraw from his Gaul before he drives him out of it. Caesar rejects appearement and replies that he will not forsake his allies. The conference is brought to a sudden end when the German cavalry attack Caesar's escort. Ariovistus later arrests two Roman envoys as spies whom Caesar sent in response to his request for another conference. Ariovistus then begins actual hostilities by cutting off Caesar's line of communication, but Caesar later reestablishes it by a skillful maneuver. Learning that the superstitious Germans are waiting for a full moon in order to attack, Caesar, like the good general that he was, takes the initiative and attacks at once. The fighting on both sides is desperate. At the critical moment Crassus sends up the reserves and the Romans win a decisive victory. Ariovistus escapes across the Rhine in a small boat. After establishing his legions in winter quarters at Vesontio, Caesar returns to Cisalpine Gaul.

## Our Heritage

### THE GALLIC CONQUEST AND ITS EFFECT ON THE WORLD

The immediate result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul was to free Italy for centuries from the fear of another invasion like that of the Gauls who had swept down from the north and sacked Rome in 390 B.C. "Let the Alps sink," Cicero exclaimed; "the gods raised them to shelter Italy from the barbarians; they are now no longer needed."

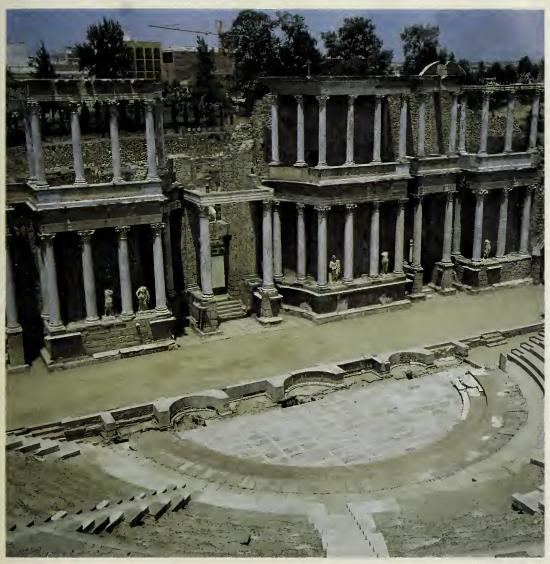
The Roman conquest of Gaul likewise relieved Italy from the German menace. Two German tribes, the Teutons and the Cimbri, had annihilated two Roman armies before Marius and his legions succeeded in stopping their advance in the Alpine passes. Caesar not only drove the Germans out of Gaul but bridged the Rhine and pushed the German tribes back into their own forests. It was Caesar who fixed the frontier of Gaul at the Rhine. Had it not been for Caesar's conquest of Gaul, the country extending from the Rhine to the Pyrenees and from the Alps to the ocean might have become an extension of Germany, embracing the Iberian peninsula as well.

This subjugation of Gaul by the Romans gave the Greco-Italic culture time to become thoroughly rooted, not only in Gaul, but also in Spain, before the breakup of the Roman Empire. Belgium, France, Portugal, and Spain became *Latin* instead of *Teutonic*. The language, customs, and arts of Rome were gradually introduced and the "vulgar," or spoken, Latin of Gaul became early French. Thus the whole history of western Europe was profoundly affected by the Roman conquest of Gaul. We should not forget, moreover, that through the Norman-French language our own English speech became predominantly Latin, though Caesar in his two invasions of the island of Britain (England) had merely, according to Tacitus, "revealed Britain to the Romans." The distinguished historian, T. Rice Holmes, has written that the French nation is the monument of Caesar's conquest of Gaul.



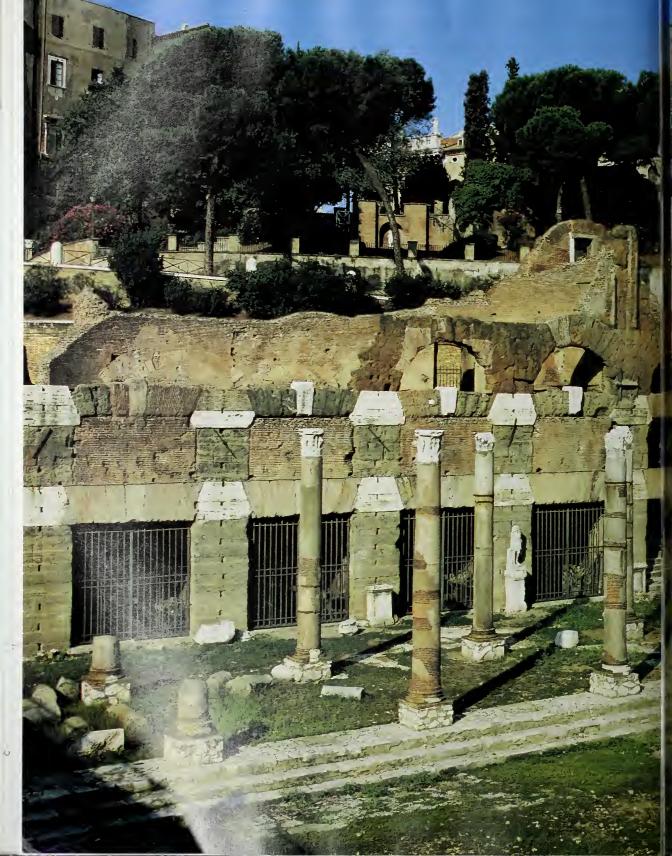
### QUESTIONS

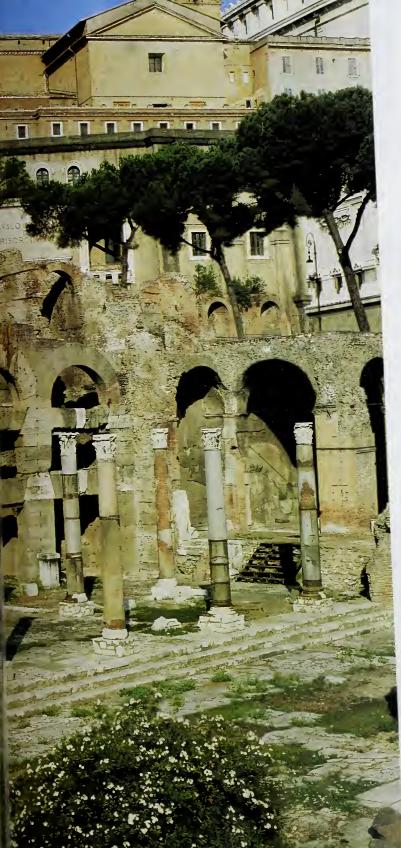
- 1. Is our English speech the richer because of its Latin elements?
- 2. What would have been the probable effect upon the history of Europe if the Germans had conquered Gaul?
- 3. Was Rome, as the possessor of a superior culture, justified in imposing her civilization upon the Gauls?



SEF/Art Resource, NY

Everywhere the Romans governed, they established theaters for public entertainment. From the Greeks, the Romans borrowed the dramatic styles of comedy and tragedy. Masks were used so that the audience could identify various characters at a glance. This Roman theater was constructed by Agrippa in A.D. 18 in Mérida, Spain. In no province did Roman ways take firmer root outside of Italy than in Spain.





## Unit VI Dē Bellō Gallicō II-V

The Forum of Julius Caesar is located a short distance from the Roman Forum. It was begun in 54 B.C., during the period of Caesar's military campaign. The Forum contains the Temple of Venus Genetrix, from whom Caesar claimed descent. In this photo, you can see the tabernae (shops) behind the columns of the double colonnade.

Scale of the second

# Summary of Book II – Caesar's **Gallic War**

ook II is the story of the campaign against the Belgians. Several Belgian groups, primarily descendants of German tribes, decided to join together to claim their independence. Since there were many disparate groups, Caesar tried to move quickly to prevent them from coming together in a large army, but he was too late. Taking a strong position in the territory of his allies the Remi, on the banks of the Aisne River, Caesar tested the strength of both armies with his cavalry. The Belgians tried to surround Caesar's camp by crossing the river, but Caesar got to the bridge first, crossed it, and engaged the Belgians in a fierce battle. The Belgians were running low on grain and heard that help was on the way for Caesar. As a result, they decided to withdraw in the middle of the night. Caesar's legions pursued them at dawn and killed many of those at the rear of the withdrawing Belgian Army.

Caesar then moved quickly by forced marches to the territories of the Suessiones and the Bellovaci. The speed of the Romans and the size of their fortifications so alarmed the two groups that they decided to surrender. Hostages and information about other tribes were exchanged and Caesar moved on. He soon arrived at the territory of the Nervii, whom it is said, were very fierce and courageous, and would never consider any terms of surrender or peace.

The battle with the Nervii was the most exciting of Caesar's battles in Gaul. Upon learning that Caesar's army was on the move but still widely separated, the Nervii made the first attack. The first attack came so fast that Caesar did not have time to give orders. But his men were so experienced by this time that they knew what had to be done. The heavily wooded terrain made the fighting difficult. As additional troops arrived on the scene, they were largely unable to see where their services were needed, nor how best to prepare themselves. The enemy pushed their way into the main camp as fierce fighting continued on the flanks. The Treveri arrived as reinforcements for Caesar, but when they saw that all was

turmoil and the enemy were in the camp, they left and went home and reported that the Romans had been beaten.

Caesar saw that his lines were being broken and that his legions were too tightly crowded together to fight efficiently. Spirits were sagging. He suddenly snatched a shield from a soldier and advanced to the front line, shouting the names of specific centurions and rousing the men with his own courage. The men, wanting to show the general their best efforts, were spurred on by him, and the rush of the enemy was slowed. Then Caesar directed the military tribunes to advance on another side to push the enemy back. Finally, the reinforcements from the rear, commanded by Labienus, were able to see from their higher position where they were most needed, and came on the scene as fast as they could. When the enemy saw them, they were greatly discouraged, although they continued to fight with the last of their strength.

Meanwhile, the Atuatuci were coming as reinforcements for the Nervii. When they arrived at the battle site, however, and saw what looked like a lost cause, they decided to turn back and fortify their own town.

When the Romans approached the town of the Atuatuci, they constructed a tower far off from the fortified wall. At first, the Atuatuci laughed and jeered. Then, when they saw the tower moving toward them, they immediately decided to sue for peace. They asked that they be allowed to retain their weapons, since they were surrounded by hostile tribes. Caesar said that he would only accept their surrender if it were done before the battering ram reached their fortified wall, and required that all arms be given up,

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection



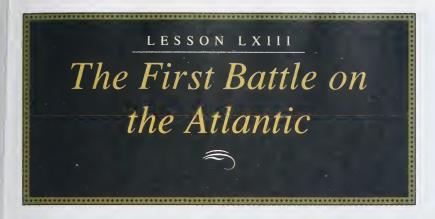
Julius Caesar spent the years from 58-50 B.C. in his military campaigns in the Gallic provinces. This frieze from a sarcophagus shows the Roman soldiers fighting the Gauls in battle.

since Caesar would command all the neighboring tribes to leave untouched the prisoners of the Romans. The Atuatuci agreed and began to throw out their weapons. However, they kept almost a third of them hidden in the town. That night, they launched a final sortie against the Romans. The Atuatuci fought very bravely, but were beaten back by the Romans, the town was destroyed, and all survivors were sold off as slaves.

Summary of Chapters 1–13. After subduing the Belgians, Caesar decides to make access to their northern country easy and safe for Roman traders by opening a road through the Alps to Italy by way of what we now call the Great St. Bernard Pass. He accordingly sends Servius Galba with a small force to guard this pass and hold the Alpine tribes in check. Galba takes up winter quarters in Octodurus (see map, pp. 228–229). This proves to be a death trap, for the mountaineers, who had pretended to submit, suddenly gather in large numbers on the heights above and attack the Romans before they have completed their fortifications. Galba beats them off, but finding it impossible to get supplies, he burns the village, destroys his camp, and withdraws to the Province.

Caesar had sent Publius Crassus with a legion to establish winter quarters among the coast tribes of what is now Brittany and Normandy. Foremost of these tribes were the Ven'eti. They, too, had pretended to submit and had even sent hostages to Crassus. Later, in order to force him to restore their hostages, they seize some of the officers sent by him to arrange for supplies. All the northwestern seacoast tribes combine to resist the Romans and send an embassy to Crassus, demanding the hostages. Caesar at once orders ships to be built at the mouth of the Liger (Loire) and oarsmen to be procured from the Province. He hastens north in the early spring. He sends Labienus to the Treveri, near the Rhine, to keep the Belgians under control and to prevent the Germans, whom the Belgians had asked for aid, from crossing the Rhine. Crassus is sent to Aquitania to prevent help from being sent from there into Gaul. Brutus is sent to prevent the coast tribes of the north from aiding the Veneti. Decimus Brutus is put in charge of the fleet that is being obtained from the pacified districts.

The towns of the Veneti are almost inaccessible from the land side because high tide cuts them off, and from the sea because low tide causes ships to be stranded in the shallows. In case of extreme danger the Veneti move from town to town by ship, taking all with them. They have a powerful fleet of seagoing vessels that have every advantage over the Roman galleys, because they have high prows and flat keels and are fitted with sails, being well adapted to fighting in shallow water or to riding out sidens at sea.



### III, 14

omplūribus expugnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum laborem sūmī, neque hostium fugam, captīs oppidīs, reprimī neque eīs nocērī<sup>1</sup> posse, statuit exspectandam classem.<sup>2</sup> Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae ex portū profectae nostrīs adver- 5 4 what they should do sae constiterunt; neque satis Brūto,<sup>3</sup> quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat quid agerent<sup>4</sup> aut quam rationem pugnae însisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex<sup>5</sup> barbarīs nāvibus superābat ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis com-10 modē tēla adigī possent et missa6 ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magno ūsuī rēs praeparāta ab nostrīs—falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs<sup>7</sup> non absimilī<sup>8</sup> formā mūrālium falcium. Hīs<sub>1</sub> cum<sup>9</sup> fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant<sup>10</sup> comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō<sup>11</sup> rēmīs incitātō, praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs, antemnae necessāriō con-15 cidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus<sup>12</sup> spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque consisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūno tempore ēriperētur.2 Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in conspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius<sup>13</sup> factum latēre posset; 20 omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiora, unde erat propinguus despectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

<sup>1</sup> that they could not be injured

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> i.e., his own

<sup>3</sup> with constabat

<sup>6</sup> those thrown

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> long poles

<sup>8</sup> not unlike that of

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> whenever

<sup>10</sup> bound to the masts

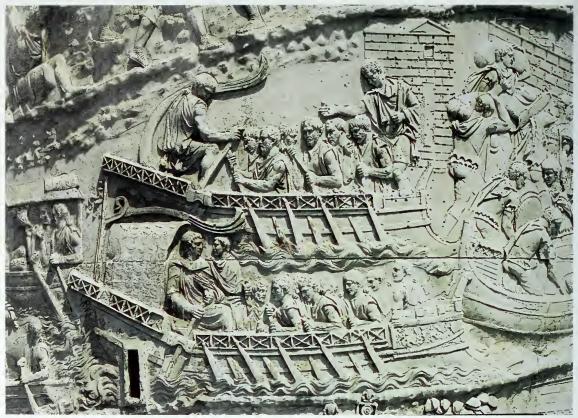
<sup>11</sup> i.e., the attacking Roman ship

<sup>12</sup> in the case of the Gallic ships (dative of reference)

<sup>13</sup> a little braver (than usual)

ablative of means, with comprehensi

<sup>2</sup> The Gallic ships, unlike those of the Romans, had no oars.



Scala/Art Resource, NY

A large Roman vessel, used for carrying men and goods, usually had two banks of oars. The master at the front of the ship set the cadence, or tempo, for the rowers to follow. This was sometimes done with a drum, his voice, or with his own oar. This detail is from the Column of Trajan in Rome.

### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who commanded the Roman fleet?
- 2. Why were the Romans particularly brave?
- 3. In what three ways did the Roman and Venetan ships differ?

### Grammar -



Review purpose and result clauses in Lessons XI, XII, and XIV.

### TRANSLATION

- 1. The ships of the enemy were so high that the Romans could not throw their spears.
- 2. The soldiers fought with great courage in order not to be beaten in the sight of Caesar.

## Vocabulary

### Nouns

antemna, -ae, f. yardarm (of a ship; the spar to which sails are fastened)

classis. -is. f. fleet(class, classic)falx, falcis, f. hook(falcate, falchion)

fūnis, -is, m. rope nāvigium, -gī, n. boat puppis, -is, f. stern

rostrum, -ī, n. prow (of a ship): (rostral. rostrum)

beak

**ūsus, -ūs,** m. use, practice, experience

vēlum, -ī, n. sail

### Adjective

praeacūtus, -a, -um, pointed

### Verbs

attribuō, -ere, attribuī, (attribute, attribution) attribūtus, assign

constat, it is evident, it is clear,

it is certain

constant, -statūrus, (constancy, constant)

stand together

īnsistō, -ere, īnstitī, —, adopt, (insist. insistence)

stand (on)

### Word Studies

Classis originally meant a calling out of citizens for military service, or draft. Then it came to mean any group, or *class*. One specialized meaning was that of the naval *class*, or *fleet*.

From what Latin words are the following derived: abscīdō, absimilis, affīgō, attribuō, concidō, praerumpō, reprimō?

Explain affix, attribution, insertion, latent, repression.

The rocky coast of Brittany, France. Caesar's fleet, with ships powered by oars, defeated the Gallic fleet in this region by pulling down their sails and rigging, rendering them immobile.





### O III, 15

1 whenever

<sup>2</sup> each (Gallic vessel)

<sup>3</sup> where adverb

4 was blowing

<sup>5</sup> with **tum**: *not only*... *but also* 

6 more advanced

7 (a place) where they might take refuge or means whereby

<sup>8</sup> all the more severely (looking forward to **quō**)

<sup>9</sup> that punishment ought to be inflicted.

10 "under the crown," i.e., as slaves

ēiectīs (ut dīximus) antemnīs, cum¹ singulās² bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium,

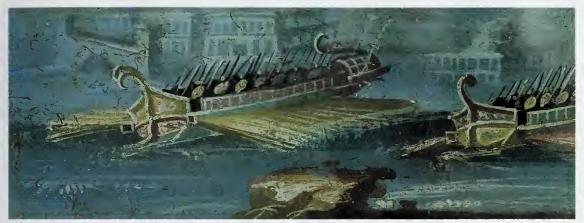
5 fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō³ ventus ferēbat,⁴ tanta subitō tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsecūtī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum₁ ab hōrā ferē 10 quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae confectum est. Nam cum<sup>5</sup> omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris<sup>6</sup> aetātis, in quibus aliquid consilī aut dignitātis fuit, eo convēnerant, tum nāvium<sub>2</sub> quod ubīque fuerat<sub>2</sub> in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quo<sup>7</sup> sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quos eo<sup>8</sup> gravius Caesar vindicandum<sup>9</sup> statuit, quo dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum conservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necāto, reliquos sub coronā<sup>10</sup> vēndidit.

Summary of Chapters 17–19. Caesar sends Sabinus to subdue the northern allies of the Veneti near Avranches in Normandy. Knowing that he must employ strategy to deal with their overwhelming numbers, Sabinus bribes a Gaul to play the role of a deserter and tell the Gauls that Sabinus is going to Caesar's aid. The ruse works, for the Gauls immediately attack Sabinus in his camp, whereupon, having the advantage of position, he orders his trained soldiers to charge them from the right and left gates and sends them flying. The enemy at once surrenders.

loosely attached to the preceding: the fighting going on, etc.

Depends on quod: all the ships there were anywhere



Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY

19. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. 20 wall painting from Pompeii shows Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

Fortasse trans aquam in Britanniam procedemus. This Roman warships in battle. The soldiers are visible but the rowers are protected below deck.

### OUESTIONS

- 1. What won the sea battle for the Romans?
- 2. Why did Caesar punish the Veneti more severely than he had punished others?
- 3. From Caesar's description of the spirit of the Gauls, what do you infer was his idea of Roman spirit?

## Grammar Occionation

- 1. Review the conjugation of ferō in Lesson XIII.
- 2. Review the genitive of the whole in Lesson XXXII.

### TRANSLATION

- 1. Two of Caesar's ships surrounded one of the enemy's ships.
- 2. When Caesar had brought together enough ships, he attacked the enemy.

## Vocabulary ———

### Nouns

ōra maritima, ōrae maritimae, f. seacoast ventus. -ī. m. wind

(vent. ventilate)

### Adjectives

bīnī, -ae, -a, two at a time maritimus, -a, -um, of the sea mollis, -e, tender opportūnus, -a, -um, opportune, advantageous perpaucī, -ae, -a, very few (binary, binational)
(maritime)
(mollification, mollify)
(opportune, opportunity)

### **Verbs**

circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —,

surround

exsistō, -ere, exstitī, —,

stand out, arise

trānscendō, -ere, -cendī, —,

board, climb over

(exist, existential)

(transcend, transcendental)

### Adverb

usque, up to

Review: alacer, expugno, neco, statim.

### **Word Studies**

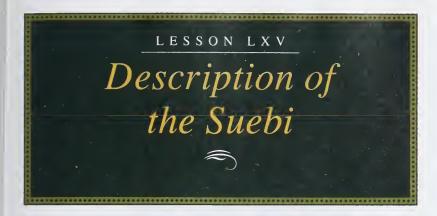
From what Latin words are the following derived: dēiciō, dignitās, interventus, maritimus, nāvālis, perpaucī?

Explain alacrity, binary, combine, coronation, dejection, dignitary, intervention, maritime, mollify, ventilate.

Summary of Chapters 20–29. Crassus, who had been sent by Caesar to subdue Aquitania, is attacked by the Sotiates. He defeats them and captures their city. Advancing farther, Crassus faces a formidable Aquitanian army, which fights according to Roman tactics. Since the enemy's forces are being strengthened daily, Crassus decides to attack their camp at once. Finding that the rear gate is not well guarded, he makes a surprise attack and routs the enemy. The various tribes of Aquitania now surrender and send hostages. In the north, Caesar defeats the Morini and Menapii, who, avoiding a pitched battle, seek refuge in their forests. The Romans pursue and attempt to cut their way after them, but storms prevent this. After ravaging the enemy's country, Caesar returns to winter in recently conquered territory.

A Gallic warrior is taken prisoner by the Romans. Compare his weapons and armor to that of the Romans. What differences do you see?





In Book IV of the Gallic War, represented by Lessons LXV to LXXII, Caesar describes his war with the Suebi, a German tribe, and his first expedition to Britain, made in 55 B.C.

### IV, 1

ā quae secūta est hieme, quī<sub>1</sub> fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō M. Crassō consulibus, Usipetes Germani<sup>1</sup> et item Tencteri magna cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, non longē ā marī quo2 Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula<sup>3</sup> mīlia armātorum bellandī causā suīs ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illos alunt. Hī rūrsus in vicem anno post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī inter- 10 mittitur. Sed prīvātī agrī apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno4 remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem<sup>5</sup> lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque<sup>6</sup> sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs<sup>7</sup> et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātione et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs<sup>8</sup> nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī<sup>9</sup> nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem 15 faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē consuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs10 frīgidissimīs neque11 vestītūs praeter pelles habeant quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> the German Usipetes

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> adverb

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> a thousand each

<sup>4</sup> than a year

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> for the most part

<sup>5</sup> of they are much given to

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> this manner of life (subject of alit and efficit)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> from boyhood

<sup>9</sup> accustomed to

<sup>10</sup> ablative of place

<sup>11</sup> with et: not only not . . . but even

A Roman general in full armor but wearing a laurel crown stands next to a German warrior, possibly one of the Suebi, who holds his tribe's standard.



North Wind Picture Archives

### QUESTIONS

- 1. What were the chief foods of the Suebi?
- 2. What do you infer was the Romans' chief food?
- 3. What was the nature of the military system of the Suebi?
- 4. What modern system of land ownership resembles theirs?
- 5. Why did the Germans cross the Rhine into Gaul? Where?

Summary of Chapters 2–12. The Suebi tolerate the presence of traders solely that they may sell what they take in war. They are teetotalers. They ride bareback, often fighting on foot, making a speedy getaway on horseback if the fighting goes against them. They live in isolation, allowing no one to settle near their borders. They drive out the German Usipetes and Tencteri, who go to the Rhine, where they are held in check by the Menapii, a Gallic tribe, who have settlements on both sides of the river. The Germans, however, make a surprise attack and cross into Gaul. Caesar, knowing the fickle character of the Gauls, fears that they may unite with the Germans against him. He therefore decides to drive out the Germans. When their envoys come to him asking for lands in Gaul, he orders them to leave the country. They plead for delay and gain a truce, but later make a treacherous attack upon the Roman cavalry.

## 

### **Nouns**

cultūra, -ae, f. cultivation (culture, cultural)

exiguitās, -tātis, f. scantiness, (exiguity)

shortness, smallness

lac, lactis, n. milk (lactic acid)

pecus, pecoris, n. cattle

pellis, -is, f. skin (pellicule)

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. hunting, hunt

**vestītus**, **-ūs**, *m. clothing* (vest)

vicis, -is, f. change; (vicissitude)

in vicem, in turn

### **Adjectives**

**bellicōsus**, **-a**, **-um**, *warlike* (bellicose) **frīgidus**, **-a**, **-um**, *cold* (frigid)

### Verbs

alō, -ere, aluī, alitus, support, feed, nourish, raise exagitō, 1, harass, drive about

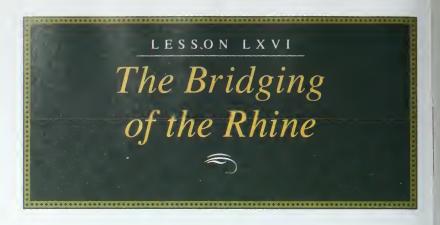
### **Adverbs**

longē, *by far* quotannīs, *every year* 

### **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: **bellicōsus**, **exercitātiō**, **omnīnō**, **vestītus**, **voluntās**?

Explain lactic acid, lave, pellagra, pelt.



### IV, 12

n eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō 5 ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō, sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Summary of Chapters 13–15. After this attack, the Germans send some of their chiefs to ask for a truce. Caesar seizes them and then, advancing upon the leaderless force of Germans, annihilates it.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi
10 Rhēnum esse trānseundum. Quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret
Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus¹
eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī
exercitum₁ Rhēnum trānsīre.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvimus Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis² esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum³ aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> for their own possessions (suīs is emphatic)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> not in accord with the dignity

<sup>3</sup> he must make the effort

subject of posse and audēre



PHOTRI/AISA

### QUESTIONS

- 1. What single reason does Caesar give for crossing the Rhine?
- 2. What other reasons can you give?
- 3. What method of crossing did he use?
- 4. What were his reasons for using this method?

Summary of Chapters 18–19. Caesar invades Germany and terrifies the Germans. After eighteen days he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge.

In order to cross rivers efficiently with thousands of copiae, impedīmenta, and equī, the Romans built bridges. This model shows Caesar's bridge over the Rhine according to the description in Book IV of Dē Bellō Gallicō.

## Vocabulary Control

### Noun

avus, -ī, m. grandfather

### Adjective

iūstus, -a, -um, just, proper, regular

(just, justice)

### **Verbs**

commemorō, 1, mention

(commemorate, commemoration)

dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī,

dēcrētus, decide

impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsus,

(impel, impulse)

drive on, influence, incite

incito, 1, urge on, arouse

(incite, incitement)

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus,

shut off, cut off

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus,

(offer, proffer)

offer; mē offerō, rush against

### Adverb

aliter, otherwise

### Conjunction

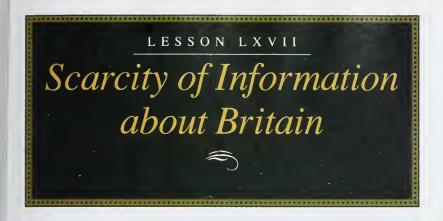
quoad, as long as

Review: amplus, eques, nāscor, tūtus.

### **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: dēiciō, ēripiō, interclūdō, trānseō?

Explain amplitude, commemorate, proposition, renaissance.



#### IV, 20

xiguā parte aestātis reliquā,1 Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit) maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs<sup>2</sup> hostibus nostrīs inde<sup>3</sup> subministrāta<sup>4</sup> auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi üsuī fore<sup>5</sup> arbitrābātur, sī 5 <sup>7</sup> neque temere, scarcely modo īnsulam adīsset,6 genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognovisset, quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere<sup>7</sup> praeter mercātōrēs illō8 adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est. Itaque evocatis9 ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae 10 magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idonei portūs reperire poterat.

21. Ad haec cognoscenda priusquam perīculum<sup>10</sup> faceret, idoneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum, cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut, 15 exploratīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. 11 Hūc 12 nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regionibus et quam, superiore aestāte ad Venēticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet convenīre. Interim, consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus 20 eius īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus audītīs, līberaliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eos domum remittit et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebātibus superātīs, rēgem ibi

<sup>1 (</sup>being) left

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> ablative of time 3 i.e., ē Britanniā

<sup>4</sup> Supply esse.

<sup>5 =</sup> futūrum esse

<sup>6 =</sup> adiisset

<sup>8</sup> adverb

<sup>9</sup> although he called

<sup>10</sup> the attempt

<sup>11</sup> passage

<sup>12</sup> to this point

subject of esse and object of praemittit

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> The antecedent is classem.

13 was considered great

14 i.e., Caesar

15 as far as opportunity (with quantum)

25 constituerat, cuius et virtūtem et consilium probābat, et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctoritās in hīs regionibus magnī habēbātur, <sup>13</sup> mittit. Huic imperat quās<sub>3</sub> possit adeat<sub>4</sub> cīvitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Romānī fidem sequantur, sēque<sup>14</sup> celeriter eo ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus, perspectīs regionibus quantum eī facultātis<sup>15</sup> darī potuit quī<sub>5</sub> ex nāvī ēgredī 30 ac sē barbarīs committere non audēret, quīnto diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. At what time of year did Caesar go to Britain?
- 2. What were his reasons for crossing into Britain?
- 3. How did he try to get information about the island?
- 4. Why did Caesar and his forces set out for the land of the Morini?

Summary of Chapter 22. The Morini submit as Caesar prepares to cross the Channel. He gathers together eighty transports for two legions and eighteen for the cavalry, besides several warships for the officers.

# Grammar Common C

Review indirect command in Lesson XXII.

#### TRANSLATION

- 1. "Persuade the Britons to send hostages and to refrain from war."
- 2. He urged his friend to investigate everything and to report as soon as possible.

The antecedent is cīvitātēs.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> Supply ut before adeat, hortetur, and nuntiet.

<sup>5</sup> The antecedent is ei: to one who.

#### Nouns

aestās, -tātis, f. summer nātiō, -ōnis, f. nation, tribe (estival, estivation)
(nationalization, nationalize)

# **Adjectives**

exiguus, -a, -um, small mātūrus, -a, -um, early, ripe, mature (exiguous)
(maturation, maturity)

#### Verbs

obtemperō, 1, submit to subministrō, 1, furnish

#### **Adverbs**

inde, then, from there, thereafter,
 therefore
liberāliter, liberally, courteously
temere, rashly, without reason

Review: brevis, modo, perspicio.

# **Word Studies**

Motto of the United States Marine Corps: semper fidelis. From what Latin words are the following derived: ēvocō, fidēlis, incognitus, līberāliter, trāiectus?

Explain converge, divergent, fidelity, incognito.



# IV, 23

while they had carried out his order a little too slowly tardius chariot fighters in deep water progred tardius 5 nāvibus

5 trained

6 i.e., on land

<sup>4</sup> while they, i.e., the Britons

<sup>7</sup> artillery

īs constitūtīs rēbus, nactus idoneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā nāvēs solvit, equitēsque in ulteriorem portum progredī et nāvēs conscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum¹ paulo tardius esset administrātum, ipse horā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs 5 nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium copiās armātās conspexit. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idoneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eo convenīrent ad horam nonam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēno cognovisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit. Hīs dīmissīs et 100 ventum et aestum ūno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plāno lītore nāvēs constituit.

24. At barbarī, consilio Romānorum cognito, praemisso equitātu et essedāriīs,² reliquīs copiīs subsecutī nostros nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant.
15 Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in alto³ constituī non poterant; mīlitibus₁ autem, ignotīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magno et gravī onere armorum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī⁴ aut ex ārido aut paulum in aquam progressī, omnibus 20 membrīs expedītīs, notissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equos īnsuēfactos⁵ incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīno generis pugnae imperītī non eādem alacritāte ac studio quo in pedestribus6 ūtī proeliīs consuēverant ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs<sub>2</sub> longās, quārum speciēs erat 25 barbarīs inūsitātior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium constituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs<sup>7</sup> hostēs propellī ac submovērī iussit. Quae rēs magno ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam

Dative of agent with desiliendum, consistendum, pugnandum; make it the subject in English.

<sup>2</sup> Subject of removērī, incitārī, constitui; note change of subject in hostēs... submovērī.



North Wind Picture Archives

Caesar was finally able to land in Britain after redeploying his warships. Notice that the standardbearer, holding his eagle aloft, urges on the spirit of the other soldiers.

et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum pedem rettulērunt. At nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī₃ decimae 30 legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē<sup>8</sup> nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, 35 <sup>8</sup> one another ūniversī ex nāvī dēsíluērunt. Hōs item ex proxímīs nāvibus₄ cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Why did Caesar not land immediately?
- 2. What were the difficulties faced by the Romans?
- 3. With what types of troops did the Britons keep the Romans from landing?
- 4. What was Caesar's motive in telling the story of the standard-bearer?

<sup>3</sup> Supply the antecedent: the one who.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> Supply eī: the men on the nearest ships (used as subject of conspexissent and appropinguaverunt).

# Grammar October

Review the datives of purpose and reference (double dative) in Lesson XXVI.

## TRANSLATION

- 1. Do you think that the ships will be any protection to us?
- 2. The shields were of no help to the soldiers struggling in the water.

# 

#### **Nouns**

aestus, -ūs, m. tide(estuarine, estuary)ancora, -ae, f. anchor(anchorage)aquila, -ae, f. eagle(aquiline)

funda. -ae, f. sling, slingshot

mōtus, -ūs, m. motion(motif, motive)sagitta, -ae, f. arrow(Sagittarius, sagitate)

# Adjectives

āridus, -a, -um, dry (arid)

imperītus, -a, -um,

inexperienced, ignorant

**ūniversus**, -a, -um, all (together) (universal, universe)

## Verbs

**cūnctor**, 1, hesitate (cunctation)

dēsiliō, -īre, dēsiluī, (desultory, expository)

dēsultūrus, jump down

expono, -ere, -posui, -positus, (exponent, exponential)

put out, draw ир

obtestor, 1, entreat, pray

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give

(fortlı), betray

Idioms: nāvis longa, nāvis onerāria.

# Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: alacritās, commīlitō, flūctus, ignōtus, inūsitātus, mōtus, onerārius, praefectus, prōdō? Explain aquiline, arid, dismember, estuary, expository, fluctuate.



#### IV. 26

ugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius<sup>1</sup> aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquos singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs conspexerant, incitātīs equīs, 5 2 several impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs<sup>2</sup> paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās<sup>3</sup> longārum nāvium, item speculātoria nāvigia<sup>4</sup> mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat hīs, subsidia submittebat. Nostrī simul<sup>5</sup> in āridō constiterunt, suīs omnibus consecutīs, 6 in hostes impetum 10 fēcērunt atque eos in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prosequi potuērunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere7 non potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius 15 Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmonstrāverāmus ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum<sup>8</sup> ad eōs ōrātōris modo<sup>9</sup> Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant. Tum, proeliō factō, remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignoscerētur<sup>10</sup> petīvērunt. 20 Caesar questus quod,3 cum ultrō, in continentem lēgātīs missīs, pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere4 imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit. Quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Interea suos in agros remigrare jusserunt, principesque undique convenire 25 et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

3 boats

<sup>4</sup> scout boats, i.e., patrol craft

<sup>45</sup> as soon as (atque or ac is understood)

6 and their fellow soldiers caught up with them (ablative absolute)

7 reach

8 although

9 as an envoy

10 impersonal

one from one vessel, another from another would join whatever standard he met

antecedent of quos

<sup>2</sup> Supply eum.

<sup>3</sup> Introduces intulissent; cum goes with petissent.

<sup>4</sup> Supply se as subject.



Robert Estall/Tony Stone Images

The remains of a Roman amphitheater in St. Albans, England. Since the Romans knew that the people who were garrisoned so far away would miss the conforts of home, they felt it was important to ensure that sports and dramatic entertainment was available. Thus they built their monuments to last.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What advantage did the Britons have?
- 2. What caused confusion among the Romans?
- 3. Why did Caesar have no cavalry to pursue the enemy?
- 4. How did Caesar come to the aid of those in difficulty?
- 5. What two things did Caesar complain about to the Britons?

# 

#### **Nouns**

imprūdentia, -ae, f. poor sense latus, lateris, n. side, flank subsidium, -dī, n. aid, reserve (imprudence, imprudent) (lateral, unilateral) (subsidiary, subsidy)

#### Pronoun

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever

# Adjective

longinquus, -a, -um, distant

## Verbs

**ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtus,** (ignoble) pardon

queror, querī, questus,

(quarrel, querulous)

complain

remigrō, 1, go back

## Adverbs

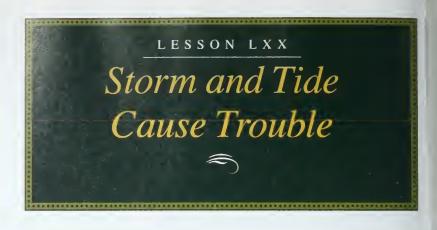
firmiter, firmly ultro, voluntarily

#### **Word Studies**

Distinguish carefully the forms and derivatives of **quaero** and **queror**. Derivatives of **quaero** include *conquest*, *query*, *quest*, *question*; of **queror**, *quarrel*, *querulous*.

From what Latin words are the following derived: **commendō**, **comprehendō**, **continēns**, **imprūdentia**, **longinquus**, **mandātum**, **remigrō**, **speculātōrius**?

Explain aggregation, comprehension, mandate, recommendation.





1 they came, literally, it was come

<sup>2</sup> to themselves

4 time

īs rēbus pāce confirmātā, diē quārto postquam est in Britanniam ventum,¹ nāvēs XVIII dē quibus suprā dēmonstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiore portū lēnī vento solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subito

- 5 coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō² cum perīculō dēicerentur. Quae³ tamen, ancorīs iactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur. necessāriō adversā nocte⁴ in altum prōvectae continentem petīvērunt.
- 29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs<sup>4</sup> maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum<sub>2</sub> trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus
- frāctīs, reliquae cum essent ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī: et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs<sup>5</sup> in

20 hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Nevertheless, when after anchoring they were filling with water, in the face of the night

<sup>5</sup> i.e., in Britain

still part of the ut clause

<sup>2</sup> Only part of the army had been transported in the warships.



These roof tiles are from a 1st century Roman villa in Fishbourne, England. The Romans constructed many buildings in the English countryside, expecting their occupation to be permanent. Parts of homes, municipal buildings, walls, and fortifications are not only visible but in use today.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad ea quae iusserat Caesar facienda convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent, et paucitatem mīlitum ex castrorum exiguitāte cognoscerent—quae hoc6 erant etiam angustiora quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legionēs trānsportāverat—opti- 25 \* tnougu i.e., Caesar's army mum esse dūxērunt,7 rebellione factā, frūmento commeātūque nostros prohibēre et rem in hiemem producere; quod, hīs8 superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere et suos clam ex agrīs deducere9 coeperunt.

6 on this account

9 i.e., to mobilize an army

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What became of the cavalry?
- 2. What happened to the main fleet?
- 3. What three things did the Romans lack?

# Grammar Command

Review the ablative of separation in Lesson XXXVII.



- 1. Caesar was unwilling to depart from Britain until he received hostages.
- 2. The Britons thought that they could keep the Romans from their supplies.
- 3. "Let us cut these Romans off from (the possibility of) return; no one will cross the sea again to attack us."

#### Nouns

continens, -entis, f. mainland reditus, -ūs, m. return

(continent, continental)

# Adjective

lēnis, -e, gentle

(leniency, lenient)

## Verbs

colloquor, colloqui, (colloquium, colloquy)
collocūtus, talk with, confer
coorior, coorīrī, coortus, arise
cūrō, 1, care (for), cause
(to be done)
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus,
break, wreck
prōyehō, -ere, -yexī, -yectus,

Review: clam, commeātus, compleō, prope, subitō.

#### **Word Studies**

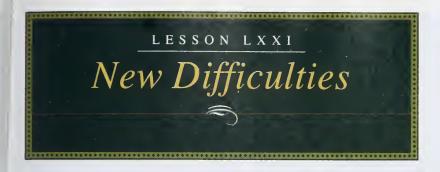
carry forward

The moon was thought to have an effect not merely on the tide, as Caesar discovered, but also on the human mind: "lunatic" means *moon-struck*.

From what Latin words are the following derived: auxilior, colloquor, cūrō, exiguitās, inūtilis, perturbātiō, prōvehō, rebelliō, reditus, reportō?

Explain colloquy, curative, lunacy, lunar, plenipotentiary.





#### IV, 31

t Caesar, etsī nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex ēventū¹ nāvium suārum et ex eo² quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore₁ id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra conferēbat et quae₂ gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās 5 ūtēbātur, et quae³ ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summo studio ā mīlitibus administrārētur.⁴ XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.⁵

Summary of Chapters 32–33. The Britons attack the seventh legion while it is collecting grain. They use chariots, which give them the mobility of cavalry. Caesar comes to the rescue.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs<sub>3</sub> tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit. Namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex 10 timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō<sup>6</sup> continuit et, brevī tempore intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt.<sup>7</sup> Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostros in castrīs continērent 15 et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī<sup>8</sup> facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent,<sup>9</sup> dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus<sup>10</sup> celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

<sup>1</sup> accident to his ships

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> from the fact that

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Supply ea.

<sup>4</sup> impersonal

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> he made it possible to sail well enough in the others (nāvigarī is used impersonally)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> in a favorable position

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> i.e., Britons, to join the revolt

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> of freeing themselves forever

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> if they should drive

<sup>10</sup> by this means

<sup>1 =</sup> futūrum esse. Its subject is id. 2 Translate as if eārum nāvium quae.

<sup>3</sup> dative with auxilium tulit



PHOTRI/INDEX

This detail from the Arch of Titus depicts the celebration of the sack of Jerusalem. You can see soldiers carrying off some of the sacred vessels, including the seven-pronged menorah of the Temple of Jerusalem.

11 for them

13 reach

14 i.e., down the coast

36. Lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs<sup>11</sup> Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem 25 pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs<sup>12</sup> reliquae capere<sup>13</sup> nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā<sup>14</sup> dēlātae sunt.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What led Caesar to expect trouble?
- 2. What preparations did Caesar make?
- 3. How did he use the ships that could not be repaired?
- 4. What postponed the final battle?

Summary of Chapters 37–38. Three hundred soldiers from the two transports are attacked by the Morini. The Romans fight bravely and are rescued by reinforcements. Caesar then sends Labienus to pacify the Morini. Winter quarters are established among the Belgians. The Roman senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days for Caesar's victories.

# Grammar Commande Comm

Review the gerundive and gerund in Lessons XXI and XXIII.



- 1. The men were sent to fight.
- 2. There was no chance of attacking.
- 3. Caesar was occupied in repairing the ships.
- 4. They went out for the purpose of collecting grain.

# 

#### **Nouns**

**equitātus, -ūs**, *m. cavalry* (equitation) **ēventus, -ūs**, *m. outcome*, *result* (event, eventuality) **peditātus, -ūs**, *m. infantry* 

# Adjective

continuus, -a, -um, successive (continual, continuous)

#### **Verbs**

## **Adverbs**

commodē, well, suitably,
effectively
īnfrā, below, farther on (infrared)

## **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: adventus, complūrēs, confero, eventus, paucitās?

Explain affliction, continuity, perpetuity, propinquity.

# Our Heritage

#### CAESAR'S INVASIONS OF BRITAIN

The recorded history and culture of Britain, now called England, probably began with Caesar's two invasions of 55 and 54 B.C., although centuries before that traders had gone there for tin. On August 25, 1946, in recognition

of the significance of Caesar's invasion, a tablet "to commemorate the two thousandth anniversary of the landing" was unveiled at Deal (north of Dover), where historians think Caesar first set foot on British soil. It is hard for us to imagine what an adventure it was for the Romans to set sail over strange seas from a port in a country that they were just conquering, to an entirely unknown land.

Caesar made no attempt at a permanent conquest, perhaps because he saw that it would take too long and he was afraid that the hostile Gallic tribes at his back might cause trouble. He was, of course, a long way from home. As the historian Tacitus said a century and a half later, Caesar did not hand Britain over to future generations of Romans but merely revealed it to them. But that in itself was a very important contribution.

Almost exactly a century after Caesar, when all of Gaul, thanks to his efforts, had not only been pacified but Romanized, the Romans began the serious task of conquering Britain. This was under the emperor Claudius in A.D. 43. By the end of the century most of the island had been thoroughly Romanized.

The historian R. G. Collingwood, quoting Sir Mortimer Wheeler, writes of the civilizing influence of the Romans on London (Londinium): "Londinium was a civilized city, a comfortable one, with an efficient drainage system and an adequate water supply. There were probably more buildings of stone and brick than at any subsequent period until after the Great Fire of 1666. There were more adequate and attractive facilities for bathing than ever until the latter part of Queen Victoria's reign."

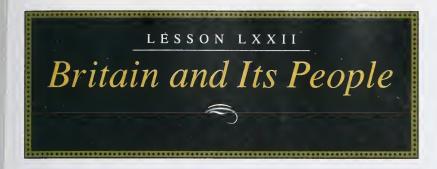


The Bettmann Archive



Tiberius Claudius Drusus Nero Germanicus, or just Claudius, reigned from A.D. 41-54. Since he suffered from a kind of paralysis, he was thought dimwitted and unfit for public office. When Caligula was assassinated in 41, the Praetorian Guard made Claudius emperor, thinking he could be easily controlled. Claudius, however, was a shrewd administrator who added Britain, Mauritania, and Thrace to the Roman Empire.

R.G. Collingwood, Roman Britain (London, 1953), p. 58.



Book V of the *Gallic War*, from which Lessons LXXII to LXXIV are taken, gives an account of Caesar's second invasion of Britain (54 B.C.) and of the Gallic uprisings he faced upon his return.

Summary of Chapters 1–11. The winter following the first expedition to Britain is spent in preparation for a second invasion. After issuing orders for a large fleet to be ready early the next spring, Caesar sets out for Illyricum because he hears that the Pirustae are raiding the country adjoining his province. After subduing them, he sets out for Gaul, where he finds the ships ready. First, however, he decides to subdue the Treveri, among whom an anti-Roman spirit has developed. Caesar's appearance with an army is sufficient to quell the revolt. He then gives orders for his fleet to assemble at Portus Itius. He decides to take Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Haeduan, to Britain, for he fears that in his absence Dumnorix will cause trouble. While the troops are embarking and there is confusion in the Roman camp, Dumnorix escapes. He is soon captured and is killed resisting arrest.

Caesar, leaving Labienus in charge in Gaul with three legions, takes five legions and 2,000 cavalry with him in more than 800 ships. After some difficulty with the tide, he lands in Britain without opposition. He afterwards learns that the Britons, frightened by the number of ships, had taken to the hills. Leaving a force under Quintus Atrius sufficient to guard the ships, Caesar advances inland against the Britons and captures one of their forest strongholds. On the following day, while preparing to pursue them, he learns that a great storm has destroyed about forty of his ships and damaged many others. These are beached and repaired. The Britons put Cassivellaunus in charge of their army.

1 originated

<sup>2</sup> as those from which they originated and from which they migrated to this place

3 bars

4 instead of

<sup>5</sup> tin (literally, white lead)

6 bronze

<sup>7</sup> beech and fir

8 hare

9 chicken

10 goose; The origin of these taboos is uncertain.

12 three-cornered

13 as it is from

14 in mid-channel

<sup>15</sup> Supply esse: are thought to lie off the coast.

16 winter solstice: Caesar's source was incorrect on this point.

17 with a water (glass), resembling in principle the sand or hour glass

18 as their opinion goes

19 supply latus

<sup>20</sup> woad (a plant)

ritanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs1 in īnsulā ipsī dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus<sup>2</sup> ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et, bellō illātō, ibi remānsērunt 5 atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est înfinîta multitudo creberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs consimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs³ ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō<sup>4</sup> nummö. Nāscitur ibi plumbum<sup>5</sup> album in mediterrāneīs regionibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere6 ūtuntur importāto. <sup>11</sup> for pastime and pleasure (as pets) 10 Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem.<sup>7</sup> Leporem<sup>8</sup> et gallīnam<sup>9</sup> et ānserem <sup>10</sup> gustāre fās non putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. 11 Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, 12 cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. 15 Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sõlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō atque13 ex Galliā est in 20 Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu<sup>14</sup> est īnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae<sup>15</sup> īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs non nulli scripserunt dies continuos XXX sub brumam<sup>16</sup> esse noctem. Nos nihil dē eō reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aqua<sup>17</sup> mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentî noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius, est longitūdo lateris, ut<sup>18</sup> fert 25 illorum opīnio, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentrionēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc19 mīlia passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae 30 regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitro<sup>20</sup> īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso.

the side of Britain facing Ireland



S Vidler/SuperStock, Inc.

Stonehenge is the famous prehistoric megalith complex that dates from 2800 B.C. It was a ceremonial and religious center made of precisely positioned stones. It may have functioned as an astronomical observatory. At one time, it was thought that the Druids caused it to be built.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What was the origin of the Britons?
- 2. What did the natives do with chickens?
- 3. What metals were once found in Britain?
- 4. Describe the inhabitants of Britain.

# 

#### Nouns

capillus, -ī, m. hair fās, n. (indeclinable) right

ferrum, -ī, n. iron

nummus, -ī, m. coin, money voluptās, -tātis, f. pleasure

(capillary)

(ferroconcrete, ferrous) (numismatics, nummular) (voluptuary, voluptuous)

# Adjectives

albus, -a, -um, white caeruleus, -a, -um, blue cōnsimilis, -e, very similar crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent, numerous infinitus, -a, -um, endless. countless interior, -ius, interior

(albino, albumen) (cerulean)

(crebation)

(infinitive, infinity)

The Roman lighthouse at Dover, England, 380 feet high, as it appears today. The solidity of its construction (during the 1st century A.D.) is an indication of the Romans' interest in a permanent conquest and colonization of Britain.

#### Verh

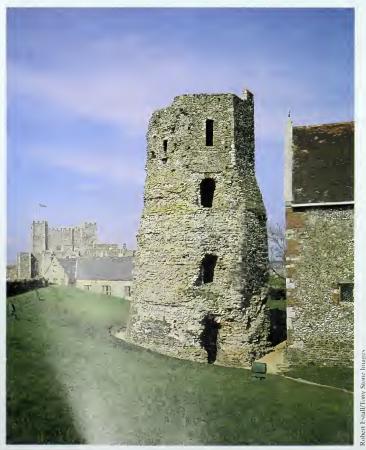
appello, -ere, appuli, appulsus, land, drive to, bring up

#### Adverb

vīciēs, twenty times



The Romans on their march are attacked by British charioteers and cavalry, but beat them off. The Britons, by retreating, induce the Roman cavalry to pursue. Then, leaping down from their chariots, they fight on foot, relieving one another at intervals. Later, when Caesar sends out a detachment to forage, the Britons attack his scattered troops and drive them to seek the protection of the legions who are standing guard. The latter charge and drive the Britons off. Caesar leads his army to the Tamesis (Thames) River, which he fords, and again routs the enemy. Cassivellaunus, the British leader,



avoiding a general engagement, confines himself to guerrilla tactics. Meanwhile the Trinovantes, the strongest British tribe of that region, surrender and send hostages to Caesar. Other tribes do the same. After an unsuccessful attack on the Roman camp, Cassivellaunus surrenders. Caesar returns to Gaul with his army and prisoners. During the two invasions of Britain not a single ship carrying troops was lost.

Caesar finds it necessary, on account of the scarcity of provisions, to distribute his legions in six divisions among various Gallic tribes. The Gauls seize this opportunity to revolt. The Carnutes kill Tasgetius, whom Caesar had made king over them. Ambiorix, leader of the Eburones, attacks the camp of Sabinus and Cotta. In a conference, Ambiorix, assuming the role of friend, urges Sabinus to leave his camp and join either Cicero or Labienus. Sabinus and Cotta call a council of war. Sabinus favors acting upon the advice given by Ambiorix, but Cotta opposes. In the end Cotta yields. The army then leaves camp, loaded down with baggage, and is ambushed in a valley. Though the Romans fight bravely, they are gradually worn down. After Cotta is wounded, Sabinus has a conference with Ambiorix, at which he is treacherously murdered. The Romans then fight on till they are killed or commit suicide. Only a few escape; not one surrenders. Ambiorix then stirs up the Atuatuci and the Nervii. All proceed to attack Quintus Cicero, brother of the famous orator, in his winter quarters. All the Romans, including the sick and wounded, work day and night on the fortifications. At a conference with Cicero, the Nervii promise to let him and his army withdraw unharmed if Caesar will refrain from quartering his troops in their territory. Cicero is not deceived and refers them to Caesar. The Gauls then begin a siege. They set fire to the Roman camps with fire bombs and burning arrows.

#### **Word Studies**

Believe it or not, *goose* and **ānser** are derived from the same word. Latin, English, and most European languages are descended from a language called Indo-European, which we know only from the common elements in its descendants. The masculine of goose is *gander*, which looks a bit more like **ānser**.

**Brūma** is from **brevima** (**diēs**), the *shortest day* of the year; **brevima** is a variant of **brevissima**.

From what Latin words are the following derived: **consimilis**, **importo**, **infinitus**, **mediterraneus**?

Explain album, albumen, angular, commensurate, disgust, gustatory, gusto, oriole, plumber, ponderous, voluptuous.



#### V, 44

<sup>1</sup> every year (they were rivals for promotion, **locō**)

rant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ordinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullo et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē controversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs¹ dē loco contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullo, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītionēs pugnārētur, 5 "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne, aut quem locum probandae virtūtis tuae exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs controversiīs iūdicābit."

Haec cum dīxisset, procedit extrā mūnītiones quaeque pars hostium confertissima est vīsa in eam irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllo continet, sed omnium veritus opinionem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatio 10 relīctō, Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine procurrentem trāicit; quo<sub>1</sub> percussō exanimātōque, hunc scūtīs dēfendunt hostēs, in illum üniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant progrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et iaculum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam² et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī3 dextram morātur manum, impedī-15 tumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et laborantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē confestim a Pullone omnis multitūdo convertit. Vorēnus gladiō rem gerit atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus 20 interfectīs, summā cum laude intrā mūnītiōnēs sē recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in certāmine utrumque versāvit4 ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset uter<sup>5</sup> virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> scabhard (It was pushed to one side and hard to get at.)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Supply ei: when he tried.

<sup>4</sup> dealt with

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> which seemed superior

<sup>1</sup> the wounded Gaul (ablative absolute). Contrary to the rule, **hunc** refers to the same person.



Marcus Favonius Facilis was a centurion with the 20th legion of the Pollian tribe. He fought with Caesar in Britain. Notice that he carries a gladius, a pugio, and a vitis as a symbol of his rank.

45. Erat ūnus in castrīs Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 25 Hās ille in iaculō illigātās<sub>2</sub> effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who quarreled and why?
- 2. Which attacked the enemy first?
- 3. What difficulty did he run into?
- 4. Which of the two soldiers was the braver?
- 5. How did Caesar get word of Cicero's situation?

Summary of Chapters 46–47. Caesar immediately advances with two legions to relieve Cicero. The Treveri, elated by their recent victory over Sabinus, now menace Labienus, preventing him from joining Caesar.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Perhaps concealed in the shaft, which may have been wrapped as if mended.

#### Nouns

balteus, -ī, m. belt
certāmen, -minis, n. contest,
struggle
iaculum, -ī, n. dart, javelin

# **Adjectives**

mediocris, -e, short, moderate (mediocre, mediocrity)
perpetuus, -a, -um, constant, (perpetual, perpetuate)
lasting

#### Verbs

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,

prefer

dēfīgō, -ere, dēfīxī, dēfīxus,

drive in

dubitō, 1, hesitate (dubitable, dubitation)

iūdicō, 1, judge, decide (prejudice, judicature)

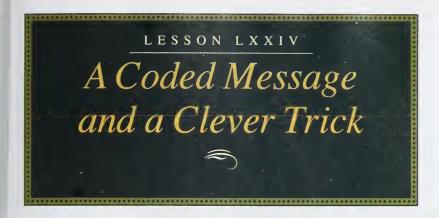
## Adverb

confestim, immediately, at once

# **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: anteferō, dēfīgō, dīiūdicō, honestus, illigō, immittō, irrumpō, succurrō, trāiciō, trānsfīgō?

Explain irruption, laudatory, percussion, succor.





aesar vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs<sub>1</sub> cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn 5 possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore;¹ hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur; ad Cicerōnem 10 dēfertur. Ille perlēctam² in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum<sub>2</sub> procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

1 = adfutūrum esse

<sup>2</sup> read through (silently); supply epistulam.

<sup>3</sup> not one soldier in ten

Summary of Chapters 49–51. The Gauls rush to meet Caesar, who is warned by a message from Cicero. By pretending fear, Caesar induces the enemy to attack him on his own ground and defeats them with great loss.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus, eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās 15 turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne, cognōscit nōn decimum quemque³ esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere. Ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse 20 virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat.

probably Latin written in Greek letters

333

<sup>2</sup> not of camp fires but of flaming villages fired by the Romans as they advanced



The Romans were not the only army with a cavalry. These two horsemen are Gauls. Do you notice anything different about them, compared with the Romans?

North Wind Picture Archives

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. How did Cicero get the message from Caesar?
- 2. What confirmation of the message did he get?
- 3. What percentage of Cicero's men were wounded?

Summary of Chapters 53–58. Despite this victory, the spirit of revolt spreads fast among the Gauls, and Caesar decides to spend the winter with his army. The leader of the Treveri prepares to attack the camp of Labienus, but the latter, feigning fear, lures the enemy to the very walls of his camp; then, by a surprise attack, he routs the Gauls, and the leader is killed. After that Caesar states that he "found Gaul a little more peaceful."

#### **Nouns**

dubitātiō, -iōnis, f. doubt epistula, -ae, f. letter fūmus, -ī, m. smoke meritum, -ī, n. merit, service testūdō, -dinis, f. shed, turtle (dubitation)
(epistle, epistolary)
(fume, fumigate)
(meritorious)

#### Adverb

singillātim, one by one, individually

## **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: admīror, conventus, dubitātiō, intercēdō, praecipiō, singillātim?

Explain adhesive, cohesive, conspicuous, epistolary, indubitable.



ADHESIVE TAPE





# Unit VII

# Dē Bellō Gallicō VI-VII

After spending nine years (58-50 B.C.) conquering and governing Gaul, Julius Caesar crossed the Rubicon River into Italy proper in 49 B.C., precipitating Civil War. Within three years, he had overpowered his opposition and had become ruler of the Western world. In the next few years, he brought about many reforms in Roman political and economic life. Caesar has been painted, sculpted, and drawn throughout the ages. In this painting by Andrea del Sarto (c. 1487-1530), various conquered tribes bring tribute to their conqueror, Julius Caesar, Notice the variety of animals in this scene.



The readings in Lessons LXXV to LXXXI, selected from Book VI of the *Gallic War*, are devoted to Caesar's comparison of the way of life of the Gauls with that of the Germans.

Summary of Chapters 1–10. Caesar, expecting a more serious revolt in Gaul, increases his force by three legions, one of which is supplied by Pompey. Ambiorix and the Treveri are plotting against him. The Nervii, Atuatuci, Menapii, and all the Germans on the Gallic side of the Rhine are in arms against the Romans, and the Senones are conspiring with the Carnutes and other states. Accordingly, before the winter is over, Caesar leads a strong force against the Nervii and compels them to surrender. He next marches against the Senones, and they, as well as the Carnutes, surrender. Caesar, now free to attack Ambiorix, proceeds to cut him off from allied aid. He first crushes the Menapii. Meanwhile, with reinforcements received from Caesar, Labienus defeats the Treveri. Caesar again builds a bridge and crosses the Rhine, partly to prevent the Germans from sending aid to the Treveri, partly to prevent Ambiorix from finding refuge in Germany. He learns that the Suebi have sent aid to the Treveri and are now mobilizing in a large forest.

Coinage was used throughout the empire. This Gallic coin was from the Parisii tribe, who settled in the area of modern day Paris around 250-200 B.C. Though they were primarily fishermen, horses obviously played an important part in their lives.



#### VI. 11

uoniam ad hunc locum¹ perventum est, non alienum esse videtur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō2 differant hae nātiōnēs inter se proponere. In Gallia non solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factionēs sunt, eārumque factionum sunt prīncipes quī summam auctoritātem eorum<sup>3</sup> 5 7 Supply esse. iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum, ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum consiliorumque redeat.4

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factionis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēguanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Haeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, 10 Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātionibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vēro compluribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque<sup>5</sup> ab eīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā 15 Sēguanos consilió inituros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possidērent8 Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Romam ad senātum profectus, īnfectā rē, redierat, Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātione rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod 20 eī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiore imperio se ūtī9 videbant, reliquis rebus10 eorum grātiā dignitateque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, eill quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant, 25 sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. 12 Hos illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctöritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū<sup>13</sup> rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinërent.

#### OUESTIONS

- 1. How were the Gallic leaders chosen?
- 2. Which tribe had the most power before Caesar came?
- 3. Which tribe was first after Caesar's arrival? Which was second?

- <sup>1</sup> i.e., in the story
- <sup>2</sup> in what respect
- <sup>3</sup> i.e., the Gauls
- 4 is referred
- 5 (as) hostages
- 6 object of nihil
- 8 kept (coordinate with trādūcerent, acciperent, cogerent)
- 9 that they were enjoying
- 10 in all other respects
- 11 those (other tribes)
- 12 with in clientelam: they attached themselves
- 13 situation

<sup>1</sup> so that to their decision (the antecedent is principes, not eorum)

<sup>2</sup> Used impersonally: because it was understood that these (quos) equaled (the Haeduans).

#### **Nouns**

arbitrium, -trī, n. decision, (arbiter, arbitrary)
judgment
clientēla, -ae, f. clientship (clientele)
iactūra, -ae, f. loss, expense,

sacrifice
pollicitātiō, -ōnis, f. promise

# **Adjectives**

aequus, -a, -um, equal,
 fair, calm
infectus, -a, -um, not done
vetus, veteris (gen.), old
(inveterate, veteran)

#### **Verbs**

adaequō, 1, equal(adequacy, adequate)aggregō, 1, attach(aggregate, aggregation)īurō, 1, swear(adjure, adjuration)tueor, tuērī, tūtus, guard(tutor, tutorial)

## Adverbs

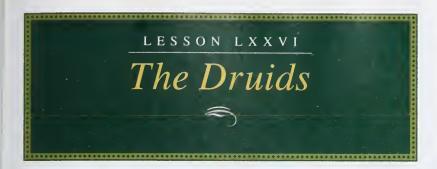
publicē, publicly
repente, suddenly

Review: colligō, nōn sōlum... sed etiam, redeō.

# **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: adaequō, antīquitus, arbitrium, clientēla, commūtātiō, iactūra, īnfectus, iūdicium, necessitās, pollicitātiō, potentia, status?

Explain adjunct, dedicate, inveterate, status, tutor, veteran.



#### VI, 13

n omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō1 atque honore genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs<sup>2</sup> paene servorum habētur loco, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur consilio. Plērīque, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitūtem dant nobilibus; quibus in hos3 eadem omnia sunt iūra quae4 5 7 i.e., all the Gauls dominīs in servos. Sed dē hīs duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs<sup>5</sup> interpretantur. Ad hōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnoque hī6 sunt apud eos7 honore. Nam ferē dē omnibus controversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque constituunt; et, sī quod est 10 facinus admissum, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus controversia est, īdem<sup>8</sup> dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque constituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eõrum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis prohibent. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus, ita est prohibitum, hī numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, hīs10 omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque 15 dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgione incommodī<sup>11</sup> accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs2 ūlius commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eos habet auctoritātem. Hoc mortuō, aut, sī quī3 ex reliquīs praestat dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt parēs plūrēs, suffrāgiō druidum dēligitur; non numquam etiam armīs dē 20 prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique quī controversiās habent conveniunt eorumque decrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna4 in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur; et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere vol-25 unt plērumque illō12 discendī causā proficīscuntur.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> of *some account* (with aliquō)

 $<sup>^2 =</sup> pl\bar{e}bs$ 

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> over them (the enslaved plebeians)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> religious questions

<sup>6</sup> i.e., the druids

<sup>8</sup> likewise

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> did not abide by; decreto is ablative

<sup>10</sup> from these

<sup>11</sup> genitive

<sup>12</sup> adverb

dative; the antecedent is hi.

<sup>2</sup> old form of honor

<sup>3</sup> for the more usual quis

<sup>4</sup> system of druidism



Among the ancient Celts, the Druids were priests and learned individuals. They were held in high esteem and enjoyed enormous prestige in the community. Druid cults were found in Gaul, Britain, and Ireland. Much of what we know about the Druids comes from Roman texts, since the Druids themselves preferred to pass on their knowledge in the oral tradition rather than writing it down.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What three classes were there among the Gauls?
- 2. What were the functions and powers of the druids?
- 3. What business did the druids transact at their annual meetings?

#### **Nouns**

facinus, facinoris, n. crime

hērēditās, -tātis, f. inheritance

**honor**, **-ōris**, *m. honor*, *office* (honorable, honorary)

**incommodum**, -**ī**, *n*. *harm* (incommode, incommodious)

(heredity)

religiō, -ōnis, f. religion, (religious)

superstition

**sermō**, **-ōnis**, *m. conversation*, (sermon. sermonize)

talk

**suffrāgium, -gī**, *n. vote* (suffrage. suffragette)

## Adjective

**impius**, -a, -um, *impious* (impish)

#### Verbs

adhibeō, -ēre, adhibuī,

adhibitus, hold toward.

admit to

commūnicō, 1, share (commune, communicate)

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, (interest)

be between, take part (in)

pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus,

obey (+ dat.)

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus,

be in charge of

prōcūrō, 1, take care of (procuration, procure)

Review: admitto, adulescens, caedes, huc, morior.

## **Word Studies**

*Proxy* is shortened from *procuracy* and therefore means *taking care* of something *for* someone.

From what Latin words are the following derived; adhibeō,

commūnicō, consecratus, defugio, sacrificium, tribūtum?

Explain consecration, heredity, interpretation, suffrage.

# Druids and Knights



ruidēs ā bellō abesse¹ cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā 5 permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea² litterīs mandāre, cum³ in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque rationibus, Graecīs ūtantur litterīs. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eos quī discunt litterīs confīsos minus memoriae studēre⁴—quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidio litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendo 10 ac memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre.⁵ non interīre animās,6 sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad alios; atque hoc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī₁ putant, metū mortis neglēcto. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eorum motū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deorum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

15 **15.** Alterum genus est equitum. Hī cum<sup>7</sup> est ūsus<sup>8</sup> atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod<sup>9</sup> ante Caesaris adventum ferē quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent<sup>10</sup>), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut<sup>11</sup> quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs<sup>12</sup> clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque 20 nōvērunt.

#### **QUESTIONS**

- 1. What exemptions did the druids have?
- 2. What were the teaching methods of the druids?
- 3. What was their belief about the souls of the dead?
- 4. Why did the druids not put their teachings in writing?

<sup>1</sup> to be exempt from

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> these principles

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> although

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> pay less attention to the memory

<sup>5</sup> prove

<sup>6</sup> souls

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> whenever

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> need

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> and this <sup>10</sup> warded off injuries inflicted

<sup>(</sup>by others)
11 (in proportion) as

<sup>12</sup> retainers (a Gallic word)

<sup>1</sup> Supply homines as subject.



Druids were in charge of educating the sons of chiefs and guarding the sacred traditions. Oak trees and mistletoe figured heavily in their rituals, as did human sacrifice. They resisted the Latin culture and were eventually suppressed by the Romans.

Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

# Vocabulary ----

#### Nouns

anima, -ae, f. soul iuventūs, -tūtis, f. youth, young people metus, -ūs, m. fear sīdus, sīderis, n. star

(animal, animate)

versus, -ūs, m. line, verse

vulgus, -ī, n. common people

(sidereal)

(vulgar, Vulgate)

#### Verbs

ēdiscō, -ere, ēdidicī, —, (edit. editor)

learn by heart

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, perish

soleō, -ēre, solitus, be used to,

be accustomed (semideponent)

Review: efferō, neglegō, suā sponte.

#### **Word Studies**

The suffix  $-t\bar{o}$  ( $-s\bar{o}$ ,  $-it\bar{o}$ ) is added to the stems of past participles to form verbs expressing the idea of *keeping on* ("frequentative" verbs):  $pr\bar{o}puls\bar{o}$  (from  $pr\bar{o}pulsus$ ), *keep on warding off*.

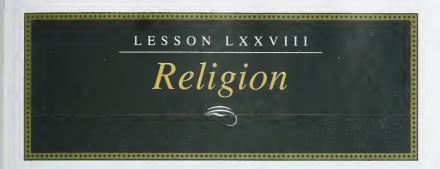
From what Latin words are the following derived: **disputō**, immortālis?

Explain disciple, disputant, divulge, immortality, mundane, sidereal, spontaneity, vulgar, Vulgate.



The great Gallic Hammer-God. The hammer associates him with both the heavens and the underworld, and the rustic panpipe with the woodlands. The Romans appear to have identified him with their own Jupiter, Diespiter, and Silvanus. By the Gauls he was variously called Sucellus or Taranis. About 200 of his images have been found.

M. Dixo



#### VI, 16

ātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōmbus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ¹ ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōs immortālēs plācārī arbi- 5 trantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra ² habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus ³ membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus incēnsīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs ⁴ immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius 10 generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,<sup>5</sup> hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur; post hunc<sup>6</sup> Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē 15 quam<sup>7</sup> reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum<sup>8</sup> initia trādere, Iovem imperium deōrum tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio climicare cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent;<sup>9</sup> cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus 20 hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglectā quispiam religione aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret; gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus 25 prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

<sup>1</sup> (as) ministers

5 <sup>2</sup> figures (of men) 3 twigs

4 = deis

5 they say

they say

<sup>6</sup> Supply **colunt**.

' as

<sup>8</sup> crafts

9 they vow

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Who was chief god of the Gauls?
- 2. Why did the Gauls sacrifice human beings?
- 3. Which god did they consider their ancestor?

# 

#### Nouns

ars, artis, f. skill, art (artisan)

cumulus, -ī, m. heap, pile (accumulate, cumulative)

furtum, -ī, n. theft (furtive)

initium, -tī, n. beginning, (initial, initiate)

element

latrōcinium, -nī, n. robbery

mercātūra, -ae, f. trade (mercantile)

morbus, -ī, m. disease (morbid, morbidity)

noxia, -ae, f. crime (noxious)

quaestus, -ūs, m. gain (quest, question)

simulācrum, -ī, n. figure, image

### Adjective

prognātus, -a, -um, descended (prognathus)

#### Verbs

dēpellō, -ere, dēpulī, dēpulsus,

drive away

immolō, 1, sacrifice

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus,

vow, promise

# (immolate, immolation)

### Adverb

admodum, very (much)

### Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: **artificium**, **inventor**, **noxa**, **prōgnātus**?

Explain accumulate, artificial, cumulative, furtive, immolate, implacable, mercantile, morbid, noxious, victimize, votive.

# LESSON LXXIX Marriages and Funerals; Censorship

#### VI, 19

irī, quantās pecūniās<sup>1</sup> ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimātione factā, cum dotibus commūnicant.2 Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque<sup>3</sup> servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit,4 ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in<sup>5</sup> uxōrēs sīcutī in līberōs vītae necisque habent 5 potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et de morte, si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servīlem modum<sup>6</sup> quaestionem habent, et sī<sup>7</sup> compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica; omniaque quae vīvīs cāra fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, 10 12 anyone etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam8 servī et clientēs quōs ab eīs dilectūs esse constābat, iūstīs fūneribus confectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

20. Quae cīvitātēs<sup>9</sup> commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, 10 sī quis quid 11 dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmore ac fāmā acceperit, utī ad magistrātum deferat neve cum quo<sup>12</sup> alio 15 commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs<sup>13</sup> atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt14 occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū15 iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loguī nōn concēditur. 20

### QUESTIONS

- 1. What rights did the Gallic women have?
- 2. What power did the husband have over his wife?
- 3. What was an individual required to do if he got information about public matters?

1 property

<sup>2</sup> they combine with

<sup>3</sup> profits, income

4 survives (with vita)

5 over

6 as is done in the case of slaves,

i.e., by torture

<sup>7</sup> if (their guilt), etc.

<sup>8</sup> before our time

<sup>9</sup> those states which

10 have it ordained by law (explained by the utī clauses)

11 if anyone has heard anything

13 rash

14 whatever seems best

15 of advantage

## Vocabulary

#### Nouns

aestimātiō, -ōnis, f. estimate

dōs, dōtis, f. dowry

fūnus, -eris, n. funeral (funereal)

nex, necis, f. death

quaestiō, -ōnis, f. investigation (inquest, question)

### **Adjectives**

illūstris, -e, *noble* (illustrious) servīlis, -e, *of a slave* (servile)

#### Verb

cremō, 1, burn (cremate, crematorium)

#### **Adverbs**

coniunctim, jointly
sicuti (sicut), just as, as if

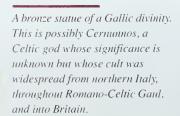
### Conjunction

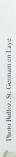
neve (neu), and not, nor

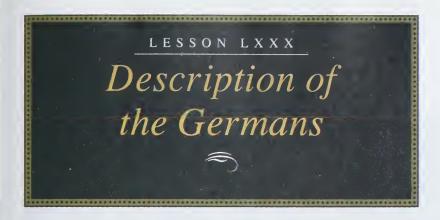
### **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: **coniūnctim**, **cultus**, **dēcēdō**, **falsus**, **magnificus**, **quaestiō**, **servīlis**, **temerārius**?

Explain cremate, crematory, decease, excruciating, funereal, inquest.







#### VI. 21

ermānī multum ab hāc consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sõlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquõs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātionibus atque in studirs rer mīlitāris consistit; ā parvīs¹ 5 ¹ from childhood laborī ac dūritiae student.

22. Agrī cultūrae non student, maiorque pars eorum vīctūs in lacte, cāseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs<sup>2</sup> gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī<sup>3</sup> attribuunt, atque 10 anno post alio4 transīre cogunt. Eius reī multas afferunt causas: ne assidua consuetudine captī<sup>5</sup> studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā<sup>6</sup> commutent; ne lātos fīnēs parāre studeant potentiorēsque humiliorēs<sup>7</sup> possessionibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandos aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animī 15 aequitate<sup>8</sup> plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequārī videat.

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātīs fīnibus, solitūdines habere. Hoc proprium<sup>9</sup> virtūtis exīstimant, expulsos agrīs fīnitimōs<sup>10</sup> cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere. 20 Simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert,11 magistrātūs quī eī bellö praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regionum atque pagorum inter suōs iūs dīcunt<sup>12</sup> contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent 25 īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae<sup>13</sup> minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Hospitem violāre fās non putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eos vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

- - <sup>2</sup> for a single year
  - <sup>3</sup> with quantum
  - 4 elsewhere
  - <sup>5</sup> captivated by fixed habits (of life)
  - 6 for agriculture
  - <sup>7</sup> object of expellant
  - <sup>8</sup> contentment
  - 9 a sign of
- <sup>10</sup> subject of **cēdere**
- 11 fights either a defensive or an offensive war
- 12 pronounce judgment
- 13 Jaziness



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

The baths from the 4th century A.D. at Trier, Germany are just some of the remains from the Roman occupation. Trier, founded by Augustus in 15 B.C. as Augusta Treverorum, was named after the Treveri, an eastern Gallic people who had inhabited the area. It was one of the major imperial cities of the Empire.

#### OUESTIONS

- 1. What were the chief German foods?
- 2. How did the Gauls and Germans differ?
- 3. What was the German attitude toward robbery?
- 4. How did the government differ in war and peace?
- 5. What advantages were claimed for the German system of public ownership of land?

Summary of Chapter 24. The Gauls had once been powerful enough to invade and seize the most fertile districts of Germany; but now, as a result of their contact with civilization, they have deteriorated to such an extent that they have grown accustomed to defeat at the hands of the Germans.

# 

#### **Nouns**

carō, carnis, f. meat (carnival, carnivorous)

**cāseus, -ī,** *m. cheese* (caseate, casein)

cognātiō, -ōnis, f. related group

dūritia, -ae, f. hardship

frīgus, frīgoris, n. cold (frigorific) incursiō, -ōnis, f. raid (incursion) laus, laudis, f. praise (laud, laudable)

### **Adjective**

proprius, -a, -um, (one's) own, (proper, property)
 characteristic of

#### Verbs

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, (concern, discern)

separate, see

minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus, (diminutive, minute)

lessen, settle

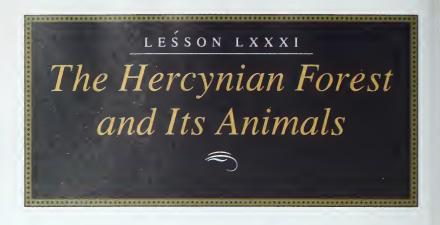
#### **Word Studies**

Cognātiō is from co- and gnātus, whose later form was nātus. Cf. English *cognate*. *Cheese* comes from cāseus, through the French. When you are "assiduous" you *sit by* (ad-sedeō) a job.



From what Latin words are the following derived: accūrātus, aequitās, dissēnsiō, dūritia, īnfāmia, possessiō, sōlitūdō, vīctus?

Explain casein, diminutive, hospital, hospitality, infamy, inviolate, victuals, volcano, vulcanize.



#### VI, 25

- <sup>1</sup> for one unencumbered (with baggage)
- <sup>2</sup> i.e., by miles.
- <sup>2</sup> i.e., by filles.
- <sup>3</sup> than those horns
- <sup>4</sup> spotted appearance
- <sup>5</sup> joints
- 6 beds
- 7 whenever
- 8 hunters
- <sup>9</sup> modifies **arborēs**
- $^{10}$  i.e., the trees.
- 11 against these
- <sup>12</sup> buffaloes
- 13 pits
- 14 to serve as proof
- $15 = parvī \bar{u}r\bar{t}$
- <sup>16</sup> Supply cornua.
- 17 at the edges
- 18 feasts
- <sup>19</sup> сирs

ercyniae silvae lātitūdō VIIII diērum iter expedītō¹ patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās² itinerum nōvērunt.

Multa in eā genera ferārum nāscī constat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa non sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prodenda 5 videantur haec sunt.

- **26.** Est bōs cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs³ quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus. Ab eius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.
- 27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est consimilis caprīs figūra et varietās<sup>4</sup> pellium; sed magnitūdine paulo antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine articulīs<sup>5</sup> habent; neque quiētis causā procumbunt neque, sī quo afflīctae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs pro cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstigiīs cum<sup>7</sup> est animadversum ā vēnātoribus quo sē recipere consuērint, omnēs eo loco aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut speciēs eārum<sup>10</sup> stantium relinquātur. Hūc<sup>11</sup> cum sē consuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfirmās arborēs pondere afflīgunt atque
- 28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī<sup>12</sup> appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs; speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. (Hōs foveīs<sup>13</sup> captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt.
- 25 relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae<sup>14</sup> sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem.) Sed assuēscere ad hominēs nē parvulī<sup>15</sup> quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec<sup>16</sup> conquīsīta ab labrīs<sup>17</sup> argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs<sup>18</sup> prō pōculīs<sup>19</sup> ūtuntur.

ūnā ipsae concidunt.



Giraudon/Art Resource, NY

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. How was the "urus" trapped?
- 2. What were its chief characteristics?
- 3. What was peculiar about the elk described by Caesar?

Summary of Chapters 29–44. Caesar, finding it impossible to pursue the Suebi in their forests, decides to return to Gaul. As a constant threat to the Germans, he leaves a large part of the bridge standing, protected by a garrison. Ambiorix is still at large, and Caesar devotes all his energy toward his capture. He divides his army into four divisions to prevent the escape of Ambiorix, but that wily chieftain always eludes capture. At last Caesar gives up the pursuit and, after placing his legions in winter quarters, returns to Italy.

Animals always played a significant role for the Romans. This mosaic shows Orpheus, the Thracian musician who could charm not only animals, but also trees, rivers, and stones, with his lyre. How many of these animals can you identify?

# 

#### **Nouns**

alcēs, -is, f. elk auris, -is, f. ear (aural, auricular) bos, bovis (gen. pl., boum), (bovine) m. ox. bull caper, -rī, m. goat (Capricorn, caprine) cervus, -ī, m. deer, stag (cervine) crūs, crūris, n. leg (crural) mās, maris, m. male (masculine) mēnsūra, -ae, f. measurement (commensurate, mensural)

palma, -ae, f. hand (palm, palmistry) rādīx, -dīcis, f. root (radiate, radish)

### Adjectives

dērēctus. -a, -um, straight
excelsus. -a, -um, high (excelsior)

#### **Verbs**

assuēscō, -ere, assuēvī.

assuētus. become accustomed
dērigō (dīrigō). -ere, dērēxī, (directive, directory)
dērēctus, direct
fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, (finite, infinity)
limit, determine
pateō, -ēre, patuī, —, (patent. patentee)
stand open, extend
subruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus,
undermine

Review: constat, cornū, parco, quies.

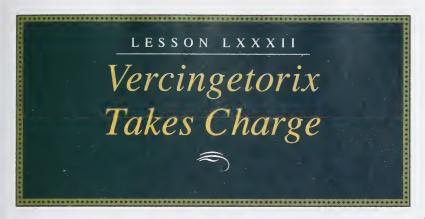
#### **Word Studies**

The motto of the state of Maine is Dirigo.

To "caper" is to act like a *goat* (capra). The old-fashioned "cab" bounced around like a *goat*; some taxicabs still do.

From what Latin words are the following derived: accīdō, amplitūdō, arbor, cōnsimilis, dērigō, diffundō, varietās?

Explain aural, bovine, Capricorn, eradicate, excelsior, finite, inarticulate, mutilate, radical, ramification, toreador, vestige.



Vercingetorix, the Gallic leader who heads the final desperate revolt against the Romans in 52 B.C., is the dominant figure of Book VII (Lessons LXXXII to LXXXVII) of the Gallic War.

Summary of Chapters 1–3. The Gauls, learning of political unrest at Rome, feel that the hour for freedom has come. This is the third and greatest of the Gallic revolts (the first was that of the Veneti and their allies: the second, that of Ambiorix). At a secret council a general uprising is planned. The Carnutes strike the first blow by massacring the Romans in Cenabum (Orleans).



imilī ratione ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, a civitate erat interfectus, convocātīs suīs clientibus, facile incendit.1 Cognitō eius cōnsiliō, ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā patru $\bar{o}^2$  su $\bar{o}$  reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī  $5\frac{1}{3}\frac{inev}{levy}$ hanc temptandam fortūnam non exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppido Gergoviā. Non desistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dīlectum<sup>3</sup> egentium ac perditorum.<sup>4</sup> Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte, ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant, magnīsque coāctīs copiis, adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. 10 Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quoqueversus lēgātiones; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Qua oblata potestate, omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat, certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armorum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat<sup>6</sup> 15 constituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae dīligentiae summam imperī

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection



The Romans were not the only ones who honored their leaders on their coinage. Here is Vercingetorix, the first hero of Gaul on a coin that dates from the 1st century B.C.

<sup>1</sup> i.e., the clients

<sup>2</sup> uncle

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> of the needy and desperate

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> in every direction

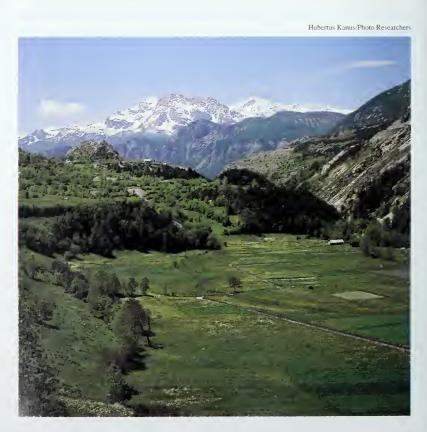
<sup>6</sup> how many arms each state should produce and by what time

sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit. Nam maiōre commissō dēlīctō, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs necat, leviōre dē causā, auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs, domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et 20 magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

Summary of Chapters 5–7. The Bituriges join the revolt. Caesar hastens from Italy to Gaul on receipt of the news. He reinforces his troops at Narbo (Narbonne) in the Province, which is threatened with invasion. Caesar's problem is to reach his scattered legions through possibly hostile tribes. As usual, he depends on speed.

8. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā nive sex in altitūdinem pedum atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut 25 mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī<sup>7</sup> quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur, ut quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.

<sup>7</sup> all alone



In the Haute Alpes region of Provence, France, the mountains are covered with snow all year, even in the summer. Crossing this region was therefore treacherous at any time.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. How did Vercingetorix raise an army?
- 2. How did he become leader of all the Gauls?
- 3. How did he keep the various tribes faithful?
- 4. Why did Caesar catch the Arvernians unprepared?

Summary of Chapters 9–16. Caesar gathers together his scattered troops before the Gauls are aware of what is going on. In rapid succession he captures several towns and then advances against Avaricum (Bourges). This place the Gauls had considered impregnable and had therefore spared, while following a "scorched earth" policy in the rest of the country in their effort to check Caesar's advance by cutting off his supplies. Though harassed in the rear by Vercingetorix, who concentrates on attacking the Romans' foraging parties, Caesar begins the siege of Avaricum.

# 

#### **Nouns**

nix, nivis, f. snow (nival)
patruus, -ī, m. uncle
sēmita, -ae, f. path, footpath

### **Adjectives**

commūnis, -e, common (commonality, communicate)
inopīnāns, inopīnantis
(gen.), unsuspecting

#### Verbs

### **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: adversārius, appetō, cōnsēnsus, disclūdō, documentum?

Explain corpus delicti, dissect, document, perdition.





- 1 so much so that
- <sup>2</sup> suffer too severely (from) (with ferrent)
- <sup>3</sup> that they would regard as

ummā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae affectō exercitū, usque eō ut¹ complūrēs diēs frūmentō mīlitēs caruerint, et, pecore ex longinquiōribus vīcīs adāctō, extrēmam famem sustinuerint, nūlla tamen vōx est ab eīs audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indigna. 5 Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et, sī₁ acerbius² inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppugnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant sīc sē complūrēs annōs, illō imperante, meruisse₂ ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam, īnfectā rē, discēderent; hoc sē ignōminiae locō lātūrōs,³ sī inceptam oppugnātiōnem relīquissent; praestāre 10 omnēs perferre acerbitātēs quam nōn cīvēs Rōmānōs quī perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent ulcīscī.

Summary of Chapters 18–56. Vercingetorix tempts Caesar to attack him, but Caesar, finding him too well entrenched, resumes the siege of Avaricum. The Gauls then accuse Vercingetorix of treason because he did not attack the Romans when he was in a position to do so. He successfully defends himself against this charge. The Gauls with renewed determination resolve to hold Avaricum at any cost. Vercingetorix sends a strong reinforcement. The besieged manage to set fire to the Roman siege works and display marked heroism. At length, however, Avaricum falls, and most of the inhabitants are killed. Vercingetorix consoles his troops for the loss of the town by stating that he had from the beginning opposed the defense of the place as untenable. He raises fresh troops. Caesar now marches along the Elaver (Allier) River, passing, no doubt, the site of Vichy (the hot springs of Vichy were known in antiquity). Vercingetorix anticipates Caesar in seizing the hillside near Gergovia, and Caesar can only follow.

the clause depends upon dimissūrum

depends (with se as subject) on the idea of saying in petebant



Paris has come a long way in the past 2,000 years, since the Île de la Cité, a tiny island of land in the middle of the Seine River, was first inhabited by the Parisii tribe. You can see the even smaller Ile St. Louis just behind the Île de la Cité and the cathedral of Notre Dame de Paris, begun in the 12th century, on the right.

MOPY/Rapho Agence/Photo Researchers

At this point the Haeduans, who were on their way to join Caesar, mutiny at the instigation of their leader, who had been bribed, but Caesar, making a forced march, meets them and wins them back to his cause. He returns to Gergovia just in time to save his camp from capture by Vercingetorix. Later the Romans attack the town but are badly defeated. In spite of the critical situation, Caesar does not, as his enemies might expect, retreat to the Province, but goes north to protect his supplies at his headquarters on the Loire River.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus cum quattuor legiōnibus Luteciam proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parīsiōrum positum in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cuius adventū ab hostibus cognitō, magnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō. Is cum 15 animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem quae īnflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Whom did Caesar send to Paris?
- 2. Where was ancient Paris situated?
- 3. What was the greatest hardship for the Romans?

Summary of Chapters 58–68. Labienus retires to Metiosedum (Melun), which he captures. He then again marches toward Lutecia, which he finds in flames. He then learns of Caesar's defeat at Gergovia and receives alarming reports of a general Gallic uprising. Labienus decides to join Caesar and reaches him on the third day. The Haeduans now openly revolt and demand the supreme command, but at a council of the Gauls the command is given to Vercingetorix, who orders the Gauls to furnish hostages and troops, especially cavalry. Caesar sends to Germany for cavalry. The Gallic cavalry attack but are defeated. Vercingetorix heads for Alesia and occupies it. Caesar follows and plans to shut up the Gauls in that town by a series of trenches around it.

# 

#### **Nouns**

acerbitās, -tātis, f. suffering,
bitterness
ignōminia. -ae. f. disgrace (ignominious. ignominy)
maiestās. -tātis, f. dignity, honor
perfidia, -ae. f. faithlessness,
treachery (perfidious. perfidy)

### Adjective

**universus**, -a, -um, all (together) (universal, universe)

#### Verb

careō, -ēre, caruī, caritūrus, (caret)

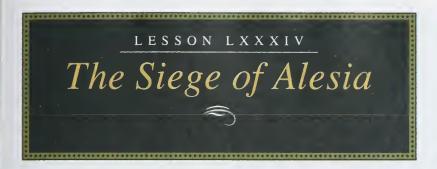
be without (+ abl.)

### Conjunctions

quīn, that quīn etiam, moreover

#### **Word Studies**

A "caret" mark (\*) indicates that something is *lacking* (caret). Explain *acerbity*, *ignominious*, *influx*, *perfidious*.



### VII, 69

psum erat oppidum in colle summo admodum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur. Ante oppidum planities circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sõlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum\(^1\) cõpiae \(^5\)\(^1\) hunc omnem locum, i.e., eam Gallörum complēverant fossamque et māceriam sex in altitūdinem pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnītionis quae ab Romānīs instituēbātur circuitus X mīlia passuum tenēbat.<sup>2</sup> Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta, quibus in castellīs interdiū<sup>3</sup> stationes ponebantur, ne qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

partem (quae... spectābat)

<sup>2</sup> extended

<sup>3</sup> in the daytime

<sup>4</sup> i.e., the Atrebatians

<sup>5</sup> free from tribute

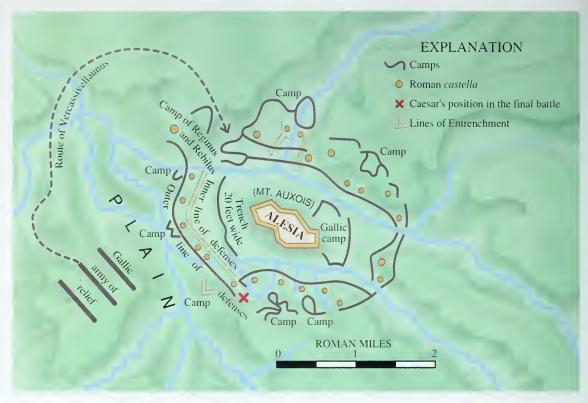
6 agreement to claim <sup>7</sup> Supply Galli, including Commius.

10 8 lent their efforts

Summary of Chapters 70–75. The Gauls attempt to interfere with Caesar's operations but are repulsed in a great slaughter. Vercingetorix sends his cavalry to get reinforcements. Food runs short and is rationed. Caesar constructs an inner and an outer line of siege works, the former to hem Vercingetorix in Alesia, the latter to defend his own army from attack from without, for Caesar had already learned that the Gauls were raising a great army for the relief of Alesia.

76. Operā Commī fidēlī atque ūtilī superioribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem<sup>4</sup> eius immūnem<sup>5</sup> esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī, Morinos attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae consensio fuit libertatis vindicandae<sup>6</sup> et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movēren- 15 tur,7 omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.8 Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recensebantur, et praefecti constituebantur. Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum

<sup>1</sup> Commius, as ruler



PLAN OF THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

<sup>9</sup> on two fronts <sup>10</sup> outside 20 modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī<sup>9</sup> proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs<sup>10</sup> tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Describe the location of Alesia.
- 2. What two things led the Gauls to forget Caesar's previous kindnesses?
- 3. How many Gallic soldiers came to the rescue of Alesia?

# 

#### Nouns

castellum, -ī, n. fort (castle, castellated)
circuitus, -ūs, m. distance
around
fīdūcia, -ae, f. confidence
māceria, -ae, f. wall
obsidiō, -ōnis, f. siege
plānitiēs, -ēī, f. plain

### Adjectives

mediocris, -e, *moderate* opportūnus, -a, -um,

convenient, advantageous

(mediocre, mediocrity)
(opportune, opportunist)

Verbs

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus,

(cinch, cinture)

surround

incumbō, -ere, incubuī,

(incumbency, incumbent)

incubitūrus, lean over

recēnseō, -ēre, recēnsuī,
recēnsus, count again, review

(recension)

recuperō, 1, get back, recover

(recuperate, recuperation)

vindicō, 1, claim, appropriate (vindicate, vindication)

Review: ēditus, opportūnus, praesertim, prīstinus.

### **Word Studies**

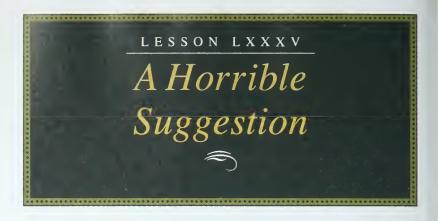
From what Latin words are the following derived: **ēruptiō**, **fidēlis**, **interdiū**, **intericiō**, **mediocris**, **plānitiēs**?

Explain fidelity, fiduciary, immunity, incumbent, infidel, recuperate, replenish, vindication.



Wayne Rowe

A Roman army camp included towers, walls, and trenches to help protect it against invaders, especially in a potenti-ily hostile territory. Any invading force would be slowed down by the outerworks, giving those in the towers the opportunity to pick them off.



#### VII, 77

t eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, ignōrantēs quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō, dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Apud quōs variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum 5 vīrēs essent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat.¹ nōn praetereunda² vidētur ōrātiō Critognātī propter eius singulārem ac nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis, "Nihil." inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant. neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque 10 adhibendōs ad concilium cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit³ quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista₁ mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī⁴ sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem⁵ 15 (tantum apud mē dignitās potest⁶), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī₂ fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur?

"Quid<sup>8</sup> ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī 25 inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur

omnem Galliam prösternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.

lum neglēxērunt; nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte

<sup>1</sup> voted for

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> should not, it seems (to me), be passed over

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Let my speech deal with those.

<sup>4 (</sup>men) who

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> I might approve, if I saw

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> the standing (of its backers) has so much weight with me

<sup>7</sup> do not

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> What is my plan?

For **istud**; it is the subject and is explained by **posse**.

<sup>2</sup> depends on Quid

vītam sustinuērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum non habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prodī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bello fuit? Vāstātā Galliā, Cimbrī, magnāque illātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquando excessērunt atque aliās terrās petīvērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agros, lībertātem nobīs relīquērunt. Romānī vēro quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quos fāmā nobilēs potentēsque bello cognovērunt, horum in agrīs cīvitātibusque consīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condicione bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātionibus geruntur ignorātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redācta, 35 iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!"

<sup>9</sup> I should consider <sup>10</sup> at last <sup>11</sup> authority

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What three suggestions were made in the council of the Gauls?
- 2. What was the objection of Critognatus to fighting their way out?
- 3. In what way, according to Critognatus, were the Romans worse than the Cimbri?



The inland waterways connecting many of the long rivers in France provided transportation for the various Gallic tribes. Trade goods could be moved much more economically from one region to another in barges, such as the one in this relief. It looks as if even the dog will be going along for the ride.

<sup>3</sup> Supply esse; the antecedent is horum.

# Vocabulary ----

#### **Nouns**

cadaver, -eris, n. corpse

(cadaver, cadaverous)

dēditiō, -ōnis, f. surrender

exitus, •ūs, m. outlet, outcome,

(exit)

departure, death

imbecillitās, -tātis, f. weakness

(imbecile, imbecility)

invidia, -ae, f. envy

mollitia, -ae, f. weakness

(envious, envy)

#### Verbs

cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus,

(censor, consensus)

think

concitō, 1, rouse

obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī, obsessus, (obsess, obsession)

besiege, blockade

praetereō, -īre. -iī, -itus,

(preterite)

go by, pass

resideō, -ēre. resēdī, —, remain (reside, residence)

spoliō, 1, rob

(despoil, spoil)

### Adverbs

nēquāquam, by no means patienter, patiently

praeterquam, other than

Yet another dog is immortalized. This Roman pot with a hunting dog was found in Alesia.

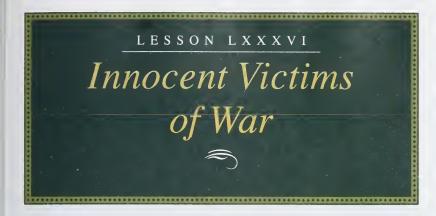
#### Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: consulto, ignoro,

patienter, praetereō, resideō, subiciō, subigō, temeritās?

Explain consultative pact, eternity, ignoramus, imbecile, nefarious, prostrate, residence.





#### VII, 78

ententiīs dictīs, constituunt ut eī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam¹ ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illo tamen potius ūtendum<sup>2</sup> consilio, sī rēs cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam condicionem. Mandubiī, quī eos oppido receperant, cum līberīs atque 5 spurs (pon 6 wolf-holes uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar, dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs, recipī<sup>3</sup> prohibēbat.

79. Interea Commius reliquique duces, quibus summa imperi permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et, colle exteriore 10 occupāto, non longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītionibus consīdunt. Posterō diē, equitātū ex castrīs ēductō, omnem eam plānitiem quae in longitūdinem mīlia passuum III patēbat, complent; pedestrēsque copiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus constituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in<sup>4</sup> campum. Concurrunt, hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit 15 grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque, productis copiis, ante oppidum considunt, seque ad eruptionem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

Summary of Chapters 80–81. Caesar sends his cavalry out of camp to engage that of the enemy; after a long struggle the enemy is finally defeated. The Gallic relief army, under cover of night, makes a second attack upon the outer works, while Vercingetorix leads an attack upon the inner lines.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītione aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlorum proficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē ipsī stimulīs<sup>5</sup> inopīnantēs <sup>20</sup> induēbant aut in scrobēs6 dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus

<sup>1</sup> before (with **prius**)

<sup>2</sup> but that plan was to be used

<sup>3</sup> Supply **eos**.

4 over

<sup>5</sup> spurs (pointed iron stakes)

A detail from the painting "Thusnelda in the Triumphal Procession of Germanicus" by Karl Theodor von Piloty (1826-1886). Germanicus Caesar was an immensely popular commander in Germany and Gaul. He was able to suppress a mutiny of the legions after the death of Augustus. He crossed the Rhine to fight the Germans several times, and returned to a triumph in A.D. 17 in Rome. Were it not for his early death in A.D. 19, he would have been emperor. He was the brother of Claudius and the father of Calignla.



Blauel/Gnamm-ARTOTHEK

trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus<sup>7</sup> interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At 25 interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent: diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam<sup>8</sup> mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita, rē īnfectā, in oppidum revertērunt.

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What plan did the Gauls adopt?
- 2. What happened to the Mandubii?
- 3. Why did the night attack of the Gauls fail?

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> heavy wall javelins

<sup>8</sup> before (with prius)

<sup>1</sup> i.e., the army within Alesia

Summary of Chapters 83–87. The Gauls send out scouts and find that the Roman camp on the north is in a weak position. So Vercassivellaunus makes a surprise march by night and attacks the camp the next noon. Vercingetorix attacks from Alesia, and the Romans are forced to fight on all sides. Caesar, perceiving that his men are weakening under the attack of Vercassivellaunus, sends Labienus with six cohorts to reinforce them. He then addresses his troops, reminding them that the reward of all their struggles depends upon that day and hour. Vercingetorix attempts a diversion from Alesia. Caesar sends reinforcements and finally goes to the rescue himself.

# Vocabulary

#### **Nouns**

grātulātiō, -ōnis,

f. congratulation

valētūdō, -dinis, f. health, (valetudinarian)

illness

### Adjective

prior, prius, former, first

(prior, prioritize)

#### Verbs

experior, experiri,

(experience, expert)

expertus, try

expleō, -ēre, explēvī,

explētus, fill up

moror, 1, delay

(moratorium)

proficio, -ere, -feci, -fectus,

(proficiency, proficient)

accomplish

trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus,

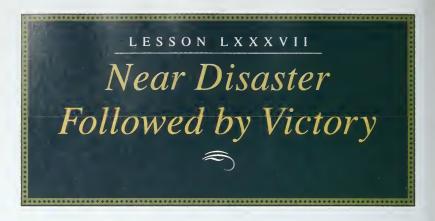
pierce through

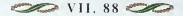
Review: cibus, fleō, posteāquam, posterus, prex, turris.

### **Word Studies**

From what Latin words are the following derived: appetō, custōdia, dēspectus, dispōnō, grātulātiō, mūrālis, perrumpō?

Explain appetite, priority, stimulation, trajectory, translucent.





1 answers

 $^2$  but

<sup>3</sup> might have been

4 they must yield to

5 for either

<sup>6</sup> one to each (soldier)

ius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, quō īnsignī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuēverat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque, clāmōre sublātō, excipit¹ rūrsus ex vāllō 5 atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī, omissīs pīlīs, gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum₁ equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt; fit magna caedēs. Signa mīlitāria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō incolumēs sē in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et 10 fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus, hāc rē audītā, ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod² nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent.³ Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in 15 cīvitātēs discēdunt.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum,<sup>4</sup> ad utramque<sup>5</sup> rem sē illīs offerre,<sub>2</sub> seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs 20 rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula<sup>6</sup> praedae nōmine distribuit.

90. Huius annī rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Romae dierum vīgintī supplicātio redditur.

of the enemy; the cavalry is Roman.

<sup>2</sup> depends upon dēmonstrat



The Bettmann Archive

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. What led the enemy to begin the attack?
- 2. What changed the situation and made the enemy flee?
- 3. What offer did the defeated Vercingetorix make to his soldiers?

The Gauls, under many leaders but especially Vercingetorix, shown here surrendering to Caesar, fought long and hard for their homeland, but finally succumbed to the more powerful Roman troops.

# Vocabulary

#### **Nouns**

color, -ōris, m. color dēclīvia, -um, n. pl. slopes tergum, -ī, n. back (colorize, discolor) (declivity)

(tergal)

turma, -ae, f. troop (of cavalry)

### Adjective

dēclīvis, -e, sloping downward

#### **Verbs**

deleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy, (delete, deletion)
wipe out
omittō, -ere, omīsī, omissus, (omit, omission)
let go, drop, disregard

#### **Adverbs**

prōtinus, immediately
utrimque, on both sides

#### **Word Studies**

**Tollō** is a good word to know well, both for its irregular principal parts and for its basic meaning, *raise up or away from a lower position*. Thus, in the proper contexts, **tollō** can mean: *weigh anchor, cheer up a friend*, *praise someone highly*, or, on the other hand, *plunder booty, get rid of something*, or "do away" with a man, i.e., murder him.

After the death of the dictator Caesar, his nineteen-year-old adopted son and heir, Octavian (later the Emperor Augustus), began to seize power for himself. The orator Cicero, fearful of what might happen to the Roman Senate, suggested that: laudandum (esse) adulēscentem, ornandum, tollendum. Octavian, who had a good sense of humor, was not exactly pleased by the pun.

# Our Heritage

#### VERCINGETORIX AND ALESIA

In strategic skill, organizing ability, and leadership, Vercingetorix was by far the ablest foreign opponent that Caesar faced, but he was unable in a short time to give the Gauls the discipline and military knowledge that the Romans had acquired through centuries of experience. He did succeed for a time in producing Gallic unity, and for that he has been considered the first national hero of France.

After his surrender, Vercingetorix was sent to Rome and remained in prison there for six years. In 46 B.C. he was led through the streets before Caesar's chariot in a triumphal procession and then executed as part of the ceremony.

Historians agree that the fall of Alesia constitutes a turning point in the history of northern Europe, for it settled the question of Roman supremacy in Gaul. The striking contrast between Roman efficiency and Gallic inefficiency is here seen most clearly. With all their courage and physical strength, the Gauls were defeated in their own territory by an army scarcely one seventh the size of their own.

The military operations of the two years (51–50 B.C.) following the capture of Alesia were not included by Caesar in his Commentaries, but we are indebted to one of his generals, Aulus Hirtius, for a full account, which he added as an eighth book. The military strength of the Gauls had been broken forever, and there remained only the task of subduing certain states that had not yet been fully reduced and of garrisoning the country. Caesar's term as proconsular governor expired in 49 B.C. Thus the conquest of Gaul, with its momentous results, occupied nine years in all.



Vercingetorix is a national hero in the history of France. In 52 B.C. he led a coalition of tribes against the encroaching Romans. Caesar besieged Vercingetorix at Alesia and finally won as famine overcame them. Vercingetorix was taken to Rome and executed in 46 B.C.



### A Latin Play

### Caesar Dictator

#### Personae

C. Iūlius Caesar

Babidus, scrība senex

Frontō, scrība adulēscēns

M. Terentius Varrō

Sōsigenēs, astrologus

M. Flāvius, amīcus Sōsigenis

Senātōrēs Let II

Aedīlis

Būbulō, frāter pistōris 1 Caesaris

Syphāx, margarītārius

Calpurnia, uxor Caesaris

Rhoda, serva

The scene is a room in Caesar's house. The time is somewhere between 49 and 44 B.C. The Civil War with Pompey and his followers has ended victoriously for Caesar. Established in Rome as dictator, Caesar is putting into effect his plans for the reorganization of the war-torn state.]

(Intrant Babidus et Frontō. Tabulās, libellōs, stilōs ferunt.)

BABIDUS: Dēpone libellos, Fronto.

FRONTŌ: Aderuntne hodiē multī salūtātōrēs?

BABIDUS: Multī. Caesarī dictātōrī omnis rēs pūblica cūrae est.

FRONTŌ: Labōrat magis quam servus.

BABIDUS: Prō eō saepe timeō. Semper labōrat; cibum nōn capit. Valētūdine minus commodā iam ūtitur. Aliquandō animō quidem linguitur.<sup>2</sup>

FRONTÖ: Rūmōrem in urbe audīvī—Caesarem cupere rēgem esse.

BABIDUS: Nūgās!3 Caesar pācem, concordiam, tranquillitātem in urbe et 10 orbe terrārum confirmāre vult.

FRONTŌ: Candidātōs magistrātuum certē ipse nōminat.

BABIDUS: Aliōs nōminat Caesar, aliōs populus. Rēs pūblica antīqua autem mortua est.

FRONTŌ: Suntne libellī bene parātī? Memoriā teneō Caesarem quondam 15 interfēcisse scrībam suum Philēmonem.

BABIDUS: Philēmon erat nefārius. Servus Caesaris inimīcīs Caesaris promiserat se dominum per venenum necaturum esse. Tu es neque nefarius neque servus. Nolī timēre.

FRONTŌ: Audī! Appropinquat Caesar. (Intrat C. Iūlius Caesar.)

CAESAR: Salvēte.

BABIDUS et FRONTŌ: Salvē, imperātor.

CAESAR: Prīmum, acta diurna senātūs populīque. Suntne parāta?

FRONTŌ: Ecce, imperātor. (Caesarī dat libellum, quem Caesar legit.)

CAESAR: Bene! Bene scrīpta! Nunc ad commentāriōs meōs Dē Bellō 25 Cīvīlī animadvertāmus.

DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ VI-VII

1 baker

3 Nonsense!

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes he even faints

BABIDUS: Ecce, Caesar. (Caesarī libellum dat.)

CAESAR: Pauca verba addere volō.

BABIDUS: Parātus sum. (Cōnsīdit Babidus; notās<sup>4</sup> scrībere parat. Frontō exit.)

CAESAR: (dictat): "Caesar, omnibus rēbus relīctīs, persequendum sibi

Pompeium exīstimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē 30 important letters.) rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset."

4 shorthand notes
 5 and so on (Caesar used a simple cipher in writing important letters.)
 6 every

BABIDUS: Scriptum est.

CAESAR: Estne scrīpta epistula mea ad Mārcum Cicerōnem, quam herī dictāvī? (*Intrat Frontō*.)

BABIDUS: Ecce, Caesar. (Caesarī epistulam dat.)

35

CAESAR: Mūtā litterās. Scrībe D prō A, et deinceps.5

BABIDUS: Intellegõ.

FRONTŌ: Adsunt salūtātōrēs, imperātor.

CAESAR: Intret Varrō. (Exit Frontō, tum intrat cum Varrōne.)

Salvē, Varrō.

40

VARRŌ: Salvē, imperātor.

CAESAR: Varrō, tū es vir doctus. Mihi in animō est maximam bibliothēcam, Graecam Latīnamque, aedificāre. Pūblica erit bibliothēca. Tē bibliothēcae praefectum facere volō.

VARRŌ: Mē?

45

CAESAR: Te certe.

VARRŌ: Ego autem Pompeiī, inimīcī tuī, eram lēgātus.

CAESAR: Nolī timēre, Varro. Dictātor sum—non autem tālis dictātor quālis erat Sulla. Proscrīptiones neque de capite neque de bonīs Caesarī placent.

VARRŌ: Imperātor, quō modō tibi grātiam referre possum?

CAESAR: Dē grātiā loquī necesse non est. Optimus eris bibliothēcae praefectus. Valē, Varro.

VARRŌ: Dī bene vertant! Valē. (Exit.)

CAESAR: Intrent astrologī. (*Exit Frontō. Intrat cum Sōsigene et Flāviō.*) 55 Salvēte, Sōsigenēs et Flāvī.

SŌSIGENĒS et FLĀVIUS: Salvē, imperātor.

CAESAR: Quid effecistis?

sõsigenēs: Nostrā sententiā, annus ad cursum sõlis accommodandus est. Necesse est annum trecentõrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum esse; 60 necesse est quoque ūnum diem quārtō quōque<sup>6</sup> annō intercalārī.<sub>1</sub>

CAESAR: Rēctam viam capitis, meā quidem sententiā.

FLĀVIUS: Sī Caesarī placet, mēnsis nātālis Caesaris, nunc Quīnctīlis, nominētur Iūlius.

<sup>1</sup> insert (Caesar had the calendar revised to approximately its present form. The insertion of the leap-year day was a feature of his revision.)

65 CAESAR: Dē hāc rē posteā loquāmur. Intereā, prōcēdite ut incēpistis. Valēte.

SŌSIGENĒS et FLĀVIUS: Valē, imperātor. (Exeunt.)

CAESAR: Intrent nunc senātōrēs. (*Exit Frontō*. *Intrat cum senātōribus*.) Salvēte.

70 SENĀTŌRĒS: Salvē, Caesar.

CAESAR: Ouid est in animō?

SENĀTOR I: Nōbīs sunt magnae cūrae, Caesar. Audīvimus tē sine auctōritāte senātūs mīlitēs Rōmānōs ad rēgēs per orbem terrārum submittere ut eīs auxiliō sint; tē pecūniā pūblicā urbēs Asiae, Graeciae, Hispāniae,

75 Galliae operibus ōrnāre.

SENĀTOR II: Tū cīvitātem Rōmānam medicīs et grammaticīs et aliīs dōnāvistī. In senātum Gallōs sēmibarbarōs cōnscrīpsistī. Mīlitēs tuī domōs cīvium ingressī sunt et cibum abstulērunt.<sub>2</sub> Ipse dirēmistī<sup>7</sup> nūptiās cīvium Rōmānōrum.

80 SENĀTOR I: Rūmōrēs malī per urbem eunt. Quid agis, Caesar?

CAESAR: Dictātor sum. Rem pūblicam, bellō dēiectam, restituō.

SENĀTOR II: Rem pūblicam dēlēs, Caesar.

CAESAR: Omnia bene erunt. Nölīte īram meam concitāre. Valēte, amīcī. SENĀTŌRĒS: Valē, Caesar. (*Exeunt.*)

85 CAESAR: Ad rēs fēlīciōrēs animum advertāmus. Intret aedīlis. (*Exit Frontō*. *Intrat cum aedīle*.) Salvē.

AEDĪLIS: Salvē, imperātor. Omnia parāta sunt, ut imperāvistī—mūnus gladiātōrum, vēnātiō, naumachia, lūdī scaenicī, lūdī circēnsēs.

CAESAR: Bene.

90 AEDĪLIS: Spectācula erunt omnium maxima.

CAESAR: Optimē factum. Tibi grātiās agō.

AEDĪLIS: Mihi est honōrī Caesarem iuvāre. Valē.

CAESAR: Valē. (Exit Aedīlis. Intrat Rhoda. Cibum et epistulās fert. Epistulās Babidō dat.)

95 RHODA: Domina ōrat ut dominus cibum recipiat.

CAESAR: Abī, abī! (*Rhoda, cibum ferēns, exit.*) Quae sunt illae epistulae? BABIDUS: Architectus scrīpsit dē Forō Iūliō, dē templō novō, dē statuā equī tuī.<sub>3</sub>

CAESAR: Ita, ita.

BABIDUS: Alius scrīpsit dē viā novā mūniendā, dē Isthmō perfodiendō,4 dē palūdibus Pomptīnīs siccandīs.

7 annulled

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> In an attempt to reduce inflation, Caesar forbade the sale of certain luxurious foods. He sent soldiers to markets and even to private houses to seize such luxuries.

Caesar had a horse of which he was very fond; to it he set up a statue in his own Forum.

<sup>4</sup> digging (a canal through) the Isthmus (of Corinth) (This project was not completed until 1893 and the next one has only recently been finished.)

CAESAR: Dā mihi hanc epistulam.

BABIDUS: Veterānus tibi grātiās ēgit prō praedā, servīs, agrīs quōs eī dedistī. Pauper vir Rōmānus tibi grātiās ēgit, aurō et frūmentō receptō.

CAESAR: Illās epistulās iam legam. Quis in vēstibulō manet?

FRONTŌ: Vir magnus—Būbulō. Et margarītārius.

CAESAR: Būbulōne?

FRONTŌ: Frāter est pistoris tuī.

CAESAR: Quid petit? Intret. (Exit Frontō. Intrat cum Būbulōne.)

BŪBULŌ: Caesar imperātor, tē ōrō, tē ōrō!

110

CAESAR: Quid petis?

BŪBULŌ: Līberā frātrem meum, pistōrem tuum, in vincula coniectum.

CAESAR: Alium pānem mihi, alium amīcīs meīs in trīclīniō meō dedit.5

BŪBULŌ: Tū autem es Caesar.

CAESAR: Īdem cibus erit mihi et amīcīs meīs. Frāter tuus autem poenās 115 iam solvit. Eum līberābō. (*In tabulā scrībit; tabulam Būbulōnī dat.*)

BŪBULŌ: Ōh, dī tē ament, Caesar! (Exit. Caesar rīdet.)

CAESAR: Intret Syphāx margarītārius. (Exit Frontō. Intrat cum Syphāce.)

SYPHĀX: Avē, imperātor. Margarītam habeō—maximam. (Margarītam

Caesarī mōnstrat.)

120

125

CAESAR: Quid dīcis? Haec margarīta non est magna. (*Intrat Calpurnia*.) Haec margarīta est parva. Volo rēgīnam margarītārum—pro uxore meā.

CALPURNIA: Quid audiō?

CAESAR: Calpurnia!

CALPURNIA: Mihi margarītam monstrā.—Est pulcherrima.

CAESAR: Placetne tibi? Maiōrem tibi dare voluī.

CALPURNIA: Certē placet. Pulchra est—et satis magna.

CAESAR: Tua erit, (Scrībīs dīcit.) Cūrāte omnia.

SYPHĀX: Tibi grātiās agō, imperātor. (Exit cum scrībīs.)

CALPURNIA: Utinam tē aequē ac mē cūrārēs!

130

CAESAR: Ego valeō.

CALPURNIA: Cibum reicis; non satis quietem capis; etiam per somnum terreri soles.

CAESAR: Nihil est.

CALPURNIA: Vītam prō rē pūblicā dēdis. Ōmina quoque mala sunt.

CAESAR: Ōmina non mē terrent. (*Intrat Babidus. Margarītam Caesarī dat.*) Ecce! Pulcherrimae uxorī pulcherrimam gemmam do. Nunc ad prandium eāmus.

(Exeunt Caesar et Calpurnia, tum Babidus.)

<sup>5</sup> Some rich Romans had special foods served to themselves and less fine foods to their guests. Of this practice Caesar violently disapproved.





# Unit VIII The Letters of Pliny

Ancient Pompeii was a thriving metropolis when it was smiffed out in A.D. 79. Though it had suffered heavy damage from an earthquake in A.D. 62, some of the buildings had been rebuilt and there were plans to redo many others. This view of a main street shows how the practical Romans constructed their roads. The stepping stones allowed pedestrians to cross without getting their feet wet, while chariots and wagons could still pass their wheels between the stones without being hindered.

# An Ancient Letter Writer

An excavated street in ancient Herculaneum. Located on the Bay of Naples, Herculaneum was known as a resort town. It was much smaller than Pompeii, but was destroyed by the same eruption of Vesuvius in A.D. 79. Herculaneum was covered by a layer of hot mud from 50-65 feet thick that filled the buildings and eventually carbonized, preserving much of the contents. Most of the inhabitants escaped.

Pliny the Younger, whose name distinguishes him from his uncle and adoptive father, Pliny the Elder, was born at Comum (Como) in northern Italy in A.D. 62 during the reign of Nero. His famous teacher Quintilian filled him with admiration of Cicero, whom he tried to imitate in many ways. Like Cicero he became consul and governor of a province. His highest ambition was to rival Cicero as an orator, but only one of his many speeches has survived—and no one reads that.

The fact that many of Cicero's letters were collected and published by his secretary and others gave Pliny the idea of selecting for publication some of his own more polished and less personal letters. These have survived and make fascinating reading for the light they throw on Pliny himself and on life in his day.

Scala/Art Resource, NY



Pliny was a man of fine character, a good representative of the honest and efficient officials who developed and governed the Roman Empire. He was generous and kind and for these reasons we can forgive him his conceit and overseriousness.

Among Pliny's most interesting letters are two that give a vivid account of the famous eruption of Mt. Vesuvius near Naples in A.D. 79. The author was seventeen years old at the time and was living with his mother and uncle near Naples, at Misenum, where the elder Pliny was stationed as admiral of the fleet. Many years later Pliny wrote the letters describing the eruption.

This great disaster has been a blessing for us, since it preserved as if in a huge plaster cast, the towns of Pompeii and Herculaneum. The excavation of these two towns during the last two centuries has made it possible for us to walk into the houses and shops of the people who once lived there and has given us an intimate view of their daily life.

# The Eruption of Vesuvius

This letter is a reply to a request by Pliny's great friend, the historian Tacitus, who was gathering eyewitness material for his *Histories*. Although part of *Histories* has survived, the section dealing with the eruption has unfortunately been lost, and we are unable to tell how Tacitus used the information furnished by Pliny.

Petis ut tibi de avunculi mei morte scribam ut hoc tradere posteris possīs. Grātiās agō; nam videō mortī eius immortālem glōriam esse propositam. Quamquam ipse opera plūrima et mānsūra scrīpsit, multum tamen eius librorum aeternitātī, tuorum aeternitās addet. Beātos eos puto quibus deōrum mūnere datum est aut facere scrībenda1 aut scrībere legenda,1 51 (things) to be (i.e., worthy of beātissimōs vērō eōs quibus utrumque.<sup>2</sup> Hōrum in numerō avunculus meus et suīs librīs3 et tuīs erit.

Erat Mīsēnī.4 Hōrā ferē septimā māter mea ostendit eī nūbem inūsitātā magnitūdine et speciē. Ille ascendit locum ex quō optimē mīrāculum illud conspici poterat. Nübes ex monte Vesuvio oriebatur. Formam pīnūs<sup>5</sup> 10 habēbat.

being), etc.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Supply datum est.

<sup>3</sup> because of

<sup>4</sup> at Misenum

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> pine (tree)

<sup>1</sup> dative with addet; supply librorum with tuorum

6 i.e., with him

<sup>7</sup> pumice stones

8 cushions (used by his slaves as a protection against falling stones)

<sup>9</sup> lying down

10 (this has) nothing (to do) with

Iubet nāvēs parārī; mihi copiam eundī6 facit. Respondī studēre mē mālle. Tum accipit litterās cuiusdam mulieris perīculō territae. Nāvem ascendit ut non illī mulierī modo sed multīs auxilium ferret. Properat illūc 15 unde aliī fugiunt rēctumque cursum in perīculum tenet, tam solūtus timore ut omnia vīsa ēnotāret.

Iam nāvibus cinis dēnsior incidēbat, iam pūmicēs<sup>7</sup> etiam nigrīque lapides. Cum gubernator moneret ut retro flecteret, "Fortes," inquit, "fortūna iuvat." Ubi ad lītus vēnit, amīcum vīdit. Eum territum hortatur.

20 Tum in balneum it et postea ad cenam, aut hilaris aut similis hilari.

Interim ē Vesuviō monte lātissimās flammās vīdērunt. Ille, nē cēterī timērent, dīcēbat ignēs ab agricolīs relīctōs esse. Tum sē quiētī dedit. Sed non multo post servi eum excitaverunt ne exitus ob cinerem negaretur. Domus crēbrīs tremōribus nunc hūc nunc illūc movērī vidēbātur. Itaque 25 placuit egredi in lītus. Cervīcālia8 capitibus imponunt. Sed ille recubāns9 aquam poposcit et hausit. Tum surrēxit et statim concidit. Cēterī fugiunt. Posterō diē corpus inventum est integrum. Similior erat dormientī quam mortuō.

Interim Mīsēnī ego et māter—sed nihil ad10 historiam, nec tū aliud quam 30 de exitū eius scīre voluistī. Fīnem ergō faciam.

## Flight from Disaster

Taking the hint given in the last sentence in the preceding selection, Tacitus asked about Pliny the Younger's own adventures during the eruption. Pliny replied as follows.

Dīcis tē adductum litterīs quās tibi dē morte avunculī meī scrīpsī cupere cognoscere quos timores et casus ego pertulerim. "Quamquam animus meminisse horret, incipiam."

Profecto<sup>1</sup> avunculō, ipse reliquum tempus studiīs dedī. Tum balneum, 5 cēna, somnus brevis. Praecesserat per multõs dies tremor terrae. Illa vērō nocte ita crēvit<sup>2</sup> ut non movērī omnia sed vertī<sup>3</sup> vidērentur. Māter et ego in āream domūs iimus et consēdimus. Dubito utrum4 constantiam vocāre an imprūdentiam dēbeam (nātus enim eram XVII annōs), sed poscō librum T.

Iam hōra diēī prīma erat. Magnus et certus erat ruīnae timor. Tum dēmum<sup>5</sup> excēdere oppidō placuit. Multī nōs sequuntur. Ēgressī cōnsistimus. Multa ibi mīranda, multos timores patimur. Nam carrī quos prodūcī

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> from proficiscor

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> from crēscō

<sup>3</sup> to be turning upside down

<sup>4</sup> whether, introducing debeam

<sup>5</sup> at length



The Metropolitan Museum of Art, Rogers Fund, 1903. (03.14.13) Photography by Scheeter I Copyright © 1986 By The Metropolitan Museum of Art.

iusserāmus, quamquam in plānissimō campō, in contrāriās partēs agēbantur. Ab altero latere nubes atra et horrenda apparebat. Paulo post, illa nūbēs dēscendit in terrās. Tum māter ōrat, hortātur, iubet mē fugere. "Tū 15 upper class home during the potes," inquit; "ego et annīs et corpore gravis bene moriar sī tibi causa mortis non ero." Ego vēro dīco mē non incolumem nisi cum eā futūrum esse. Deinde eam procedere cogo. Paret aegre. Iam cinis cadit. Tum nox, non qualis sine luna est, sed qualis in locis clausis, lumine exstincto. Audiuntur ululātūs6 fēminārum, īnfantium quirītātūs,7 clāmōrēs virōrum. 206 shrieks Aliī parentēs, aliī līberōs, aliī coniugēs vocibus quaerēbant, vocibus noscēbant. Quīdam timore mortis mortem orābant. Multī ad deos manūs tollēbant, plūrēs non iam deos ūllos esse aeternamque illam et ultimam noctem dīcēbant. Cinis multus et gravis. Hunc identidem surgentēs excutiēbāmus8 nē pondus nōbīs nocēret. Possum dīcere mē nōn gemitum in 25 tantīs perīculīs ēdidisse. Tandem nūbēs discessit. Tum diēs vērus. Omnia mūtāta erant altoque cinere tamquam nive tēcta.

This cubiculum (bedroom) from a home in ancient Pompeii shows the elaborate wall paintings and floor mosaics that mark it as an 1st century B.C.

wails

<sup>8</sup> shook off

## The Secret of Success

This letter and the next are interesting revelations of the Romans' genius for organization, even of their personal lives.

Mīrāris quō modō tot librōs avunculus meus, homō occupātus, scrībere potuerit. Magis mīrāberis sī scīveris illum causās ēgisse, vīxisse LV annōs, medium¹ tempus impedītum esse officiīs maximīs et amīcitiā prīncipum. Sed erat ācre ingenium, incrēdibile studium. Studēre incipiēbat hieme ab 5 hōrā septimā noctis. Erat somnī² parātissimī, nōn numquam³ etiam inter ipsa studia īnstantis⁴ et dēserentis.⁴ Ante lūcem ībat ad Vespasiānum imperātōrem (nam ille quoque noctibus ūtēbātur), inde ad officium datum. Reversus domum, reliquum tempus studiīs reddēbat. Post levem cibum saepe aestāte iacēbat in sōle; liber legēbātur,⁵ ille ēnotābat. Dīcere solēbat 10 nūllum esse librum tam malum ut nōn aliquā parte ūtilis esset. Post sōlem plērumque frīgidā aquā lavābātur⁶; deinde dormiēbat minimum. Tum quasi aliō diē studēbat in cēnae tempus.

Meminī quendam ex amīcīs, cum lēctor quaedam verba male prōnūntiāvisset, eum revocāvisse et iterum prōnūntiāre coēgisse. Huic avunculus meus 15 dīxit, "Nōnne intellēxerās?" Cum ille nōn negāret. "Cūr revocābās? Decem versūs hōc modō perdidimus."

Etiam dum lavātur audiēbat servum legentem. In itinere, quasi solūtus cēterīs cūrīs, huic ūnī reī vacābat: ad latus servus erat cum librō et tabulīs, cuius manūs hieme manicīs<sup>7</sup> mūniēbantur, nē ūllum tempus studī āmitterētur. 20 Perīre omne tempus nōn studiīs datum arbitrābātur.

- 1 time in between
- $^{2}$  (a man) of
- 3 not never, i.e., sometimes
- 4 which came and went (modifies somnī)
- <sup>5</sup> i.e., to him by a slave.
- <sup>6</sup> bathed (himself) (the passive is used reflexively)
- 7 gloves

# How to Keep Young

Spūrinna senex omnia ōrdine agit. Hōrā secundā calceōs poscit, ambulat mīlia passuum tria nec minus animum quam corpus exercet. Sī adsunt amīcī, sermōnēs explicantur;¹ sī nōn, liber legitur dum ambulat. Deinde cōnsīdit et liber rūrsus aut sermō. Tum vehiculum ascendit cum uxōre vel aliquō amīcō. Cōnfectīs septem mīlibus passuum iterum ambulat mīlle, 5 iterum cōnsīdit. Ubi hōra balneī nūntiāta est (est autem hieme nōna, aestāte octāva), in sōle ambulat. Deinde pilā² lūdit vehementer et diū; nam hōc quoque exercitātiōnis genere pugnat cum senectūte. LXXVII annōs ēgit sed aurium et oculōrum et corporis vigor adhūc est integer.

<sup>1</sup> take place <sup>2</sup> ball

# The Good Die Young

In addition to being a touching expression of grief, this letter gives us an idea of the qualities the Romans appreciated most in women.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī fīliā minōre mortuā. Nihil umquam fēstīvius¹ aut amābilius quam illam puellam vīdī. Nōndum annōs XIII complēverat, et iam illī anūs² prūdentia, mātrōnae gravitās erat et tamen suāvitās puellae. Ut³ illa patris cervīcibus⁴ haerēbat! Ut nōs, amīcōs patris, et amanter et modestē complectēbātur!⁵ Ut magistrōs 5 amābat! Quam studiōsē, quam intellegenter legēbat! Ut parcē lūdēbat! Quā patientiā, quā etiam cōnstantiā ultimam valētūdinem tulit! Medicīs pārēbat, sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur, ipsamque sē vīribus animī sustinēbat. Hae vīrēs nec spatiō valētūdinis nec timōre mortis frāctae sunt. Itaque plūrēs graviōrēsque causās dolōris nōbīs relīquit. Iam spōnsa erat ēgregiō iuvenī, 10 iam ēlēctus nūptiārum diēs, iam nōs vocātī.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> more charming <sup>2</sup> of an old woman <sup>3</sup> how

<sup>3</sup> how 4 neck

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> embraced

<sup>1</sup> The urn containing the girl's ashes was actually found in 1881 in the family tomb three miles north of Rome. The inscription on it reads: d(īs) m(ānibus) Miniciae Mārcellae Fundānī f(īliae). V(īxit) a(nnīs) xii, m(ēnsibus) xi, d(iēbus) vii.

This wall painting from the 1st century A.D. shows a young girl wearing a laurel wreath. Perhaps the artist was inspired by someone like the daughter of Fundanus.



Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY

Non possum exprimere verbīs quantum animo vulnus accēperim, cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum imperantem ut illa pecūnia quam in vestēs et gemmās impēnsūrus esset in unguenta et odorēs impenderētur.<sup>6</sup> Āmīsit fīliam quae non minus morēs eius quam vultum referēbat.

<sup>6</sup> giving orders that the money which ... be spent on perfumes (for the funeral)

## A Ghost Story

Erat Athēnīs magna domus sed īnfāmis.¹ Per silentium noctis sonus vinculōrum, longius prīmō, deinde ē proximō audiēbātur. Tum appārēbat lārva, senex horrentī capillō. Vincula gerēbat. Deinde malae noctēs erant eīs quī ibi habitābant; mors sequēbātur. Domus dēserta est et illī lārvae relīcta. Prōscrībēbātur² tamen, sed nēmō vel emere vel condūcere voluit.

Vēnit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus, lēgit titulum, audītōque pretiō, quaesīvit cūr tam vīlis esset. Omnia cognōscit sed tamen condūcit. Ubi nox vēnit, poposcit tabulās, stilum, lūmen; servōs suōs omnēs dīmīsit, ipse ad scrībendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit nē mēns timōrēs fingeret. Prīmō silentium, deinde vincula audiuntur. Ille nōn tollit oculōs. Tum 10 sonus vinculōrum crēscit, propius venit. Iam in līmine,³ iam intrā līmen audītur. Ille respicit, videt lārvam. Stābat innuēbatque⁴ digitō similis vocantī. Sed philosophus rūrsus studiīs sē dat. Iterum sonus vinculōrum audītur. Ille rūrsus respicit lārvam innuentem. Nōn morātus tollit lūmen et sequitur. Postquam lārva dēflexit in āream domūs, eum dēserit; is signum 15 in locō pōnit. Posterō diē philosophus adit magistrātūs et monet ut illum locum effodī iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa et vincula. Haec collēcta sepeliuntur.⁵ In eō aedificiō numquam posteā lārva vīsa est.

- <sup>1</sup> with a bad reputation
- <sup>2</sup> advertised
- <sup>3</sup> threshold
- <sup>4</sup> beckoned <sup>5</sup> are buried

# Don't Be a Harsh Father

Castīgābat quīdam fīlium suum quod paulō sūmptuōsius equōs et canēs emeret. Huic ego: "Heus¹ tū, numquamne fēcistī quod ā patre tuō culpārī posset? Nōn etiam nunc facis quod fīlius tuus, sī pater tuus esset, parī gravitāte culpet?"

Haec tibi admonitus magnae sevēritātis exemplō scrīpsī nē tū quoque 5 fīlium acerbius dūriusque tractārēs.<sup>2</sup> Cōgitā et illum puerum esse et tē fuisse atque hominem esse tē et hominis patrem.

<sup>1</sup> Say!

<sup>2</sup> handle

# Graded Friendship Is Degraded Friendship

1 go into too deeply

<sup>2</sup> rich (foods)

3 bottles

<sup>4</sup> of different degrees

<sup>5</sup> Supply is.

<sup>6</sup> It costs a great deal?

Longum est altius repetere quo modo acciderit ut cenarem apud quendam, ut sibi vidēbātur, lautum et dīligentem, ut mihi, sordidum simul et sūmptuōsum. Nam sibi et paucīs opīma² quaedam, cēterīs vīlia pōnēbat. Vīnum etiam parvulīs lagunculīs<sup>3</sup> in tria genera dīvīserat, non ut potestās 5 ēligendī, sed nē iūs esset recūsandī, aliud sibi et nōbīs, aliud minōribus amīcīs (nam gradātim4 amīcōs habet), aliud suīs nostrīsque lībertīs. Animadvertit<sup>5</sup> quī mihi proximus accumbēbat et an probārem interrogāvit. Negāvī. "Tū ergō," inquit, "quam consuētūdinem sequeris?" "Eadem omnibus pōnō; ad cēnam enim, nōn ad contumēliam invītō omnibusque 10 rēbus aequō quōs mēnsā aequāvī." "Etiamne lībertōs?" "Etiam: amīcōs enim tum, non lībertos puto." Et ille, "Magno6 tibi constat?" "Minimē." "Quō modō fierī potest?" "Quia lībertī meī non idem quod ego bibunt, sed idem ego quod lībertī."

## Wanted, a Teacher

Note the exquisite courtesy that turns a chore into a pleasure.

Quid ā mē grātius potuistī petere quam ut magistrum frātris tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō tuō in scholam redeō et illam dulcissimam aetātem guasi resūmam. Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illos auctoritatis ex studis meis habeam. Nam 5 proximē inter sē iocābantur: intrāvī, silentium factum est. Hoc ad illorum laudem magis quam ad meam pertinet.

Cum omnēs professorēs audīvero, quid dē quoque sentiam scrībam. Dēbeō enim tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim in tantā rē.

ercratumestanthiquodiamolice—
terlibrosauonculimeilectitasut
habereomnesuelisquaerasq.qui
sintomnesdétuncarindicispartib.
atquéetiam quosintordinescripti
notumtibifaciamestenionhaec.
quoq.studiosisnoniniucundacoc
nitiodeiaculationeequestriunus.
hunceumpraefectus alae milita
retparincenioeuraq.composuit.
deuitapomponisecundiduo aquo
sinculariteramatus hocmemoriae
amiciquasidebitummunusexsol
uitbellorumcermaniaeuicintiquis.

The oldest manuscript of Pliny's letters in existence. It dates from about A.D. 500 and is in the Pierpont Morgan Library, New York City. What words can you identify?

The Pierpont Morgan Library/Art Resource, NY. M. (Detail, 462,F.6V)

# A Courageous Wife

Aeger erat Paetus, marītus Arriae, aeger etiam fīlius. Fīlius dēcessit. Huic illa ita fūnus parāvit ut ignōrāret marītus. Cum¹ cubiculum eius intrāret, vīvere fīlium atque etiam commodiōrem esse dīcēbat, ac saepe marītō interrogantī quid ageret puer respondēbat, "Bene quiētem cēpit et cibum sūmpsit." Deinde, cum lacrimae vincerent, ēgrediēbātur. Tum sē 5 dolōrī dabat. Compositō vultū redībat.

Paetus cum Scrībōniānō arma in Īllyricō contrā Claudium mōverat. Occīsō Scrībōniānō, Rōmam Paetus trahēbātur.² Erat ascēnsūrus nāvem; Arria mīlitēs ōrābat ut simul impōnerētur. "Datūrī estis," inquit, "marītō meō, cōnsulārī virō, servōs aliquōs quōrum ē manū cibum capiat³ et 10 vestem et calceōs. Omnia haec ego sōla faciam." Hōc negātō, illa condūxit parvum nāvigium et magnam nāvem secūta est.

Postquam Rōmam pervēnērunt, illa gladium strīnxit, in corde suō dēfīxit, extrāxit, marītō dedit, addidit vōcem immortālem ac paene dīvīnam: "Paete, nōn dolet."

1 whenever

<sup>2</sup> i.e., as a prisoner

3 he may take

4 it doesn't hurt

## Two Love Letters

Written by Pliny to his third wife, who was much younger than he.

1 complain (from queror)

2 two

Numquam magis dē occupātiōnibus meīs sum questus. I quae mē non sunt passae sequī tē proficīscentem in Campāniam valētūdinis causā. Nunc enim maximē tēcum esse cupio ut oculīs meīs videam quid vīrium consecūta sīs. Et absentia et īnfirmitās tua mē terrent. Vereor omnia, fingō omnia, ea maximē quae maximē timeo. Itaque rogo ut cotīdiē singulās vel etiam bīnās² epistulās scrībās. Sine cūrā ero dum lego statimque timēbo cum lēgero. Valē.

Scrībis tē absentiā meā magnopere afficī ūnumque habēre sōlācium, quod prō mē librōs meōs teneās. Grātum est quod mē requīris. Ego epis10 tulās tuās legō atque identidem in manūs quasi novās sūmō. Tū quam frequentissimē scrībe. Valē.

# A Fish Story

1 people of all ages

<sup>2</sup> depends on studiō

<sup>3</sup> i.e., than the rest

4 made for

<sup>5</sup> comes up from under, i.e., takes the boy on its back

6 leaps up and dives

7 is carried (out) and back

Est in Āfricā colōnia marī proxima. Hīc omnis aetās¹ piscandī,² nāvigandī, atque etiam natandī studiō tenētur, maximē puerī, quī ōtium habent et lūdere cupiunt. Hīs glōria et virtūs est longissimē natāre; victor ille est quī longissimē lītus et aliōs natantēs relīquit. Puer quīdam audācior³ in ulteriōra tendēbat.⁴ Delphīnus occurrit et nunc praecēdit puerum, nunc sequitur, tum subit,⁵ dēpōnit, iterum subit territumque puerum perfert prīmum in altum, deinde flectit ad lītus redditque terrae.

Concurrunt omnēs, ipsum puerum tamquam mīrāculum spectant, rogant, audiunt. Posterō diē rūrsus natant puerī, rūrsus delphīnus ad puerum venit. 10 Fugit ille cum cēterīs. Delphīnus, quasi revocāns, exsilit et mergitur. 6 Hoc plūribus diēbus facit. Tandem puerī accēdunt, appellant, tangunt etiam. Crēscit audācia. Maximē puer quī prīmus expertus est natat ad eum, īnsilit tergō, fertur referturque. 7 Amārī sē putat, amat ipse. Neuter timet, neuter timētur.



Ancient coin of a dolphin and rider. The Greeks and Romans were just as fascinated with dolphins, as we are today.

Veniēbant omnēs magistrātūs ad spectāculum, quōrum adventū et morā 15 parva rēs pūblica novīs sūmptibus<sup>8</sup> conficitur. Posteā locus ipse quiētem <sup>8</sup> expenses suam āmittēbat. Placuit delphīnum interficī ad quem videndum omnēs veniēbant.

# Advice to a Provincial Governor

Cōgitā tē missum in prōvinciam Achaiam, illam vēram Graeciam, in quā prīmum hūmānitās, litterae, etiam frūgēs inventae esse crēduntur; missum ad hominēs vērē hominēs, ad līberōs<sub>I</sub> vērē līberōs, quī iūs ā nātūrā datum virtūte et meritīs tenuērunt. Reverēre glōriam veterem. Sint antīquitās et magna facta in magnō honōre apud tē. Habē ante oculōs hanc esse terram 5 quae nōbīs mīserit iūra, quae lēgēs nōn victīs sed petentibus dederit, Athēnās esse quās adeās, Lacedaemonem esse quam regās. Plūs potest amor ad obtinendum quod¹ velīs quam timor.

<sup>1</sup> Supply id as antecedent.

<sup>1</sup> from **līber**, not **līberī**; he means that true manhood and true freedom had their beginnings in Greece.

## A Humane Master



<sup>1</sup> from **līber** <sup>2</sup> as it were

 $^{3}$  as

4 only, however

5 other men

<sup>6</sup> loss (of property)

7 perhaps

Confecerunt me înfirmitates servorum meorum, mortes etiam. Solacia duo sunt, non paria tanto dolori: unum, copia manumittendi (videor enim non omnino perdidisse quos iam liberos¹ perdidi); alterum, quod permitto servis quoque quasi² testamenta facere. Mandant rogantque in his id quod 5 volunt; pareo ut³ iussus. Dividunt, donant, relinquunt, dumtaxat⁴ intra domum; nam servis res publica quaedam et quasi civitas domus est.

Non ignoro alios eius modī cāsūs nihil amplius vocāre quam damnum.6 Fortasse sunt magnī sapientēsque, ut sibi videntur; homines non sunt. Homo enim dēbet afficī dolore.

Dīxī dē hīs plūra fortasse quam dēbuī, sed pauciōra quam voluī. Est enim quaedam etiam dolendī voluptās.

Household slaves pouring and serving wine. As Roman slaves were by law merely so much property, they could not legally own money or make wills. In actual practice, however, most Roman slaves had these and other privileges.



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection



Jack Novak SuperStock, Inc.

## A Busy Holiday

Chariot races were major entertainment for the Romansso much so that they built a circus to hold the shows in many major provincial cities.

Omne hoc tempus inter tabulās ac libros grātissimā quiēte ēgī. "Quō modō," inquis, "in urbe potuistī?" Circēnsēs lūdī erant, quō genere spectāculī minimē teneor. Nihil novum, nihil varium, nihil quod non semel spectāvisse sufficiat. Mīror tot mīlia virōrum tam puerīliter cupere identidem vidēre currentēs equōs, īnsistentēs curribus¹ hominēs. Non vēlocitāte equorum 5¹ standing in chariots aut hominum arte trahuntur.<sup>2</sup> Favent pannō,<sup>3</sup> pannum amant. Sī in ipsō cursū hic color illūc, ille hūc trānsferātur.4 studium favorque trānsferētur.1 et statim aurīgās illōs, equōs illōs quōs procul noscunt, quorum clāmant nōmina, relinquent. Tanta grātia, tanta auctōritās in ūnā vīlissimā tunicā, non modo apud vulgus sed apud quosdam graves homines. Capio aliquam 10 voluptātem quod hāc voluptāte non capior. Et otium meum in litterīs per hōs dies colloco, quos aliī perdunt. Vale.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> they are attracted

<sup>3</sup> the cloth

<sup>4</sup> should be transferred

Singular because the two subjects represent one idea.





# Unit IX Latin Literature

This nineteenth century wall painting in Rome depicts Rome's greatest orator, Marcus Tullius Cicero, addressing the senate, denouncing Catiline, and exposing the conspiracy. In all, Cicero delivered four orations against Catiline. The eloquence of these orations set the standard of excellence for all who followed.

Latin literature, as it exists, extends from the third century B.C. to the present time. It contains material of almost every description: fine poetry, absorbing history and biography, amusing stories, moral essays, pithy sayings, passionate oratory, comic and tragic drama, scientific treatises, and much that is pertinent to life today. In this unit you will find a wide variety of samples that cover over two thousand years.

## Ennius

Ennius (239–169 B.C.) has been called the father of Latin poetry. His *Annals*, an epic poem dealing with the history of Rome down to his own time, remained the chief epic of Rome until it was supplanted by Vergil's *Aencid*. Only fragments of the *Annals* and his plays have survived, preserved in quotations by later authors. Ennius was a bold experimenter with verse. One of his experiments in alliteration might remind you of "Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers." It is addressed to Titus Tatius, the Sabine king, by the man who killed him.

Ō, Tite, tūte, ¹ Tatī, tibi tanta, ¹ tyranne, tulistī.

Like many Roman writers, Ennius stressed patriotic and moral qualities:

Mōribus² antīquīs stat rēs³ Rōmāna virīsque.²

neuter plural accusative; i.e., misfortunes

 $<sup>^{1}</sup>$  =  $t\bar{u}$   $^{2}$  because of  $^{3}$  =  $r\bar{e}s$   $p\bar{u}blica$ 

### Plautus and Terence

As early as the third century B.C. the Romans had begun to borrow and adapt from the Greeks a type of comedy based on the manners (or bad manners) of middle-class citizens. Its themes were general: thwarted but eventually successful love, paternal strictness versus the frivolity of an ungovernable teen-aged son, the cleverness of a slave who outwits his master to make everything come out right at the end. The plots are complicated, with all sorts of mistaken identities and surprise twists. Much of the humor consists in clever puns, in constant involvement of the characters in embarassing and humiliating situations, and in the wildest sort of slapstick.

Rome's two masters of comedy were Plautus (ca. 254–184 B.C.), twenty of whose plays survive, and Terence (ca. 190–159 B.C.), who has left us six plays. Terence is much the milder, and, if we consider that originally he was a slave of African birth, the purity of his Latin is remarkable. The following selection is taken from the more boisterous Plautus.



Plantus and Terence were Rome's most famous dramatic comedians. This mosaic from Pompeii shows masked actors in a comedy playing a magician and clients.

#### The Boastful Soldier

The title of the play, *Miles Gloriosus (The Boastful Soldier)*, describes the subject of the play. The soldier, Pyrgopolinices (whose name means "tower-city-conqueror" in Greek) has a good imagination in recounting his deeds, but his sponging friend Artotrogus ("bread-eater") has an even better one, inventing fantastic tales about his companion.

AR. Meminī centum in Ciliciā et quīnquāgintā, centum in Scytholatroniā, trīgintā Sardos, sexāgintā Macedonēs—sunt hominēs quos tū—occīdistī ūno diē.

Py. Quanta istaec¹ hominum summa est? AR. S

- PY. Quanta istaec¹ hominum summa est? AR. Septem mīlia.
  PY. Tantum esse oportet. Rēctē rationem tenēs.
  AR. Quid in Cappadociā, ubi tū quingentos simul,
  nī hebes machaera foret,² ūnō ictū³ occīderās?
  Quid tibi ego dīcam, quod omnēs mortālēs sciunt,
  Pyrgopolinīcem tē ūnum in terrā vīvere
  - Pyrgopolinīcem tē ūnum in terrā vīvere virtūtē et fōrmā et factīs invictissimīs?

    Amant tē omnēs mulierēs neque iniūriā,<sup>4</sup> quī sīs tam pulcher; vel<sup>5</sup> illae quae herī palliō mē reprehendērunt.<sup>6</sup> PY. Quid eae dīxērunt tibi?
- AR. Rogitābant: "Hicine<sup>7</sup> Achillēs est?" "Immo<sup>8</sup> eius frāter," inquam, "est."

a nonexistent place: "Scythia-robber-land"

## Lucretius

Almost nothing certain is known about the life of this great poet, who lived during the first half of the first century B.C. His one poem, the *De Rerum Natura (On the Nature of Things)*, is a poetic exposition of the theories of the Greek philosopher Epicurus. It is important because it is an attempt to explain the universe in the scientific terms of an atomic theory often surprisingly similar to our own, and to dispel our superstitious fears about death and terrifying natural phenomena, such as thunder, lightning, and earthquakes, which were commonly attributed to the actions of the gods. It also anticipates modern notions of biological and social evolution.

5

10

15

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> if your sword had not been dull

<sup>3</sup> blow

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> and not without reason

<sup>5</sup> for example

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> caught me by the coat.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> = hicne

<sup>8</sup> No. but

#### Knowledge Produces a Tranquil Mind

Suāve,¹ marī₁ magnō turbantibus aequora² ventīs, ē terrā magnum alterius spectāre labōrem, nōn quia vexārī quemquam est iūcunda voluptās, sed quibus ipse malīs careās³ quia cernere₂ suāve est. Sed nīl dulcius est, bene quam mūnīta tenēre ēdita doctrīnā sapientum templa⁴ serēnā, dēspicere unde queās⁵ aliōs passimque⁶ vidēre errāre atque viam pālantēs⁵ quaerere vītae, certāre ingeniō, contendere nōbilitāte, noctēs atque diēs nītī⁵ praestante labōre ad summās ēmergere opēs rērumque potīrī. Ō miserās hominum mentēs₁ ō pectora caeca!9

Two features of Lucretius' scientific explanation of the universe are that nothing is produced from nothing and that the universe consists only of matter and empty space:

> Nīl posse creārī dē nīlō.<sub>4</sub> Corpora<sup>10</sup> sunt et ināne.

Men are like relay racers; they pass on the torch of life to the next generation:

Sīc rērum summa novātur semper, et inter sē mortālēs mūtua<sup>11</sup> vīvunt. Augēscunt aliae gentēs, aliae minuuntur, inque brevī spatiō mūtantur saecla animantum<sup>12</sup> et quasi cursōrēs vītāī<sup>13</sup> lampada trādunt.

ablative of place without a preposition

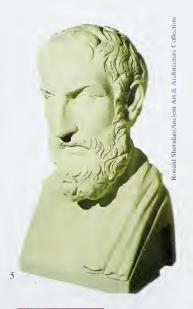
The antecedent of quibus (ea understood) is the object of cernere.

3 accusative of exclamation

from nīl (ablative)

- <sup>1</sup> Supply est.
- 2 waters
- <sup>3</sup> you are free from (with ablative)
- 4 regions
- 5 vou can
- <sup>6</sup> everywhere
- 5 7 wandering
- 8 to strive (deponent infinitive)
- 9 blind
- 10 i.e., of matter
- 11 in turn
- 12 of living beings
- 13 = vitae

10



The Greek philosopher Epicurus (341-270 B.C.) founded his own school in Athens. Called the Garden, it was one of the few that accepted women and slaves. The followers of Epicurus focused heavily on sense perceptions and enjoyed much pleasure; many thought the Epicureans were hedonistic.

## Cornelius Nepos

Nepos wrote biographies of famous Greeks and Romans. He, too, lived in the first century B.C. and he outlived Lucretius. In this selection he tells about an honest politician who could not be bought.

Phōcion Athēniēnsis saepe exercitibus praefuit summōsque magistrātūs cēpit, sed tamen multō nōtior est ob prīvātam vītam quam ob glōriam reī mīlitāris. Fuit enim semper pauper, quamquam dītissimus esse poterat propter honōrēs dēlātōs potestātēsque summās quae eī ā populō dabantur. 5 Cum magna mūnera pecūniae ā lēgātīs rēgis Philippī dēlāta reiceret, lēgātī

5 Cum magna mūnera pecūniae ā lēgātīs rēgis Philippī dēlāta reiceret, lēgātī dīxērunt: "Sī ipse haec nōn vīs,¹ līberīs tamen tuīs prōspicere tē oportet, quibus difficile erit in summā inopiā tantam patris glōriam servāre." Hīs ille, "Sī meī² similēs erunt," inquit, "īdem hic parvus ager illōs alet quī mē ad hanc dignitātem perdūxit; sī dissimilēs sunt futūrī, nōlō meā pecūniā 10 illōrum lūxuriam alī augērīque."

- from volō
- <sup>2</sup> *like me* (genitive of **ego**, with **similis**)

## Catullus

Catullus, a younger contemporary of Caesar, Cicero, and Nepos, was Rome's most inspired lyric poet. Many of his poems are addressed to his sweetheart Lesbia. His love affair had its ups and downs, but it did not end happily. Other short poems of his are written to friends and enemies, including Caesar, who at different times was a friend and foe. He also wrote marriage songs, a short epic, and a lament for his dead brother.

#### "Poor Little Sparrow"

In the poem on the next page, Catullus mourns the death of the pet sparrow (passer) of his sweetheart Lesbia.

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque, et quantum est hominum venustiörum!1 Passer mortuus est meae puellae, passer, deliciae2 meae puellae, quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat; nam mellītus3 erat, suamque norat2 ipsam tam bene quam puella mātrem, nec sēsē ā gremio4 illius movēbat, sed circumsiliens modo5 hūc modo illūc ad sõlam dominam usque pīpiābat.6 Quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum<sup>7</sup> illūc unde negant redīre quemquam. At vobīs male sit, malae tenebrae Orcī, quae omnia bella, dēvorātis; tam bellum mihi passerem abstulistis. Ō factum male! Iō miselle4 passer! Tuā nunc operā meae puellae flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.5

1 all of the handsome men there are

<sup>2</sup> pet (nominative)

3 sweet as honey

4 lap

5 now...now

<sup>7</sup> shadowy (to Hades); see also tenebrae, darkness (line 13)

10

15

#### Passer, deliciae meae puellae.

This detail from a wall painting in a Roman villa shows the Romans' fondness for birds.



Scala/Art Resource, NY

i.e., all the gods of love and beauty

<sup>&</sup>lt;sub>2</sub> = noverat; with suam supply dominam (Lesbia); ipsam modifies matrem: as the girl (knew) her own mother

adjective, from bellus, beautiful

diminutive of miser: poor little.

<sup>5</sup> The diminutives (ocellus from oculus, turgidulus from turgidus, swollen) are used, like miselle above, for pathetic effect, as they heighten the tenderness and affection of the expression; rubent means are red.

#### **Counting Kisses**

Vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus, rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis.<sup>1</sup>
Sōlēs occidere et redīre possunt; nōbīs cum semel occidit brevis lūx,<sup>2</sup> nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
Dā mī<sup>3</sup> bāsia<sup>4</sup> mīlle, deinde centum,

dein mille altera, dein secunda centum, deinde usque altera mille, deinde centum,

Dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus.
Conturbābimus illa, nē sciāmus

aut në quis malus invidëre<sub>1</sub> possit, cum tantum sciat esse bāsiōrum.

1 i.e., cast the evil eye

10

## Cicero

You have already become slightly acquainted with M. Tullius Cicero, now you will get to know him a little better. If you continue Latin next year, you will become intimately acquainted with him.

Cicero (106–43 B.C.) was Rome's greatest prose writer. He was the leading public speaker at a time when the ability to make an effective speech was even more important than it is today. Many of his orations still exist, including those against Catiline and Mark Antony, and the one for Archias the poet, in which he shows his appreciation of poetry. He wrote fine essays on moral and philosophical subjects: on friendship, on old age, on one's duties, etc. He also wrote on the history and technique of oratory. A large number of his letters, which he himself had no intention of publishing, have been preserved. Many are addressed to his intimate friend Atticus. They cover all sorts of subjects, from bathtubs to politics, from the birth of a son to the divorce and death of his daughter. He died while vainly attempting to defend constitutional government against Mark Antony.

<sup>2</sup> i.e., life

3 = mihi

4 kisses (from bāsium)

#### The Regulation of War

Adapted from Cicero's treatise *Dē Officiīs*, which was written for his son.

In rē pūblicā maximē conservanda sunt iūra bellī. Nam sunt duo genera dēcertandī, ūnum per disputātionem, alterum per vim. Illud proprium est hominis, hoc animālium. Itaque non fugiendum est<sup>1</sup> ad vim et bellum nisi ūtī non licet disputātione. Suscipienda quidem bella sunt ut sine iniūriā in pāce vīvāmus; post autem victōriam conservandī sunt eī quī non crūdēlēs 53 except (one) which in bellō fuerunt, ut maiores nostrī Tusculānos, Volscos, Sabīnos in cīvitātem etiam acceperunt. At Carthaginem omnīno sustulerunt; etiam Corinthum (et hoc vix probō), sed crēdō eōs hoc fēcisse nē locus² ipse ad bellum faciendum hortārī, posset. Nam pāx quae nihil habitūra sit īnsidiārum semper est petenda. Sed eī quī, armīs positīs, ad imperātōrum fidem fugiunt 10 recipiendī sunt. In quō magnopere apud nostros iūstitia culta est. Nūllum bellum est iūstum nisi quod³ aut, rēbus repetītīs, gerātur aut dēnūntiātum ante sit. Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil nisi pāx quaerī videātur.

A 15th century manuscript page from Cicero's treatise De Officiis. Cicero's essays deal with a wide range of subjects, from oratorical training, to Greek philosophy, to practical behavior.

Supply as object "the inhabitants of Corinth."



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> impersonal; translate as we must not resort to

#### Good Citizenship

Adapted from various works of Cicero, primarily the Dē Officiīs.

Nec locus tibi ūllus dulcior esse dēbet patriā.

Omnium societātum<sup>1</sup> nūlla est gravior, nūlla cārior quam ea quae cum rē pūblicā est ūnī cuique<sup>2</sup> nostrum. Cārī sunt parentēs, cārī līberī, propinquī, familiārēs, sed omnēs omnium cāritātēs patria ūna continet, prō quā nēmō 5 bonus dubitet<sup>3</sup> mortem petere. Quō<sup>4</sup> est dētestābilior istōrum immānitās<sup>5</sup> quī lacerāvērunt omnī scelere patriam et in eā dēlendā occupātī et sunt et fuērunt.

Est proprium mūnus<sup>6</sup> magistrātūs intellegere sē gerere personam<sup>7</sup> cīvitātis dēbēreque eius dignitātem sustinēre, servāre lēgēs, iūra dīscrībere,<sup>8</sup> 10 ea<sub>1</sub> fideī suae commissa meminisse. Prīvātum<sup>9</sup> autem oportet aequō et parī iūre cum cīvibus vīvere, atque in rē pūblicā ea velle quae tranquilla et honesta sint: tālem enim solēmus et sentīre bonum cīvem et dīcere.

Sī pecūniam aequam omnibus esse non placet, sī ingenia omnium paria esse non possunt, iūra certē paria dēbent esse eorum quī sunt cīvēs in 15 eādem rē pūblicā.

Mēns et animus et consilium et sententia crvitātis posita est in lēgibus. Ut corpora nostra sine mente, sīc crvitās sine lēge surs partibus ūtī non potest.

Fundāmentum jūstitiae est fidēs.

#### **Quotations from Cicero**

- 1. Aliae nātiōnēs servitūtem patī possunt; populī Rōmānī rēs est propria lībertās.
- Cavēte, patrēs conscriptī, nē spē praesentis pācis perpetuam pācem āmittātis.
- 3. Cēdant arma togae.
- 4. Consuetudinis magna vīs est.
- 5. Ō tempora, ō mōrēs!
- 6. Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur.<sup>1</sup>
- 7. Salūs populī suprēma lēx estō.2

1 associations

(from quisque)

<sup>6</sup> it is the special duty <sup>7</sup> represents

<sup>8</sup> administer justice

<sup>9</sup> a private citizen

<sup>3</sup> would hesitate <sup>4</sup> therefore

<sup>5</sup> ferocity

<sup>2</sup> which each one of us has with

neuter plural, object of meminisse; modified by commissa

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> gather

The toga represents *civil life*, as contrasted with *military*. Motto of the state of Wyoming. *1 let . . . be*. Motto of the state of Missouri.

### Sallust

Sallust (86–34 B.C.) was a politician and officer who held important commands under Caesar during the Civil War. With the fortune he amassed, supposedly from plundering the province of Numidia, he bought a palatial estate in Rome, with magnificent gardens that are still famous. Two of his surviving works are the *Catiline* and the *Jugurtha*, the former dealing with the conspiracy of Catiline, the latter with a war against an African king. Sallust claimed impartiality, but he is bitterly critical of the old Roman aristocracy and the decadence for which he thinks they are responsible.

#### The Good Old Days of Early Rome

Igitur domī mīlitiaeque¹ bonī mōrēs colēbantur; concordia maxima, minima avāritia erat; iūs bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat. Iūrgia,² discordiās, simultātēs³ cum hostibus exercēbant, cīvēs cum cīvibus dē virtūte certābant. In suppliciīs deōrum magnificī, domī parcī, in amīcōs fidēlēs erant. Duābus hīs artibus, audāciā in bellō, 5 ubi pāx ēvēnerat aequitāte, sēque remque pūblicam cūrābant. Quārum rērum ego maxima documenta haec habeō, quod in bellō saepius vindicātum est⁴ in eōs quī contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverant quīque tardius⁵ revocātī proeliō excesserant, quam₁ quī signa relinquere aut pulsī locō cēdere ausī erant; in pāce vērō quod beneficiīs magis quam metū imperium 10 agitābant et, acceptā iniūriā, ignōscere quam persequī mālēbant.

<sup>1</sup> abroad

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> quarrels

<sup>-</sup> quarreis <sup>3</sup> hatreds

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> punishment was inflicted (on)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> too slowly (with excesserant)

take with saepius; supply in eos

## Publilius Syrus

Publilius Syrus was a writer of a type of comedy that was very popular when he wrote, which was in the time of Caesar. One reason why he won so much favor was his use of many proverbial expressions. Although the plays themselves have disappeared, someone made a collection of the proverbs in them, and these have been preserved. Many are as fresh and applicable today as they were two thousand years ago.

- 1. Ab aliīs exspectēs alterī quod! fēcerīs.
  - 2. Aliēna, nobīs, nostra plūs aliīs placent.
  - 3. Aliēnum aes hominī ingenuō² acerba est servitūs.
  - 4. Aut amat aut ödit mulier; nihil est tertium.
  - 5. Avārus ipse miseriae causa est suae.
  - 6. Avārus, nisi cum moritur, nihil rēctē facit.
  - 7. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā.
  - 8. Comes fâcundus³ in viã prō vehiculō est.
  - 9. Cui<sup>4</sup> plūs licet quam pār est plūs vult quam licet.
  - 10. Discordia fit carior concordia.
  - 11. Effugere cupiditātem rēgnum est vincere.
  - 12. Etiam capillus ūnus habet umbram suam.
  - 13. Inopī bis dat quī cito dat.
  - 14. Male imperandō summum imperium āmittitur.
  - 15. Necesse est minima<sup>5</sup> maximōrum esse initia.
  - 16. Paucōrum improbitās est multōrum calamitās.
  - 17. Perīcula timidus etiam quae non sunt videt.
  - 18. Quicquid fit cum virtūte fit cum glōriā.
  - 19. Spīna etiam grāta est ex quā spectātur rosa.
  - 20. Stultī timent fortūnam, sapientēs ferunt.
  - 21. Stultum facit fortūna quem vult perdere.
  - 22. Taciturnitās stultō hominī prō sapientiā est.

Supply id as antecedent.

<sup>4</sup> Supply is as antecedent. <sup>5</sup> *very little things* 

<sup>3</sup> eloquent, interesting

2 free

Aliena and nostra are both used as subjects of placent.

# Livy

#### Cato and the Women

Inter bellörum magnörum cūrās intercessit rēs parva sed quae1 in magnum certāmen excesserit. In mediō Pūnicī bellī lēx lāta erat nē qua mulier plūs quam sēmunciam² aurī habēret nec veste versicolorī ūterētur nec vehiculō in urbe veherētur. Post bellum mulierēs voluērunt hanc lēgem abrogārī. Nec auctōritāte nec imperiō virōrum continērī poterant; omnēs 5 viās urbis obsidēbant; etiam audēbant adīre consules. Sed consul, M. Porcius Catō, haec verba fēcit: "Sī in3 suā quisque uxōre, cīvēs, iūs virī

- 1 (one) which
- <sup>2</sup> half an ounce
- 3 in (the case of); quisque is the

Translate as if indicative: developed into.

The Bettmann Archive

Often when the men were away fighting battles, the women stayed home. They would frequently offer sacrifices to help ensure that their loved ones would return safely.



<sup>4</sup> had begun to hold on to the rights of the husband

<sup>5</sup> we should have

6 only (adverb)
 7 is beneficial (from prōsum)

retinēre īnstituisset. minus negōtī cum omnibus fēminīs habērēmus. Quia singulās nōn continuimus, omnēs timēmus. Maiōrēs nostrī voluērunt 10 fēminās agere nūllam rem, nē prīvātam quidem, sine parentibus vel frātribus vel virīs; nōs, sī deīs placet, iam etiam rem pūblicam capere eās patimur. Hāc rē expugnātā, quid nōn temptābunt? Sī eās aequās virīs esse patiēminī, tolerābilēs vōbīs eās futūrās esse crēditis? Simul ac parēs esse coeperint, superiōrēs erunt. Nūlla lēx satis commoda omnibus est; id 15 modo6 quaeritur, sī maiōrī partī prōsit. Tum ūnus ex tribūnīs contrā lēgem locūtus est, et lēx abrogāta est. Mulierēs vīcerant.

## Horace

Horace (65–8 B.C.) was one of the greatest of Roman poets. He was a friend of Augustus and Vergil. His *Odes*, *Satires*, and *Epistles* are delightful reading. Because his poems are not always easy to read, only quotations are given here. They often tell much in very brief but exquisitely phrased language.

- 1. Aequam mementõ<sub>1</sub> rēbus in arduīs servāre mentem.
- 2. Aurea mediocritās.
- 3. Carpe diem.
- 4. Crēscentem sequitur cūra pecūniam.
- 5. Est modus<sub>2</sub> in rēbus.
- 6. Levius fit patientiā quicquid, corrigere est nefās.
- 7. Magnās inter opēs inops.
- 8. Nīl mortālibus arduī¹ est.
- 9. Nīl sine magnō vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.
- 10. Permitte dīvīs cētera.
- 11. Rāra avis.
- 12. Rīdentem dīcere vērum.
- 13. Vīxēre² fortēs ante Agamemnona.

remember (imperative); aequam modifies mentem.

in the same sense as mediocritas in No. 2

whatever; the clause is the subject of fit.

i nothing hard (with nīl)
2 = vīxērunt

# Sulpicia

Sulpicia is the only known Latin woman poet. She was of aristocratic birth and was the niece of Messalla, a prominent citizen and supporter of the arts. She was welcome in Tibullus' literary circle, and probably wrote around 30 B.C. Her contributions indicate the more prominent role women were beginning to play in fashionable society. Only six of her love-poems, written to Cerinthus, have survived.



Sometimes mothers taught their daughters to read so that they could enjoy poetry and literature as well as letters from family that may be far away. Sulpicia was welcomed into Tibullus' literary circle—perhaps the girl in this wall painting hopes to be a poet also when she grows up.

Here, Sulpicia laments having to spend her birthday away from Rome and Cerinthus.

1 hateful

<sup>2</sup> to be spent

<sup>3</sup> river (with frigidus)

<sup>4</sup> at the right time, convenient (with non)

5 does not allow

Invīsus nātālis adest, quī rūre molestō<sup>1</sup>
et sine Cērinthō trīstis agendus erit.<sup>2</sup>
Dulcius urbe quid est? An vīlla sit apta puellae
atque Arrētīnō frīgidus amnis<sup>3</sup> agrō?
Iam, nimium Messalla meī studiōse, quiēscas:

non tempestīvae<sup>4</sup> saepe, propinque, viae.

Hīc animum sensūsque meos abducta relinquo, arbitrio quam vīs non sinit<sup>5</sup> esse meo.

In this poem, it appears that the trip was, at last, called off.

Scīs iter ex animō sublātum trīste puellae?
nātālī Rōmae iam licet esse meō.
Omnibus ille diēs nōbīs nātālis agatur,
quī nec opīnātā<sup>1</sup> nunc tibi sorte vēnit.

1 unexpected

# Ovid and Roman Elegy

The Greeks used the elegiac meter for drinking and military songs, for historical and political subjects, for inscriptions on tombstones and laments for the dead, and even for love poetry. It was this last category that the three most famous Roman elegists, Tibullus, Propertius, and Ovid, developed into an extremely personal and sensitive form. Each immortalized the sweetheart to whom he addressed his verse, Tibullus' Delia, Propertius' Cynthia, and Ovid's Corinna. The following selection from Ovid exemplifies elegy's traditional role of mourning for the dead. Ovid here laments the loss of Tibullus, who had joined the earlier elegists in the Elysian Fields.

1 i.e., poets

<sup>4</sup> I pray

Sī tamen ē nōbīs¹ aliquid nisi nōmen et umbra restat, in Ēlysiā valle Tibullus erit.

Obvius huic veniās² hederā iuvenālia cīnctus tempora³ cum Calvō, docte Catulle, tuō.

Hīs comes umbra tua est. Sī qua est modo corporis umbra, auxistī numerōs, culte Tibulle, piōs.

Ossa quiēta, precor,<sup>4</sup> tūtā requiēscite in urnā, et sit humus cinerī non onerosa tuō.<sub>1</sub>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> come to meet him; obvius is an adjective

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> your temples crowned with ivv

a variant of the phrase found on hundreds of Roman tombstones: sit tibi terra levis

## Phaedrus

The fable is an ancient form of literature, in which animals generally speak and act like human beings. Usually a moral is attached. The most famous of all fabulists was the Greek writer Aesop, and his stories are still much read in many languages. In Rome during the age of Augustus, Phaedrus put these fables into simple Latin verse. Here are three of them, rewritten in prose.

#### The Wolf and the Lamb

Ad rīvum eundem lupus et agnus vēnerant; superior stābat lupus, longēque īnferior agnus. Tum lupus famē incitātus contrōversiae causam intulit. "Cūr," inquit, "turbulentam fēcistī mihi aquam bibentī?" Agnus timēns respondit: "Quō modō possum hoc facere, lupe? Ā tē dēcurrit aqua ad mē." Repulsus ille vēritātis vīribus: "Ante sex mēnsēs," ait, "male dīx- 5 istī¹ mihi." Respondit agnus: "Equidem nātus nōn eram." "Pater certē tuus," ille inquit, "male dīxit mihi." Atque ita raptum lacerat iniūstā nece.

I swore at (with male)

Haec propter illõs scrīpta est hominēs fābula quī fictīs causīs innocentēs opprimant.

#### The Greedy Dog

Āmittit meritō¹ suum quī aliēnum appetit. Canis dum per flūmen carnem ferret natāns, in aquā vīdit simulācrum suum, aliamque praedam ab aliō cane ferrī putāns ēripere voluit; sed dēceptus avidus, quem tenēbat ōre dīmīsit cibum nec quem petēbat potuit attingere.

1 deservedly



The ancient Romans loved their dogs just as much as we do. Perhaps a particularly big one lived in the house in Pompeii where this mosaic was found.

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

#### Sour Grapes

<sup>1</sup> fox <sup>2</sup> grapes, bunch of grapes <sup>3</sup> make light of Famē coācta vulpes<sup>1</sup> in altā vīneā ūvam<sup>2</sup> petēbat, summīs vīribus saliēns. Quam ubi tangere non potuit, discēdēns, "Nondum mātūra est," inquit; "nolo acerbam sūmere."

Eī quī verbīs ēlevant<sup>3</sup> quae non facere possunt hoc exemplum sibi 5 ascrībere dēbent.

## Valerius Maximus

In the first century A.D. Valerius Maximus compiled a book of well-known stories from history. both Roman and foreign, to illustrate various human qualities and conditions such as courage, superstition, cruelty. The purpose of the book was to provide material for a public speaker who wanted to illustrate his points by means of examples from history, just as today many speakers make use of jokebooks.

#### Damon and Pythias

Cum Dionysius, rēx Syrācūsārum, Pythiam philosophum interficere vellet, hic ā Dionysiō petīvit ut sibi licēret domum proficīscī rērum suārum dispōnendārum causā. Amīcus eius Dāmōn erat. Tanta erat amīcitia inter Dāmōnem et Pythiam ut Dāmōn sē vadem¹ prō reditū alterius rēgī dare s nōn dubitāret. Appropinquante cōnstitūtō diē nec illō redeunte, ūnus quisque stultitiam Dāmōnis damnāvit. At is nihil sē dē amīcī fidē timēre dīcēbat. Hōrā cōnstitūtā Pythiās vēnit. Admīrātus utrīusque animum Dionysius supplicium remīsit et eōs rogāvit ut sē² socium amīcitiae reciperent.

#### A Costly Joke

P. Scīpiō Nāsīca, cum aedīlitātem¹ adulēscēns peteret, mōre candidātōrum manum cuiusdam agricolae rūsticō opere dūrātam prehendit. Iocī causā rogāvit agricolam num manibus solitus esset ambulāre. Quod² dictum ā circumstantibus audītum ad populum allātum est causaque fuit repulsae³ 5 Scīpiōnis. Nam omnēs agricolae paupertātem suam ab eō rīdērī iūdicantēs īram suam contrā eius jocum ostendērunt.

<sup>1</sup> (as) bail
<sup>2</sup> i.e., Dionysius

1 aedileship (a public office)

 $^{2}$  = hoc

3 defeat

## Seneca

Seneca, who wrote many books on philosophy, was the tutor and later the adviser of the emperor Nero (A.D. 54–68), who eventually forced him to commit suicide. His books preach Stoic philosophy.

- 1. Magna rēs est vōcis et silentī tempora nōsse.¹
- 2. Maximum remedium īrae mora est.
- 3. Non est in rebus vitium, sed in ipso animo.
- 4. Non sum ūnī angulo nātus; patria mea totus hic mundus est.
- 5. Omnis ars imitātiō est nātūrae.
- 6. Optimum est patī quod ēmendāre non possīs.
- 7. Ōtium sine litterīs mors est.
- 8. Quī beneficium dedit taceat: närret quī accēpit.
- 9. Sī vīs amārī, amā.
- 10. Ubicumque homō est, ibi beneficī locus est.

Translate as if indicative.

## Petronius

Nothing in Latin literature is quite so zany and ludicrous as the *Satiricon* of Petronius. It is a kind of novel, containing a wild medley of prose and poetry, dealing mostly with the escapades of three lower-class rogues who must live by their wits and who are constantly in trouble with the authorities. Best known of their adventures is the account of a fantastic dinner party at the house of an ex-slave named Trimalchio, who was so illiterate that he thought Hannibal took part in the Trojan War and so enormously wealthy that he bought the whole west coast of Italy so that, when he sailed to Sicily, he would not have to sail past anyone else's coastline! The selection below should give you still more indications of the size of Trimalchio's fortune.

1 = nōvisse



THE GRANGER COLLECTION, New York

Quite a feast was set on this reconstructed triclinium (dining room) table from the House of the Moralist in Pompeii. Notice the couches for reclining while one ate.

Petronius is thought to have lived in the first century A.D. and has been identified as the Petronius who was called the *elegantiae arbiter* of Nero's court because of his exquisite refinement.

In this selection, Trimalchio has his own newspaper read aloud to the guests at his dinner party.

- <sup>1</sup> newsman, secretary <sup>2</sup> doings, news
- 3 the estate at Cumae
- 4 barn
- 5 500,000 pecks of wheat
- 6 tamed, broken in
- 7 vault
- <sup>8</sup> 10,000,000 sesterces (about \$500,000)
- <sup>9</sup> therefore
- <sup>10</sup> estates
- 11 = scīverō

Āctuārius¹ tamquam urbis ācta² recitāvit: "Hōc diē in praediō Cūmānō³ quod est Trimalchiōnis, nātī sunt puerī XXX, puellae XL; sublāta in horreum⁴ trīticī mīlia modium quīngenta;⁵ bovēs domitī⁶ quīngentī. Eōdem diē: in arcam² relātum est quod collocārī nōn potuit sēstertium centiēs.8 5 Eōdem diē: incendium factum est in hortīs Pompeiānīs." "Quid," inquit Trimalchiō, "quandō mihi Pompeiānī hortī ēmptī sunt?" "Annō priōre," inquit āctuārius, "et ideō⁰ in ratiōnem nōndum vēnērunt." Trimalchiō, "Quīcumque," inquit, "mihi fundī¹⁰ ēmptī fuerint, nisi intrā sextum mēnsem scierō,¹¹ in ratiōnēs meās īnferrī vetō."

## Quintilian

Possibly the most famous schoolteacher of all time is Quintilian (ca. A.D. 35-96), who was appointed the first state-paid professor of rhetoric (oratory) by the emperor Vespasian. After a lifetime of teaching and practice at the bar, at the request of his devoted pupils he put his theories of education into twelve books called the *İnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* (Introduction to Public Speaking), which carry the training of the orator from the cradle to the grave, for he believed in beginning education when the child was born and continuing it all one's life. So the nursery school and the kindergarten are not new, nor is adult education. Quintilian's favorite orator was Cicero, although he does not hesitate to criticize even him. The basic principle of his teaching was that a man could not be a great orator, whatever his skill, unless he were first of all a good man.

Ante omnia në sit vitiosus sermo nutrīcibus.1 quas, sī fierī posset, sapientēs Chrysippus, optāvit, certē quantum rēs paterētur, optimās ēligī voluit. Et morum quidem in hīs haud dubie<sup>2</sup> prior ratio est; rēctē tamen etiam loquantur. Hās prīmum audiet puer, hārum verba effingere3 imitandō cōnābitur. Et nātūrā tenācissimī sumus eōrum quae rudibus animīs percēpimus. Et haec 5 7 not even (with nē) ipsa magis pertināciter haerent quō4 dēteriōra sunt. Nam bona facile mūtantur in peius; num quando<sup>5</sup> in bonum vertēris vitia? Non adsuēscat<sup>6</sup> ergō, nē dum īnfāns quidem7 est, sermōnī quī dēdiscendus sit.8

In parentibus vērō quam plūrimum esse ērudītiōnis optāverim, nec dē patribus tantum loquor, nam Gracchōrum ēloquentiae multum contulisse 10 accēpimus Cornēliam mātrem, cuius doctissimus sermō in posterōs quoque est epistulīs trāditus; et Laelia C.10 fīlia reddidisse in loquendo paternam ēlegantiam dīcitur: et Hortēnsiae Q. fīliae ōrātiō legitur. Nec tamen iī quibus discere<sup>11</sup> ipsīs non contigit minorem cūram docendī līberos habeant, sed sint propter hoc ipsum ad cētera magis dīligentēs. 15

<sup>1</sup> nurses

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> undoubtedly (with **haud**)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> form

<sup>4</sup> according as

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> at any time

<sup>6</sup> he should not accustom himself

<sup>8</sup> must be unlearned

<sup>9</sup> I could wish

 $<sup>^{10}</sup>$  G $\bar{a}\bar{\imath}$ 

<sup>11</sup> i.e., to get an education

a Greek philosopher and teacher

## Martial

=

Like Seneca and Quintilian, Martial was born in Spain but moved to Rome. He is the writer who gave the word epigram its present meaning. It is generally a short poem that makes fun of someone. Its clever and often unexpected point is at the end, at times in the last word.

#### An Unfair Exchange

Cūr nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
 Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs.

#### A Friend and His Faults

 Difficilis, facilis, iūcundus, acerbus es īdem. Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

#### "Fifty-Fifty"

Nübere<sup>1</sup> vīs Prīscō: non mīror, Paula; sapīstī.<sup>2</sup>
 Dūcere<sup>1</sup> tē non vult Prīscus: et<sup>3</sup> ille sapit.

#### Rich Wives

 Uxōrem quārē locuplētem<sup>4</sup> dūcere nōlim quaeritis? Uxōrī nūbere<sub>1</sub> nōlo meae. Īnferior mātrōna suō sit, Prīsce, marītō; nōn aliter fīunt fēmina virque parēs.

#### The Plagiarist

5. Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus, sed, male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus.

#### A Good Match

 Cum sītis similēs parēsque vītā, uxor pessima, pessimus marītus, mīror non bene convenīre<sup>5</sup> vobīs.

1 marry

<sup>2</sup> you are wise (= sapīvistī)

3 also

4 rich

<sup>5</sup> that you are not well suited (impersonal)

A man who marries a rich wife becomes the "lady" of the house.

## **Tacitus**

Last of the great Roman historians was Cornelius Tacitus (ca. A.D. 55–120). His two most extensive works are the *Annals* and the *Histories*, which between them originally covered the period of Roman history from the death of Augustus through the reign of Domitian, i.e., from A.D. 14 to A.D. 96. He also wrote monographs on oratory, on Germany, and on the deeds of his father-in-law, Agricola. He was a distinguished orator and public figure, rising to the consulship in 97. His cynical tone, his austerity, and his intense brevity have made him a favorite of students of Latin style, while his bitter senatorial prejudice against the imperial regime has been chiefly responsible for our present impression, largely incorrect, of the corruption and cruelty of Roman emperors. The *Agricola*, from which the following selection is taken, deals largely with Britain, because Tacitus' father-in-law was a successful general there.

Agricola brings Roman culture to Britain.

Iam vērō prīncipum fīliōs līberālibus artibus ērudīre, 1 et ingenia Britannōrum studiīs Gallōrum anteferre, 1 ut quī modo² linguam Rōmānam abnuēbant, 3 ēloquentiam concupīscerent. 4 Inde etiam habitūs 5 nostrī honor et frequēns toga. Paulātimque dēscēnsum ad dēlēnīmenta 6 vitiōrum, porticūs et balineās 7 et convīviōrum 8 ēlegantiam. Idque apud imperītōs hūmānitās 5 vocābātur, cum pars servitūtis esset.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> put ahead of (with dative)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> recently

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> were rejecting <sup>4</sup> were eager for

<sup>5</sup> clothing

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> enticements

<sup>7 =</sup> balnea8 banquets

<sup>1</sup> The infinitives are used instead of a past tense of the indicative.

## Juvenal

Juvenal was a satirist who lived at the beginning of the second century A.D. He was a contemporary of Pliny the Younger. The vices of his times are the themes of his poems.

- 1. Probitās laudātur et alget.
- 2. Pānem et circēnsēs.
- 3. Nēmō malus fēlīx.
- 4. Quis custodiet ipsos custodes?
- 5. Mēns sāna in corpore sānō.

## Aulus Gellius

The two stories that follow are adapted from Aulus Gellius, a writer of the second century A.D., who tells many curious and interesting anecdotes. His *Noctēs Atticae*, or *Attic Nights*, is a sort of literary scrapbook, written during winter evenings in Attica, Greece, to amuse and instruct his children.

#### A Lesson in Voting

Fabricius magnā glōriā vir magnīsque rēbus gestīs fuit. P. Cornēlius Rūfīnus imperātor bonus et fortis et mīlitāris disciplīnae perītus¹ fuit, sed avārus erat. Hunc Fabricius nōn probābat et eī inimīcus ob mōrēs fuit. Sed cum tempore difficillimō reī pūblicae cōnsulēs creandi essent et Rūfīnus peteret cōnsulātum competītōrēsque eius nōn essent bellī perītī, summā ope² Fabricius labōrāvit ut Rūfīnō cōnsulātus dēferrētur. Eam rem quibusdam mīrantibus, "Mālō," inquit, "ā cīve spoliārī quam ab hoste vēnīre."³ M. Cicerō refert hoc esse dictum, nōn aliīs, sed ipsī Rūfīnō, cum hic Fabriciō ob opem⁴ grātiās ageret.

Hunc Rūfīnum, postquam bis consul et dictator fuit, censor Fabricius ob lūxuriam e senātū eiecit.

shivers, i.e., the honest man is usually too poor to buy warm clothing.

<sup>2</sup> bread and circus games, i.e., all that the degenerate Romans of his day are interested in, according to Juvenal.

<sup>1</sup> with the genitive

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> effort

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> to be sold (from vēneō)

<sup>4</sup> help

#### Androclus and the Lion

In Circō Maximō vēnātiō¹ populō dabātur. Multae ibi ferae erant, sed praeter aliās omnēs ūnus leō magnitūdine corporis animōs oculōsque omnium in sē converterat.

wild beasts
<sup>2</sup> probably Tiberius

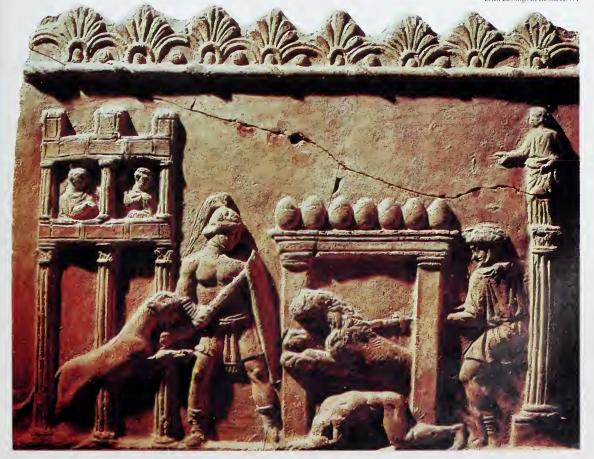
1 hunt, i.e., a fight between men and

Inductus erat servus inter complūrēs aliōs ad pugnam ferārum. Eī servō Androclus nōmen fuit. Hunc ille leō ubi vīdit procul, statim quasi admīrāns 5 stetit ac deinde lēniter, quasi cognōscēns ad hominem accēdit. Tum caudam mōre canis movet hominisque manūs linguā lēniter dēmulcet. Androclus, prīmum territus, nunc leōnem spectat. Tum quasi leōne cognitō, homō gaudēre vīsus est.

Eā rē tam mīrā maximī clāmōrēs populī excitātī sunt. Caesar² Androclum 10 vocāvit et quaesīvit causam cūr illī ūnī ferōcissimus leō pepercisset. Tum Androclus rem mīrandam nārrat.

**Vēnātiō** (the hunt). In addition to the occasional hunts staged in the Colosseum, Roman nobles sometimes went hunting wild boar or deer for food as well as sport.

Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY



cave
4 pus
5 strap

"Cum prōvinciae," inquit, "Āfricae dominus meus imperāret, ego iniūstē verberātus fugere coāctus sum. Specum³ quendam remōtum inve15 niō et eum ingredior. Neque multō post ad eundem specum venit hic leō, vulnerātō ūnō pede. gemitūs ob dolōrem ēdēns. Prīmō quidem cōnspectū leōnis territus sum. Sed postquam leō ingressus mē vīdit, lēniter accessit et pedem ostendere mihi quasi opis petendae grātiā vīsus est. Ibi ego spīnam magnam, pedī eius haerentem, ēripuī et saniem⁴ expressī. Ille tum, pede in 20 manibus meīs positō, quiētem cēpit. Ex eō diē trēs annōs ego et leō in eōdem specū vīximus. Membra ferārum leō mihi ferēbat, quae ego, ignis cōpiam nōn habēns, sōle torrēbam. Sed tandem specum relīquī et ā mīlitibus prehēnsus ad dominum ex Āfricā Rōmam dēductus sum. Is mē statim ad ferās mīsit. Intellegō autem hunc quoque leōnem, posteā captum, 25 grātiam mihi referre."

Haec dīxit Androclus. Omnibus petentibus, dīmissus est et leō eī dōnātus. Posteā Androclus et leō, lōrō⁵ ligātus, circum tabernās ībant. Androclus pecūniam accipiēbat, leō flōrēs. Omnēs dīcēbant: "Hic est leō hospes hominis: hic est homō medicus leōnis."

# Miscellaneous Quotations

- <sup>1</sup> Supply pūblicae.
- $^2$  fall
- 3 even
- <sup>4</sup> Supply itinere.
- 5 of a foreigner
- <sup>6</sup> Supply is taken for, i.e., is regarded as.

- 1. Dīvīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāvit urbēs. (Varro)
- Concordiā parvae rēs¹ crēscunt, discordiā maximae dīlābuntur.² (Sallust)
- 3. Est deus in nōbīs. (Ovid)
- 4. Fãs est et<sup>3</sup> ab hoste docērī. (Ovid)
- 5. Mediō<sup>4</sup> tūtissimus ībis. (Ovid)
- 6. Externus<sup>5</sup> timor maximum concordiae vinculum. (Livy)
- 7. În civitate liberă linguam mentemque liberas esse (dicebat). (Tiberius)
- 8. Damnant quod non intellegunt. (Quintilian)
- 9. Omne ignōtum prō magnificō.6 (Tacitus)
- 10. Ipsa quidem virtūs pretium sibi. (Claudian)
- 11. Omnia mors aequat. (Claudian)
- 12. Facis de necessitate virtutem. (St. Jerome)

- 13. Magna est vēritās et praevalet. (the Vulgate)
- 14. Qui desiderat pacem praeparet bellum. (author unknown)
- 15. Cogitationis poenam nemo patitur. (Corpus luris Civilis)
- 16. Iūris praecepta sunt haec: honestē vīvere, alterum non laedere, suum cuique tribuere. (*Corpus luris Civilis*)
- Glōriōsa est scientia litterārum, quia, quod prīmum est, in homine mōrēs pūrgat; quod secundum, verbōrum grātiam subministrat. (Cassiodorus)
- 18. Necessitās non habet lēgem. (author unknown)
- 19. Dē duōbus malīs, minus est semper ēligendum. (Thomas à Kempis)
- 20. Ō quam cito trānsit glōria mundī! (Thomas à Kempis)
- 21. Ipsa scientia potestās est. (Francis Bacon)
- 22. Ego cōgitō, ergō sum. (René Descartes)
- 23. Ēripuit<sub>1</sub> caelō fulmen,<sup>7</sup> mox scēptra tyrannīs. (author unknown)
- 24. Crocodīlī lacrimae. (proverb)
- 25. Vestis virum facit. (proverb)
- 26. Festīnā lentē.8 (proverb)
- 27. Nölī dīcere<sup>9</sup> omnia quae scīs: nölī crēdere omnia quae audīs: nölī scrībere omnia quae facis: nölī facere omnia quae potes. (author unknown)

# Augustine

#### **Teaching School**

Here Augustine tells us why he preferred to teach in a boys' school in Rome rather than in Carthage.

Ēgistī¹ ergō mēcum ut mihi persuādērētur Rōmam pergere² et potius ibi docēre quod docēbam Carthāginī. Nōn ideo³ Rōmam pergere² voluī, quod maiōrēs quaestūs maiorque mihi dignitās ab amīcīs quī hoc suādēbant prōmittēbātur (quamquam et ista dūcēbant animum tunc meum), sed illa erat causa maxima et paene sŏla, quod audiēbam quiētius ibi studēre 5 adulēscentēs et disciplīnā sēdārī. nē in scholam protervē⁴ irrumpent. Contrā apud Carthāginem intemperāns est licentia scholasticōrum: irrumpunt impudenter et perturbant ōrdinem.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup> lightning

<sup>8</sup> Make haste slowly.

<sup>9</sup> Do not tell

<sup>1</sup> The subject is Benjamin Franklin.

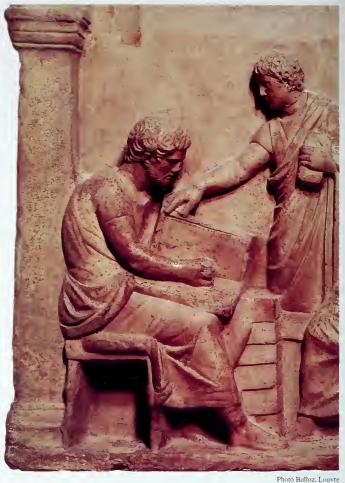
<sup>1</sup> addressed to God

<sup>2</sup> go

on this account (explained by the quod clause)

<sup>4</sup> boldly

Roman boys attended school taught by a magister or grammaticus. Teachers were often strict and students could be beaten if they did not learn their lessons.



# Liutprand



#### A Palace Full of Tricks

Est Constantinopoli domus palatio proxima, mirae magnitudinis et pulchritūdinis. Aerea<sup>1</sup> sed aurō tēcta arbor ante imperātōris solium<sup>2</sup> stābat. cuius rāmōs aereae et aurō tēctae avēs explēbant, quae dīversārum avium vōcēs ēmittēbant. Imperātōris vērō solium huius modī erat arte composi-5 tum ut nunc humile, tum excelsius, posteā excelsissimum vidērētur. Leōnēs (incertum est utrum ex aere an lignō³ factī) aurō tēctī solium custōdiēbant, quī caudā terram percutientēs, apertō ōre, rugītum4 ēmittēbant.

- 1 made of bronze
- <sup>2</sup> throne
- 3 wood
- 4 roar

Ante imperātōris praesentiam sum dēductus. Cum in adventū meō rugītum leōnēs ēmitterent et avēs cantārent, nūllō sum terrōre commōtus, quoniam omnia eī quī bene nōverant mē docuerant. Prōnus imperātōrem 10 adōrāns, caput sustulī, et quem prius moderātā mēnsūrā ā terrā ēlevātum sedēre vīdī, mox aliīs indūtum vestibus ad domūs laquear<sup>5</sup> sedēre prōspexī; quod quō modō fieret cōgitāre nōn potuī, nisi forte sit māchinā hydraulicā sublevātus.

5 ceiling

## Adam of Bremen

#### The Norse Discovery of America

Adam of Bremen (eleventh century) tells of the supposed discovery of America (Vinland or Winland) by Leif Ericson and his Norsemen. Cape Cod is one of the latest suggestions for the site where they landed. The story is full of possible fact and obvious fiction.

Rēx Dāniae¹ īnsulam recitāvit in eō repertam ōceanō² quae dīcitur Wīnland quod ibi vītēs³ sponte nāscantur vīnum optimum ferentēs. Item nōbīs rettulit beātae memoriae pontifex Adalbertus quōsdam nōbilēs virōs in septentriōnēs nāvigāvisse ad ōceanum explōrandum. Relinquentēs Britanniam et glaciālem Īsland⁴ subitō in cālīginem⁵ cecidērunt quae vix 5 oculīs penetrārī posset. Et iam perīculum cālīginis ēvadentēs appulērunt ad quandam īnsulam altissimīs saxīs mūnītam. Hūc videndōrum grātiā locōrum ēgressī, repperērunt hominēs in antrīs⁶ subterrāneīs merīdiē latentēs; prō quōrum iānuis īnfīnīta iacēbat cōpia vāsōrum aureōrum. Itaque sūmptā parte quam sublevāre poterant, laetī ad nāvēs rēmigant, cum subitō venientēs 10 vīdērunt hominēs mīrae altitūdinis. Ā quibus raptus est ūnus dē sociīs; reliquī vērē ēvāsērunt perīculum.

<sup>1</sup> Denmark

<sup>2</sup> i.e., the Atlantic

 $^3\ grape vines$ 

4 icy Iceland

5 fog 6 caves

# Hildegard von Bingen

Hildegard von Bingen (1098-1179) was a poet, mystic, composer, scholar, and herbalist. She was also the abbess of a Benedictine convent in Germany. She wrote at least two treatises, numerous songs, and at least one play embracing good virtues and showing the constant battle between good and evil. The following are excerpts from her play, *The Virtues*.

PATRIĀRCHE ET PROPHETE: Nos sumus rādicēs1 et vos rāmī,2

fructūs viventis oculī,

et nos umbrā in illā fuimus.3

HUMILITĀS: Ego, Humilitās, rēgina Virtūtum, dīcō:

venīte ad mē, Virtūtēs, et enūtriam4 vos

ad requīrendam<sup>5</sup> perditam dragmam<sup>6</sup> et ad coronandum in persevērantiā fēlicem.

DISCRETIŌ: Ego Discretīō sum lux et dispensatrix<sup>7</sup>

omnium creāturārum'

indifferentia8 Deī, quam Adam ā sē

fugāvit per lasciviam morum.9

MISERICORDIA: Ö quam amara<sup>10</sup> est illa duricia<sup>11</sup>

quae non cedit in mentibus misericorditer<sup>12</sup> dolorī succurrens!<sup>13</sup>

Ego autem omnibus dolentibus

manum porrigere<sup>14</sup> volō.

1 roots

<sup>2</sup> branches

3 we grew up

4 give

5 seek

6 drachma

7 moderator

<sup>8</sup> impartiality

<sup>9</sup> wanton behavior

10 bitter

11 harshness

12 mercifully

13 ease

14 to reach out

426

10



An illumination of the self-portrait of Hildegard von Bingen (1098-1179). Here, she receives the divine light from heaven.

# From the *Carmina Burana*

The following three pieces are from the *Carmina Burana*, songs of poor wandering students, or goliards. They date from the twelfth and thirteenth centuries.

#### This Crazy World

Iste mundus furibundus falsa praestat gaudia, quae dēfluunt et dēcurrunt ceu¹ campī līlia. Rēs mundāna, vīta vāna vēra tollit praemia: nam impellit et submergit animās in Tartara.

#### **Spring Song**

Ecce grātum et optātum vēr¹ redūcit gaudia. Purpurātum flōret prātum.² sõl serēnat omnia. Iam iam cēdant trīstia. Aestās redit, nunc recēdit hiemis saevitia.

#### In the Tavern

- In tabernā quandō sumus.
   non cūrāmus quid sit humus.
   sed ad lūdum¹ properāmus.
   cui semper īnsūdāmus.²
   Quid agātur in tabernā.
   ubi nummus est pincerna.³
   hoc est opus⁴ ut quaerātur.
   sīc quid loquar audiātur.
- Quīdam lūdunt. quīdam bibunt, quīdam indiscrētē vīvunt.
   Sed in lūdō quī morantur ex hīs quīdam dēnūdantur; quīdam ibi vestiuntur, quīdam saccīs<sub>1</sub> induuntur.
   Ibi nūllus timet mortem, sed prō Bacchō<sup>5</sup> mittunt sortem.<sup>6</sup>

1 spring

1 like

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> meadow

<sup>1</sup> game, i.e., of dice

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> perspire, work hard

<sup>3</sup> waiter, i.e., money brings service

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> there is need that

<sup>5</sup> wine

<sup>6</sup> cast lots, i.e., in throwing dice

sacks (put on by those who lose their shirts in gambling, contrasted with the winners of the preceding line)

# Iacopone of Todi

A hymn about the Virgin Mary who is mourning Jesus.

#### Stābat Māter

- 1. Stābat māter dolōrōsa iūxtā crucem lacrimōsa dum pendēbat fīlius; cuius animam gementem, contrīstantem et dolentem pertrānsīvit gladius.
- 3. Quis est homō quī non flēret, mātrem Christī sī vidēret in tanto supplicio? Quis non posset contrīstārī piam mātrem contemplārī dolentem cum fīlio?
- 5. Pia māter, fons amoris, mē sentīre vim doloris fac ut tēcum lūgeam, fac ut ārdeat cor meum in amando Christum Deum, ut sibi complaceam.
- 10. Fac mē cruce custōdīrī, morte Christī praemūnīrī, cōnfovērī grātiā; quandō corpus moriētur, fac ut animae donētur Paradīsī glōria.

# Thomas of Celano

Another famous hymn, this one about the Judgment Day.

#### Diēs Īrae

- Diēs īrae, diēs illa solvet saeclum in favillā,<sup>1</sup> teste Dāvīd cum Sibyllā.<sup>2</sup>
- Quantus tremor est futūrus quandō iūdex est ventūrus, cūncta strictē<sup>3</sup> discussūrus!
- Tuba mīrum spargēns sonum per sepulchra regionum coget omnēs ante thronum.
- Mors stupēbit et nātūra cum resurget creātūra<sup>4</sup> iūdicantī responsūra.

1 ashes

<sup>2</sup> i.e., in both Biblical and Roman prophecy

<sup>3</sup> completely

<sup>4</sup> (every) creature

- Liber scrīptus prōferētur, in quō tōtum continētur unde mundus iūdicētur.
- 11. Iūstae iūdex ultionis,<sup>5</sup> donum fac remissionis ante diem rationis.
- 18. Lacrimõsa diēs illa, quā resurget ex favillā
- 19. iūdicandus homō reus, huic ergō parce, Deus.
- 20. Pie Iēsū Domine, dōnā eīs requiem.

The theme of the crucifixion and the Judgment Day, shown in this painting and the poem by Thomas of Celano, are typical of many

that inspired medieval writers,

<sup>5</sup> vengeance



Arena Chapel, Cappella Degli Scrovegni, Padua/M. Magliani/SuperStock, Inc.

# From Gesta Romanorum

The *Gesta Romanorum* is a collection of curious stories, some gathered from ancient sources. The collection was probably made about the fourteenth century in England. Most of these stories have fanciful "morals" attached to them. Shakespeare and other modern writers made use of this collection. This story is also told by Cicero.

#### The "Hanging Tree"

Homō quīdam flēns dīxit omnibus vīcīnīs suīs: "Heu, heu!¹ Habeō in horto² meō arborem īnfēlīcem, in quā uxor mea prīma sē suspendit, posteā secunda, nunc tertia, et dolōre afficior." Ūnus ex vīcīnīs, "Mīror," inquit, "tē in tantīs successibus lacrimās ēmīsisse. Dā mihi, rogō tē, trēs surculōs³ illīus arboris, quod volō hōs inter vīcīnōs dīvidere ut habeāmus arborēs ad 5 uxōrēs nostrās suspendendās."

<sup>1</sup> alas! <sup>2</sup> garden <sup>3</sup> sprouts

## Petrarch

Petrarch (1304–1374) has been called the first modern man. He was largely responsible for initiating the movement known as the *Renaissance*. He had an intense interest in the ancient classics, especially in Cicero. This letter tells of his attempts to secure Cicero's works. If it had not been for the activity of Petrarch and some of his followers, many ancient works would have been lost forever.

Ab ipsā pueritiā, ubi cēterī Aesopo sē dant, ego libros Ciceronis lēgī. Et illā quidem aetāte nihil intellegere poteram, sola dulcia quaedam verba mē dētinēbant.

Posteā variās amīcitiās contrāxī, quod concursus ex omnī regione factus 5 est in loco in quo eram. Amīcīs abeuntibus et petentibus quid vellem ē patriā suā mittī, respondēbam nihil praeter libros Ciceronis. Et saepe litterās, saepe pecūniam mīsī, non per Italiam modo, ubi eram notior, sed per Galliam atque Germāniam et usque ad Hispāniam atque Britanniam. Etiam in Graeciam mīsī, et ē loco ē quo Ciceronem exspectābam habuī Homērum. 10 "Labor omnia vincit," inquit Vergilius. Multo studio multāque cūrā multos libros collēgī. Solus Cicero mihi¹ sapiēns erat. Dē quo Quīntiliānus dīxit: "Bene dē sē spēret² cui Cicero placēbit."

Posteā, cum Leodium³ pervēnissem, invēnī duās ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis; ūnam meā manū scrīpsī, alteram amīcus scrīpsit. Et, ut rīdeās, in tam bonā 15 urbe aliquid ātrāmentī⁴ (et id crocō⁵ simillimum) reperīre difficillimum erat.

Et dē librīs quidem *Reī Pūblicae* iam dēspērāns, librum *Dē Cōnsōlātiōne* quaesīvī, nec invēnī. Magnum librum epistulārum manū propriā scrīpsī, adversā tum valētūdine; sed valētūdinem magnus amor operis et gaudium et habendī cupiditās vincēbant. Hunc librum, ut mihi semper ad manum 20 esset, ad iānuam pōnere solēbam.



1 in my eyes

Petrarch (1304-1374) was an Italian Renaissance poet, scholar, and humanist. Born in Arezzo, he moved to Avignon, France, when he was 8 and grew up there. After studies at the University in Montpellier, he entered the Church and did much writing, especially love poems to a woman he called Laura. In 1341, he was named poet laureate in Rome.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> *let him hope*; the subject is the antecedent of **cui**.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Liège

<sup>4</sup> ink

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> saffron, yellow

# Poggio

From the Facetiae (joke book) of Poggio, a secretary of the Pope (fifteenth century). When he and his colleagues had nothing to do they got together and told stories in what he called a "Lie Factory."

#### The Shrewd Priest

Erat quīdam sacerdos rūsticus admodum dīves. Hic canem sibi cārum, cum mortuus esset. sepelīvit in coemētēriō. Sēnsit hoc episcopus et in eius pecuniam animum intendens,1 sacerdotem puniendum ad se vocat. Sacerdos, qui animum episcopi satis noverat, quinquaginta aureos<sup>2</sup> secum dēferēns ad episcopum dēvēnit. Quī sepultūram canis graviter accūsāns 54 if you knew...you would not iussit ad carcerēs3 sacerdōtem dūcī. Hic vir callidus: "Ō pater," inquit, "sī nosceres qua prudentia canis fuit, non mirareris4 si sepulturam inter hominēs meruit. Fuit enim plūs quam hūmānus, et in vītā et maximē in morte." "Quidnam hoc est?" ait episcopus. "Testāmentum," inquit sacerdōs, "in fine vitae condens sciensque paupertatem tuam tibi quinquaginta 10 aureos ex testamento reliquit, quos mecum tuli." Tum episcopus et testamentum et sepultūram probāns, acceptā pecūniā, sacerdōtem solvit.

casting his thoughts towards

<sup>2</sup> gold pieces

3 prison

wonder

## Pietro Bembo



Pietro Bembo, an Italian man of letters (1470–1547), wrote this letter to his young son.

#### An Alarm Clock

Hōrologiō¹ ē meā bibliothēcā tibi allātō, ā quō expergēfierī,² quā hōrā volēs, possīs, tē libenter ūtī non molestē<sup>3</sup> fero. Modo tē id non intemperātē<sup>4</sup> ā somnō āvocet. Valētūdinis enim tuae cūram tē habēre in prīmīs volō. Dē tuōrum studiōrum ratiōne nihil tibi mandō nunc quidem nisi ūnum: fac ut in tuīs quās ad mē dās litterīs Ciceronem accūrātius exprimās moremque 5 illīus scrībendī, verba, numerōs,5 gravitātem, dīligentius imitēre. Hoc sī fēceris, omnia tē consecutum putābo. Magistro tuo multam salutem. Valē. MDXLIIII. Romā.

- 1 clock
- <sup>2</sup> be awakened
- <sup>3</sup> I don't mind (with ferō)
- 4 too early
- 5 rhythm





### Unit X

# Ovid and Vergil

In Greek mythology, Medusa was a Gorgon and the daughter of the sea god Phorcys. She had been beautiful in her youth, but when she bragged of her beauty, the goddess Athena became so jealous that she transformed Medusa into an ugly woman with protruding eyes and snakes for hair. Medusa was so ugly that anyone who looked at her was immediately turned into stone. She was eventually killed by Persens.

# Reading Latin Verse

The word order of Latin poetry is freer than that of prose. Adjectives often are widely separated from their nouns. Words are often taken out of subordinate clauses and precede the introductory words (quī, ut, etc.). Subjects often come at or near the end of sentences.

The rhythm of Latin verse does not depend on a words accent as in English, but rather on the length of syllables. The rules for determining the length of syllables are:

1. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

auferrō īnsulae

2. A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or the consonant x = cs.

amant nox

A mute consonant (**p**, **b**, **t**. **d**, **c**, **g**) followed by a liquid consonant (**l**, **r**) does not make a syllable long. There are occasional exceptions.

ŭt legam ăd regiònem

The letter h is disregarded entirely. The combinations qu and gu (before a vowel) constitute one consonant; the u is disregarded.

In poetry, a long syllable is twice the length of a short syllable. Since a line of poetry is considered one long word, in a case like in  $m\bar{e}$  the first word is treated as a long syllable because the (short) vowel is followed by two consonants (n, m).

Several syllables are combined to form a foot. The *dactyl* is a foot consisting of a long syllable followed by two short syllables, written — ... The *spondee* consists of two long syllables, — —. When a line contains six feet, it is called a hexameter. The *Metamorphoses* and *Aeneid*, from

<sup>1</sup> Do not confuse this marking of syllables with the identical signs used in marking vowels.

which you will read excerpts, are written in the dactylic hexameter. A spondee may be substituted for a dactyl in every foot except the fifth. The sixth foot is always a spondee.<sub>2</sub> The beat is on the first syllable of each foot.

If a word ends in a vowel or a vowel plus **m** and the next word begins with a vowel (or **h**), the first vowel disappears entirely. This is called "elision": the vowel is said to be "elided."

mar(e) et iacer(e) (h)ōs cūnctant(em) et pronounced maret pronounced iacerōs pronounced cūnctantet

Before forms of **sum**, we usually find *prodelision*—that is, the following vowel disappears.

mōta (e)st

pronounced motast

<sup>2</sup> The last syllable is often short, but the "rest" at the end of the line fills out the foot.



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

Orpheus and Eurydice, in a painting by French artist Nicolas Poussin (1594-1665).

# Ovid's Metamorphōsēs

Ovid (Publius Ovidius Naso) was born in 43 B.C. Trained for the law and public life, he abandoned his career to devote himself to his great passion, the writing of poetry. In A.D. 8 he incurred the displeasure of the Emperor Augustus and was banished to a little town, Tomi (present-day Constanza, Romania), on the Black Sea. Here he died in A.D. 17.

Ovid was a very facile poet and left us many poems. The greatest of these is the *Metamorphōsēs*. This consists of a series of mythical tales dealing with the transformation of humans, animals, and things into different forms. The tales are loosely joined together with considerable cleverness and reveal Ovid's great ability as a storyteller. They cover so much of Greek and Roman mythology that they are now our chief source of information about it. The work, from which several selections are given below, has always been a favorite and has left a strong influence on literature and art throughout the ages.

# The Flood: Deucalion and Pyrrha

Because of the wickedness of human beings, Jupiter sends a flood to destroy the earth. Only Deucalion and his wife Pyrrha survive, landing from their boat on Mt. Parnassus. The first four lines are "scanned" (marked) to show the meter.



The Metropolitan Museum of Art, The Elisha Whittelsey Collection, The Elisha Whittelsey Fund, 1951. (51.501.98) All rights reserved, The Metropolitan Museum of Art.

unda vehit tigrēs.

Stones thrown by Deucalion and Pyrrha "grow" into people; from a 1589 edition of Ovid.

The Flood at Its Height—a Topsy-Turvy World

Iamque ma r(e) et tel lūs nūl lum dis crīmen ha bēbant. Ōmnia pontus e rant; dee rant quoque lītora pontō. Occupat hic¹ col lem. cum bā sedet alter ad uncā² et dū cit³ rē mōs il līc ubi nūper a rārat,

ille¹ suprā segetēs⁴ aut mersae culmina⁵ villae nāvigat, hic summā piscem dēprēndit in ulmō.⁶ Fīgitur in viridī,² sī fors tulit, ancora prātō aut subiecta terunt⁶ curvae vīnēta carīnae;⁰ et, modo quā¹⁰ gracilēs grāmen carpsēre¹¹ capellae,¹² nunc ibi dēfōrmēs pōnunt sua corpora phōcae.¹³ Mīrantur sub aquā lūcōs¹⁴ urbēsque domōsque Nēreidēs, silvāsque tenent delphīnes¹⁵ et altīs incursant rāmīs agitātaque rōbora¹⁶ pulsant.
Nat¹² lupus inter ovēs,¹⁶ fulvōs¹⁰ vehit unda leōnēs,

1 one man <sup>2</sup> in a curved boat (with cumba) 3 plies 4 crops 295 5 top (poetic plural for singular) <sup>6</sup> on top of an elm (with summā) <sup>7</sup> green meadow (with **pr**ātō) <sup>8</sup> scrape <sup>9</sup> keels, i.e., ships (subject)  $10 = qu\bar{a} \mod o$ 11 = carpsērunt 300 <sup>12</sup> goats 13 seals 14 groves 15 = **delphīnī** (Greek form) 16 oaks 17 swims 18 sheep

<sup>19</sup> tawny

When the waters recede, Deucalion seeks dry land. He laments the fact that Pyrrha and he are the only two people left in the world: Nōs duo turba sumus, *We two are a crowd*, he says, for two are a crowd in a world which consists of only two persons. He finds the temple of Themis, goddess of prophecy, and prays for aid and advice.

#### Deucalion Interprets a Strange Oracle

<sup>20</sup> girt up	
<sup>21</sup> Modifies <b>ossa</b> .	
<sup>22</sup> they were astounded	
<sup>23</sup> Supply <b>ut</b> : <i>asks that (Themis)</i>	
grant her pardon.	205
<sup>24</sup> to offend her mother's ghost by	385
throwing her bones	
<sup>25</sup> son of Promētheus, i.e., Deucalion	1,07
<sup>26</sup> acc. s.: daughter of Epimētheus,	367
i.e., Pyrrha	390
<sup>27</sup> calms	
<sup>28</sup> skill	
<sup>29</sup> for <b>mihi</b> ; = <b>mea</b> .	
<sup>30</sup> I think that the bones are meant	
to be	

Mōta dea est sortemque dedit: "Discēdite templō et vēlāte caput cīnctāsque<sup>20</sup> revolvite vestēs ossaque post tergum magnae iactāte parentis." <sup>21</sup> Obstupuēre<sup>22</sup> diū, rumpitque silentia vōce Pyrrha prior iussīsque deae parēre recūsat, detque<sup>23</sup> sibī veniam pavidō rogat ōre pavetque laedere iactātīs māternās ossibus umbrās. <sup>24</sup> Inde Promēthīdēs<sup>25</sup> placidīs Epimēthida<sup>26</sup> dictīs mulcet<sup>27</sup> et "aut fallāx," ait, "est sollertia<sup>28</sup> nōbīs<sup>29</sup> aut pia sunt nūllumque nefās ōrācula suādent. Magna parēns terra est, lapidēs in corpore terrae ossa reor<sup>30</sup> dīcī: iacere hōs post terga iubēmur."

#### The Stones Come to Life

Coniugis auguriō<sup>31</sup> quamquam Tītānia<sup>32</sup> mōta est, spēs tamen in dubiō est; adeō caelestibus ambō diffīdunt monitīs.<sup>33</sup> Sed quid temptāre nocēbit? Discēdunt vēlantque caput tunicāsque recingunt et iussōs lapidēs sua post vēstīgia mittunt. Saxa (quis hoc crēdat,<sup>34</sup> nisi sit prō teste vetustās?)<sup>35</sup> pōnere<sup>36</sup> dūritiem coepēre<sup>37</sup> suumque rigōrem mollīrīque morā<sup>38</sup> mollītaque dūcere<sup>39</sup> fōrmam. Inque brevī spatiō superōrum nūmine saxa missa virī manibus faciem trāxēre virōrum, et dē fēmineō reparāta est fēmina iactū. Inde genus dūrum sumus experiēnsque<sup>40</sup> labōrum et documenta damus quā sīmus orīgine nātī. (Met. I. 291–415)

<sup>31</sup> interpretation	395
32 the Titan's daughter, i.e., Pyrrha	
<sup>33</sup> advice	
<sup>34</sup> would believe	
<sup>35</sup> if antiquity were not a witness	
<sup>36</sup> = dēpōnere	
<sup>37</sup> = coepērunt	
<sup>38</sup> gradually	400
<sup>39</sup> take on	400
<sup>40</sup> used to (with genitive)	
	402
	.02

### Echo and Narcissus

Juno punishes the nymph Echo for her talkativeness by curtailing her power of speech. Thereafter Echo can merely echo what others say. She falls in love with the handsome but cold youth Narcissus.

#### Echo Falls in Love with Narcissus

Corpus adhūc Ēchō, nōn vōx erat et tamen ūsum garrula non alium quam nunc habet oris! habebat, reddere dē multīs ut verba novissima<sup>2</sup> posset. Ergō ubi Narcissum per dēvia rūra<sup>3</sup> vagantem vīdit et incaluit,4 sequitur vēstīgia fūrtim. quōque magis<sup>5</sup> sequitur, flammā propiōre calēscit. Ō quotiens voluit blandīs accedere dictīs et mollēs adhibēre precēs! Nātūra repugnat nec sinit<sup>6</sup> incipiat; sed, quod<sup>7</sup> sinit, illa parāta est exspectāre sonos ad quos sua verba remittat.

#### Narcissus Calls to His Companions and Echo Answers

Forte puer comitum seductus ab agmine fido dīxerat "ecquis8 adest?" et "adest" responderat Ēchō. Hic stupet, utque aciem<sup>9</sup> partēs dīmittit in omnēs, voce "venī!" magnā clāmat; vocat illa vocantem. Respicit et rūrsus, nūllō veniente, "quid," inquit, "mē fugis?" et totidem quot dīxit verba recēpit. Perstat et alternae<sup>10</sup> dēceptus imāgine vōcis "hūc coeāmus," ait, nūllīque<sup>11</sup> libentius umquam responsūra sono "coeāmus" rettulit Ēchō, et verbīs favet, ipsa suīs ēgressaque silvā ībat ut iniceret spērātō bracchia collō. Ille fugit fugiënsque "manūs complexibus<sup>12</sup> aufer. Ante," ait, "ēmoriar13 quam14 sit tibi copia nostrī."15 Rettulit illa nihil nisi "sit tibi copia nostrī."

360 1 no other use of speech (with űsum alium)

361 2 (only) the last of many

370 <sup>3</sup> trackless countryside

<sup>4</sup> fell in love

<sup>5</sup> the more... the hotter (literally,

372 the nearer) the flame (with which)

375 she is inflamed permits; supply ut with incipiat <sup>7</sup> a thing which

380

<sup>8</sup> is there anyone?

9 glance

10 answering

11 Modifies sonō.

385 <sup>12</sup> from embraces <sup>13</sup> may I die

14 before (with ante)

 $^{15}$  = mei: a chance at me

i.e., she suits the action to the words



Mythological scenes were a favorite of Nicolas Poussin (1594-1665). Here he has painted his interpretation of Echo and Narcissus. The poet Milton called Echo a "nymph that liv'st unseen."

Echo Wastes Away to a Mere Voice

<sup>16</sup> spurned

17 ashamed

<sup>18</sup> Supply tempore.

19 refusal

<sup>20</sup> skin

<sup>21</sup> air (accusative singular)

<sup>22</sup> life, strength

23 they say

24 by all

Sprēta<sup>16</sup> latet silvīs pudibundaque<sup>17</sup> frondibus ōra prōtegit et sōlīs ex illō<sup>18</sup> vīvit in antrīs.

Sed tamen haeret amor crēscitque dolōre repulsae,<sup>19</sup> et tenuant vigilēs corpus miserābile cūrae, addūcitque cutem<sup>20</sup> maciēs et in āera<sup>21</sup> sūcus<sup>22</sup> corporis omnis abit. Vōx tantum atque ossa supersunt—vōx manet; ossa ferunt<sup>23</sup> lapidis trāxisse figūram. Inde latet silvīs nūllōque in monte vidētur, omnibus<sup>24</sup> audītur; sonus est quī vīvit in illā. (Met. III. 359–401)

400

## Perseus and Atlas

Medusa was a maiden with snaky locks — one look at her turned a person into stone. Perseus, son of Jupiter, is commissioned to bring back her head. With the help of the gods he does this without injury to himself. On his way back he stops at the home of the giant Atlas, in northwest Africa. Atlas is the owner of the famous golden apples. When Atlas refuses hospitality to Perseus, the latter turns Atlas into a mountain of stone by means of Medusa's head.

#### Themis Predicts the Loss of the Golden Apples

Mīlle gregēs<sup>1</sup> illī<sup>2</sup> totidemque armenta<sup>3</sup> per herbās errābant, et humum vīcīnia4 nūlla premēbant. Arboreae frondes auro radiante nitentes<sup>5</sup> ex aurō rāmōs, ex aurō pōma6 tegēbant. "Hospes," ait Perseus illī, "seu glōria tangit tē generis<sup>7</sup> magnī, generis mihi Iuppiter auctor; sīve es mīrātor rērum,8 mīrābere nostrās. Hospitium requiemque petō." Memor ille vetustae sortis erat (Themis hanc dederat Parnassia<sup>10</sup> sortem): "Tempus, Atlās, veniet tua quō spoliābitur aurō arbor, et hunc praedae titulum<sup>11</sup> Iove nātus<sup>12</sup> habēbit." Id metuēns solidīs pomāria clauserat Atlās montibus et vāstō dederat servanda dracōnī arcēbatque<sup>13</sup> suīs externos fīnibus omnēs. Huic14 quoque "vade procul, nē longē glōria rērum quam mentīris,"15 ait, "longē tibi Iuppiter absit."16 Vimque minīs<sup>17</sup> addit manibusque expellere temptat cūnctantem et placidīs miscentem fortia dictīs. Vīribus īnferior (quis enim pār esset<sup>18</sup> Atlantis vīribus?) "at quoniam parvī<sup>19</sup> tibi grātia nostra est, accipe mūnus," ait, laevāque ā parte<sup>20</sup> Medūsae, ipse retrõ versus,21 squālentia prōtulit ōra. Quantus<sup>22</sup> erat, mons factus Atlas; nam barba comaeque<sup>23</sup> in silvās abeunt, iuga sunt umerīque<sup>24</sup> manūsque, quod caput ante fuit summo est in monte cacumen. Ossa lapis fīunt; tum partēs altus in omnēs crēvit in immēnsum<sup>25</sup> (sīc, dī, <sup>26</sup> statuistis), et omne cum tot sīderibus caelum requiēvit in illō. (Met. IV. 636-662)

635

1 flocks

<sup>2</sup> i.e., Atlas

3 herds

<sup>4</sup> no neighbors hemmed in his land, i.e., he had vast tracts of land

<sup>5</sup> gleaming (modifies frondes)

640 6 apples of gold (ex aurō modifies pōma)

<sup>7</sup> i.e., of Perseus

<sup>8</sup> deeds, referring to his defeat of Medusa

9 i.e., Atlas

10 with Themis

645 11 the glory for this loot

12 a son of Jupiter

13 shut out (with ablative)

14 i.e., Perseus

15 which you falsely claim

16 be far from you, i.e., be of no help to you

650 17 threats

18 could be

<sup>19</sup> of little value

<sup>20</sup> on his left side

<sup>21</sup> i.e., turning his face away, so as not to look at Medusa's head

<sup>22</sup> as huge as he had been (in life)

655 <sup>23</sup> beard and hair 24 his shoulders become (sunt)

<sup>25</sup> to an immense size

 $^{26} = de\bar{i}$ 

## Orpheus and Eurydice

Orpheus was such a fine musician that he could make even the trees and stones listen to and follow him. When his wife Eurydice (Urid'i-sē) died, he followed her to Hades and by his wonderful singing persuaded the king of Hades to let her go back to the land of the living. But there was one condition, that Orpheus should not look back until he had come out of Hades. At the last moment Orpheus looked back to see whether Eurydice was following, and she disappeared forever.

1 over the human race	35
<sup>2</sup> Eurydice	
<sup>3</sup> boon (of longer life)	
<sup>4</sup> Supply the subject from mihī:	
I have resolved that I.	
<sup>5</sup> death	
<sup>6</sup> strings (of the lyre).	
<sup>7</sup> condition (the <b>nē</b> clause is in	40
apposition with legem)	
<sup>8</sup> Thracian	41
<sup>9</sup> until	50
10 adjective modifying valles: of	
Avernus, the entrance of Hades	
<sup>11</sup> void	
12 ascending path (to the upper	
world) (with acclivis)	
13 mint	

<sup>14</sup> The subject is Eurydice.

15 breezes

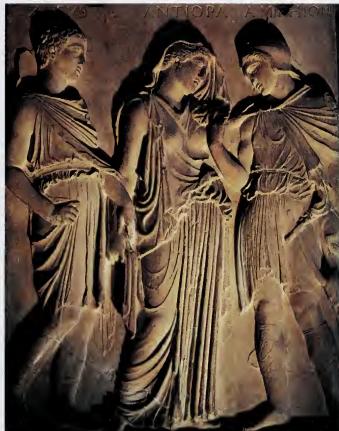
"Omnia dēbēmus vōbīs, <sub>1</sub> paulumque morātī
sērius aut citius sēdem properāmus ad ūnam.
Tendimus hūc omnēs, haec est domus ultima, võsque
hūmānī generis¹ longissima rēgna tenētis.
Haec² quoque, cum iūstõs mātūra perēgerit annōs,
iūris erit vestrī; prō mūnere poscimus ūsum.2
Quod sī fāta negant veniam³ prō coniuge, certum est
nōlle <sup>4</sup> redīre mihī; lētō <sup>5</sup> gaudēte duōrum."
Tālia dīcentem3 nervōsque6 ad verba moventem
exsanguēs flēbant animae.4
Hanc simul et lēgem <sup>7</sup> Rhodopēius <sup>8</sup> accipit Orpheus,
nē flectat retrō sua lūmina, dōnec9 Avernās10
exierit vallēs; aut irrita <sup>11</sup> dōna futūra.
Carpitur acclīvis per mūta silentia trāmes, 12
arduus, obscūrus, cālīgine <sup>13</sup> dēnsus opācā.
Nec procul āfuerunt tellūris margine summae.
Hic nē dēficeret14 metuēns avidusque videndī,
flexit amāns oculōs; et prōtinus illa relāpsa est.
bracchiaque intendēns prēndīque et prēndere captāns
nīl nisi cēdentēs īnfēlīx arripit aurās. <sup>15</sup>
(Met. X, 32–59)

Orpheus is speaking to Pluto and Proserpina, king and queen of Hades.

<sup>2</sup> i.e., not for a permanent gift but as a temporary loan

Modifies eum understood, object of flebant.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> Pluto and Proserpina are so moved that they allow Eurydice to return.



This marble relief from the Louvre shows Orpheus and Eurydice with the messenger god, Hermes.

d taring/Art D.

## Pygmalion

The sculptor Pygmalion of Cyprus carved an ivory statue of a woman so beautiful that he fell in love with it. Venus gave it life, and Pygmalion married the girl.

Intereā niveum mīrā fēlīciter arte sculpsit ebur¹ fōrmamque dedit quā² fēmina nāscī nūlla potest; operisque suī concēpit amōrem. Virginis est vērae faciēs, quam vīvere crēdās³ et, sī nōn obstet reverentia, velle movērī; ars adeō latet arte suā. Mīrātur et haurit pectore Pygmaliōn simulātī corporis ignēs.⁴

1 ivory

<sup>2</sup> in which

<sup>3</sup> you could believe

250 <sup>4</sup> the fires (of love)

		1 1
<sup>5</sup> he admits <sup>6</sup> kisses	255	corpus an illud ebur; nec adhūc ebur esse fatētur. <sup>5</sup>
<sup>7</sup> sink in, dent <sup>8</sup> bruise <sup>9</sup> now <sup>10</sup> shells and smooth pebbles		Öscula <sup>6</sup> dat reddīque putat; loquiturque tenetque et crēdit tactīs digitōs īnsīdere <sup>7</sup> membrīs;
		et metuit, pressõs veniat nē līvor <sup>8</sup> in artūs.
11 colored		Et modo <sup>9</sup> blanditiās adhibet, modo <sup>9</sup> grāta puellīs
12 tears of the Heliades, fallen from	260	mūnera fert illī, conchās teretēsque lapillōs. 10
13 necklaces 14 in Cyprus (feminine)		et parvās volucrēs et florēs mīlle colorum,
15 incense		līliaque pictāsque <sup>11</sup> pilās et ab arbore lāpsās
16 having performed (with ablative) 17 = deī		Hēliadum lacrimās.12 Ōrnat quoque vestibus artūs.
18 of ivory		Dat digitīs gemmās, dat longa monīlia <sup>13</sup> collō.
19 i.e., home from the altar	270	Fēsta diēs Veneris tōtā celeberrima Cyprō <sup>14</sup> vēnera
thumb (he felt her pulse)	273	tūraque <sup>15</sup> fūmābant, cum mūnere fūnctus <sup>16</sup> ad ārās
		constitit et timide "sī, dī,17 dare cuncta potestis,
		sit coniūnx, optō," nōn ausus, "eburnea <sup>18</sup> virgō,"
		dīcere Pygmaliōn, "similis mea," dīxit, "eburnae."
	280	Ut rediit, 19 simulācra suae petit ille puellae,
		incumbēnsque torō <sup>20</sup> dedit ōscula. Vīsa tepēre est.
	289	Corpus erat; saliunt temptātae pollice <sup>21</sup> vēnae,
	292	dataque ōscula virgō

sēnsit et ērubuit. (Met. X. 247–293)

# Vergil's Aeneid

Saene manūs operī temptantēs admovet an sit

Vergil (Publius Vergilius Maro) was born in 70 B.C. Two thousand years later, in 1930, the entire western world celebrated his birthday, for he is one of the world's greatest and best-loved poets. His earlier works were the *Bucolics* (or *Eclogues*) about shepherds, and the *Georgics*, dealing with farming. His chief work, the *Aeneid*, is an epic poem in twelve books that tells of the wanderings of the Trojan Aeneas in his attempt to find a new home after the capture of Troy by the Greeks in the twelfth century B.C., according to tradition. The *Aeneid* also tells of Aeneas' arrival in Italy, where he established his kingdom and where his descendants founded Rome. Thus Vergil gave a background for Roman history. It is no wonder that the Roman people greeted the *Aeneid* as a national poem glorifying Rome and the Roman Empire.

# FILAMISTATATARA CEVETILLA VATEVILHINA TVATANI ATATORES QUECA DUN EALTIS DE MONTI DUS VATORATE.



CORDON

TORMON SUMCORY DON'LLSTORARDES ATALEXTÁ

DELICIA (DOMINIMISCOM DISTERMA ETÉLA SE SAT.

LINTUMENTERDEN SA SUM SROSACACUMUNALAGO

ADSTOUREUEN ESTATA EL TALOLACON DITASOUS

The Bettmann Archive

A page from a 4th century manuscript of Vergil's **Aeneid**. Notice that no spaces are left between individual words.

Vergil was planning to spend three years putting the finishing touches on the *Aeneid* when he died in 19 B.C. He left word to have the poem burned but Augustus insisted that it be published—and the world has been grateful to him ever since.

So popular was Vergil in the Middle Ages that he was called a magician, and all sorts of tales were told about his deeds.

### Book I

Juno's anger causes the Trojans to be shipwrecked off the coast of Africa. They make their way to the place where Queen Dido, a refugee

from Tyre in Phoenicia, is building the new city of Carthage. They are cordially welcomed. The poem opens with the poet's statement of his theme.

a fugitive by fate

<sup>2</sup> = superŏrum

3 also

4 until he could found

<sup>5</sup> his gods, statues of which he had brought along

6 = in Latium, to  $L\bar{a}'shium$ 

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs Ītaliam<sub>1</sub> fātō profugus¹ Lāvīniaque<sub>2</sub> vēnit lītora,<sub>1</sub> multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō<sub>3</sub> vī superum,² saevae memorem lūnōnis ob īram, multa quoque et³ bellō passus, dum conderet⁴ urbem īnferretque deōs⁵ Latiō,6 genus unde Latīnum Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.

1 Poetic usage of accusative of place to which without ad

2 of Lavinium, a town near Rome

3 Altō is used as a noun for marī.

A painting by the English artist William Turner (1775-1851) shows Dido building Carthage after fleeing Tyre with many followers and much treasure.



eman/Arr Resource, NY

Venus goes to Jupiter to complain that the great destiny of her son Aeneas is not being fulfilled. Jupiter's predictions reassure her.

"Bellum ingēns geret Ītalia populōsque ferōcēs

contundet<sup>7</sup> moresque viris et moenia ponet. At puer Ascanius, cui nunc cognomen Iūlō, additur. longam multā vī mūniet Albam.8 Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia9 condet moenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dīcet. Hīs ego nec mētās<sup>10</sup> rērum nec tempora pōnō; imperium sine fine dedī. Quīn<sup>11</sup> aspera Iūnō, quae mare nunc terrāsque metū<sup>12</sup> caelumque fatīgat, consilia in melius referet<sup>13</sup> mecumque fovebit Romanos rerum dominos gentemque togatam. 14 Näscētur pulchrā Troiānus orīgine Caesar, 15 imperium Ōceanō, fāmam guī terminet<sup>16</sup> astrīs Iūlius,15 ā magnō dēmissum nōmen Iūlō. Aspera tum positīs<sup>17</sup> mītēscent saecula<sup>18</sup> bellīs; cāna<sup>19</sup> Fidēs et Vesta, Remō cum frātre Quirīnus<sup>20</sup> iūra dabunt; dīrae ferro et compāgibus artīs<sup>21</sup> claudentur bellī portae; Furor impius intus<sup>22</sup> saeva sedēns super arma et centum vīnctus aēnīs<sup>23</sup> post tergum nōdīs fremet<sup>24</sup> horridus ōre cruentō."

263 <sup>7</sup> he (Aeneas) will crush <sup>8</sup> Alba Longa, a town southeast of 267 Rome 9 of Mars 10 bounds for their state (rērum) 11 = quin etiam276 12 with her fears 13 will change for the better 14 toga-clad 15 Augustus 16 to bound  $17 = d\bar{e}posit\bar{i}s$ 280 18 the ages will become gentle 19 white-haired, venerable  $20 = R\bar{o}$ mulus <sup>21</sup> tight joints

286 22 within (the temple)

nōdīs)

24 will rage

<sup>23</sup> by bronze (i.e., hard) knots (with

291

<sup>4</sup> Aeneas' son, whose other name (cognômen) was Iulus

<sup>5</sup> attracted into the case of cui

### Book IV

Books II and III tell of a banquet Dido gives for Aeneas, at which he relates his adventures, beginning with the fall of Troy. The Trojan War was caused by the abduction of Helen, the wife of the Greek Menelaus, by the Trojan Paris. As Book IV opens, Dido discovers that she is falling in love with Aeneas.

- 1 for a long time
- <sup>2</sup> wounded, stricken
- <sup>3</sup> blind, unseen
- $^4$  = **honor** (nominative)
- <sup>5</sup> i.e., of Aeneas.
- <sup>6</sup> with Apollo's lamp, i.e., the sun
- <sup>7</sup> *lighted*; the subject is **Aurōra** (*Dawn*)
- 8 damp
- <sup>9</sup> from the heavens
- with  $s\bar{a}na = insane$
- 11 dreams
- <sup>12</sup> who (is) this strange guest (who)
- 13 What a man he shows himself in 10 his looks
- 14 Fear reveals ignoble souls.

At rēgīna gravī iam dūdum¹ saucia² cūrā vulnus alit vēnīs et caecō³ carpitur ignī.

Multa virī virtūs animō multusque recursat gentis honōs;⁴ haerent īnfīxī pectore vultūs⁵ verbaque, nec placidam membrīs dat cūra quiētem.

Postera Phoebēā⁶ lūstrābatⁿ lampade terrās ūmentemque⁶ Aurōra polo⁶ dīmōverat umbram, cum sīc ūnanimam alloquitur male¹⁰ sāna sorōrem: "Anna soror, quae mē suspēnsam īnsomnia¹¹ terrent! Quis novus hic nostrīs successit sēdibus hospes,¹² quem sēsē ōre ferēns,¹³ quam fortī pectore et armīs! Crēdō equidem, nec vāna fidēs, genus esse deōrum. Dēgenerēs animōs timor arguit.¹⁴ Heu, quibus ille iactātus fātīs! Ouae bella exhausta canēbat!"

Dido and Aeneas fall in love, but Jupiter (representing Aeneas' conscience) sends Mercury to remind Aeneas of his duty to establish the Trojans in a new country of their own. Aeneas' reaction is immediate.

- 15 confused, he becomes silent
- 16 hair (stood) on end (with arrēctae)
- 17 astounded
- <sup>18</sup> What should he do?
- 19 get around, approach
- <sup>20</sup> beginnings

At vērō Aenēās aspectū obmūtuit āmēns,<sup>15</sup> arrēctaeque horrōre comae,<sup>16</sup> et vōx faucibus haesit. Ārdet abīre fugā dulcīsque relinquere terrās, attonitus<sup>17</sup> tantō monitū imperiōque deōrum. Heu quid agat?<sup>18</sup> Quō nunc rēgīnam ambīre<sup>19</sup> furentem audeat affātū? Quae prīma exōrdia<sup>20</sup> sūmat?

Aeneas orders his men to prepare the ships secretly, hoping to sail away without Dido's knowledge.

At rēgīna dolōs (quis fallere possit²¹ amantem?) praesēnsit mōtūsque excēpit prīma futūrōs, omnia tūta²² timēns; eadem impia Fāma furentī²³ dētulit armārī classem cursumque parārī.

Tandem hīs Aenēān compellat²⁴ vōcibus ultrō: "Dissimulāre etiam spērāstī, perfide, tantum posse nefās tacitusque meā dēcēdere terrā?

Nec tē noster amor nec tē data dextera²⁵ quondam nec moritūra tenet crūdēlī fūnere Dīdō?"

At pius Aenēās, quamquam lēnīre dolentem sōlandō²⁶ cupit et dictīs āvertere cūrās, multa²⁷ gemēns magnōque animum labefactus²ⁿ amōre, iussa tamen dīvum exsequitur classemque revīsit.

Tum vērō Teucrī²⁰ incumbunt³⁰ et lītore celsās dēdūcunt tōtō nāvīs.

296 <sup>21</sup> would be able
<sup>22</sup> (even if) safe
<sup>23</sup> i.e., Dido.
<sup>24</sup> addresses
<sup>25</sup> = dextra, i.e., pledge
<sup>26</sup> by consoling (her)
<sup>28</sup> his heart overcome
<sup>29</sup> Trojans

<sup>30</sup> get to work (literally, bend to)

393

395

## Book VI

After consulting the Sibyl at Cumae (near Naples), Aeneas descends to Hades, where he sees the shades of his father, Dido, and many other famous persons and learns about the great future of the new country he is about to establish.

Tālibus ōrābat dictīs ārāsque¹ tenēbat, cum sīc ōrsa² loquī vātēs:³ "Sate⁴ sanguine dīvum, Trōs Anchīsiadē,⁵ facilis dēscēnsus Avernō⁶ (noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī iānua Dītis); sed revocāre gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās,² hoc opus, hic labor est. Paucī, quōs aequus amāvit Iuppiter aut ārdēns ēvexit ad aethera<sup>8</sup> virtūs, dīs genitī⁰ potuēre."¹¹⁰

1 altar

<sup>2</sup> Supply est: began.

125 <sup>3</sup> prophetess

<sup>4</sup> sprung from (vocative)

<sup>5</sup> Trojan son of Anchises (vocative)

6 to Hades

7 air

<sup>8</sup> accusative singular: sky

<sup>9</sup> descended from the gods (from

130 gignō)

10 i.e., to do so

Aeneas and the Sibyl come to the entrance of Hades.

11 in the dark 12 just as one goes 13 stingy		Ībant obscūrī <sup>11</sup> sõlā sub nocte per umbram perque domōs Dītis vacuās <sub>1</sub> et inānia rēgna
<sup>14</sup> dative	270	quāle <sup>12</sup> per incertam lūnam sub lūce malignā <sup>13</sup>
15 Grief 16 couches		est iter in silvīs, ubi caelum condidit umbrā
17 pale		Iuppiter et rēbus <sup>14</sup> nox abstulit ātra colōrem.
urging to do wrong		Vēstibulum ante ipsum prīmīsque in faucibus Orcī
19 Need 20 to look at		Lūctus <sup>15</sup> et ultrīcēs posuēre cubīlia <sup>16</sup> Cūrae
Death 275	275	pallentēsque <sup>17</sup> habitant Morbī trīstisque Senectūs
<sup>22</sup> = <b>Labor</b> <sup>23</sup> wicked		et Metus et malesuāda <sup>18</sup> Famēs ac turpis Egestās, <sup>19</sup>
chambers of the Furies	terribilēs vīsū <sup>20</sup> fōrmae, Lētumque <sup>21</sup> Labōsque, <sup>22</sup>	
		tum consanguineus Leti Sopor et mala <sup>23</sup> mentis
		Gaudia mortiferumque adversō in līmine Bellum
	280	ferreīque Eumenidum thalamī <sup>24</sup> et Discordia dēmēns.

Aeneas meets the shade of his father, who points out to him the souls of various notables.

<ul> <li>25 both eyes (with aciës)</li> <li>26 up to the vault of heaven (with sub)</li> </ul>		"Huc geminās <sup>25</sup> nunc flecte aciēs, hanc aspice gentem Rōmānōsque tuōs; hīc Caesar et omnis Iūlī
<sup>27</sup> in Latium	790	prōgeniēs magnum caelī ventūra sub axem. <sup>26</sup>
<sup>28</sup> lands <sup>29</sup> by Saturn (dative of agent)	ribe Augustus saecula qu	Hic vir, hic est tibi quem prōmittī saepius audīs,
30 the Garamantēs, an African tribe		Augustus Caesar, Dīvī <sub>2</sub> genus, aurea condet
31 heaven-carrying Atlas 32 the sky studded with (with axem)		saecula quī rūrsus Latio27 rēgnāta per arva28
the sky studied with (with axem)		Sāturnō <sup>29</sup> quondam; super et Garamantas <sup>30</sup> et Indōs
	795	proferet imperium (iacet extrā sīdera tellūs,
		extrā annī sōlisque viās,3 ubi caelifer Atlās31

Anchises tells Aeneas that the great contribution of the Romans will be good government and peace.

axem umerō torquet stēllīs ārdentibus aptum<sup>32</sup>)."

<sup>33</sup> will mold; the Greeks are meant
<sup>34</sup> breathing, lifelike
35 more delicately
<sup>36</sup> movements (of the stars)

37 with the rod—with which the movements of the stars were traced in sand

<sup>38</sup> remember (imperative)

<sup>39</sup> i.e., to make peace customary

"Excūdent<sup>33</sup> aliī spīrantia<sup>34</sup> mollius<sup>35</sup> aera (crēdō equidem), vīvōs dūcent dē marmore vultūs; ōrābunt causās melius caelīque meātūs<sup>36</sup> dēscrībent radiō<sup>37</sup> et surgentia sīdera dīcent. Tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō<sup>38</sup> (hae tibi erunt artēs) pācīque impōnere mōrem,<sup>39</sup> parcere subjectīs et dēbellāre superbōs."

<sup>.</sup> Because only ghosts lived there.

Julius Caesar, deified after his death

i.e., beyond the constellations of the zodiac through which the sun seems to travel in the course of a year

Aeneas returns to the upper world through the gate of false dreams.

Sunt geminae somnī portae; quārum altera fertur cornea, 40 quā vērīs facilis datur exitus umbrīs, 41 altera candentī<sup>42</sup> perfecta nitēns<sup>43</sup> elephantō, sed falsa ad caelum mittunt īnsomnia41 Mānēs.44 Hīs<sub>4</sub> ibi tum nātum Anchīsēs ūnāque Sibyllam prosequitur dictīs portāque ēmittit eburnā. 45 Ille viam secat<sup>46</sup> ad nāvīs sociosque revīsit; tum sē ad Caiētae<sub>5</sub> rēctō<sup>47</sup> fert lītore portum. Ancora de prora iacitur; stant litore puppes.

40 (to be) of horn

41 dreams

895 42 white (ablative)

43 gleaming

44 the spirits

45 of ivory

46 makes (literally, cuts)

47 straight along the shore

900

# Quotations from Vergil

Some of Vergil's famous lines are given in the preceding selections. Here are a few more.

- 1. Forsan¹ et₁ haec ölim meminisse iuvābit.
- 2. Hīc domus, haec patria est.
- 3. Mēns conscia rēctī.<sup>2</sup>
- 4. Non omnia possumus omnes.
- 5. Pedibus timor addidit ālās.
- 6. Quōrum, pars magna fuī.
- 7. Ūna salūs victīs, nūllam spērāre salūtem.
- 8. Varium et mūtābile, semper fēmina.

with dictis, referring to Anchises' speech

<sup>5</sup> Caiēta, a town on the coast near Formiae

<sup>1</sup> perhaps

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> right, with conscia

even. Haec refers to the misfortunes of Aeneas.

<sup>2</sup> Neuter, referring to the destruction of Troy, as seen by Aeneas.

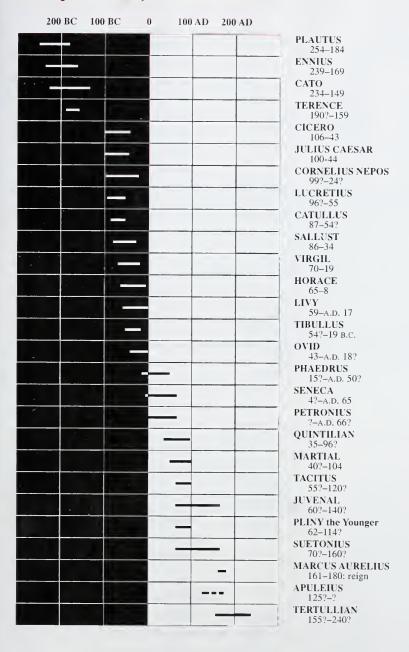
<sup>3</sup> Supply est; used as nouns in the predicate nominative.

# Appendix -----

#### Important Dates and Events

B.C. 753	(Traditional date)	55 and 54	Caesar invades Britain
, 50	Rome founded	55 and 53	
753-509	Legendary kings	55 and 55	Caesar invades Germany
509	Republic established	52	Fall of Alesia
496	Battle of Lake	49	Caesar crosses the
	Regillus	.,	Rubicon, thus
494	Secession of the plebs		precipitating civil
451-450	Laws of the Twelve		war
	Tables	48	Caesar consul; Battle
390	Gauls capture Rome		of Pharsalus—
343-290	Samnite Wars		Pompey defeated
280-275	War with Pyrrhus	48-46	Caesar dictator
264-241	First Punic War	46	Caesar consul and
218-201	Second Punic War		dictator, reforms
200-197	War with Philip		calendar
171-168	War with Perseus	45	Caesar sole consul
157?-86	Marius, general	44	Caesar assassinated,
149-146	Third Punic War		March 15
146	Capture of Corinth	42	Battle of Philippi
111-106	War with Jugurtha	31	Battle of Actium
106-48	Pompey, general	31-A.D. 14	Reign of Augustus
106-43	Cicero, orator,		
- 0 0 10	statesman	A.D.	
102	Marius defeats	9	Defeat of Varus
	Cimbri and	14-37	Reign of Tiberius
	Teutons	37-41	Reign of Caligula
100-44	Caesar, general,	41-54	Reign of Claudius
	statesman	54-68	Reign of Nero
88-63	Mithridatic Wars	68-69	Reigns of Galba,
86	Sulla captures Athens		Otho, Vitellius
80-78	Caesar in Asia	69-79	Reign of Vespasian
63	Cicero consul;	79	Eruption of Mt.
	conspiracy of		Vesuvius
	Catiline	79–81	Reign of Titus
63-A.D. 14	Augustus	81-96	Reign of Domitian
62	Caesar praetor	96-98	Reign of Nerva
	(propraetor in	98-117	Reign of Trajan
	Spain in 61)	117-138	Reign of Hadrian
60	First triumvirate	138-161	Reign of Antoninus
	(Caesar, Crassus,		Pius
50	Pompey)	161-180	Reign of Marcus
59	Caesar consul		Aurelius
	(proconsul in Gaul		
	and Illyricum.		
	58–50)		

#### Life Spans of Major Latin Authors



#### **Basic Forms**

#### Nouns

	First Declension		Second De	clension
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	via	viae	servus	servī
GEN.	vi <b>ae</b>	vi <b>ārum</b>	servī	serv <b>õrum</b>
DAT.	viae	viīs	servō	servīs
ACC.	viam	viās	serv <b>um</b>	serv <b>ōs</b>
ABL.	viā	viīs	servō	servīs
(VOC.)			(serve)	

Nouns in -ius have -ī in the genitive and vocative singular: fīlī, Cornēlī. The accent does not change.

C 1	The second	
Second	Hec	lencion
Decoma	DUC	I CHOICH

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ager	agrī	puer	puerī	sign <b>um</b>	signa
GEN.	agrī	agr <b>ōrum</b>	puer <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ōrum</b>	sign <b>ī</b>	sign <b>ōrum</b>
DAT.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs
ACC.	agrum	agr <b>ō</b> s	puer <b>um</b>	puerōs	sign <b>um</b>	signa
ABL.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs

Nouns in -ium have -ī in the genitive singular: cōnsilī. The accent does not change.

#### Third Declension

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
OM.	mīles	mīlit <b>ēs</b>	lēx	lēg <b>ē</b> s	corpus	corpora
EN.	mīlitis	mīlit <b>um</b>	lēgis	lēgum	corporis	corporum
AT.	mīlit <b>ī</b>	mīlit <b>ibus</b>	lēgī	lēgibus	corporī	corporibus
cc.	mīlit <b>em</b>	mīlit <b>ēs</b>	lēgem	lēg <b>ēs</b>	corpus	corpora
BL.	mīlite	mīlit <b>ibus</b>	lēge	lēgibus	corpore	corporibus

#### Third Declension I-Stems

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	cīvis	cīvēs	mare	mar <b>ia</b>
GEN.	cīvis	cīvium	maris	mar <b>ium</b>
DAT.	cīvī	cīv <b>ibus</b>	marī	maribus
ACC.	cīvem	cīvēs (-īs)	mare	mar <b>ia</b>
ABL.	cīve	cīv <b>ibu</b> s	marī	mar <b>ibus</b>

Turris and a few proper nouns have -im in the accusative singular. Turris, ignis,  $n\bar{a}$  vis, and a few proper nouns sometimes have  $-\bar{i}$  in the ablative singular.

- (a) The classes of masculine and feminine i-stem nouns are:
- 1. Nouns ending in –is and –ēs having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative: cīvis, nūbēs.
- 2. Nouns of one syllable whose base ends in two consonants: pars (gen. part-is), nox (gen. noct-is).
- 3. Nouns whose base ends in -nt or -rt: cliens (gen. client-is).
  - (b) Neuter i-stem nouns ending in -e, -al, -ar: mare, animal, calcar.

#### Fourth Declension

		routin Deciension		
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	cās <b>us</b>	.cās <b>ūs</b>	$corn\bar{\boldsymbol{u}}$	cornua
GEN.	cās <b>ūs</b>	cāsuum	cornūs	cornuum
DAT.	cāsuī	cās <b>ibus</b>	corn <b>ū</b>	cornibus
ACC.	cāsum	cāsūs	$\text{corn} \boldsymbol{\bar{u}}$	cornua
ABL.	cās <b>ū •</b>	cās <b>ibus</b>	$\text{corn} \boldsymbol{\bar{u}}$	cornibus
		Fifth Declension		
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	diēs	di <b>ēs</b>	rēs	rēs
GEN.	di <b>ē</b> ī	di <b>ērum</b>	r <b>eī</b>	rērum
DAT.	diēī	di <b>ēbus</b>	reī	rēbus

diēs

di**ēbus** 

		II.	rregular Nouns		
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	vīs	vīrēs	nēmō	domus	dom <b>ūs</b>
GEN.		vīr <b>ium</b>	(nūllīus)	dom <b>ūs</b> (–ī)	domuum (-ōrum)
DAT.		vīri <b>bus</b>	nēminī	domuī (-ō)	domibus
ACC.	vim	vīrēs (-īs)	nēmin <b>em</b>	dom <b>um</b>	$dom\bar{o}s$ ( $-\bar{u}s$ )
ABL.	VĪ	vīr <b>ibus</b>	(nūllō)	dom $\bar{o}$ ( $-\bar{u}$ )	domibus
(LOC.)				(domī)	

#### Adjectives and Adverbs

ACC.

ABL.

diem

diē

#### First and Second Declensions

		SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	magnus	magna	magn <b>um</b>	magnī	magnae	magna
GEN.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magn <b>ōrum</b>	magn <b>ārum</b>	$magn\overline{o}rum$
DAT.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
ACC.	magn <b>um</b>	magn <b>am</b>	magn <b>um</b>	magnōs	magn <b>ās</b>	magna
ABL.	magnō	magn <b>ā</b>	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
(VOC.)	(magne)					
		SINGULAR			SINGULAR	
NOM.	līber	lībera	līberum	noster	nostra	nostrum
GEN.	līber <b>ī</b>	līberae	līberī	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
DAT.	līber <b>ō</b>	līberae	līberō	nostrō	nostrae	nostr <b>ō</b>
ACC.	līber <b>um</b>	līberam	līberum	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
ABL.	līberō	līber <b>ā</b>	līber <b>ō</b>	nostr <b>ō</b>	nostr <b>ā</b>	nostr <b>ō</b>
	Plural, lībe	rī, līberae, lībei	ra, etc.	Plural,	nostrī, -ae, -a.	etc.

rēs

rēbus

rem

rē

#### Third Declension

#### (a) THREE ENDINGS

		SINGUL	AR			P	LURAL	
	M	F	N		M	F		N
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre		ācr <b>ēs</b>	ācr	ēs	ācr <b>ia</b>
GEN.	ācr <b>is</b>	äcr <b>is</b>	ācris		ācrium	ācr	ium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		ācr <b>ibus</b>	ācr	ibus	ācr <b>ibus</b>
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre		ācr <b>ēs</b> (–i	s) ācr	ēs (-īs)	ācr <b>ia</b>
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācr <b>ī</b>		ācr <b>ibus</b>	ācr	ibus	ācribus
	SINGU	' /	ENDINGS PLUR	AL	SINGUL		E ENDING <sub>1</sub>	PLURAL
	ΜF	N	MF	N	M F	N	ΜF	N
NOM.	fortis	forte	fort <b>ēs</b>	fortia	pār	pār	par <b>ēs</b>	par <b>ia</b>
GEN.	fortis	fort <b>is</b>	fort <b>ium</b>	fort <b>ium</b>	paris	paris	parium	par <b>ium</b>
DAT.	fortī	fortī	fort <b>ibus</b>	fortibus	parī	parī	paribus	par <b>ibus</b>
ACC.	fortem	forte	fort <b>ēs</b> ( <b>-īs</b> )	fortia	parem	pār	par <b>ē</b> s (-	-īs) paria
ABL.	fortī	fortī	fort <b>ibus</b>	fort <b>ibus</b>	parī	parī	paribus	par <b>ibus</b>
			PRE:	SENT PARTIC	IPLE			

	SINGU	LAR	PLURAL	,
	MF	N	MF	N
NOM.	portāns	portāns	portant <b>ēs</b>	portant <b>ia</b>
GEN.	portantis	portantis	portant <b>ium</b>	portan <b>ium</b>
DAT.	portantī	portant <b>ī</b>	portantibus	portant <b>ibus</b>
ACC,4	portantem	portāns	portant <b>ēs</b> ( <b>-īs</b> )	portant <b>ia</b>
ΑΒĹ.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portant <b>ibus</b>	portantibus

The ablative singular regularly ends in -e, but -ī is used wherever the participle is used simply as an adjective.

#### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND NUMERALS

	М	F	N	M F	N
NOM.	ūn <b>us</b>	ūna	ūn <b>um</b>	trēs	tria
GEN.	ūn <b>īu</b> s	ūn <b>īus</b>	ūn <b>īus</b>	trium	trium
DAT.	ūn <b>ī</b>	ūn <b>ī</b>	ūn <b>ī</b>	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūn <b>am</b>	ūn <b>um</b>	trēs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūn <b>ā</b>	$\bar{u}n\bar{o}$	tribus	tribus
	M	F	N	M F N ( <i>adj.</i> )	N (noun)
NOM.	M duo	F du <b>ae</b>	N duo	M F N (adj.) mīlle	N (noun) mīl <b>ia</b>
NOM. GEN.					` ′
	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
GEN.	duo du <b>ōru</b> m	duae duārum	du <b>o</b> du <b>ōrum</b>	mīlle mīlle	mīl <b>ia</b> mīl <b>ium</b>
GEN. DAT.	duo duōrum duōbus	duae duārum duābus	duo duōrum duōbus	mīlle mīlle mīlle	mīlia mīlium mīlibus

 $_{1}$  Vetus has vetere in the ablative singular and veterum in the genitive plural.

Like **ūnus** are **alius**, **alter**, **ūllus**, **nūllus**, **sōlus**, **tōtus**, **uter**, **neuter**, **uterque**; plural regular. The nom. and acc. sing. neuter of **alius** is **aliud**; for the genitive sing., **alterius** is generally used. **Ambō** is declined like duo.

#### Comparison of Regular Adjectives and Adverbs

POSITIVE		COMPAR	RATIVE	SUPERLATIVE		
ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.	
altus	alt <b>ē</b>	altior	altius	altissimus	altissimē	
fortis	fort <b>iter</b>	fortior	fortius	fortissimus	fort <b>issimē</b>	
līber	līber <b>ē</b>	līber <b>ior</b>	līberius	līber <b>rimus</b>	līber <b>rimē</b>	
ācer	ācriter	ācr <b>ior</b>	ācrius	ācer <b>rimus</b>	ācer <b>rimē</b>	
facilis	facile	facil <b>ior</b>	facil <b>ius</b>	facillimus	facil <b>limē</b>	

Like facilis are difficilis, similis, dissmilis, gracilis, humilis, but their adverbs (not used in this book) vary in the positive degree. Adjectives in -er are like liber or ācer.

#### Comparison of Irregular Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	opt <b>imus</b>
mal <b>us</b>	peior	pess <b>imus</b>
magnus	ma <b>ior</b>	max <b>imus</b>
parvus	minor	min <b>imus</b>
multus	——, plūs	plūr <b>imus</b>
īnfer <b>us</b>	īnfer <b>ior</b>	īnf <b>imus</b> or <b>īmus</b>
super <b>us</b>	super <b>ior</b>	supr <b>ēmus</b> or sum <b>mus</b>
	prior	prīmus
	propior	proximus
	ulterior	ultimus

#### Comparison of Irregular Adverbs

bene	melius	opt <b>imē</b>
male	peius	pessimē
(magnopere)	magis	max <b>imē</b>
<del></del>	minus	min <b>imē</b>
mult <b>um</b>	plūs	plūr <b>imum</b>
diū	diūt <b>ius</b>	diūt <b>issimē</b>
prope	propius	proximē

#### **Declension of Comparatives**

	SINGU	JLAR	PLU	RAL	SINGULAR	PLU	RAL
	MF	N	M F	N	N	MF	N
NOM.	altior	altius	altiōr <b>es</b>	altiōr <b>a</b>	$pl\bar{u}s_1$	plūr <b>ēs</b>	plūra
GEN.	altiōr <b>is</b>	altiōr <b>is</b>	altiōr <b>um</b>	altiōr <b>um</b>	plūris	plūr <b>ium</b>	plūr <b>ium</b>
DAT.	altiörī	altiōr <b>ī</b>	altiōr <b>ibus</b>	altiōr <b>ibus</b>		plūr <b>ibu</b> s	plūr <b>ibus</b>
ACC.	altiörem	altius	altiōr <b>ēs</b>	altiōr <b>a</b>	plūs	plūr <b>ē</b> s	plūra
ABL.	altiōre	altiōre	altiõr <b>ibus</b>	altiōr <b>ibus</b>	plūre	plūr <b>ibu</b> s	plūr <b>ibus</b>

<sup>1</sup> Masculine and feminine lacking in the singular.

#### Numerals

		ramerais	
	ROMAN	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	II.	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3.	III.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	IIII or IV.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	V.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	VI.	sex	sextus
7.	VII.	septem	septimus
8.	VIII.	octō	octāvus
9.	VIIII or IX.	novem	nōnus
10.	X.	decem	decimus
11.	XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	XIIII or XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus <sub>1</sub>
19.	XVIIII or XIX.	<b>ūndēvīgintī</b>	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	XXI.	vīgintī ūnus or ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus or ūnus et vīcēsimus
30.	XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	XXXX or XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	LXXXX or XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	C.	centum	centēsimus
101.	CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus
200.	CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	CCC.	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus
400.	CCCC.	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus
500.	D.	quīngentī, –ae, –a	quīngentēsimus
600.	DC.	sescentī, –ae, –a	sescentēsimus
700.	DCC.	septingentī, –ae, –a	septingentēsimus
800.	DCCC.	octingentī, –ae, –a	octingentēsimus
900.	DCCCC.	nōngentī, –ae, –a	nōngentēsimus
1000.	M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

<sup>1</sup> The forms in **–ēsimus** are sometimes spelled **–ēnsimus**.

#### Pronouns

Th						
$\mathbf{P}$	(1)	rs	•	n	•	

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	M	F	N
NOM.	ego	nõs	tū	vōs	is	ea	id
GEN.	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	tuī	vestrum (-trī)	(for declei	nsion see	
DAT.	mihi	nõbïs	tibi	vōbīs	demonstra	itive is chai	rt)
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs			
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	võbīs			

#### Reflexive

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PI	ERSON	THIRD PERSON		
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
GEN.	meī	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī	
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibī	sibi	
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)	
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)	

Not being used in the nominative, reflexives have no nominative form.

#### Demonstrative

		SINGULAR			PLURAL	
			NT	М		N
	M	F	N		F	
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	• eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
		SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
				(īdem)		
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
				(īsdem)	(īsdem)	(īsdem)
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	rīsdem
				(īsdem)	(īsdem)	(īsdem)

SINGULAR				SINGULAR		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
	(Plu	ral regular like r	magnus)		(Plural regul	ar)

Iste is declined like ille.

	Relative							
		SINGULAR			PLURAL		SINGU	JLAR
	M	F	N	M	F	N	M F	N
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	quis	quid
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	quō	quō

Plural of quis like quī. Interrogative adjective quī like relative quī.

#### Indefinite

SINGULAR			PLURAL				
	M F	N	M	F	N		
NOM.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua		
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	aliquõrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum		
DAT.	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus		
ACC.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua		
ABL.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus		

The adjective form is aliquī, -qua, -quod, etc.

#### SINGULAR

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	Quidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
		PLURAL	
NOM.	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quõrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The adjective has quoddam for quiddam.

		SINGULAR		JLAR
	M F	N	M F	N
NOM.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)	quisque	quidque
GEN.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam	cuiusque	cuiusque
DAT.	cuiquam	cuiquam	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)	quemque	quidque
ABL.	quōquam	quōquam	quōque	quōque
	(F	Plural lacking)	(Plura	rare)

The adjective form of quisque is quisque, quaeque, quodque, etc.

The indefinite pronoun quis (declined like the interrogative) and adjective quī (declined like the relative, but in the nom. fem. sing. and the nom. and acc. neut. plur. qua may be used for quae) are used chiefly after sī, nisi, num, and nē.

#### Verbs

## First Conjugation

	PRINCIPAL PARTS: portō, portāvī, portātus						
	AC	TIVE	PASSIVE				
	λο	os indica	TIVE				
PRESENT	I carry, etc.		I am carried, etc.				
	port <b>ō</b>	portā <b>mus</b>	port <b>or</b>	portā <b>mur</b>			
	portās	portā <b>tis</b>	portā <b>ris</b> ( <b>-re</b> )	portā <b>minī</b> porta <b>ntur</b>			
	portat	portant	portā <b>tur</b>	portantur			
IMPERFECT	I was carrying	, etc.	I was (being) carried, et	tc.			
	portā <b>bam</b>	portā <b>bāmus</b>	portā <b>bar</b>	portā <b>bāmur</b>			
	portā <b>bās</b>	portā <b>bātis</b>	portā <b>bāris</b> ( <b>–re</b> )	portā <b>bāminī</b>			
	portā <b>bat</b>	portā <b>bant</b>	portā <b>bātur</b>	portābantur			
FUTURE	I shall carry, e	tc.	I shall be carried, etc.				
	portā <b>bō</b>	portā <b>bimus</b>	portā <b>bor</b>	portā <b>bimur</b>			
	portā <b>bis</b>	portā <b>bitis</b>	portā <b>beris</b> ( <b>-re</b> )	portā <b>biminī</b>			
	portā <b>bit</b>	portā <b>bunt</b>	portā <b>bitur</b>	porta <b>buntur</b>			
PERFECT	I carried, have	carried, etc.	I was carried, have beer	ı carried, etc.			
	portāv <b>ī</b>	portāv <b>imus</b>	portātus sum	portātī sumus			
	portāv <b>istī</b>	portāvistis	portātus { sum es es est	(=ae =a) estis			
	portāv <b>it</b>	portāv <b>ērunt</b>	est	(-ae, -a) sunt			
PLUPERFECT	I had carried,	etc.	I had been carried, etc.				
	portāv <b>eram</b>	portāv <b>erāmus</b>	portātus eram	portātī (-ae, -a)			
	portāv <b>erās</b>	portāv <b>erātis</b>	(erās	( erātis			
	portāv <b>erat</b>	portāv <b>erant</b>	(-a, -uiii) erat	(-ae, -a) erant			
			0 1	1			
			2 M ( )	1.			

	AC	TIVE		PASSIVE	
FUTURE	I shall have ca	rried, etc.	I shall have be	een carried	l, etc.
PERFECT	portāv <b>erō</b> portāv <b>eris</b> portāv <b>erit</b>	portāv <b>erimus</b> portāv <b>eritis</b> portāv <b>erint</b>	•	erō eris erit	portătī { erimus eritis erunt
DD DODAW		SUBJUN			a out 5 mans
PRESENT	portem	portēmus	port <b>er</b>		port <b>ēmur</b>
	port <b>ēs</b> port <b>et</b>	portētis portent	port <b>ēris (-re</b> ) port <b>ētur</b>		port <b>ēminī</b> port <b>entur</b>
	portet	portent	portetai		portental
IMPERFECT	portā <b>rem</b>	portā <b>rēmus</b>	portā <b>rer</b>		portā <b>rēmur</b>
	portā <b>rēs</b>	portā <b>rētis</b>	portā <b>rēris</b> ( <b>-r</b>	<b>·e</b> )	portā <b>rēminī</b>
	portā <b>ret</b>	portā <b>rent</b>	portā <b>rētur</b>		portā <b>rentur</b>
PERFECT	portāv <b>erim</b> portāv <b>erīs</b> portāv <b>erit</b>	portāv <b>erīmus</b> portāv <b>erītis</b> portāv <b>erint</b>	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{port} \bar{\mathbf{a}} \mathbf{t} \mathbf{u} \mathbf{s} \\ (-\mathbf{a}, -\mathbf{u} \mathbf{m}) \end{array} $	sim sīs <sup>t</sup> sit	portātī { sīmus sītis sint
PLUPERFECT	portāv <b>issem</b> portāviss <b>ēs</b> portāvisset	portāv <b>issēmus</b> portāv <b>issētis</b> portāv <b>issent</b>		essem essēs esset	portātī (-ae, -a) essēmus essētis essent
		PRESENT IM	PERATIVE		
2ND SING.	portā, čarry		portā <b>re</b> , <i>be ca</i>	irried	
2ND PLUR.	portā <b>te</b> , carry		portā <b>minī</b> , be	carried	
		INFINI	TIVE		
PRESENT	portā <b>re</b> , to car	ry	– portā <b>rī</b> , to be	carried	
PERFECT	portāv <b>isse</b> , to l	lave carried	portātus esse,	to have be	en carried

	I)	NFINITIVE
PRESENT	portā <b>re</b> , <i>to carry</i>	- portā <b>rī</b> , to be carried
PERFECT	portāvisse, to have carried	portātus esse, to have been carried
FUTURE	portāt <b>ūrus esse</b> , to be going to co	urry
	P.	ARTICIPLE
PRESENT	portāns, carrying	

PERFECT FUTURE

doctus

DAT. portandō

portātus (having been) carried portandus, (necessary) to be carried portātūrus, going to carry

ACC. portandum

GERUND

positus

Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations

2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	$3d\ Conj.\ (-iar{o})$
	PRINCIPAL	PARTS	
doceō	pōnō	mūniō	capiō
docēre	pōnere	mūnīre	capere
docui	ทดรมเ	műnivi	cēnī

mūnītus

ABL. portandō, of carrying, etc.

captus

GEN. portandī

	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	3d Conj. ( <b>-i</b> ō)
		INDICATIVE ACTIV	-	
PRESENT	doceō	pōn <b>ō</b>	mūni $ar{oldsymbol{o}}$	capiō
	docēs	pōnis	mūnīs	capis
	docet	pōni <b>t</b>	mūnit	capit
	docēmus	pōnimus	mūnī <b>mus</b>	capimus
	docētis	pōni <b>tis</b>	mūnītis	capitis
	docent	ponu <b>nt</b>	mūni <b>unt</b>	capiunt
IMPERFECT	docē <b>bam</b>	pōnē <b>bam</b>	mūni <b>ēbam</b>	capi <b>ēbam</b>
	docē <b>bās</b>	pōnē <b>bās</b>	mūni <b>ēbās</b>	capi <b>ēbās</b>
	docēbat	pōnē <b>bat</b>	mūni <b>ēbat</b>	capiēbat
	docē <b>bāmus</b>	ponē <b>bāmus</b>	mūni <b>ēbāmus</b>	capi <b>ēbāmus</b>
	docēbātis	pōnē <b>bātis</b>	mūni <b>ēbātis</b>	capiēbātis
	docēbant	põn <b>ēbant</b>	mūni <b>ēbant</b>	capiēbant
FUTURE	docēbō	pōn <b>am</b>	mūni <b>am</b>	capiam
	docēbis	pōn <b>ēs</b>	mūniēs	capi <b>ēs</b>
	docēbit	põn <b>et</b>	mūni <b>et</b>	capiet
	docēbimus	pōn <b>ēmus</b>	mūni <b>ēmus</b>	capiēmus
	docē <b>bitis</b>	pōn <b>ētis</b>	mūni <b>ētis</b>	capi <b>ētis</b>
	docēbunt	pōn <b>ent</b>	mūnient	capient
PERFECT	docuī	posuī	mūnīvī	cēpī
	docuistī	posuistī	mūnīv <b>istī</b>	cēpistī
	docuit	posuit	mūnīv <b>it</b>	cēpit
201	docu <b>imus</b>	posu <b>imus</b>	mūnīv <b>imus</b>	cēpimus
	docuistis	posu <b>istis</b>	mūnīv <b>istis</b>	cēpistis
Ro	docu <b>ērunt</b>	posu <b>ērunt</b>	mūnīv <b>ērunt</b>	cēp <b>ērunt</b>
	(–ēre)	(-ēre)	(–ēre)	(-ēre)
PLUPERFECT	docu <b>eram</b>	posu <b>eram</b>	mūnīv <b>eram</b>	cēp <b>eram</b>
	docuerās	posu <b>erās</b>	mūnīv <b>erās</b>	cēp <b>erās</b>
	docuerat	posuerat	mūnīv <b>erat</b>	cēperat
	docu <b>erāmus</b>	posu <b>erāmus</b>	mūnīv <b>erāmus</b>	cēp <b>erāmu</b> s
	docu <b>erātis</b>	posu <b>erātis</b>	mūnīv <b>erātis</b>	cēp <b>erātis</b>
	docuerant	posuerant	mūnīv <b>erant</b>	cēperant
FUTURE PERFECT	docu <b>erō</b>	posu <b>erō</b>	mūnīv <b>erō</b>	cēp <b>erō</b>
	docueris	posu <b>eris</b>	mūnīv <b>eris</b>	cēperis
	docu <b>erit</b>	posuerit	mūnīv <b>erit</b>	cēperit
	docu <b>erimus</b>	posu <b>erimus</b>	mūnīverimus	cēperimus
	docu <b>eritis</b>	posueritis	mūnīveritis	cēperitis
	docu <b>erint</b>	posuerint	mūnīv <b>erint</b>	cēperint

	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	$3d\ Conj.\ (-iar{o})$
	1	SUBJUNCTIVE ACT	IVE mūni <b>am</b>	
PRESENT	doceān doceās	põn <b>am</b> põn <b>äs</b>	muni <b>an</b> mūni <b>ās</b>	capi <b>am</b> capi <b>ās</b>
	doceat	pōn <b>at</b>	mūni <b>at</b>	capiat
		-		
	doceāmus	pōn <b>āmus</b>	mūni <b>āmus</b>	capi <b>āmus</b>
	doceātis	pōn <b>ātis</b>	mūni <b>ātis</b>	capi <b>ātis</b>
	doceant	pōn <b>ant</b>	mūni <b>ant</b>	capi <b>ant</b>
IMPERFECT	docē <b>rem</b>	pōne <b>rem</b>	mūnī <b>rem</b>	cape <b>rem</b>
	docērēs	põne <b>rē</b> s	mūnī <b>rēs</b>	caperēs
	docē <b>re</b> t	pōne <b>ret</b>	mūnī <b>ret</b>	cape <b>ret</b>
	docē <b>rēmus</b>	pōne <b>rēmus</b>	mūnī <b>rēmus</b>	caperēmus
	docērētis	põne <b>rētis</b>	mūnī <b>rētis</b>	caperētis
	docērent	pōne <b>rent</b>	mūnī <b>rent</b>	caperent
PERFECT	docu <b>erim</b>	posu <b>erim</b>	mūnīv <b>erim</b>	cēperim
	docuerīs	posu <b>erīs</b>	mūnīv <b>erīs</b>	cēp <b>erīs</b>
	docu <b>erit</b>	posuerit	mūnīv <b>erit</b>	cēp <b>erit</b>
	docu <b>erīmus</b>	posu <b>erīmus</b>	mūnīv <b>erīmus</b>	cēperīmus
	docu <b>erītis</b>	posu <b>erītis</b>	mūnīv <b>erītis</b>	cēperītis
	docu <b>erint</b>	posuerint	mūnīv <b>erint</b>	cēperint
PLUPERFECT	docuissem	posu <b>issem</b>	mūnīv <b>issem</b>	cēpissem
	docuissēs	posu <b>issēs</b>	mūnīvissēs	cēpiss <b>ē</b> s
	docuisset	posu <b>isset</b>	mūnīvisset	cēpisset
	docuissēmus	posu <b>issēmus</b>	mūnīv <b>issēmus</b>	cēpissēmus
	docuissētis	posu <b>issētis</b>	mūnīvissētis	cēpissētis
	docuissent	posu <b>issent</b>	mūnīvissent	cēpissent
		PRESENT IMPERATIVE	ACTIVE	
2D SING.	docē	pōne <sub>1</sub>	mūnī	cape <sub>1</sub>
2D PLUR.	docēte	pēni <b>te</b>	mūnī <b>te</b>	capite
		INFINITIVE ACTIV	√E	
PRESENT	docēre	pōne <b>re</b>	mūnī <b>re</b>	capere
PERFECT	docuisse	, posu <b>isse</b>	mūnīv <b>isse</b>	cēpisse
FUTURE	doct <b>ūrus esse</b>	posit <b>ūrus esse</b>	mūnīt <b>ūru</b> s esse	capt <b>ūrus esse</b>
		PARTICIPLE ACTI	VE	
PRESENT	docēns	pōnē <b>ns</b>	mūni <b>ēns</b>	capi <b>ēns</b>
FUTURE	doctūrus	posit <b>ūrus</b>	mūnīt <b>ūru</b> s	capt <b>ūrus</b>

<sup>1</sup> Dīcō, dūcō, and faciō have dīc, dūc, fac in the imperative singular.

	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	$3d\ Conj.\ (-iar{o})$
GEN.	docendī	pōne <b>ndī</b>	mūni <b>endī</b>	capi <b>endī</b>
DAT.	docendo	pōne <b>ndō</b>	mūni <b>endō</b>	capiendō
ACC.	docendum	pōne <b>ndum</b>	mūni <b>endum</b>	capiendum
ABL.	docendō	pōne <b>ndō</b>	mūnie <b>ndō</b>	capi <b>endō</b>
ADL.	docendo	ponendo	mumendo	capiendo
ehe	•	INDICATIVE PASSI	VE	
PRESENT	doceor	pōnor	mūnior	capior
	docē <b>ris</b> ( <b>–re</b> )	pōneris (-re)	mūnī <b>ris</b> (-re)	caperis (-re)
	docētur	pōni <b>tur</b>	mūnī <b>tur</b>	capitur
	docē <b>mur</b>	pōni <b>mur</b>	mūnī <b>mur</b>	capi <b>mur</b>
	docēminī	pōni <b>minī</b>	mūnī <b>minī</b>	capi <b>minī</b>
	docentur	pōnu <b>ntur</b>	mūni <b>untur</b>	capiuntur
IMPERFECT	docēbar	pōnē <b>bar</b>	mūni <b>ēbar</b>	capi <b>ēbar</b>
	docē <b>bāris</b> ( <b>-re</b> )	pōnē <b>bāris</b> ( <b>-re</b> )	mūni <b>ēbāri</b> s (-re)	capi <b>ēbāris</b> ( <b>-re</b> )
	docē <b>bātur</b>	pōnē <b>bātur</b>	mūni <b>ēbātur</b>	capi <b>ēbātur</b>
	docē <b>bāmur</b>	pōnē <b>bāmur</b>	mūni <b>ēbāmur</b>	capi <b>ēbāmur</b>
	docē <b>bāmin</b> ī	pōnē <b>bāmin</b> ī	mūni <b>ēbāminī</b>	capi <b>ēbāmin</b> ī
	docē <b>bantur</b>	pōnē <b>bantur</b>	mūni <b>ēbantur</b>	capi <b>ēbantur</b>
FUTURE	docē <b>bor</b>	nānam	mūnia <b>r</b>	_
FUTURE		pōnar		capiar
	docēberis (-re)	pōn <b>ēris</b> ( <b>-re</b> )	mūni <b>ēri</b> s (-re)	capi <b>ēris</b> ( <b>-re</b> )
	docē <b>bitur</b>	pōn <b>ētur</b>	mūni <b>ētur</b>	capi <b>ētur</b>
	docē <b>bimur</b>	pōn <b>ēmur</b>	mūni <b>ēmur</b>	capi <b>ēmur</b>
	docē <b>biminī</b>	pōn <b>ēminī</b>	mūni <b>ēminī</b>	capi <b>ēmin</b> ī
.4	docēbuntur	pōn <b>entur</b>	mūni <b>entur</b>	capientur
PERFECT	doctus sum	posit <b>us sum</b>	mūnīt <b>us sum</b>	captus sum
	doctus es	posit <b>us es</b>	mūnītus es	captus es
	doctus est	positus est	mūnītus est	captus est
	doctī sumus	posit <b>ī sumus</b>	mūnīt <b>ī sumus</b>	captī sumus
	doctī <b>estis</b>	posit <b>ī estis</b>	mūnītī estis	captī estis
	doctī sunt	posit <b>ī sunt</b>	mūnīt <b>ī sunt</b>	captī sunt
PLUPERFECT	doctus eram	posit <b>us eram</b>	mūnīt <b>us eram</b>	contuc cham
FLUFERFECT	doctus erān doctus erās	posit <b>us erān</b> posit <b>us erās</b>	mūnītus erān	captus eram captus erās
	doctus erat	positus eras positus erat		*
	doctus erat	_	mūnītus erat	captus erat
	doct <b>ī erāmus</b>	posit <b>ī erāmus</b>	mūnīt <b>ī erāmus</b>	captī erāmus
	doctī <b>erātis</b>	posit <b>ī erātis</b>	mūnit <b>ī erātis</b>	captī <b>erātis</b>
	doct <b>ī erant</b>	posit <b>ī erant</b>	mūnīt <b>ī erant</b>	captī <b>erant</b>

FUTURE PERFECT	2d Conj. doctus erō doctus eris doctus erit doctī erimus doctī eritis doctī erunt	3d Conj.  positus erō  positus eris  positus erit  positī erimus  positī eritis  positī erunt	4th Conj.  mūnītus erō  mūnītus eris  mūnītus erit  mūnītī erimus  mūnītī eritis  mūnītī erunt	3d Conj. (-iō) captus erō captus eris captus erit captī erimus captī eritis captī erunt
		SUBJUNCTIVE PASS	IVE	
PRESENT	docear doceāris (-re) doceātur	põnar põn <b>äri</b> s (–re) põn <b>ätur</b>	mūniar mūniāris (-re) mūniātur	capiar capiāris (-re) capiātur
	doceāmur doceāminī doceantur	põn <b>ämur</b> põn <b>äminī</b> põn <b>antur</b>	mūni <b>āmur</b> mūni <b>āminī</b> mūniantur	capi <b>āmur</b> capi <b>āminī</b> capi <b>antur</b>
IMPERFECT	docērer docērēris (-re) docērētur	pöne <b>rer</b> pöne <b>rēris</b> (-re) pöne <b>rētur</b>	mūnīrer mūnīrēris (-re) mūnīrētur	caperer caperēris (-re) caperētur
	docër <b>ëmur</b> docër <b>ëminī</b> docërentur	pöne <b>rēmur</b> pöne <b>rēminī</b> pöne <b>rentur</b>	münī <b>rēmur</b> mūnī <b>rēminī</b> mūnī <b>rentur</b>	cape <b>rēmur</b> cape <b>rēminī</b> cape <b>rentur</b>
PERFECT	doctus sim doctus sīs doctus sit	posit <b>us sim</b> posit <b>us sīs</b> posit <b>us sit</b>	mūnītus sim mūnītus sīs mūnītus sit	captus sim captus sīs captus sit
	doctī sīmus doctī sītis doctī sint	positī sīmus positī sītis positī sint	mūnītī sīmus mūnītī sītis mūnītī sint	captī sīmus captī sītis captī sint
PLUPERFECT	doctus essēs doctus essēt	posit <b>us essem</b> posit <b>us essēs</b> posit <b>us esset</b>	mūnītus essem mūnītus essēs mūnītus esset	captus essem captus essēs captus esset
	doctī essēmus doctī essētis doctī essent	positī essēmus positī essētis positī essent	mūnītī essēmus mūnītī essētis mūnītī essent	captī essēmus captī essētis captī essent
	F	PRESENT IMPERATIVE P	PASSIVE	
2d sing.	docēre	pōne <b>re</b>	mūnī <b>re</b>	capere
2d plur.	docē <b>minī</b>	põni <b>minī</b>	mūn <b>īminī</b>	capiminī
		INFINITIVE PASSIV	/E	
PRESENT	docērī	pōn <b>ī</b>	mūnī <b>rī</b>	capī
PERFECT	doctus esse	positus esse	mūnīt <b>us esse</b>	captus esse

	2d Conj.	3d Con	j. ICIPLE PASSIV	4th Conj.	3d Conj. ( <b>-i</b> ō)	
PERFECT	doctus	positus		mūnīt <b>us</b>	captus	
FUTURE	docendus	pōne <b>nd</b>	us	mūniendus	capiendus	
		Der	onent Verbs			
	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	$3d\ Conj.\ (-i\bar{o})$	
		PRI	NCIPAL PARTS			
	arbitror	vereor	loquor	orior	gradior	
	arbitrārī	verērī	loquī	orīrī	gradī	
	arbitrātus	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gressus	
PDFOFNIT	- 1-1		NDICATIVE		1:	
PRESENT	arbitro <b>r,</b> <i>I think</i>	vere <b>or</b> , <i>I fear</i>	loqu <b>or,</b> <i>I talk</i>	ori <b>or,</b> <i>I rise</i>	gradi <b>or.</b> <i>I walk</i>	
DADEDERCT	arbitrā <b>bar</b>	verē <b>bar</b>		ori <b>ēbar</b>		
IMPERFECT			loquēbar		gradi <b>ēbar</b>	
FUTURE	arbitrā <b>bor</b>	verē <b>bor</b>	loqu <b>ar</b>	ori <b>ar</b>	gradi <b>ar</b>	
PERFECT	arbitrāt <b>us</b>	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gressus	
	sum	sum	sum	sum	sum	
PLUPERFECT	arbitrāt <b>us</b>	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gress <b>us</b>	
	eram	eram	eram	eram	eram	
FUTURE PERFECT	arbitrāt <b>us</b>	verit <b>us</b>	locūtus	ortus	gress <b>us</b>	
	erō	erō	erō	erō	erō	
			JBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT	arbitre <b>r</b>	verear	loqu <b>ar</b>	ori <b>ar</b>	gradi <b>ar</b>	
IMPERFECT	arbitrā <b>rer</b>	verē <b>rer</b>	loquerer	orī <b>rer</b>	grade <b>rer</b>	
PERFECT	arbitrāt <b>us</b>	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gressus	
	sim	sim	sim	sim	sim	
PLUPERFECT	arbitrāt <b>us</b>	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gressus	
	essem	essem	essem	essem	essem	
		PRESE	ENT IMPERATI	VE		
2D SING.	arbitrā <b>re</b>	verë <b>re</b>	loque <b>re</b>	orī <b>re</b>	grade <b>re</b>	
2D PLUR.	arbitrā <b>minī</b>	verē <b>minī</b>	loqui <b>minī</b>	orī <b>minī</b>	gradi <b>minī</b>	
INFINITIVE						
PRESENT	arbitrā <b>rī</b>	verē <b>rī</b>	loqu <b>ī</b>	orī <b>rī</b>	gradī	
PERFECT	arbitrātus	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gressus	
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse	
FUTURE	arbitrāt <b>ūrus</b>	verit <b>ūrus</b>	locūt <b>ūrus</b>	ort <b>ūrus</b>	gress <b>ūrus</b>	
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse	

See p. 98.

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	<i>3d Conj.</i> RTICIPLE	4th Conj.	$3d\ Conj.\ (-iar{o})$
PRESENT	arbitrāns	verēns	loquēns	ori <b>ēns</b>	gradi <b>ēns</b>
PERFECT	arbitrāt <b>us</b>	veritus	locūt <b>us</b>	ortus	gressus
FUTURE ACTIVE	arbitrāt <b>ūrus</b>	verit <b>ūru</b> s	locūt <b>ūrus</b>	ort <b>ūrus</b>	gress <b>ūrus</b>
FUTURE PASSIVE	arbitrandus	verendus	loque <b>ndus</b>	oriendus	gradi <b>endu</b> s
		(	GERUND		
GEN.	arbitra <b>ndī</b> ,	vere <b>ndī</b> ,	loque <b>ndī</b> ,	ori <b>endī</b> ,	gradi <b>endī</b> ,
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

A few verbs (called "semideponent") are active in the present system and deponent in the perfect system, as audeō, audēre, ausus.

# Irregular Verbs PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

	PRI	NCIPAL PARTS: Suili, es	se, rui, ruturus			
	INDIC	ATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRESENT	su <b>m</b> , I am	su <b>mus</b> , we are	PRESENT	sim	sī <b>mus</b>	
	es, you are	es <b>tis.</b> you are		S <b>īS</b>	sī <b>tis</b>	
	est, he is	sunt, they are		sit	sint	
IMPERFECT	I was, etc.					
	eram	erāmus	IMPERFECT	essem	essēmus	
	erās	erātis		essēs	essētis	
	erat	erant		esset	essent	
FUTURE	I shall be, etc.					
	erō	erimus				
	eris	eritis				
	erit	er <b>unt</b>				
PERFECT	I was, etc.					
	fuī	fuimus	PERFECT	fu <b>erim</b>	fu <b>erīmu</b> s	
	fu <b>istī</b>	fuistis		fuerīs	fuerītis	
	fuit	fu <b>ērunt</b> ( <b>–ēre</b> )		fu <b>erit</b>	fu <b>erint</b>	
PLUPERFECT	I had been, etc.					
	fu <b>eram</b>	fu <b>erāmus</b>	PLUPERFECT	fuissem	fuissēmus	
	fu <b>erās</b>	fu <b>erātis</b>		fu <b>issēs</b>	fuissētis	
	fuerat	fu <b>erant</b>		fuisset	fuissent	
FUTURE PERFECT	I shall have been, etc.					
	fuerō	fu <b>erimus</b>				
	fueris	fu <b>eritis</b>				
	fuerit	fu <b>erint</b>				

INFINITIVE IMPERATIVE

PRESENT esse, to be 2D SING. es, be 2D PLUR. este, be

PERFECT fuisse, to have been

PARTICIPLE

FUTURE futurus esse, to be going to be FUTURE futurus, going to be

PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potuī, ——

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT I am able, I can etc.

possum possumus PRESENT possim possimus

potes potestis possīts possītis potest possunt possit possit

IMPERFECT I was able, I could etc.

poteram, etc. IMPERFECT possem, etc.

FUTURE I shall be able, etc.

poterō, etc.

PERFECT I was able, I could, etc.

potuī, etc. PERFECT poterim, etc.

PLUPERFECT I had been able, etc.

potueram, etc. PLUPERFECT potuissem, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT I shall have been able, etc.

potuero, etc.

INFINITIVE PARTICIPLE

PRESENT pose, to be able PRESENT potēns (adj.), powerful

PERFECT potuisse, to have been able

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

ACTIVE PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT fer $ar{o}$  ferimus feror ferimur fers fertis ferris (-re)

fers fertis ferris (-re) feriminī fert ferunt fertur feruntur

IMPERFECT ferēbam, etc. ferēbar, etc.

FUTURE feram, feres, etc. ferar, fereris, etc.

PERFECT tulī, etc. lātus sum, etc.

PLUPERFECT tuleram, etc. lātus eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT tulero, etc. latus ero, etc.

ACTIVE PASSIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

feram, ferās, etc. ferar, ferāris, etc. PRESENT

ferrem, etc. ferrer, etc. IMPERFECT

tulerim, etc. lātus sim, etc. PERFECT

tulissem, etc. lātus essem, etc. PLUPERFECT

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

fer ferte ferre feriminī 2D PERS.

INFINITIVE

ferre ferrī PRESENT

PERFECT tulisse lātus esse

lātūrus esse FUTURE

PARTICIPLE

ferēns PRESENT

lātus PERFECT

lātūrus ferendus FUTURE

GERUND

GEN. ferendī DAT. **ferendō** ACC. **ferendum** ABL. **ferendō** 

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, iī, itūrus

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE INFINITIVE

eō īmus īre PRESENT eam, etc.

ītis īs it eunt

ībam, etc. īrem, etc. IMPERFECT

FUTURE ībō ībimus itūrus esse

> ībitis ībis

ībit ībunt

iī PERFECT iimus ierim, etc. īsse

> īstī īstis

iit iērunt (-ēre)

PLUPERFECT ieram, etc. īssem, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT ierō, etc.

	PARTICIPLE			IMPERATIVE		GERUND				
PRESENT	iēns, GEN. e	untis		ī ī	te	GEN	v. eundī			
						DAT	. eundō			
FUTURE	itūrus (PASSIVE eundus)		)			ACC	c. eundu	m		
							ABL. eundum			
PRINCIPAL PARTS										
	volō nōlō velle nōlle voluī nōluī			mālō						
			nōlle		r	mālle				
				nōluī			māluī			
INDICATIVE										
PRESENT	volō	volumus		nōlō	nōlumus	n	mālō	mālumus		
	vīs	vultis		nōn vīs	nön vultis	n	nāvīs	māvultis		
	vult	volunt		nōn vult	nōlunt	n	nāvult	mālunt		
IMPERFECT	volēbam, etc. nolēba		nōlēbam, e	am, etc.		mālēbam, etc.				
FUTURE	volam, volēs, etc.			nōlam, nōlēs, etc.		n	mālam, mālēs, etc.			
PERFECT	voluī, etc.			nōluī, etc.		māluī, etc.				
PLUPERFECT	volueram, etc.			nōlueram, etc.		mālueram, etc.				
FUTURE PERFECT	voluerō, etc.		nöluerö, etc.		n	mālerō, etc.				
			S	UBJUNCTIVE						
PRESENT	velim	velīmus		nõlim	nõlīmus	r	nālim	mālīmus		
	velīs	velītis		nōlīs	nõlītis	r	mālīs	mālītis		
	velit	velint		nōlit	nōlint	r	nālit	mālint		
IMPERFECT	vellem, etc.			nöllem, etc.		n	māllem, etc.			
PERFECT	voluerim, etc.			nōluerim, etc.		māluerim, etc.				
PLUPERFECT	voluissem, etc.			nōluissem, etc.		māluissem, etc.				
			PRES	ENT IMPERATI	VE					
2D PERS.				nõlī	nōlīte	_				
				INFINITIVE						
PRESENT	velle			nōlle		n	nālle			
PERFECT	voluisse			nōluisse		n	nāluisse			
				PARTICIPLE						

nölēns

volēns

PRESENT

PRINCIPAL PARTS: fīō, fierī, (factus)

#### Defective Verbs

fīam, fīēs, etc.

**FUTURE** 

Coepī is used only in the perfect system. For the present system **incipiō** is used. With a passive infinitive the passive of **coepī** is used: **Lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt**, *Stones began to be thrown*. **Meminī** and **ōdī** likewise are used only in the perfect system, but with present meaning. The former has an imperative **mementō**, **mementōte**.

#### **Contracted Forms**

Verbs having perfect stems ending in  $-\bar{a}v$ - or  $-\bar{e}v$ - are sometimes contracted by dropping -ve- before -r- and -vi- before -s-: amārunt, cōnsuēsse. Verbs having perfect stems ending in  $-\bar{i}v$ - drop -vi- before -s- but only -v- before -r-: audīsset, audierat.

#### Syntax<sub>1</sub>

#### Agreement

- 1. *Adjectives*. Adjectives and participles agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns which they modify.
- 2. Adjectives as Nouns. Sometimes adjectives are used as nouns: nostrī, our (men); malum, evil.
- 3. *Verbs*. Verbs agree in person and number with their subjects. When two subjects are connected by **aut**, **aut**... **aut**, **neque**... **neque**, the verb agrees with the nearer subject.
- 4. *Relative Pronoun*. The relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent but its case depends upon its use in its own clause.
- 5. Appositives. Appositives agree in case.

#### Noun Syntax

#### Nominative

- 1. Subject. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
- 2. *Predicate. a.* A noun or adjective used in the predicate with a linking verb (*is, are, seem,* etc.) is in the nominative.

Însula est magna.

The island is large.

Sicilia est īnsula.

Sicily is an island.

b. Predicate nouns and adjectives are used not only with sum but also with fīō and the passive voice of verbs meaning *call*, *choose*, *appoint*, *elect*, and the like.

Caesar dux factus est. Cicerō Pater Patriae

Caesar was made leader. Cicero was called the Father

appellātus est.

of his Country.

#### Genitive

1. Possession. Possession is expressed by the genitive.

viae īnsulae

the roads of the island

2. *Description*. The genitive, if modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

virī magnae virtūtis

men of great courage

3. *Of the Whole*. The genitive of the whole (also called partitive genitive) represents the whole to which the part belongs.

hōrum omnium fortissmī

the bravest of all these

nihil praesidī

no guard

4. *With Adjectives*. The genitive is used with certain adjectives. In many cases the English idiom is the same; in others, it is not.

bellandī cupidus reī mīlitāris perītus desirous of waging war skilled in warfare

50

#### NOTA BENE

A plural verb may be used with a singular subject which is plural in thought.

- a. The antecedent of the relative pronoun is often omitted.
- b. Sometimes the antecedent is represented by an entire clause, in which case the pronoun is best translated a thing which.
- c. In Latin a relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence to refer to the thought of the preceding sentence. The English idiom calls for a demonstrative or personal pronoun.

quā dē cuasā for this reason

It is often best to supply *as* in translating the appositive.

eōdem homine magistrō ūtī

to use the same man as teacher



<sup>1</sup> In this summary only those constructions are included which are relatively more important and which recur repeatedly in the text, or are referred to in the book.

#### NIOTA (KENE

With the active voice of the verbs discussed in the Nominative section, two accusatives are used.

The descriptive genitive (p. 475) is largely confined to permanent qualities such as measure and number.

spatium decem
pedum
a space of ten feet

a. The genitive of the whole (p. 475) is similar to the English idiom except when the genitive is used with such words as nihil, satis, quid. b. Instead of the genitive of the whole. the ablative with ex or de is regularly used with cardinal numerals (except mīlia) and quīdam, often also with other words, such as paucī and complūrēs. quinque ex

quinque ex
nostris
five of our men
quidam ex
militibus
certain of the

#### Dative

1. *Indirect Object*. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. It is used with verbs of *giving*, *reporting*, *telling*, etc.

Nautae pecūniam dono. I give money to the sailor.

2. *Purpose*. The dative is sometimes used to express purpose.

Locum castrīs dēlēgit. He chose a place for a camp.

3. *Reference*. The dative of reference shows the person concerned or referred to.

sī mihi dignī esse vultis

if you wish to be worthy in my sight (lit., for me)

4. Separation. The dative of separation (really reference) is usually confined to persons and occurs chiefly with verbs compounded with ab, dē, and ex.

scūtō ūnī mīlitī dētrācto

having seized a shield from a soldier

5. With Adjectives. The dative is used with certain adjectives, as amīcus. idōneus, pār, proximus, similis, ūtilis, and their opposites. In many cases the English idiom is the same.

Hic liber est similis illī.

This book is similar to that.

6. With Special Verbs. The dative is used with a few intransitive verbs, such as confido, credo, desum, faveo, ignosco, impero, invideo, noceo, parco, pareo, persuadeo, placeo, praesto, resisto, and studeo.

Tibi paret sed mihi resistit. He obeys you but resists me.

a. Some of these verbs become impersonal in the passive and the dative is retained. The perfect passive participle of such verbs is used only in the neuter.

Eī persusāsum est.

He was persuaded.

b. A neuter pronoun or adjective or an **ut** clause may be used as a direct object with **impero** and **persuādeo**.

Hoc mihi persuāsit.

He persuaded me of this.

7. With Compounds. The dative is often used with certain compound verbs, especially when the noun goes closely with the prefix of the verb. No general rule can be given. Sometimes both an accusative and a dative are used when the main part of the verb is transitive.

Gallīs bellum intulit.

He made war against the Gauls.

8. Possession. The possessor may be expressed by the dative with sum.

Liber mihi est.

I have a book.

soldiers

9. *Agent*. The dative of agent is used with the future passive participle to indicate the person upon whom the obligation rests.

Hoc opus võbīs faciendum est. This work is to be done by you.

i.e., This work must be done by you.

Accusative

1. Direct Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Viam parāmus. We are preparing a way.

2. Extent. Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.

**Duōs annōs remānsit.**He remained two years.

Flūmen decem pedēs altum est.

The river is ten feet deep.

3. *Place to Which*. The accusative with **ad** (*to*) or **in** (*into*) expresses *place to which*. These prepositions, however, are omitted before **domum** and names of towns and cities.

Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.They send envoys to him.Rōmam eunt.They go to Rome.

4. Subject of Infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.

Pueros esse bonos volumus. We want the boys to be good.

 Two Accusatives. With trādūcō and trānsportō two accusatives are used. In the passive the word closely connected with the prefix remains in the accusative.

Cōpiās Rhēnum trādūcit. He leads his forces across the

Rhine.

Cōpiae Rhēnum trādūcuntur. The forces are led across the

Rhine.

6. With Prepositions. The accusative is used with prepositions (except those listed on p. 479, 19). When in and sub show the direction toward which a thing moves, the accusative is used.

#### Ablative

Summary. The uses of the ablative may be grouped under three heads:

- I. The *trne* or "*from*" *ablative* (**ab**, *from*, and **lātus**, *carried*), used with the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, and **ex**—if any preposition is used.
- II. The *associative* or "with" ablative, used with the preposition cum—if any preposition is used.
- III. The *place* or "in" ablative, used with the prepositions in and sub—if any preposition is used.
  - 1. *Separation*. Separation may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition, always so with **careō** and **līberō**, often also with **abstineō**, **dēsistō**, **excēdō**, and other verbs.

#### KIOTA - KENE

The dative of reference (p. 476) is often used with the dative of purpose to show the person or thing affected ("double" dative).

Haec castra erunt praesidiō oppidō.

This camp will be (for) a protection to the town.

When the preposition **ad** is used with names of towns, it means *to* the vicinity of.

a. Caesar uses
prohibeō, keep from,
usually without a
preposition, but
occasionally with it.
Suīs fīnibus eōs
prohibent.

They keep them from their own territory.

b. Other verbs expressing separation regularly require the prepositions ab. dē, or ex.

### MOTA-BENE

The preposition is regularly omitted before **domō** as well as before names of towns and cities. When it is used with such names, it means from the vicinity of.

2. *Place from Which*. The ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** expresses *place from which*.

ex agrīs

out of the fields

3. *Origin*. The ablative without or with a preposition (ab, dē ex) expresses origin.

amplissimō genere nātus

born of most illustrious family

4. Agent. The ablative with  $\bar{\bf a}$  or  ${\bf ab}$  is used with a passive verb to show the person (or animal) by whom something is done.

Amāmur ab amīcīs.

We are loved by our friends.

5. *Comparison*. After a comparative the ablative is used when **quam** (*than*) is omitted.

amplius pedibus decem Nec locus tibi ūllus dulcior esse dēbet patriā. more than ten feet

No spot ought to be dearer to you
than your native land.

6. Accompaniment. The ablative with cum expresses accompaniment.

Cum servō venit.

He is coming with the slave.

- a. When cum is used with a personal, relexive, or relative pronoun, it is attached to it as an enclitic: vobiscum, with you; secum, with himself; quibuscum, with whom.
- b. Cum may be omitted in military phrases indicating accompaniment, if modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

omnibus suīs cōpiīs cum tribus legiōnibus with all his forces with three legions

7. *Manner*. The ablative of manner with **cum** describes how something is done. **Cum** is sometimes omitted if an adjective modifies the noun.

(Cum) magnō studiō labōrat.

He labors with great eagerness (very eagerly).

8. *Absolute*. A noun in the ablative used with a participle, adjective, or other noun and having no grammatical connection with any other word in its clause is called an ablative absolute.

In translating, an ablative absolute should, as a rule, be changed to a clause expressing *time*, *cause*, *condition*, *means*, or *concession*, according to the context. At times it may best be rendered by a coodinate clause.

Servō accūsātō, dominus

discessit.

After accusing the slave (lit., the slave having been accused), the master departed.

Oppidīs nostrīs captīs,

bellum gerēmus.

If our towns are captured (lit., ourtowns captured), we shall wage war.

9. *Means*. The means by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Ratibus trānsībant. They were trying to cross by means of rafts.

10. With Special Verbs. The ablative is used with a few verbs, notably **potior** and **ūtor**, whose English equivalents govern a direct object.

Castrīs potītī sunt. They got possession of the camp.

11. *Cause*. The ablative of cause is used chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing feeling.

laborāre iniūriāto suffer because of the wrongvīribus confisirelying on their strength

12. *Measure of Difference*. The ablative without a preposition expresses the measure of difference.

tribus annīs ante three years ago (lit., before by three years)

multō maior much larger (lit., larger by much)

13. *Description*. The ablative, like the genitive, is used with an adjective to describe a noun. It is regularly used of temporary qualities, such as personal appearance.

hominēs inimīcā faciē men with an unfriendly appearance

- 14. *Place Where*. The ablative with **in** or **sub** expresses *place where*. The preposition may be omitted, however, with certain words like **locō**, **locīs**, and **parte**, also in certain fixed expressions like **tōtō** orbe **terrārum**, *in the whole world*. In poetry the omission of the preposition is more frequent. See also Locative.
- 15. *Time When. Time when* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

aestāte in summer
paucīs diēbus within a few days

16. Respect. The ablative tells in what respect the statement applies.

Nos superant numero. They surpass us in number.

17. *Accordance*. The ablative is used with a few words to express the idea *in accordance with*.

more suo in accordance with his custom

18. With Dignus. The ablative is used with dignus and indignus.

dignus patre worthy of his father

19. With Prepositions. The ablative is used with the prepositions ab, cum, de, ex, prae, pro, sine; sometimes with in and sub (see 14).

#### Locative

**Domus** and the names of towns and cities require a separate case, called the locative, to express *place where*. The locative has the same ending as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions; it has the same ending as the ablative in the plural of these declensions and in the third declension, singular and plural.

domīat homeRōmaeat RomeAthēnīsat Athens

#### Vocative

The vocative is used in addressing a person. Unless emphatic it never stands first.

Quid facis, amīce? What are you doing, my friend?

#### Verb Syntax

#### Tenses

The tenses of the indicative in Latin are in general used like those in English, but the following points are to be noted.

1. *Present*. The Latin present has the force of the English simple present and of the progressive present.

Vocat.

He calls. or He is calling.

2. *Historical Present*. The historical present is used for vivid effect instead of a past tense in Latin as in English.

Rōmam proficīscuntur.

They depart(ed) for Rome.

a. In clauses introduced by **dum** meaning *while*, the historical present is always used. In translating use the English past.

dum haec geruntur

while these things were going on

3. *Imperfect*. The Latin imperfect expresses repeated, customary, or continous action in the past and is usually best translated by the English progressive past, sometimes by the auxiliary *would*, or by a phrase, such as *used to* or *kept on*.

Pugnābant.

They were fighting.

4. *Perfect*. The Latin perfect is generally equivalent to the English past, occasionally to the present perfect.

Vīcī.

I conquered. or I have conquered.

5. Sequence of Tenses. The subjunctive mood is used chiefly in subordinate clauses, in which its tenses are determined by the principle of "sequence of tenses," as shown in the following summary and examples:

a. PRIMARY TENSES (referring to the present or future)

Indicative: present, future, future perfect.

Subjunctive: present, perfect.

1. Venit ut mē videat. He is coming to see me (that he may

see me).

2. **Veniet ut mē videat.** He will come to see me (that he may

see me).

3. Excesserō priusquam I shall have departed before he

veniat. comes.

(or factūrus sīs).

5. Rogō quid herī fēcerīs. I ask what you did yesterday.

b. SECONDARY TENSES (referring to the past)

Indicative: imperfect, perfect, pluperfect.

Subjunctive: imperfect, pluperfect.

1. Vēnit ut mē vidēret. He came to see me (that he might

see me).

2. **Rogābam quid facerēs.** I kept asking what you were doing.

3. Rogābam quid anteā I kept asking what you had done

fēcissēs. before.

4. Excesseram priusquam I had departed before he came.

venīret.

Primary indicative tenses are followed by primary subjunctive tenses, secondary by secondary.

#### Indicative Mood

The indicative mood is generally used in Latin as in English. The following points are to be noted.

- 1. *Relative Clauses*. Most relative clauses are in the indicative, as in English.
- 2. Adverbial Clauses. Clauses introduced by postquam, posteāquam (after), ubi, ut (when), cum prīmum, simul ac (as soon as), dum (while, as long as), quamquam, etsī (although) are in the indicative.

**Postquam id conspexit,**signum dedit.

After he noticed this, he gave the signal.

3. *Noun Clauses*. A clause introduced by **quod** (*the fact that, that*) is in the indicative and may be used as subject or object of the main verb or in apposition with a demonstative.

Grātum est quod mē

It is gratifying that you miss me.
requīris.



#### Subjunctive Mood

1. *Volitive*. The volitive (volō) subjunctive represents an act as *willed* and is translated by *let*. The negative is nē.

Patriam dēfendāmus.

Let us defend our country.

Nē id videat.

Let him not see it.

2. *Purpose Clauses*. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause with **ut** or **utī** (negative **nē**) to express the purpose of the act expressed by the principal clause.

Venīmus ut videāmus.

We come that we may see. or

We come to see.

Fugit në videātur.

He flees that he may not be seen.

3. Relative Purpose Clauses. If the principal clause contains (or implies) a definite antecedent, the purpose clause may be introduced by the relative pronoun quī ( = ut is or ut eī) instead of ut.

Mīlitēs mīsit quī hostem impedīrent.

He sent soldiers to hinder the enemy.

4. *Quō Purpose Clauses*. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, **quō** is generally used instead of **ut**.

Accēdit quō facilius audiat. He approaches in order that he may hear more easily.

(For other ways to express purpose see Dative, Future Passive Participle, Gerund.)

5. Volitive Noun Clauses. Clauses in the subjunctive with ut (negative nē) are used as the objects of such verbs as moneō, rogō, petō, hortor. persuādeō, and imperō.

Mīlitēs hortātus est ut

He urged the soldiers to be brave.

fortēs essent.

Helvētiīs persuāsit ut

He persuaded the Helvetians to leave.

exīrent.

6. Clauses with Verbs of Hindering. With verbs of hindering and preventing, as impediō and dēterreō, the subjunctive introduced by nē or quō minus is used if the main clause is affirmative, by quīn if negative.

Tū dēterrēre potes nē maior multitūdō trādūcātur. You can prevent a greater number from being brought over.

7. Clauses of Fear. With verbs of fearing, clauses in the subjunctive introduced by ne (that) and ut (that not) are used.

Verēbātur nē tū aeger

He feared that you were sick.

essēs.

# MUTÁ-BEME

a. With iubeō (order), unlike imperō, the infinitive is used. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

Iussit eos venīre.

He ordered them
to come.

Imperāvit eīs ut venīrent.

He ordered them to come.

b. Vetō (forbid) and cupiō (desire) are used like iubeō.

The infinitive is often used with **prohibeo** (prevent).

Caesar prohibuit eos trānsīre.

Caesar prevented them from crossing.

and the same and the same of t

8. Result Clauses. The result of the action or state of the principal verb is expressed by a subordinate clause with ut (utī), negative ut non (utī non), and the subjunctive.

Tantum est periculum ut pauci veniant.

Ita bene erant castra mūnīta ut nōn capī possent. So great is the danger that few are coming.

So well had the camp been fortified that it could not be taken.

 Noun Clauses of Result. Verbs meaning to happen (accido) or to cause or effect (efficio) require clauses of result in the subjunctive with ut (uti) or ut (uti non, used as subject or object of the main verb:

Accidit ut mē nōn vidēret. Efficiam ut veniat. It happened that he did not see me. I shall cause him to come.

- 10. Descriptive Relative Clauses. A relative clause with the subjunctive may be used to describe an indefinite antecedent. Such clauses are called relative clauses of description (characteristic) and are especially common after such expressions as **ūnus** and **sōlus**, **sunt quī** (there are those who). and **nēmō est quī** (there is no one who).
- 11. *Cum Clauses*. In secondary sequence **cum** (*when*) is used with the imperfect of the pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which the action of the main verb occurred.

Cum mīlitēs redīssent. When the soldiers returned, Caesar ōrātionem habuit. Caesar made a speech.

a. In some clauses **cum** with the subjunctive is best translated *since*.

Quae cum ita sint, non ībo. Since this is so, I shall not go (literally, When this is so).

b. In some clauses **cum** with the subjunctive is best translated *although*.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen non ībo.

Although this is so, yet I shall not go (literally, When, etc.).

When **ut** means *although*, *granted that*, its clause is in the subjunctive.

12. Anticipatory Clauses. Dum (until), antequam, and priusquam (before) introduce clauses (a) in the indicative to indicate an actual fact, (b) in the subjunctive to indicate an act as anticipated.

Silentium fuit dum tū vēnistī.

There was silence until you came.

Caesar exspectāvit dum nāvēs convenīrent.

Caesar waited until the ships should assemble.

Priusquam tēlum adigī posset, omnēs fūgērunt.

Before a weapon could be thrown, all fled.

# MOTA-BENE

Result clauses are usually anticipated by some word in the main clause meaning *so* or *such* (ita, tantus, tot, tam, etc.)

Commence of the Commence of th



Sometimes a descriptive clause expresses cause.

mmmmmmm

# The first member of a double indirect question is introduced by utrum or -ne, the second by an. Quaerō utrum vērum an falsum sit. I ask whether it is true or false.

www.www.

13.Indirect Questions. In a question indirectly quoted or expressed after some introductory verb such as ask, doubt, learn, know, tell, hear, etc., the verb is in the subjunctive.

Rogant quis sit.

They ask who he is.

14. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. An indicative in a subordinate clause becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse. If the clause is not regarded as an essential part of the quotation but is merely explanatory or parenthetical, its verb may be in the indicative.

Dīxit sē pecūniam invēnisse He said that he found the money quam āmīsisset. Which he had lost.

15. *Attraction*. A verb in a clause dependent upon a subjunctive or an infinitive, is frequently "attracted" to the subjunctive, especially if its clause is an essential part of the statement.

Dat negōtium hīs utī ea quae apud Belgās gerantur cognōscant. He directs them to learn what is going on among the Belgians.

16. *Quod Causal Clauses*. Causal clauses introduced by **quod** (or **proptereā quod**) and **quoniam** (*since*, *because*) are in the indicative when they give the writer's or speaker's reason, the subjunctive when the reason is presented as that of another person.

Amīcō grātiās ēgī quod mihi pecūniam dederat. Rōmānīs bellum intulit quod agrōs suōs I thanked my friend because he had given me money.

He made war against the Romans because (as he alleged) they had laid waste his lands.

#### Outline of Conditions

vāstāvissent.

- a. Subordinate clause ("condition") introduced by sī, nisi, or sī nōn.
- b. Principal clause ("conclusion").
- 1. *Simple* (nothing implied as to truth). Any possible combination of tenses of the indicative, as in English.

Sī mē laudat, laetus sum.

If he praises me, I am glad.

- 2. Contrary to Fact.
  - a. Present: imperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

Sī mē laudāret, laetus essem. *If he were praising me* (but he isn't). *I should be glad* (now).

b. Past: pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

Sī nē laudāvisset, laetus fuissem.

If he had praised me (but he didn't), I should have been glad (then). c. Mixed:past condition and present conclusion.

Sī mē laudāvisset, laetus If he had praised me (but he didn't), essem.

I should be glad (now).

3. Future Less Vivid ("should," "would"). Present subjunctive in both clauses.

**Sī mē laudet, laetus sim.** *If he should praise me, I should be glad.* 

#### Imperative Mood

Affimative commands are expressed by the imperative; negative commands by the present imperative of  $n\bar{o}l\bar{o}$  ( $n\bar{o}l\bar{i}$ ,  $n\bar{o}l\bar{i}te$ ) and the infinitive. The imperative with  $n\bar{e}$  is used in poetry.

Amā inimīcos tuos. Love your enemies.

**Nolite ire.** *Do not go* (lit., *Be unwilling to go*).

#### Reflexive Use of the Passive

Occasionally the passive form of a verb or participle is used in a reflexive sense: armārī, to arm themselves.

#### Participle

- 1. The tenses of the participle (present, perfect, future) indicate time *present*, *past*, or *future* from the standpoint of the main verb.
- 2. a. Perfect participles are often used simply as adjectives: **nōtus**, *known*.
  - b. Participles, like adjectives, may be used as nouns: **factum**, "having been done," *deed*.
- 3. The Latin participle is often a *one-word substitute* for a subordinate clause in English introduced by *who* or *which, when* or *after, since* or *because, although,* and *if.*

#### **Future Passive Participle**

The future passive participle (gerundive) is a verbal adjective, having thirty forms. It has two distinct uses:

1. As a predicate adjective with forms of **sum**<sub>1</sub> when it naturally indicates, as in English, *what must be done*. The person upon whom the obligation rests is in the dative.

Caesarī omnia erant agenda. Caesar had to do all things
(lit., all things were to be done by
Caesar).

2. As modifier of a noun or pronoun in various constructions, with no idea of obligation:

dē Rōmā cōnstituendā about founding Rome (lit. about Rome to be founded)

# MOTA - BENE

Exhortations and commands, though main clauses, become subjunctive in indirect discourse.

(Direct) **Īte!**Go!
(Indirect) **Dīxit īren.**He said that they
should go.

# HOTABENE

With phrases introduced by ad and the accusative or by causā (or grātiā) and the genitive it expresses purpose. Causā and grātiā are always placed after the participle.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Mārcus dēligitur.

Marcus is chosen to accomplish these things (lit., for these things to be accomplished).

Caesaris videndī causā (or grātiā) vēnit.

He came for the sake of seeing Caesar (lit., for the sake of Caesar to be seen).

 $_{\rm I}$  The so-called passive periphrastic, a term not used in this book. The term should be avoided because it is not only useless but troublesome.

# MOTA-SENE

The gerund usually does not have an object. Instead, the future passive participle is used, modifying the noun.

# NOTA-BENE

With the passive third singular (impersonal) of these verbs the infinitive is the subject.

Caesarī nūntiātur eös trānsīre.

It is reported to

Caesar that they

are crossing.

#### Gerund

The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension with only four forms—genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

The uses of the gerund are similar to some of those of the future passive participle:

cupidus bellandī desirous of waging war
Ad discendum vēnī. I came for learning (i.e., to learn).
Discendī causā (or grātiā) I came for the sake of learning.
vēnī.

#### Infinitive

venīre.

1. The infinitive is an indeclinable neuter verbal noun, and as such it may be used as the subject of a verb.

Erräre hūmānum est. To err is human.
Vidēre est crēdere. To see is to believe.

2. With many verbs the infinitive, like other nouns, may be used as a direct object. (Sometimes called the complementary infinitive.)

Cōpiās movēre parat. He prepares to move the troops.

- 3. The infinitive object of some verbs, such as **iubeō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, and **doceō**, often has a noun or pronoun subject in the accusative.
- 4. Statements that give indirectly the thoughts or words of another, used as the objects of verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *hearing*, *perceiving*, etc., have verbs in the infinitive with their subjects in the accusative.

(Direct) Dīcit, "Puerī He says, "The boys are coming."
veniunt."

(Indirect) Dīcit puerōs He says that the boys are coming.

5. *a*. The present infinitive represents time or actions as *going on*, from the standpoint of the introductory verb:

 $\begin{array}{c} \textbf{D\bar{i}cit} \\ \textbf{D\bar{i}xit} \end{array} \} \ \ \textbf{e\bar{o}s pugn\bar{a}re}. \quad \text{He} \ \ \left\{ \begin{matrix} says \\ said \end{matrix} \right\} \ \ (\textit{that}) \ \textit{they} \ \ \left\{ \begin{matrix} are \\ were \end{matrix} \right\} \textit{fighting}.$ 

b. The future infinitive represents time or actions as *subsequent to* that of the introductory verb:

 $\begin{array}{c} \textbf{D}\bar{\textbf{i}}\textbf{c}\bar{\textbf{i}} \\ \textbf{D}\bar{\textbf{i}}\textbf{x}\bar{\textbf{i}} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \textbf{e}\bar{\textbf{o}}\textbf{s} \ \textbf{pugn}\bar{\textbf{a}} \\ \textbf{t}\bar{\textbf{u}}\bar{\textbf{r}}\bar{\textbf{o}}\textbf{s} \ \textbf{esse.} \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \textbf{He} \hspace{0.1cm} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} says \\ said \end{array} \right\} \hspace{0.1cm} \textit{(that) they} \hspace{0.1cm} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} will \\ would \end{array} \right\} \textit{fight.}$ 

c. The perfect infinitive represents time or action as *completed before* that of the introductory verb:

 $\begin{array}{c} \text{D}\tilde{\textbf{icit}} \\ \text{D}\tilde{\textbf{ixit}} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{c} \text{e}\tilde{\textbf{o}}s \\ \text{pugn}\tilde{\textbf{a}}\text{visse.} \end{array} \quad \text{He} \quad \left\{ \begin{matrix} says \\ said \end{matrix} \right\} \quad (\textit{that}) \; \textit{they} \quad \left\{ \begin{matrix} have \\ had \end{matrix} \right\} \quad \textit{fought.} \end{array}$ 

#### **Summary of Prefixes and Suffixes**

#### Prefixes

Many Latin words are formed by joining prefixes (**prae**, *in front*: **fīxus**, *attached*) to *root* words. These same prefixes, most of which are prepositions, are also those used most often in English.

Some prefixes change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are attached. This change is called assimilation (ad, to; similis, like).

Many prefixes in Latin and English may have intensive force, especially con-, ex-, ob-, per-. They are then best translated either by an English intensive, such as *up* or *out*, or by an adverb, such as *completely, thoroughly, deeply.* Thus commoveo means *move greatly,* permagnus, *very great.* obtineo, *hold on to,* concito, *rouse up,* excipio, *catch, receive.* 

- 1. **ab** (**abs**,  $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ ), from: **abs-tine** $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ ; ah-undance, abs-tain, a-vocation.
- 2. ad, to, toward: ad-iciō; ac-curate, an-nounce, ap-paratus, ad-vocate.
- 3. ante, before: ante-cēdō; ante-cedent.
- 4. bene, well: bene-dicō; bene-factor.
- 5. bi-, bis-, twice, two: bi-ennium; bi-ennial.
- 6. circum, around: circum-eō; circum-ference.
- 7. con-, with, together: con-voco; con-voke, col-lect, com-motion, cor-rect.
- 8. contrā, against: contra-dict.
- 9. dē, from, down from, not: dē-ferō; de-ter.
- 10. dis-, apart, not: dis-cēdō; dis-locate, dif-fuse, di-vert.
- 11.  $ex(\bar{e})$ , out of, from:  $ex-e\bar{o}$ ; ex-port, e-dit, ef-fect.
- 12. extrā, outside: extra-legal.
- 13. in, in, into, against: in-dūcō; in-habit, im-migrant, il-lusion, en-chant.
- 14. in-, not, un-: im-mēnsus; il-legal, im-moral, ir-regular.
- 15. inter, between, among: inter-clūdō; inter-class.
- 16. intrā, within, inside: intra-collegiate.
- 17. intrō-, within: intro-duce.
- 18. male, ill: male-factor, mal-formation.
- 19. multi-, much, many: multi-graph.
- 20. non, not: non-sense.
- 21. **ob**, against, toward: **ob-tineō**; oc-cur, of-fer, o-mit, op-pose, ob-tain.
- 22. **per**, through, thoroughly: **per-moveō**; per-fect.
- 23. post, after: post-pone.
- 24. **prae**, before, in front of: **prae-ficio**; pre-cede.
- 25. **prō**, for, forward: **prō-dūcō**: pro-mote.
- 26. re- (red-), back, again: re-dūcō, red-igō; re-fer.
- 27. sē-, apart from: sē-cēdō; se-parate.
- 28. sēmi-, half, partly: sēmi-barbarus; semi-annual.
- 29. **sub**, under, up from under: **suc-cēdō**; suf-fer, sug-gest, sup-port, sub-let.
- 30. **super** (**sur–**), over, above: **super-sum**; super-fluous, sur-mount.
- 31. trāns (trā-), through, across: trā-dūcō; trans-fer.
- 32. ultrā, extremely: ultra-fashionable.
- 33. **ūn–** (**ūni–**), *one: uni-form.*

#### Suffixes

Particles that are attached to the ends of words are called suffixes (sub, under, after; fīxus, attached). Like the Latin prefixes, the Latin suffixes play a very important part in the formation of English words.

The meaning of suffixes is often far less definite than that of prefixes. In many cases they merely indicate the part of speech.

Suffixes are often added to words that already have suffixes. Thus, functionalistically has six suffixes, all of Latin or Greco-Latin origin except the last. A suffix often combines with a preceding letter or letters to form a new suffix. This is especially true of suffixes added to perfect participles whose base ends in -s- or -t-. In the following list no account is taken of such English suffixes as -ant, derived from the ending of the Latin present participle.

- 1. -ālis (-al), pertaining to: līber-ālis; annu-al.
- 2. -ānus (-an, -ane, -ain), pertaining to: Rōm-ānus; capt-ain, hum-ane.
- 3. **–āris** (*–ar*), *pertaining to:* **famili-āris**; *singul-ar*.
- 4. **–ārium** (*–arium*, *–ary*), place where: aqu-arium, gran-ary.
- 5. –ārius (–ary), pertaining to: frūment-ārius; ordin-ary.
- 6. **–āticum** (*–age*): *bagg-age*.
- 7. -āx (-ac-ious), tending to: aud-āx; rap-acious.
- 8. **-faciō**, **-ficō** (-fy), make: **cōn-ficiō**; satis-fy.
- 9. -ia (-y), -cia, -tia (-ce), -antia (-ance, -ancy), -entia (-ence, -ency), condition of: memor-ia, grā-tia, cōnst-antia, sent-entia; memor-y, provin-ce, gra-ce, const-ancy, sent-ence.
- 10. **–icus** (–ic), pertaining to: **pūbl-icus**; civ-ic.
- 11. **-idus** (-id), having the quality of: **rap-idus**; flu-id.
- 12. **–ilis** (*–ile*, *–il*), **–bilis** (*–ble*, *–able*, *–ible*), *able to be:* **fac-ilis**, **laudā-bilis**; *fert-ile*, *no-ble*, *compar-able*, *terr-ible*.
- 13. **–īlis** (*–ile*, *–il*), pertaining to: **cīv-īlis**; serv-ile.
- 14. **–īnus** (*–ine*), *pertaining to:* **mar-īnus**; *div-ine*.
- 15. -iō (-ion), -siō (-sion), -tiō (-tion), act or state of: reg-iō, mān-siō, ōrā-tiō; commun-ion, ten-sion, rela-tion.
- 16. -ium (-y), -cium, -tium (-ce): remed-ium, sõlā-cium, pre-tium; stud-y, edifi-ce.
- 17. **–īvus** (*–ive*), *pertaining to:* **capt-īvus**; *nat-ive*.
- 18. -lus, -ellus, -ulus (-lus, -le) little ("diminutive"): parvu-lus, castel-lum; gladio-lus, parti-cle.
- 19. -men(-men, -min, -me):  $l\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ -men; cri-min-al, cri-me.
- 20. -mentum (-ment), means of: im-pedī-mentum; comple-ment.
- 21. **–or** (*–or*), *state of:* **tim-or**; *terr-or*.
- 22. **–or**, **–sor**, **–tor** (*–sor*, *–tor*), *one who:* **scrīp-tor**; *inven-tor*.
- 23. **–ōrium** (*–orium*, *–ory*, *–or*) place where: audit-orium, fact-ory, mirr-or.
- 24. **–**ōsus (*–ous*, *–ose*), full of: ōti-ōsus; copi-ous.
- 25. -tās (-ty), state of: līber-tās; integri-ty.
- 26. -tō, -sō, -itō, keep on ("frequentative"): dic-tō, prēn-sō, vent-itō.
- 27. **-tūdō** (*-tude*), *state of:* **magni-tūdō**; *multi-tude*.
- 28. -tūs (-tue), state of: vir-tūs; vir-tue.
- 29. –ūra, –sūra, –tūra (–ure, –sure, –ture): fig-ūra, mēn-sūra, agricul-tūra; proced-ure, pres-sure, na-ture.

# 

## Latin-English

Verbs of the first conjugation whose parts are regular (i.e., like **portō**, p. 463) are indicated by the figure 1. Proper names are not included unless they are spelled differently in English or are difficult to pronounce in English. Their English pronunciation is indicated by a simple system. The vowels are as follows:  $\bar{a}$  as in *hate*,  $\bar{a}$  as in *hat*,  $\bar{e}$  as in *feed*,  $\bar{e}$  as in *feed*,  $\bar{e}$  as in *bite*,  $\bar{a}$  as in *bite*,  $\bar{a}$  as in *hope*,  $\bar{b}$  as in *cute*,  $\bar{b}$  as in *cute*. In the ending  $\bar{e}s$  the s is soft as in *rose*. When the accented syllable ends in a consonant, the vowel is short; otherwise it is long.

A., abbreviation for Aulus, -ī, m.. Aulus **ā**, **ab**, **abs**, *prep. w. abl.*, from, by abdō, -ere, abdidī, abditus, put away, hide abdūcō, -ere, abdūxī, **abductus**, lead *or* take away abeō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus, go away, depart; change (into) abiciō, -ere, abiēcī, abiectus, throw away abrogō, l, repeal abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, cut away absēns, gen. absentis, absent absentia, -ae, f., absence abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, hold away; refrain abstulī, see auferō absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be absent abundo, 1, be well supplied ac, see atque accēdō. –ere. accessī. accessūrus, come to. approach, be added accidō, -ere, accidī, -, fall, happen accīdō, -ere, accīdī, accīsus, cut into

accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptus,

receive, accept, be told **accommodo**. I, fit (on)

accumbō, -ere, accubuī, accubitūrus, recline (at the accūrātē, adv., carefully accurro, -ere, accurri, accursūrus, run accūsō. 1. blame, criticize **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, sharp, keen, fierce acerbē, adv., severely acerbitās, -tātis, f., bitterness: suffering acerbus. -a. -um. sour. bitter Achaia, -ae, f., Achaia (Akā'ya), Greece aciēs, aciēī, f., battle line **ācriter**, adv., fiercely; comp. ācrius; superl. ācerrimē Actium, -tī, n., Actium (Ak'shĭum), a promontory in Epirus acūtus, -a, -um, sharp ad, prep. w. acc., to, toward, for, near, at, until: adv., w. numbers. about adāctus, part of adigō adaequō, 1, equal addō, -ere, addidī, additus, add addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductus, lead (to), pull in, bring, influence; contract adeō, adīre, adiī, aditūrus, go to, approach adeō, adv., so, so much adfore, fut. inf. of adsum

adhaereō, -ēre, adhaesī, adhaesus, stick (to) adhibeō, -ēre, adhibuī, adhibitus, hold toward; admit to, use adhūc, adv., up to this time, still adiciō, -ere, adiēcī, adiectus, adigō, -ere, adēgī, adāctus, bring (to), bring near, throw (to) aditus, -ūs, m., approach, access adiungō, –ere, adiūnxī, adiūnctus, join to administrō, 1, manage, perform admīrātiō,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., admiration admiror, 1, wonder (at), admire admittō, -ere, admīsī, admissus, send to, let in, commit, admit admodum, adv., very (much) admoneō, -ēre, admonuī, admonitus, remind, advise admoveō, -ēre, admōvī, admōtus, move (to) **adoptiō**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ **nis**, f., adoption adoptō, 1, adopt adorior, adorīrī, adortus, rise up to, attack adornātus, -a, -um, decorated adoro, 1, worship adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, be near, be present, come adulēscēns, -entis, m., young man, youth

adulēscentia, -ae, f., youth adveniō, -īre, advēnī, adventūrus, approach adventus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m., arrival, approach adversārius, -rī, m., opponent adversus, -a, -um, facing, opposite, unfavorable aedificium,  $-c\bar{i}$ , n., building aedifico, 1, build aedīlis, -is, m., aedile (an official) aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick aegrē, adv., with difficulty. reluctantly; w. ferre, be indignant (at) Aegyptus,  $-\bar{i}$ , f.. Egypt aēneus, -a, -um, (of) bronze, **Aequi, –ōrum,** *m.*, the Aequians (Ē'quians), a people of Italy aequitās,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., fairness aequō, 1, make equal aequus, -a, -um, equal, fair, calm āēr, āeris, m., air aes, aeris, n., bronze, money. bronze statue; aes alienum, (another's money), debt Aesculāpius, -pī, m., Aesculapius (Esculā pius), god of healing Aesopus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., Aesop ( $\tilde{E}$ 'sop), writer of fables aestās, -tātis, f., summer aestimātio,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., estimate aestimō. 1. estimate aestus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m., heat: tide aetās,  $-t\bar{a}$ tis, f., age, time of life aeternitās, –tātis, f., immortality aeternus, -a, -um, eternal Aethiopes, -um, m. pl., the Ethiopians, a people of Africa affātus, -ūs, m., speech afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, bring (to), assign, report afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectus, affect, afflict, visit, fill (with joy, etc.), move affīgō, -ere, affīxī, affīxus, fasten to

 $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$ frī,  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ rum, m. pl, the Africans, Carthaginians; Āfricānus, -a, -um. African: as noun, m., an African: Africā nus, an honorary name of Scipio ager, agrī, m., field. land, farm, country agger, aggeris, m., mound, rampart aggredior, aggredī, aggressus. attack aggregō, 1, attach agitō, 1, carry on; shake agmen, -minis, n., line of march, column; novissimum agmen, rear; prīmum agmen, front agnōscō, –ere, agnōvī, agnitus, recognize agnus, -ī, m., lamb agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, move forward; live or spend (of time), live (a life); do, perform; discuss, plead; carry on; grātiās agō, thank; quid agit, how is; vītam agō, lead a life agricola, -ae, m., farmer ait, (he) says  $\bar{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{la}$ ,  $-\mathbf{ae}$ , f., wing alacer, -cris, -cre, eager alacritās. -tātis, f., eagerness Albānus, -a, -um, Alban; as noun, m., an Alban albus, -a, -um, white alces, -is, f., elk Alesia, -ae, f., Alē´sia, now Alise-Sainte-Reine Alexander, -drī, m., Alexander Alexandria, -ae, f., Alexandria, a city in Egypt alienus, -a, -um, another's, unfavorable, out of place aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., some(one), any aliquis, aliquid, someone, some, any, something, anything aliter, adv., otherwise alius, alia, aliud, other, another: alius... alius, one . . . another: aliī... aliī, some . . . others; quid aliud, what else.

allātus, part. of afferō

Allobroges, -um, m. pl., the Allobroges (Allŏb´rojēs) alloquor, alloqui, allocūtus, address alō, -ere, aluī, alitus, support, feed, nourish, raise Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., the Alps alte, adv., high, deeply alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two), another, the second: alter... alter, the one . . . the altitūd $\bar{o}$ , -dinis, f., height, depth altus, -a, -um, high, deep, tall amābilis, -e, lovely amanter, adv., lovingly ambō, -ae, -ō, both ambulō, 1, walk amīcitia. –ae, f., friendship amīcus, -a, -um, friendly; amīcus, -ī, m., friend; amīca, ae, f., (girl) friend āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus, let go, lose amō. 1. love. like amor,  $-\bar{o}$ ris, m., love, affection amphitheātrum, -ī, n., amphitheater ample, adv., fully; comp. amplius, more amplifico, 1, increase amplitūd $\bar{o}$ , -dinis, f., size amplius, see amplē amplus, -a, -um, great; distinguished, magnificent an, conj., or, introducing the second part of a double question ancīle, -is, n., shield ancora, -ae, f., anchor anguis, -is, m. and f., snake, serpent angulus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., corner, little place angustiae, -ārum, f. pl., narrowness, narrow pass angustus, -a, -um, narrow, anima, -ae, f., soul, spirit animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn attention, notice animal,  $-\bar{a}$ lis, n., animal

afflīgō, -ere, afflīxī, afflīctus,

throw down, afflict, damage

afflicto, 1, wreck

we bent a

animus,  $-\bar{I}$ , m., mind, spirit, courage, feeling; in animō est, intend; in animō habeō, Aniō, Aniēnis, m., the Ån'io river annus, -ī, m., year ante, adv. and prep. w. acc., before (of time and space); see antequam anteā, adv., before antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go before; surpass anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, antemna, ae, f., yardarm (of a ship; the spar to which sails are fastened) antequam (ante... quam), conj., before antiquitās,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., antiquity antīquitus, adv., long ago antīquus, -a, -um, ancient Antōnius, -nī, m., Antony antrum, -ī, n., cave ānxius, -a, -um, troubled aperio, -īre, aperuī, apertus, open, reveal; apertus, open, aperte, adv., openly, manifestly apertus, -a, -um, open Apollō, -inis, m., Apŏl´lo, god of music, prophecy, and medicine appāreō, -ēre, appāruī, appāritūrus, appear appello, 1, call, call upon, speak to appellō, -ere, appulī, appulsus, land, drive to, bring up appetō, -ere, appetīvī, appetītus, seek; approach Appius, -a, -um, of Ap'pius, Åp'pian; as noun, m., Åp'pius applico, 1, apply (to); lean against appono, -ere, apposui, appositus, set before, serve appropinquo, 1, come near to, approach (w. dat.)

aptus, -a, -um, suited; aptē,

adv., suitably

apud, prep. w. acc., among, at the house of, near, with aqua, -ae, f., water aquaeductus, -ūs, m., aqueduct aquila, -ae, f., Aquilē'ia, a town of Cisalpine Gaul; eagle **Aquītānia**, -ae, f., Aquitā´nia; Aquītānus, -a, -um, Aquitā'nian āra, -ae, f., altar Arar, -aris, acc. -im, abl.  $-\bar{i}$ , m., Arar river, now Saône arbitrium, -trī, n., decision, judgment arbitror, 1, think arbor, -oris, f., tree arboreus, -a, -um, of a tree arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, summon, send for architectus,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , m.. architect ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, burn, be eager arduus, -a, -um, steep, hard  $\bar{a}rea, -ae, f.$ , courtyard arēna, -ae, f., sand, arena argentum, -ī, n., silver  $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ **ridum**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ , n., dry land āridus, -a, -um, dry aries, -ietis, m., ram, batteringram Aristotelēs, -is, m. Ar'istotle. a Greek philosopher arma, -ōrum, m. pl., arms, armāmenta, -ōrum, n. pl., equipment armātūra, -ae, f., armor; levis armātūrae, light-armed armō, 1, arm, equip arō, l, plow arripiō, -ere, arripuī, arreptus, seize arrogantia, -ae, f., insolence ars, artis, f., skill, art artus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m., limb **Arvernus,**  $-\bar{i}$ , m., an Arver'nian arx, arcis, f., citadel ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus, climb (up); embark ascēnsus, -ūs, m., ascent ascrībō, -ere, ascrīpsī, **ascriptus**, add to (in writing), apply

**aspectus**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., appearance, sight asper, -era, -erum, harsh aspiciō, -ere, aspexī, aspectus, look on or at assistō, -ere, astitī, -, stand assuēscō. -ere. assuēvī. assuētus, become accustomed astrologus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., astronomer astrum, -ī, n., star at, conj., but āter, ātra, ātrum, black, gloomy Athēna, -ae, f., Athena, Greek goddess of wisdom, the Roman Minerva Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens Athēniēnsis, -is, adj. and n., Athenian atomus,  $-\bar{i}$ , f., atom atque (ac), conj., and, as than Atrebās,  $-\bar{a}$ tis, m., an Atrebatian (Atrebā'shian) **ātrium**, **ātrī**, n., atrium, hall attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus, touch, reach, border attribuō, -ere, attribuī, attribūtus, assign **auctor**,  $-\bar{o}$ **ris**, m., author, founder auctoritas, -tatis, f., authority, influence audācia, -ae, f., daring, boldness audācter, adv., boldly audāx, gen. audācis, daring, bold audeō. –ēre. ausus. semideponent, dare audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear, hear of auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, take away augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase, enlarge, make grow augēscō, -ere, --, increase augustus, -a, -um, magnificent; (cap.), of Augustus; August; as noun, m., Augus tus, the emperor Aulercus, -ī, m., an Auler can aureus, -a, -um, of gold,

golden

aurīga, -ae, m., charioteer auris, -is, f., ear aurum, -ī, n., gold auspicium, -cī, n., auspices aut, or: aut... aut, either . . . or autem, conj. (never first word), however, but, moreover auxilior, 1, help auxilium,  $-l\bar{\imath}$ , n., help, aid; pl., auxiliary troops, reserves avāritia, -ae, f., greed avārus. -a. -um. avaricious Aventīnus (mons), -i, m., the Av'entine Hill āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversus, turn away, turn aside avidus, -a, -um, desirous. greedy avis, -is, f., bird āvocō, 1, call away avunculus, ī, m., uncle avus, -ī, m., grandfather Axona. -ae. m.. Axona river. now Aisne

### B

**balneum**,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., bath balteus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., belt barbarus, -a, -um, foreign. barbarous; as noun, m., barbarian beātus, -a, -um, happy Belgae,  $-\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ rum, m. pl, the Belgians bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike bellicus, -a, -um, of war bellō, 1, carry on war bellum, -ī, n., war: bellum gerō, carry on war; (with dat.) bellum infero, make war upon bene, adv., well, good; comp. melius, better; superl.

optimē, best beneficium, -cī, n., kindness benignus, -a, -um, kindly bibliothēca, -ae, f., library bibō, -ere, bibī, --, drink Bibracte, -actis, n., Bibrāc´te,

now Mont Beauvray near
Autun

**bīduum, –ī,** *n.*, two days **biennium, –nī**, *n.*, two years

bis, adv., twice blanditia, -ae, f., caress blandus, -a, -um, caressing bonitās, -tātis, f., goodness, fertility bonus, -a, -um, good; comp. melior, melius, better; superl. optimus, -a, -um, best; bona, -ōrum, n., possessions bōs, bovis (gen. pl., boum), m., ox. bull bracchium, bracchī, n., arm brevis. -e. short **brevitās**, -tātis, f., shortness Britannia, -ae, f., Britain Britannus, -ī, m., a Briton Brundisium, -sī, n., Brundisium (Brundizh'ium), a town in

bīnī, -ae, -a, two at a time

**bulla**, **-ae**, *f*., bulla, an ornament worn on the neck by children

Italy, now Brindisi

### (

C., abbreviation for Gāius cacūmen, -minis, n., peak cadāver, -eris, n., corpse cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall Caecilius. -a. -um. Caecilian (Sēsil'ian); Caedilius, -lī, m., Caecilius; Caecilia, -ae, f., Caecilia caecus, -a, -um, blind caedes, -is, f.. slaughter, murder caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, cut (down), beat, kill caelestis, -e, heavenly Caelius (mons), -ī, m., the Caelian (Sē'lian) Hill caelum, -ī, n., sky caeruleus. -a. -um. blue Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar calamitās, -tātis, f., disaster. defeat calceus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., shoe calidus, -a, -um, hot callidus, -a, -um, clever  $c\bar{a}l\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{o}nis$ , m., camp servant campus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., plain. field; campus Mārtius, campī Mārtiī, m., Campus Martius (Mar'shius), a park in Rome candidātus, -ī, m., candidate

canis, -is, m., dog Cannae, -ārum, f. pl., Cannae (Can'ē), a town in Italy cano, -ere, cecini, cantus, sing, tell (about) Cantium. -tī. n.. Kent. a district in Britain canto, 1, sing Capēna (porta), porta Capena (Capē'na), a gate in the wall of Rome caper, -rī, m., goat capillus, -ī, m., hair capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, capture, hold, receive; captivate; adopt Capitolium, -lī, n., the Capitol, temple of Jupiter at Rome; the Capitoline Hill captīva, -ae, f., (female) prisoner; captīvus, -ī, m., prisoner captō, 1, strive caput, capitis, n., head, person careō, -ere, caruī, caritūrus, be without (+ abl.)cāritās, -tātis, f., affection carmen, -minis, n., song, poem Carneadēs, -is, m., Carnē'adēs, a Greek philosopher carō, carnis, f., meat carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, pick; take; consume carrus, -ī, m., cart, wagon Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m. pl., the Carthaginians (Carthajin'ians) Carthāgō, -ginis, f., Carthage, a city in northern Africa cārus, -a, -um, dear, expensive, esteemed cāseus. -ī. m., cheese. Castalius, -a, -um, Castā'lian castellum, -ī, n., fort castīgō, 1, punish castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp cāsus, -ūs, m., chance, accident, misfortune, fate, emergency Catilīna, -ae, m., Căt'ilīne cauda, -ae, f., tail causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; case: causa, for the sake of (w. gen. preceding)

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautūrus, beware (of), take precautions against cecidi, see caedō cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, move, retreat, vield celeber, -bris, -bre, celebrated celer, celeris, celere, swift celeritās, -tātis, f., swiftness. celeriter, swiftly, quickly cēlō, 1, hide, conceal celsus, -a, -um, high cēna, -ae, f., dinner cēnō, 1, dine cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, think cēnsus, -ūs, m., census centum, indeclinable adj., hundred centurio, -onis, m., centurion Cerēs, Cereris, f., Ceres (Sē'rēs), goddess of agriculture cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, separate, see certāmen, -minis, n., contest, struggle certe, adv., certainly, at least certō. 1. strive certus, -a, -um, fixed, certain, sure: certiorem eum facio dē, inform him about: certior fīō, be informed cervus, -ī, m., deer, stag cēterī, -ae, -a, the other(s), the rest (of), all other Christus, -ī. m., Christ cibus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ , m., food cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround cinis, cineris, m., ashes circensis. -e. of the circus circiter, adv., about circuitus. -ūs. m., distance around circulus, -ī, m., circle circum, prep. w. acc., around circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, surround circumcurso, 1, run around circumdo, -dare, -dedí, -datus, put around, surround

circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw around circumsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -, hop around circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, --, surround circumsto, -āre, -stetī, -... stand around circumveniō. –īre. –vēnī. -ventus, surround; cheat circus, -ī, m., circle; circus; Circus Maximus, the Circus Maximus, at Rome citerior, -ius, nearer cito, adv., quickly; comp. citius, citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side cīvīlis. -e. civil cīvis, -is, m., citizen cīvitās, -tātis, f., citizenship, state clam, adv., secretly clāmō, 1, cry (out), shout, declare, exclaim clāmor. -ōris. m., shout clārus, -a, -um, clear, loud; famous classis, -is, f., fleet claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, **clēmentia**, **-ae**, *f*., clemency, mercy cliens, -entis, m., client clientēla, -ae, f., clientship cloāca, -ae, f., sewer Cn., abbreviation for Gnaeus,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , m., Gnaeus (Nē'us) Cnidii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Cnidians (Nĭd'ians) coacervo, 1, pile up coctus, -a, -um, cooked coemētērium, -rī, n., cemetery coeō, coīre, coiī, coitūrus, meet coepī, coeptus (perf. tenses only), began, have begun cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f., thought cōgitō, 1, think, consider cognātiō, -ōnis, f., related group  $cogn\bar{o}men, -minis, n.$ cognomen, surname

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, become acquainted with, learn, recognize; perf., have learned, know cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, drive together, collect, compel cohors, cohortis, f., cohort cohortātiō, -ōnis, f., encouragement cohortor, 1, encourage Colchī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Colchians (Kol'kians) colligo, 1, fasten together colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, collect, acquire collis, -is, m., hill colloco, 1, place, invest, station colloquium,  $-qu\bar{i}$ , n., conference colloquor, colloqui, collocutus, talk with, confer collum. -ī. n., neck colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, cultivate, inhabit, worship colonia, -ae, f., colony color, -ōris, m., color columna, -ae, f., column combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, burn up comes, -itis, m. and f., companion Comitium, -tī, n., Comitium (Comish'ium), the assembly place of the Romans; comitia, -ōrum, n. pl., assemblies, election commeātus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., (going to and fro), supplies commemorō, 1, mention commendo, 1, entrust commentārius, -rī, m., commentary, notes commīlitō, -ōnis, m., fellow

effectively
commodus, -a, -um, suitable,
convenient, well

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move (away), disturb, stir up; influence commūnicō, 1, share

commūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, fortify on all sides

**commūnis**, **–e**, common **commūtātiō**, **–ōnis**, *f*., change **commūtō**, 1, change wholly,

exchange exchange

**comparō**, 1, prepare. get ready; procure

compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive (together), collect

comperio, -ire, -peri, -pertus,
 find out

**competitor**, **–ōris**, *m.*, competitor

 $complace\bar{o} = place\bar{o}$ 

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill. cover, complete

complexus, -ūs, m., embrace
complūrēs, -a or -ia, several,
many

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put together, compose

comporto, 1, collect

comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, seize, grasp, catch, understand

cōnātus, -ūs, m., attempt concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, yield, withdraw, grant, permit

concidō, -ere, -cidī, --, fall down, collapse

concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, cut up, kill

**concilium**, **–lī**, *n*., meeting, council

concipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, conceive

concitō, 1, rouse

**concordia**, **–**ae, *f*., harmony

concurrō, -ere. -currī,

-cursūrus, run *or* dash together, rush, flock

**concursus**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., running together, gathering, onset

condēnsātus, -a, -um, condensed

**condiciō**, **–ō**nis, *f*., condition, terms

condīmentum, -ī, n., seasoning
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus,
 found, establish, make;
 conceal

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring together; hire, rent

conferō, conferre, contulī, collātus, bring together, collect, compare; give, place; mē conferō, proceed

confertus, -a, -um, crowded together, dense

**confestim**, *adv.*, immediately, at once

conficio, -ere, -feci, -fectus, complete; do up, exhaust; make, furnish, accomplish

confido, -ere, confisus, semideponent, have confidence (in), rely on, be confident

confirmo, 1, encourage, strengthen, establish, assert confisus, part of confido confligo, ere, eflixi, eflictus, dash together

cōnfoveō = foveō

confundo, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, confuse

congredior, congredī, congressus, meet (in battle) coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus,

throw, conjecture **coniūnctim**, *adv.*, jointly

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, join (with), unite

coniūnx, -iugis, m. and f., husband, wife

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.. conspiracy coniūrō. 1, swear together, conspire

conor, 1, try, attempt

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, seek for

**consanguineus**,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., (blood) relative

conscendo, -ere, -scendo,
 -scensus, climb (in); embark
 (in)

conscius, -a, -um, conscious

conscribo, -ere, -scripsi,
-scriptus, write, enlist;
patrēs conscripti, senators
consecrātus, -a, -um, sacred
consecutus, part. of consequor
consensio, -onis, f., agreement
consensus, -us, m., agreement
consentio, -ire, -sēnsi,
-sēnsus, agree, conspire
consequor, consequi,
consecutus, follow, reach,
attain

cōnservō 1, save, preserve, spare

consido, -ere, -sedi, -sessurus, sit down, encamp, settle

**consilium**, **-lī**, *n*., plan, policy; prudence; advice, counsel; council

cōnsimilis, -e, very similar cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, stand still, stand, stop, take one's place, settle; consist in; depend on

consolatio,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., consolation conspectus,  $-\bar{u}$ s, m., sight conspicio, -ere, -spexi,

-spectus, catch sight of, see conspicor, 1, catch sight of, see constantia, -ae, f., steadfastness constiti, see consisto constituo, -ere, -stitui.

-stitūtus, set up, establish, found; appoint, determine, decide; station

consto, -are, -stitī, -stātūrus, stand together; constat, it is evident, it is clear, it is certain

consuesco, -ere, -suevi,
 -suetus, become accustomed;
in perf.. be accustomed

consuetudo, -dinis, f., custom, habit

**consul, –ulis,** *m.*, consul **consularis, –e**, of consular rank **consulatus, –ūs,** *m.*, consulship

consulo, -ere, -sului, -sultus, consult (for)

consulto, 1, consult

consumo, -ere, -sumpsi,
-sumptus, use up, spend,
waste

contāgiō, -ōnis, f., contact

contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptus, despise contemplor, 1, look at contemptus, -ūs, m., contempt contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūrus, struggle, hasten. contend, strive contentus, -a, -um, contented contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus, weave (together) continens, -entis, f., mainland contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, contain, keep; hem in, bound; ' restrain contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, touch; happen continuus, -a, -um, successive, continuous contrā, prep. w. acc., against, contrary to, opposite; adv., on the other hand contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, draw or bring together, contract contrārius, -a, -um, opposite contrīstō, 1, sadden controversia, -ae, f., dispute contumēlia, -ae, f., insult conturbo, 1, confuse, mix up convenio, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come together, assemble, meet; convenit, it is agreed upon conventus, -ūs, m., meeting convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn convocō, 1, call together, summon coorior, coorīrī, coortus, arise cōpia, -ae, f., supply, abundance, opportunity, chance; pl. forces, troops; resources cor, cordis, n., heart Corinthus,  $-\bar{i}$ , f., Corinth, aGreek city **cornū**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , n., horn; wing (of an army) corōna, -ae, f., crown, wreath **corpus, corporis,** *n.*, body corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, correct

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, daily

cotīdiē, adv., daily crās, adv., tomorrow crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent, numerous crēditor, -ōris, m., creditor crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, believe cremō, 1, burn creō, 1, elect, appoint crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, grow, increase crocodilus, -ī, m., crocodile cruciātus, -ūs, m., torture crūdēlis, -e, cruel crūdēlitās, -tātis, f., cruelty crūdēliter, adv., cruelly cruentus, -a, -um, bloody crūs, crūris, n., leg crux, crucis, f., cross cubiculum,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , n., bedroom culmen, -minis, n., top, roof culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault culpō, 1, blame **cultūra**, **-ae**, f., cultivation cultus, -a, -um, cultured cultus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., way of living, civilization cum, prep. w. abl., with: although cum, conj., when, whenever, since, although: cum prīmum, as soon as; cum... tum, not only . . . but also cumulus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., heap, pile cunctor, 1, hesitate cünctus, -a, -um, all cupide, adv., eagerly cupiditās, -tātis, f., desire  $\operatorname{cup}\bar{\operatorname{Id}}\bar{\operatorname{o}}$ ,  $-\operatorname{dinis}$ , m., desire; Cupid, god of love cupidus, -a, -um, eager, desirous cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, desire, wish cūr, adv., why cūra, -ae, f., care, anxiety, love, concern cūria, -ae, f., senate house: Cūria Iūlia, a senate house named for Julius Caesar

cūriōsitās, -tātis, f., curiosity

cūrō, 1, care (for), cause (to be

done)

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursūrus, run
currus, -ūs, m., chariot
cursor, -ōris, m., runner
cursus, -ūs, m., running, speed, race, course; cursus
honōrum, course of offices, career
curvus, -a, -um, curved
custōdia, -ae, f.. guard
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, guard
custōs, -ōdis, m., guard

### D

damnō, 1, condemn

de, prep. w. abl., from, down from, concerning, about, during dea, -ae, f., goddess dēbellō, 1, crush (in war) dēbeō. -ēre. dēbuī. dēbitus. owe, ought  $d\bar{e}bitum, -\bar{i}, n... debt$ dēcēdō, -ere, dēcessī, dēcessūrus, depart, go away, die decem, ten decemvirī, -ōrum, m. pl., decemvirs (a board of ten men) dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus, decide, vote dēcertō, 1, fight (it out), contend decimus, -a, -um, tenth dēcipiō, -ere, dēcēpī, dēceptus, deceive dēclīvia, -um, n. pl., slopes dēclīvis, -e, sloping (downward) dēcrētum, -ī, n., decree, decision dēcrētus, part. of dēcernō dēcurrō, -ere, dēcucurrī, dēcursūrus, run down or off dēdecus, -coris, n., disgrace dēdicō, 1, dedicate dēditīcius, -cī, m., prisoner dēditiō, -ōnis, f., surrender dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus, surrender, devote

dēdūcō, -ere, dēdūxī, dēductus, lead, withdraw, bring, launch dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, defend, repel dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., defender dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, carry, bestow, offer, enroll, report; passive, fall dēfessus. -a. -um. tired dēficiō, -ere, dēfēcī, dēfectus, fail, revolt dēfīgō, -ere, dēfīxī, dēfīxus, drive in dēflectō. -ere, dēflexī, dēflexus, turn aside dēfluō, -ere, dēflūxī, dēflūxus, flow away dēformis, -e, unshapely dēfugiō, -ere, dēfūgī, dēfugitūrus, avoid dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectus, throw (down), dislodge, drive dein, deinde, adv., then dēlātus, part. of dēferō dēlēctus, part. of dēligō dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy, wipe out dēlīberō, 1, consider  $d\bar{e}l\bar{i}ctum, -\bar{i}, n.$ , crime dēligō, 1, fasten, select dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, Delphi, -ōrum, m. pl., Delphi **delphīnus**,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., dolphin, porpoise dēmēns, gen. dēmentis, mad dēmittō, -ere, dēmīsī, dēmissus, let or drop down, send down, derive dēmocraticus, -a, -um. democratic dēmonstro, 1, point out, show, mention Dēmosthenēs, -is, m..

Dēmos'thenes, a Greek orator dēmulceō, -ēre, dēmulsī, dēmulctus, lick dēns, dentis, m., tooth dēnsus, -a, -um, thick dēnūdō, 1, strip dēnūntiō, 1, declare 496 VOCABULARY

dēpellō, -ere, dēpulī, dēpulsus, drive away dēpōnō, -ere, dēposuī, dēpositus, put or lay aside. put down, leave with dēprēndō, -ere, dēprēndī, dēprēnsus, catch dērigō (dīrigō), -ere, dērēxī, dērēctus, direct: dērēctus, straight dēscendō, -ere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus, descend, resort dēscēnsus, -ūs, m., descent dēscrībō, -ere, dēscrīpsī, descriptus, write down, copy, describe dēsecō. -āre. dēsecuī. desectus, cut off dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēsertus, desert dēsertor, -ōris, m., deserter dēsīderō, 1, long for dēsiliō, -īre, dēsiluī, dēsultūrus, jump down dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, (stand away). cease dēspectus,  $-\bar{u}s$ , m., view dēspērō, 1, despair (of) dēspiciō, -ere, dēspexī, dēspectus, look down dēstitī, see dēsistō dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, be lacking dēsuper, adv., from above dēterior, -ius, poorer, less. worse dētestābilis, -e, detestable dētineō, -ēre, dētinuī, dētentus, detain dētrahō, -ere, dētrāxī, dētrāctus, draw off. take (off)  $d\bar{e}tr\bar{i}mentum, -\bar{i}, n., loss$ **deus**, **-ī**, *m*., god dēveniō, -īre, dēvenī, dēventūrus, come dēvorō, 1. devour dexter, -tra, -trum, right (hand), right (as opposed to left)  $d\bar{i} = de\bar{i}$ 

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell, speak, state, name; salūtem dīcō, pay respects; causam dīcō, plead a case dictātor, -ōris, m., dictator dictō, 1. dictate dictum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., word, remark didicī, see discō diēs, diēī, m. and f., day differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, spread; differ difficilis, -e, difficult difficultās, -tātis, f., difficulty diffīdō, -ere, diffīsus, semideponent, distrust diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, spread out digitus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., finger dignitās, -tātis, f., worth, rank, position dignus, -a, -um, worthy dīiūdicō, 1, determine dīligēns, gen. -entis, careful, diligent dīligenter, adv., carefully dīligentia, -ae, f., care. diligence dīmicō, 1, fight  $d\bar{i}midium. -d\bar{i}. n.. half$ dīmittō, -ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus, let go, lose, abandon, send (away), dismiss, send out dīmoveō, -ēre, dīmōvī, dīmōtus, move away dīrigō, see dērigō dīripiō, -ere, dīripuī, dīreptus, plunder dīrus, -a, -um, horrible Dīs, Dītis, m., Pluto, god of Hades discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go away, depart, draw back disciplīna, -ae, f., discipline, training, instruction, system discipulus, -ī, m., pupil disclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, separate discō, -ere, didicī, -, learn discordia, -ae, f., discord discrimen, -minis, n..

difference

discutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, push aside, destroy disiciō. -ere. -iēcī. -iectus. scatter dispergō, -ere, dispersī, dispersus, scatter dispono, -ere, -posui, -positus, put here and there. arrange disputātiō, -ōnis, f., discussion disputō, 1, discuss dissēnsiō,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., dissension dissimilis. -e. unlike dissimulō, 1, conceal dissipō, 1, scatter distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, keep apart distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, **-tribūtus**, distribute, divide. dītissimus, see dīves diū, adv., (for) a long time, long; comp. diūtius; superl. diūtissimē diurnus, -a, -um, (by) day; acta diurna, journal, newspaper diversus, -a, -um, different dīves, gen. dīvitis, rich; comp. dītior; superl. dītissimus Dīviciācus, -ī, m., Diviciacus (Divishiā'cus) dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, divide, separate dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine dīvitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches dīvus, -ī (gen. pl. dīvum), m., god dō, dare, dedī, datus, give; poenam do, pay the penalty; in fugam do, put to flight doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach, explain; doctus, skilled **doctrīna**, –ae, f., teaching documentum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., proof, warning doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, grieve, be sorry dolor, -ōris, m., grief, pain, suffering dolorosus, -a, -um, grieving

**dolus**,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., treachery, deceit,

trick(ery)

domesticus, -a, -um, one's own domicilium,  $-l\bar{l}$ , n., home domina, -ae, f., mistress dominor, 1, be master dominus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., master **domus,**  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , f., home, house dono, 1, give dōnum, -ī, n., gift dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, sleep  $d\bar{o}s$ ,  $d\bar{o}tis$ , f., dowry dracō, -ōnis, m., dragon druidēs, -um, m. pl., druids dubitātiō, -iōnis, f., doubt dubitō, 1, hesitate, doubt  $dubium, -b\tilde{i}, n., doubt$ dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, draw, construct, consider. influence dulcis, -e, sweet, agreeable; as noun, n. pl., cakes dum, conj., while, until, as long duo, -ae, -o, two duodecim, twelve; duodecimus, -a, -um, twelfth duplex, gen. duplicis, double duplico, 1, double dūrē, adv., harshly dūritia, -ae, f., hardship dūritiēs, -ēī, f., hardness dūrō. 1. harden dūrus, -a. -um. hard, harsh. cruel dux, ducis, m., leader, guide, general; dux, under the direction of Dyrrachium, -chī, n., Dyrrachium, now Durazzo, a city on the east coast of the Adriatic

E

ē. see ex

ea, she
ecce! interj., look!
ēdīcō, -ere, ēdīxī, ēdictus,
appoint
ēdiscō, -ere, ēdidicī, —, learn
by heart
ēditus, -a, -um, elevated
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus, give
out, publish, inflict, utter
ēducō, 1, bring up

ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out; draw effēminō. 1. weaken efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, carry out, make known efficiō, –ere, effēcī, effectus, make, bring about, accomplish, complete, produce, achieve, cause effodiō, -ere, effōdī, effossus, dig up effugiō, -ere, effūgī, effugitūrus, escape ego, mei, I ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus, go or march out, leave, land ēgregiē, adv., excellently ēgregius, -a, -um, distinguished, excellent, outstanding ēheu! interj., alas! eī, eae, ea, they ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, throw (out), stick out, expel eius, his, her **ēlegantia**, **–ae**, f., elegance, **elephantus**, **–i**, *m*., elephant, Eleusis, -is, f., Eleu'sis, a Greek city ēlevō, 1. raise ēligō, –ere, –ēlēgī, ēlēctus, pick out ēloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence, rhetoric ēmendō, 1, correct ēmergō, -ere, ēmersī, ēmersus, emerge ēmittō, -ere, ēmīsī, ēmissus, let drop, let or send out, shed emō, -ere, ēmī, emptus, take, enim, conj. (never first word), ēnotō, 1, take notes (on) ēnūntiō, 1, announce, report eō, īre, iī, itūrus, go eō, adv., there eodem, adv., to the same place eorum, earum, eorum, their **Ēpīrus**,  $-\mathbf{i}$ , f., **Ē**pī´rus, aprovince in northern Greece

episcopus, -ī, m., bishop epistula, -ae, f., letter eques, equitis, m., horseman, knight; pl., cavalry equester, -tris, -tre, (of) cavalry equidem, adv., to be sure equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry equus, -ī, m., horse ergō, adv., therefore ērigō, -ere, ērēxī, ērēctus, raise up ēripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptus, snatch away, remove, save errō. 1. wander: be mistaken ērubēscō, -ere, ērubuī,--, blush ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, instruct ērudītiō, -ōnis, f., learning ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., sally, attack, a bursting forth Esquiliae, -ārum, f. pl., Esquilinus (mons), the Es'quilīne Hill et, conj., and, even; et... et, both . . . and etiam, adv., also, even Etrūscī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Etruscans, the people of Etruria etsī, coni., although ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus, go out, escape ēvehō, -ere, ēvexī, ēvectus, carry up ēvellō, -ere, ēvellī, ēvulsus, pull out ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventūrus, turn out, happen **ēventus**, **–ū**s, *m*., outcome, result ēvertō, -ere, ēvertī, ēversus, overturn ēvocō, 1, call out, summon ex (e), prep. w. abl., from, out

exagito, 1, weigh, harass, drive

excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessūrus, go away, depart, withdraw excelsus, -a, -um, high excipiō, -ere, excēpī, exceptus, receive, capture, excito, 1, arouse, erect exclāmō, 1, exclaim excruciō, 1, torture exemplum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., example, sample, precedent exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus, go out (from), go forth exerceō, -ĕre, exercuī, exercitus, train, exercise. make use of exercitātiō, -ōnis, f., exercise exercitātus, -a, -um, trained exercitus, -ūs, m.. (trained) army exhauriō, -īre, exhausī, exhaustus, draw out, endure exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus, drive out, demand exiguē, adv., scarcely exiguitās,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ ,  $f_{.}$ , scantiness, shortness, smallness exiguus, -a, -um, small existimō. 1. think

exitus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m.. outlet, outcome. departure, death expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, set free, prepare; expeditus,

unencumbered; free, easy expeditus, -a, -um, unencumbered, easy

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus, drive out, banish

experior, experiri, expertus. try; expertus, experienced

expleő, -ēre, expléví, explétus, fill up

explico, 1, unroll, develop, explain

explorator, -oris, m., scout exploro, 1, investigate, explore, reconnoiter; exploratus, assured

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, expositus, put out, draw up. expose

exprimō, -ere, expressī, expressus, press out, express, portray, imitate expugno, 1, capture, gain exsanguis, -e, bloodless exsequor, exsequi, exsecūtus, follow up, enforce exsiliō, -īre, exsiluī, -, leap up or out exsilium,  $-l\bar{l}$ , n., exile exsisto, -ere, exstiti, -, stand out, arise exspecto, 1, expect, wait, await exspīrō, 1, breathe out, expire exstinguō, -ere, exstīnxī, exstinctus, put out, kill exstruō, -ere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus, pile up, build, erect exterior, -ius, outer externus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ ,  $m_{\cdot\cdot}$ , stranger extrā, prep. w. acc., out of. outside of, beyond extrahō, -ere, extrāxī, extrāctus, draw out extraordinarius, -a, -um, (out of order), extraordinary extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, last, extreme, end of extruō. -ere. extrūxī. extrūctus, build

fābula, -ae, f., story, play faciës,  $-\bar{e}i$ , f., face, appearance facile, adv., easily facilis, -e. easy facinus, facinoris, n., crime faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, do. make, act; verba facio, speak, make a speech: certiorem eum faciō dē, inform him about: iter facio, march. travel factio, -onis, f., faction factum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., deed, act facultās, -tātis, f., faculty, opportunity; pl., means fallāx, gen. -ācis, false fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, deceive falsus, -a, -um, false; falsō, adv., falsely

of, of, as a result of, in

accordance with

exāctus, part. of exigō

exanimō, 1, exhaust, kill

about

falx, falcis, f., hook  $f\bar{a}ma$ , -ae, f., report, fame famēs, -is, abl. fame, f., hunger familia, -ae, f., household, family familiaris, -e, (of the family), friendly; as noun, m., friend fās, indeclinable, n., right fatīgō, 1, weary, wear out fātum, -ī, n., fate faucēs, -ium, f. pl., throat, jaws faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, be favorable to, favor favor, -ōris, m., favor fefelli, see fallo fēlīcitās, -tātis, f., happiness fēlīciter, adv., fortunately, successfully; good luck! fēlīx, gen. fēlīcis, happy, fortunate, successful, lucky fēmina, -ae, f., woman, female fēmineus, -a, -um, of a woman fera, -ae, f., wild beast ferē, adv., almost, about. generally fēriae, -ārum, f. pl., holidays: fēriae Latīnae, festival of the allied Latins. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, endure, carry, bring, receive, report, propose (of a law) ferox, gen. ferocis, bold, fierce ferreus, -a, -um, iron **ferrum.**  $-\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ , n.. iron fertilis, -e, fertile **fertilitās**, **–tātis**, *f.*, fertility ferus, -a, -um, wild, fierce fēstus, -a, -um, festal fidēlis, -e, faithful fides,  $-e\bar{i}$ , f., trust, protection; word, loyalty fīdūcia, -ae, f., confidence fidus, -a, -um, faithful fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, fix figūra, -ae, f., figure, shape fīlia, -ae, f., daughter fīlius, -lī, m., son fingo, -ere, finxi, fictus, form, invent, imagine fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, limit. determine finis, finis, m. or f., end; pl.,

borders, territory

finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring; as noun, neighbor fīō, fierī, —, (factus), be made, become, be done, happen; certior fīō, be informed **firmiter**, adv., firmly firmus, -a, -um, strong, firm fissus, -a, -um, split flagellum, -i, n., whip flamma, -ae, f., flame flecto, -ere, flexi, flexus, bend, turn fleo, flere, flevī, fletus, weep (for) flöreö, -ēre, flöruī, -, bloom flos, floris, m., flower flūctus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m.. wave flümen, flüminis, n., river fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus, flow  $f\bar{o}ns$ , fontis, m., spring fore = futūrum esse, from sum  $f\bar{o}rma$ , -ae, f., shape, form, beauty fors, fortis, f., chance fortasse, adv., perhaps forte, by chance fortis, -e, brave fortiter, adv., bravely fortūna, -ae, f., fortune, fate; pl., property forum, -ī, n., marketplace; Forum (at Rome) fossa, -ae, f., trench foveō, -ēre, fovī, fotus, cherish frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck frāter, frātris, m., brother fraus, fraudis, f., fraud, wrong frequens, gen. frequentis, frequent, numerous frequenter, adv., often frīgidus, -a, -um, cold frīgus, frīgoris, n., cold frons, frondis, f., leaf frons, frontis, f., forehead, front fructus, -ūs, m., fruit frūgēs, -um, f. pl., crops frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain; fertile; res frūmentāria, grain supply frümentum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., grain; pl., ears of grain, crops

frūstrā, adv., in vain fuga, -ae, f., flight fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, avoid, escape fugitīvus, -ī, m., deserter fūmō, 1, smoke fūmus, -ī, m., smoke funda, -ae, f., sling, slingshot fundāmentum,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , n... foundation funditor, -ōris, m., slinger fundo, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour, shed fūnis, -is, m., rope fūnus, -eris, n., funeral Furiae, -ārum, f. pl., the Furies, avenging and tormenting spirits furibundus, -a, -um, mad furō, -ere, ---, rage furor, -ōris, m., madness fūrtim, adv., secretly furtum,  $\rightarrow \bar{i}$ , n., theft futūrus, fut. part. of sum

G

galea, -ae, f., helmet Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, ancient France Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic; as noun, m., a Gaul garrulus, -a, -um, talkative gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus, semideponent, rejoice, be glad gaudium,  $-d\bar{\imath}$ , n., joy gāvīsus, part. of gaudeō geminus, -a, -um, twin gemitus, -ūs, m., groan gemma, -ae, f., precious stone gemō, -ere, gemuī, --, groan Genava, see Genua gēns, gentis, f., family, people, nation, tribe Genua, -ae, f., Geneva genus, generis, n., birth, family, race; kind, class Germānia, -ae, f., Germany Germānicus, -a, -um, German Germānus, -a. -um, German: as noun, m., a German

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, manage, do, hold; wear; passive, go on; mē gerō, act; rēs gestae, deeds gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, produce; passive, be born gladiātor, -ōris, m., gladiator gladiātōrius, -a, -um, gladiatorial gladius, -dī, m., sword glōria, -ae, f., glory glōriōsus, -a, -um, glorious gracilis, -e, slender gradior, gradī, gressus, walk gradus, -ūs, m., step Graecia, -ae, f., Greece Graecus, -a, -um, Greek: as noun, m., a Greek grāmen, grāminis, n., grass grammaticus, -ī, m., grammarian, teacher of literature grātia, -ae, f., gratitude, grace. favor, influence; grātiās agō, thank; grātiā, for the sake of (w. gen. preceding) grātulātiō, -ōnis, f., congratulation grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, grateful gravis, -e, heavy, serious, severe, important gravitās, -tātis, f., weight.

### H

graviter, adv., heavily, seriously,

dignity, seriousness

severely, decisively

gustus,  $-\bar{u}s$ , m., taste

gustō, 1, taste

gubernātor, -ōris, m., pilot

ha! interj., ha!
habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus,
have, hold, consider;
ōrātiōnem habeō, deliver a
speech
habitō, I. live
Haeduus, -a, -um, Haeduan
(Hĕd'uan); as noun, m., a
Haeduan
haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesus,
stick, cling

Hamburgiēnsis, -e, of Hamburg Harpviae, -ārum, f. pl., the Harpies haud, adv., by no means hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, drain, drink Helvētius, -a, -um, Helvetian (Helvē'shian): as noun, m. pl., the Helvetians **herba**, **-ae**, *f*., grass, plant, herb Herculēs, -is, m., Her'culēs  $h\bar{e}r\bar{e}dit\bar{a}s$ ,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., inheritance herī, adv., yesterday heu! interi., alas! hīberna, –ōrum (i.e., castra). n. pl., winter quarters Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland hic, haec, hoc, this, the latter; as pron., he, she, it hīc, adv., here hiemō, 1, spend the winter hiems, hiemis, f., winter hilaris, -e, gay, cheerful Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish **historia**, **-ae**, *f*., history hodiē, adv., today hodiernus, -a, -um, of today Homērus, -ī, m., Homer, a Greek poet homō, hominis, m., man. human being: pl., people honestē, adv., honorably honestus, -a, -um, honorable honor, -ōris, m., honor, office hōra, -ae, f., hour Horātius, -tī, m., Horace, a Roman poet: Horatius (Horā'shius) Cocles horrēns, gen. horrentis. shaggy horreō. -ēre. horruī. —. shudder, dread horribilis, -e, horrible horridus, -a, -um, frightful horror, -ōris, m., horror hortor, 1, urge, encourage hortus, -ī, m., garden, park hospes, hospitis, m., guest, guest-friend, host hospitium,  $-t\bar{\imath}$ , n., hospitality \* hostis, -is, m., (national) enemy (usually pl.)

hūc, adv., to this side, here hūmānitās, -tātis, f., culture hūmānus, -a, -um, human, civilized humilis, -e, low, humble humus, -ī, f., ground, earth hydraulicus, -a, -um, hydraulic

### I

iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, -, lie iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, throw. build iactō, 1. throw, toss iactūra, -ae, f., (throwing), loss, expense, sacrifice iactus, -ūs, m., throw iaculum, -ī, n., dart, javelin iam, adv., already, by this time, at last, (w. fut.) soon; non iam, no longer iānua, -ae, f., door ibi. adv., there īdem, eadem, idem, same, likewise identidem, adv., again and again idoneus, -a, -um, suitable. fitting igitur, adv., therefore ignis, -is, m., fire ignōminia, -ae, f., disgrace ignōrō, 1, not know ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtus, pardon ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, strange illātus, part. of īnferō ille, illa, illud, that, the former: as pron., he, she it; ille... hic, the former . . . the latter illī, illae, illa, they illigō, 1, tie to illo, adv., there, to that place illūc, adv., to that place or side illūstris, -e, noble Illyricum, -ī, n., Illyr'icum. a region along the east coast of the Adriatic imāgō, imāginis, f., statue.

A MANAGO

immittō, -ere, immīsī, immissus, let go, throw immolō, 1, sacrifice immortālis, -e, undying, immortal impār, gen. imparis, unequal impedimenta, -orum, n. pl., baggage impedimentum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., hindrance impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, obstruct; impedītus, burdened impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsus, drive on, influence, incite, impel, urge impendeo, -ere, -, -, hang impendō, -ere, impendī, impēnsus, spend imperator, -ōris, m., commander, general, emperor imperātum, -ī, n., order imperītus, -a, -um, inexperienced, ignorant **imperium**, **-rī**, n., command, control, military power, order; empire, government; nova imperia, revolution impero, 1, command, order, rule, demand **impetrō**, 1, gain *or* obtain (one's request) **impetus**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., attack, fury impius, -a, -um, impious impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētus, fill impono, -ere, imposui, impositus, put on, impose importo, 1, bring in, import improbitās,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., dishonesty improvisus, -a, -um, unforeseen; dē improvīso, suddenly **imprūdentia**, -ae, f., poor sense **impudenter**, adv., impudently impulsus, part. of impello īmus, see īnferior in, prep. w. acc., into, to, towards, against, on; w. abl., in, on, among, at

inānis, -e, empty

incēdō, -ere, incessī, incessus, enter **incendium**,  $-d\bar{i}$ , n., fire, burning incendō, -ere, incendī, incensus, set on fire, burn: rouse incertus, -a, -um, uncertain incidō, -ere, incidī, -, fall (into or upon), happen incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus, take to, begin incitō, 1, urge on, arouse inclūdō, -ere, inclūsī, inclūsus, shut up incognitus, -a, -um, unknown incolo, -ere, incolui, - inhabit. live incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe **incommodum.**  $-\bar{i}$ , n.. harm incrēdibilis, -e, unbelievable incumbō, -ere, incubuī, incubitūrus, lean over incursio,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., raid incurso, 1, run against inde, adv., then, from there, thereafter, therefore **Indī.** –**ōrum.** *m. pl.*, the Indians. inhabitants of India indīcō, -ere, indīxī, indictus, call indignitās, –tātis, f., outrage **indīligenter**, adv., carelessly indiscrētē, adv., indiscreetly indoctus. -a. -um. untrained indūcō, -ere, indūxī, inductus, lead in, bring in; influence induō, -ere, induī, indūtus, put on, dress, impale ineō, inīre, iniī, initūrus, enter upon; consilium ineo, form a plan inermis, -e, unarmed **infāmia**, **–ae**, *f*., dishonor īnfāmis, -e, notorious īnfāns, -fantis, m., infant infectus, -a, -um, not done infēlix, gen. infēlicis, unfortunate, unlucky, unhappy inferior, -ius, lower, inferior; superl. īmus, īnfimus, lowest

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus, bring in, to, or against; place upon, inflict, enter; signa infero, charge īnficiō, -ere, īnfēcī, īnfectus, stain, infect infimus, see inferior infinitus, -a, -um, endless, countless **infirmitās**, **-tātis**, f., illness īnfirmus, -a, -um, fixed influō, -ere, infūxī, infūxus, flow (in) **infrā**, adv., below, farther on: prep. w. acc., below infundō, -ere, infūdī, infūsus, pour in **ingenium**,  $-n\bar{\imath}$ , n., ability ingēns, gen. ingentis, huge ingredior, ingredī, ingressus, step into, enter iniciō, –ere, iniēcī, iniectus, throw or thrust into, inspire inimīcitia, -ae, f., enmity, feud inimīcus, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile; as noun, m., (personal) enemy inīquitās, -tātis, f., unfavorableness inīquus, -a, -um, uneven, unfavorable, unjust initium,  $-t\bar{\imath}$ , n., beginning, element iniungō, -ere, iniūnxī, iniūnctus, join to, impose on iniūria, -ae, f., wrong, injustice, injury iniūstē, adv., unjustly iniūstus, -a, -um, unjust innocēns, gen. innocentis, innocent **inopia**, **–ae**, *f*., lack, scarcity, poverty inopīnāns, gen. inopīnantis, unsuspecting inops, gen. inopis, poor, helpless inquit, says, says he (after one or more words of a direct quotation); inquis, you say īnsānia, -ae, f., madness īnsānus, -a, -um, mad īnsciēns, gen. īnscientis, not knowing

īnscrībō, -ere, īnscrīpsī, īnscrīptus, inscribe însequor, însequi, însecutus, follow up, pursue īnserō. -ere, īnseruī, īnsertus, insert īnsidiae, -ārum, f. pl., plot, ambush, treachery īnsignis, -e, remarkable. noted. conspicuous; as noun, īnsigne, -is, n., ornament, īnsiliō, -īre, īnsiluī, --, leap upon īnsistō, -ere, īnstitī, -, adopt, stand (on) instituō, -ere, instituī, institūtus, establish, decide upon; begin, train; build, provide īnstitūtum, -ī, n., custom īnstō, -āre, īnstitī, -, press on instrümentum, -i, n., instrument īnstruō, -ere, -īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus, draw up, provide  $\bar{\text{insula}}$ , -ae, f., island integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, fresh, unharmed intellegenter, adv., intelligently intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, realize, understand intemperans, gen. -antis, intemperate intendō, -ere, intendī, intentus, stretch out, direct inter, prep. w. acc., between, for, among; inter se, with each other from one another intercēdō, -ere, -cessī. -cessūrus, go between, intervene intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off, cut off interea, adv., meanwhile intereo, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, perish

intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw between, intervene interim, adv., meanwhile interior. -ius, interior: interiores, those in the interior intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go, stop, interrupt, intervene interpono, -ere, -posui, -positus, present interpretor, 1. explain interrogo, 1, ask, question intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be between, take part (in); interest, it makes a difference intervāllum, -ī, n., interval. distance interventus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., coming on intrā, prep. w. acc., within intrō. 1. enter intrōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let in intueor, intuērī, intuitus, look inūsitātus, -a, -um, unusual. strange inūtilis, -e, useless inveniō, -īre, invēnī, inventus, come upon, find **inventor**, **–ōris**, *m*., discoverer invictus, -a, -um, unconquered invideo, -ēre, invīdī, invīsus, invidia, -ae, f., envy invītō, 1. invite invītus, -a, -um, unwilling io! interj., oh! ah! hurrah! iocor, 1. joke iocus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., joke Iovis, see Iuppiter ipse, ipsa, ipsum, -self. very  $\bar{i}$ ra, -ae, f., anger, wrath īrācundus, -a, -um, hottempered, quick-tempered īrātus, -a, -um, angry irrīdeō, -ēre, irrīsī, irrīsus, laugh at. ieer irrumpō, -ere, irrūpī, irruptus, break in, rush in is, ea, id, this, that; as pron., he, iste, ista, istud, that

ita, adv., so, in such a way, thus, yes; ita ut(ī), just as **İtalia**, -ae, f., Italy itaque, adv., and so, therefore item, adv., also, likewise iter, itineris, n., journey, road, march, way; iter facio, march. travel iterum, adv., again iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, order iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant iūdex, iūdicis, m., judge iūdicium, -cī, n., trial, investigation, judgment iūdicō, 1, judge, decide iugum, -ī, n., yoke, ridge Iūlius, -a, -um, of Julius; as noun, f., m., Julia, Julius: July iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join, harness iūnior, –ius (comp. of iuvenis), vounger Iūnō, -ōnis, f., Juno, a goddess, wife of Jupiter **Iuppiter**, **Iovis**, *m*., **Jupiter**, *king* of the gods Iūra, -ae, m., Jura, a mountain range iūrō, 1, swear iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law; iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath iussum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., order iūstitia, -ae, f., justice iūstus, -a, -um, just, proper, regular iuvenālis, -e, youthful iuvenis, –is, m., young man iuventūs, -tūtis, f., youth, young people iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid. please iūxtā, adv., close by

### Ι.

L., abbreviation for Lūcius, Lūcī, m., Lucius (Lū'shius) labor, -ōris, m., work, task, trouble, hardship labōrō, 1, work, be hard pressed, struggle lac, lactis, n., milk

kill

interficio, -ere, -feci, -fectus.

interest, see intersum

Lacedaemon, -onis, f., Sparta, a region in Greece lacero, 1, tear to pieces lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, attack lacrima, -ae, f., tear lacrimosus, -a, -um, tearful lacus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m.. lake laetitia, -ae, f., joy laetus, -a, -um, joyful lampas, -adis, f., lamp, torch lanterna, -ae, f., lantern lapis, lapidis, m., stone Lār, Laris, m., Lar (pl. Lā'rēs), a household god lārva, -ae, f., ghost lassitūdō, -dinis, f., weariness lātē, adv., widely lateo, -ere, -ui, --, hide, escape notice later, lateris, m., brick, tile Latinus, -a, -um, Latin; as noun, m., a Latin lātitūdō, -dinis, f., width latro, -onis, m., robber, bandit latrōcinium, -nī, n., robbery latus, lateris, n., side, flank lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad lātus, see ferō laudo, 1, praise laus, laudis, f., praise lautus, -a, -um, magnificent lavo, -āre, lāvī, lautus, wash, bathe laxo, 1, open out lēctor, -ōris, m., reader lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., embassy lēgātus, −ī, m., envoy; general, staff officer; governor legiō,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., legion legionarius, -a, -um, legionary lego, -ere, legi, lectus choose, read, select Lemannus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ , m., w. lacus, Lake Geneva lēniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, soothe lēnis, -e, gentle leniter, adv., gently leō,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, m.. lion **Leonidas**, –ae, m., Leon'idas levis, -e, light levitās, -tātis, f., lightness, inconstancy  $l\bar{e}x$ ,  $l\bar{e}gis$ , f., law

**libellus**, -**ī**, m., little book libenter, adv., willingly, gladly liber, librī, m., book līber, -era, -erum, free līberālis, -e, liberal līberāliter, adv., liberally, courteously **līberātor**, **–ōris**, *m*., liberator līberī, -ōrum, m. pl., children līberō, 1, free, set free lībertās, –tātis, f., freedom, liberty **lībertus, −ī,** *m*., freedman librārius, -rī, m., bookseller licentia, -ae, f., license licet, –ēre, licuit or licitum est, it is permitted, one may, allow ligō, 1, tie, bind līlium, līlī, n., lily līmen, līminis, n., threshold lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language liquidus, -a, -um, liquid **littera, -ae,** f., letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter (epistle), letters (if modified by an adjective such as multae), literature lītus, lītoris, n., shore Līvius, -vī, m., Livv, a Roman historian locō, 1, place locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, locōrum, n.), place, country; rank, situation: opportunity longē, adv., far away, far, by far; longē lātēque, far and wide longinguus, -a, -um, distant longitūdō, –dinis, f., length longus, -a, -um, long loquor, loqui, locutus, talk, speak lūdificō, 1, make sport of lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, play lūdus, -ī, m., game, play, school lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, mourn **lūmen**, **lūminis**, n.. light, lamp; glory; eye lūna, -ae, f., moon lupus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., wolf lūx, lūcis, f., light; prīmā or ortā lūce, at dawn

luxuria, -ae, f., luxury

Lycurgus, -ī, m., Lycur gus

M M., abbreviation for Marcus Macedonia, -ae, f., Macedonia, a country northeast of Greece: Macedonicus, -a. -um. Macedonian māceria, -ae, f., wall māchina, -ae, f., machine māchinātiō, -ōnis, f., engine macies,  $-\bar{e}i$ , f., thinness magicus, -a, -um, magic magis, adv., more, rather; superl. maximē, most, very, very greatly, especially, very hard magister, -trī, m., teacher magistrātus, -ūs, m., magistrate, official, office magnificus, -a, -um, magnificent, generous magnit $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ d $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , -dinis, f., greatness, magnopere, adv., greatly magnus, -a, -um, large. great. much, loud; w. iter, forced; comp. maior, maius, larger, greater; maiores, -um, older men, ancestors; superl. maximus, -a, -um, greatest, very great maiestās, –tātis, f., dignity, honor maior, see magnus male, adv., badly mālō, mālle, māluī, —, prefer malus, -a, -um, bad; comp. peior, peius, worse; superl. pessimus, -a, -um, very bad. worst: malum. -ī. n.. trouble mandātum, -ī, n., order mando, 1, commit, entrust, give. command; fugae mē mandō, take to flight maneō, -ēre, mānsī. mānsūrus, remain, endure manifēstus. -a. -um. obvious manipulus, -ī, m., maniple manūmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, make free manus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , f., hand, force mare, maris, n., sea margarīta, -ae, f., pearl

margarītārius, -rī, m., pearl dealer margō, marginis, m., edge maris, see mare and mas maritimus. -a, -um, of the sea. near the sea; ora maritima, **ōrae maritimae**, f., seacoast marītus, -ī, m., husband marmor, -oris, n., marble marmoreus, -a, -um, of marble Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars, god of Mārtius, -a. -um, of Mars: of March; as noun, m., Martius (Mar'shius) mās, maris, m., male māter, mātris, f., mother māteria, -ae, f., timber, wood mātrimōnium, -nī, n.. marriage; in mātrimonium do, give in marriage; in mātrimonium dūco, marry  $m\bar{a}tr\bar{o}na$ , -ae, f., wife, married woman mātūrē, adv., soon, quickly mātūrō, 1, hasten mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, early, mature maximē, see magis; maximus, see magnus mēcum = cum mē medicīna, -ae, f., medicine medicus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., doctor mediocris, -e, short, moderate mediocritas, -tatis, f., mean mediterrāneus, -a, -um, inland medius, -a, -um, middle (of). midst of mel, mellis, n., honey melior, see bonus; melius, see membrum, -ī, n., member, part of the body, limb meminī (perf. translated as pres.), remember memor, gen. memoris, mindful, unforgetting **memoria**, **-ae**, *f*., memory; memoriā teneō, remember  $m\bar{e}ns$ , mentis, f., mindmēnsa, -ae, f., table mēnsis, -is, m., month

menti $\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., mention mercātor, -ōris, m., trader, merchant mercātūra, -ae, f., trade **Mercurius**, **–rī**, *m*., Mercury, god of trade and gain and messenger of the gods mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus, deserve, earn, win merīdiēs,  $-\bar{e}i$ , m., midday, noon: meritum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., merit, service mersus, -a, -um, submerged mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, measure metuō, -ere, -uī, -, fear metus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., fear meus, -a, -um, my mine migrō, 1, move, depart mīles, mīlitis, m.. soldier mīlitāris, -e, military mīlitia, -ae, f., military service mīlle, pl. mīlia, thousand mīlle passūs, mile Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of wisdom minimē, see minus minimus, see parvus minor, see parvus minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus, lessen, settle minus, adv., less; superl. minime, least, by no means mīrābilis. -e. wonderful mīrāculum. -ī. n.. wonderful thing mīrātor, -ōris, m., admirer mīror, 1. wonder, wonder at. admire mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful. strange misceo, -ere, -uī, mixtus, mix miser, -era, -erum, unhappy, poor miserābilis, -e, wretched miseria, -ae, f., wretchedness mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, let go, send, throw mixta, see misceō mobilis, -e, moving  $m\bar{o}bilit\bar{a}s$ ,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., changeableness moderātus, -a, -um, moderate

modernus, -a, -um, modern modestē, adv., modestly modo, adv., only, merely, even; non modo... sed etiam, not only...but also modus, -ī, m., measure, manner, kind, plan, way: quem ad modum, how moenia, -ium, m. pl., (city) walls molestia, -ae, f., annoyance molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, soften mollis, -e, tender mollitia, -ae, f., weakness Mona, -ae, f., the Isle of Man, between England and Ireland moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus, remind, advise, warn monitus, -ūs, m., warning mons, montis, m., mountain, hill, mount monstro, 1, point out, show  $m\bar{o}nstrum, -\bar{i}, n., monster$ **monumentum**,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., monument mora, -ae, f., delay, stay morbus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., disease morior, morī, mortuus, die: mortuus, -a, -um, dead. having died; moritūrus, about to die moror, 1, delay, stay mors, mortis, f., death mortālis, -e, mortal mortifer, -fera, -ferum, deadly mortuus, see morior mōs, mōris, m., custom; pl., character  $m\bar{o}tus$ ,  $-\bar{u}s$ , m., motion, movement moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move, stir (up) mox, adv., soon  $m\bar{u}la$ , -ae, f., mulemulier, mulieris, f., woman multitūd $\bar{o}$ , -dinis, f., multitude, (great) number multō, adv., much multum, adv., much, great; comp. plūs, more; superl. plūrimum, most, very much, great deal noch, lite and

 $m\bar{e}ns\bar{u}ra$ , -ae, f., measurement

multus, -a, -um, much; pl., many; comp. plūrēs, plūra, more, several; superl. plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many mundanus, -a, -um, of the world mundus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., world, universe mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify, protect; viam mūniō, build a road  $m\bar{u}n\bar{i}ti\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{o}nis$ , f., fortification, defenses  $m\bar{u}nus$ , -eris, n., duty, gift; pl., shows (of gladiators), games mūrālis, -e, wall mūrus, -ī, m., wall Mūsae, –ārum, f. pl., the Muses mūtābilis, -e, changeable, fickle mutilus, -a, -um, broken mūtō, 1, change mūtus, -a, -um, mute

### N

nactus, part of nanciscor nam, namque, conj., for nanciscor, nancisci, nactus, gain, obtain, find, meet with narrō, 1, tell, relate nāscor, nāscī, nātus, be born. be found; duōs annōs nātus. two years old; nātus, -ī, m., son nātālis, -e, of birth; dies nātālis, birthday  $n\bar{a}ti\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{o}nis$ , f., nation, tribe nato, 1, swim, float nātūra, -ae, f., nature nātus, part. of nāscor naumachia, -ae, f., sea fight nauta, -ae, m., sailor nāvālis, -e, naval nāvigium, -gī, n., boat nāvigō, 1, sail nāvis, nāvis, f., ship; nāvis longa, warship; nāvis onerāria, transport -ne, introduces questions; indirect questions, whether  $-n\bar{e}$ , conj., not, (so) that . . . not, in order that . . . not, that; adv., not; ne... quidem (emphatic word between), not even

nec, see neque **necessāriō**, adv., necessarily necessārius, -a, -um, necessary necesse, indeclinable adj., necessary necessitās, -tātis, f., necessity necō, 1, kill nefārius, -a, -um, unspeakable **nefās**, n., indeclinable, sin, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lectus, disregard, neglect negō, 1, say no, deny, say... not negōtium,  $-t\bar{\imath}$ , n., business, trouble, task, job nēmō, dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem (no other forms), **nepōs**, **nepōtis**, *m.*, grandson **nēquāquam**, adv., by no means **neque** (or **nec**), and not, not; neque... neque, neither . . . nor; neque quisquam, not a single one nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, —, not know neu, see nēve **neuter**, **-tra**, **-trum**, neither (of neve (neu), conj., and not, nor **nex**, **necis**, f., death niger, -gra, -grum, black nihil, nīl, nothing, not nimis, too much nisi, conj., unless, except niveus, -a, -um, snow-white nix, nivis, f., snow nōbilis, -e, distinguished, noble  $n\bar{o}bilit\bar{a}s$ ,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., nobility nōbīscum = cum nōbīs noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, do harm to, injure (w. dat.) noctū, adv., by night nocturnus, -a, -um, of night, night nolo, nolle, nolui, —, not want, not wish, be unwilling nōmen, nōminis, n., name nōminātim, adv., by name nōminō, 1, name

non, adv., not; non iam, no longer; non nulli (nonnulli), -ae, -a, some; non numquam, sometimes nondum, adv., not yet nonus, -a, -um, ninth Nōreia, -ae, f., Norē'ia, a city of the Norici Nōricus, -a, -um, Norican, of the Norici nos, we, pl. of ego nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, learn, recognize; perf., have learned, know noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar, well-known, noted novem, nine novō, 1, renew novus, -a, -um, new, strange; novis-simum agmem or novissimī, the rear: w. rēs or imperia, revolution nox, noctis, f., night noxia, -ae, f., crime  $n\bar{u}b\bar{e}s$ , -is, f., cloud nūdō, 1, strip, expose  $n\bar{u}gae, -\bar{a}rum, f.$ , nonsense nūllus, -a, -um, no, none; as noun, m., no one: non nulli. some num, adv., introduces questions expecting negative answer; conj., whether  $n\bar{u}men$ ,  $n\bar{u}minis$ , n., divinity, will numerus, -ī, m., number Numidae, -ārum, m. pl., the Numidians **nummus**, –**i**, *m*., coin, money numquam, adv., never nunc, adv., now nūntiō, 1, report, announce nūntius, -tī, m., messenger; message, news, report nūper, adv., recently nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl., wedding nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, nourish, foster  $n\bar{u}tus, -\bar{u}s, m., nod$ nux, nucis, f., nut**nympha**, -ae, f., nymph

ō! *interj.*, O!

**ob**, *prep. w. acc.*, because of, on account of, for

obiciō, -ere, obiēcī, obiectus, throw to *or* against, put in the way, oppose

oblinō, –ere, oblēvī, oblitus, smear

obscūrus, -a, -um, dark observō, 1, observe, watch

obses, obsidis, *m.*, hostage obsideō, –ēre, obsēdī,

obsessus, besiege, blockade obsidiō, -ōnis, f., siege

obstō, –āre, obstitī, obstātūrus, lprevent

obtemperō, 1, submit to obtestor, 1, entreat, pray obtineō, –ēre, obtinuī,

**obtentus**, hold, obtain **occāsiō**, **–ōnis**, *f*., opportunity **occāsus**, **–ūs**, *m*., setting;

occāsus sōlis, sunset, west occidō, –ere, occidī, occāsūrus,

occīdo, -ere, occīdi, occīsus, kill

occultō, 1, conceal

occultus, -a, -um, secret

occupātiō, -ōnis, f., business occupō, 1, seize, occupy;

occupātus, busy

occurro, -ere, occurri,

occursūrus, run against, meet, occur

Oceanus, -ī, m., ocean (esp. the Atlantic Ocean)

Octāviānus, -ī, m., Octā'vian, the emperor Augustus

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth

octō, eight

oculus, –ī, *m.*, eye

**ōdī**, **ōsūrus** (perf. translated as pres.), hate

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, offer; mē offerō, rush against

officium, -cī, n., duty

ōh! interj., oh!

**ōlim**, *adv.*, once, formerly, sometime

Olympia, -ae, f., Olympia, a Greek city; Olympicus, -a, -um, Olympic

Olympiēum, –ī, n.,

Olympiā 'um, temple of the Olympian Jupiter

ōmen, ōminis, n., omen, sign omittō, -ere, omīsī, omissus,

let go, drop, disregard omnīnō, adv., altogether, in all omnis, omne, all, every, whole onerārius, -a, -um, for freight;

nāvis onerāria, transport

onerōsus, -a, -um, heavy onus, oneris, n., weight

opācus, -a, -um, gloomy

opera, -ae, f., work, effort opes, -um, f. pl., resources

**opīniō**, **–ōnis**, *f*., opinion, expectation; reputation

oportet, -ēre, oportuit, it is necessary, ought

oppidum, -ī, n., town opportūnus, -a, -um,

opportune. convenient, advantageous

opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressus; overcome, surprise, crush, oppress

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., siege, method of attack

oppugnō, 1, attack, besiege
ops, opis, f., aid; pl., wealth,
resources

optimē, see bene

optimus, see bonus optō, 1, desire

opus, operis, n., work

opus, n., indeclinable, need; necessary

**ōra**, **-ae**, *f*., coast, edge

**ōrāculum, −ī,** *n.*, oracle, prophesy

**ōrātiō**, **−ōnis**, *f*., speech **ōrātor**, **−ōris**, *m*., speaker, orator

orbis, -is, m., circle; esp. w. terrārum, the world (i.e., the

circle of lands around the Mediterranean)

Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus, god of Hades; Hades ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., order, rank oriēns, -entis, m., east orīgo, originis, f., origin orior, orīrī, ortus, rise, arise, begin, be descended from orno, l, adorn; ornatus, fitted out

**ōrō**, 1, beg, ask, pray (for), plead **Orpheus**, **–ī**, *m*., Orpheus (Or´fūs), *a famous musician* 

ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face, expression

os, ossis, n., bone

ōsculum, −ī, n., kiss ostendō, −ere, ostendī.

ostentus, (stretch out), show,

**ōtium**, **ōtī**, n., leisure, quiet **Ovidius**,  $-d\overline{i}$ , m., Ovid

ōvum, −ī, n., egg

P

P., abbreviation for Pūblius pābulos, 1, forage

**pābulum**, **–ī**, *n*., food (for cattle), fodder

pācō, 1. pacify, subdue

**paene**, *adv.*, almost **Paestum**, **–ī**, *n.*, Paestum

(Pěs´tum), a town in southern Italy

pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton Palātīnus (mōns), -ī, m.,

**Palātium**, **–tī**, *n*., the Palatine Hill; palace

palma, -ae, f., hand

palūs, palūdis, f., marsh, swamp pānis, –is, m., bread

pār, gen. paris, equal, fair; as

noun, n., pair

parcē, adv., sparingly parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus,

spare. save

parcus, -a, -um, sparing, economical

parēns, -entis, m. and f., parent pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, (appear), obey

pariō, –ere, peperī, partus, gain

Parnassius, -a, -um,

Parnassian

parō, 1, get, get ready (for), prepare; parātus, -a, um, prepared, ready

My umans

pars, partis, f., part, side, direction parvulus, -a, -um, very small, little parvus, -a, -um, small, low; comp. minor, minus, smaller, less, lesser, younger; superl. minimus, -a, -um, smallest, least, very little, youngest passus, -ūs, m., step, pace (about five feet); mīlle passūs, mile passus, part. of patior  $p\bar{a}stor, -\bar{o}ris, m.$ , shepherd patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, open patēns, gen. patentis, open pateo, -ere, patui, -, stand open, extend pater, patris, m., father, senator; patrēs conscripti, senators paternus, -a, -um, of the father patienter, adv., patiently patientia, -ae, f., patience patior, patī, passus, suffer. permit patria, -ae, f., fatherland, country patrius, -a, -um, of a father. ancestral patruus, -ī, m., uncle paucī, -ae, -a, few. only a few paucitās,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., small number paulātim, adv., little by little; a few at a time paulisper, adv., for a little while paulo and paulum, adv., shortly, a little pauper, gen. pauperis, poor paupertās,  $-t\bar{a}tis, f.$ , poverty paveō, -ēre, pāvī, -, fear pavidus, -a, -um, trembling  $p\bar{a}x$ ,  $p\bar{a}cis$ , f., peace pectus, pectoris, n., breast, **pecūnia**, **–ae**, *f*., money pecus, pecoris, n., cattle pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier; pl., infantry pedester, -tris, -tre, (of) infantry; on foot

peditātus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., infantry

perior, see malus **pellis, –is**, *f*., skin pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive, defeat pendeō, -ēre, pependī, --, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, hang, weigh, pay penetrō, 1. penetrate per, prep. w. acc., through, by, during, along peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, complete percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, feel, learn percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, strike perdiscō, -ere, -didicī, -... learn thoroughly perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, lose, destroy, waste perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead or bring through, extend, pereō, –īre, –iī (–īvī), –itūrus, perish, pass away, be lost perfero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, carry (through), report, endure perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, make of, bring about, finish **perfidia**, **-ae**, *f*., faithlessness, treachery perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous perfuga, -ae, m., deserter perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -, flee perīculōsus, -a. -um, dangerous **perīculum**, **–ī**, *n*., trial, danger perītus, -a, -um, skilled, experienced perlegō, –ere, –lēgī, –lēctus, read through permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, remain permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go through, leave, allow, grant, entrust, permit permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move deeply, induce, alarm perpaucī, -ae, -a, very few

perpetuus, -a, -um, constant, lasting perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through Persae, -ārum, m. pl., the Persians persequor, -sequi, -secutus, pursue, punish perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, see (clearly), examine perstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, persist persuādeo, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, persuade perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, **–territus**, scare thoroughly, **pertinaciter**, adv., persistently pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentūrus, extend (to), pertain to pertrānseō, -īre, -īvī, -itūrus, pass through **perturbātiō**, **–ōnis**, *f.*, confusion perturbo, 1. disturb, throw into confusion perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, **-ventūrus**, come (through), arrive (at) pēs, pedis, m., foot: pedibus, on pessimus, see malus petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus, seek. ask, beg; attack Pharsālus, -ī, f., Pharsā'lus, a town in Thessaly Philippī, -ōrum, m. pl., Philippi (Filĭp´ī), a city in Macedonia Philippus, -ī, m., Philip philosophus, -ī, m., philosopher pictūra, -ae, f., picture pila, -ae, f., ball pilula, -ae, f., pill pīlum, -ī, n., spear (for throwing), javelin piscis, -is, m., fish piscor, 1, fish pius, -a, -um, dutiful, righteous, pious

placeo, -ere, placui, placitūrus, be pleasing to, please; placet, it pleases (him), i.e., (he) decides, be decided placidus, -a, -um, gentle plācō, 1, appease plānitiēs,  $-\bar{e}\bar{\imath}, f$ ., plain plānus, -a, -um, level Plato, -onis, m., Plato, a Greek philosopher plēbs, plēbis, f., common people plēnus, -a, -um, full plērīque, -aeque, -aque, most plērumque, adv., usually plūrēs, see multus plūrimum, see multum plūrimus, see multus plūs, see multum, multus **poena**, -ae, f., penalty, punishment; poenam do, pay the penalty Poenī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Carthaginians poēta, -ae, m., poet polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus, promise **pollicitātiō**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ **nis**, f., promise  $p\bar{o}m\bar{a}rium, -r\bar{i}, n.$ , orchard pompa, -ae, f., parade, procession Pompeiānus, -a, -um, at Pompeii Pompeius,  $-pe\bar{i}$ , m., Pompey Pomptīnae palūdēs, Pŏn'tīne Marshes, south of Rome pondus, ponderis, n., weight pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, put, place, serve, lay down; passive, be situated, depend upon; w. castra, pitch pons, pontis, m., bridge pontifex, pontificis, m., priest pontus, -ī, m., sea poposci, see posco populor, 1, destroy **populus**,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., people; pl., peoples porta, -ae, f., gate, door **porticus**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , f., colonnade portō, 1, carry portus, -ūs, m., harbor, port

poscō, -ere, poposcī, --, demand, call for possessi $\bar{o}$ ,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., possession possum, posse, potuī, —, can, can do, be able; multum (plūs, plūrimum) possum, be very powerful post, adv. and prep. w. acc., behind; after, later; paulo post, a little later posteā, adv., afterwards, later; posteāguam, conj., after posterus, -a, -um, following, next; as noun, m. pl., posterity, descendants postquam, conj., after postrēmō, adv., finally postrīdiē, adv., on the next day postulo, 1, demand potēns, gen. potentis, powerful potentia, -ae, f., power potestās, -tātis, f., power potior, potīrī, potītus, gain possession of (w. gen. or abl.) potius, adv., rather prae, prep. w. abl., before; in comparison with praeacūtus, -a, -um, pointed praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, hold forth, furnish, present, show praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go before, precede praeceps, gen. praecipitis. headlong praeceptum, -ī, n., rule, instruction praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, instruct praecō, praecōnis, m., announcer praeda, -ae, f., loot praedicō, 1, announce, declare praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, predict praedor, 1, loot praedūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, extend praefectus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., commander, prefect praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, put or place in charge of praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead

praemium,  $-m\bar{i}$ , n., reward praemūniō = mūniō praenosco, -ere, -novi, -notus, learn beforehand praeparō, 1, prepare praerumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, break off praescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, direct praescriptum, -ī, n., order praesēns, gen. praesentis, present praesentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, foresee praesertim, adv., especially praesidium, -dī, n., garrison, guard, protection, aid praestāns, gen. praestantis, outstanding praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitūrus, stand before, excel; offer, perform, show; praestat, it is praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be in charge of, be in command of praeter, prep. w. acc., besides, except, beyond praetereā, adv., besides praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go by, pass praeterquam, adv., other than praetor, -ōris, m., praetor (an official), judge praevaleō, -ēre, -valuī, -valitūrus, prevail prandium,  $-d\bar{i}$ , n., lunch prātum, -ī, n., meadow prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, grasp, seize, catch premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, press, press hard, oppress, crowd  $pr\bar{e}nd\bar{o} = prehend\bar{o}$ pretium,  $-t\bar{i}$ , n., price; reward prex, precis, f., prayer, entreaty prīdiē, adv., on the day before prīmō, adv., at first prīmum, adv., first, at first, for the first time; quam prīmum, as soon as possible prīmus, -a, -um, first; in prīmīs, especially

princeps, principis, adj. and noun, m., chief, first (man), leader, emperor: princeps, under the direction of prīncipātus, -ūs, m., first place, leadership prior, prius, former, first prīstinus, -a, -um, former prius, adv., before, first; priusquam (prius... quam), conj.. before prīvātus, -a, -um, private; as noun, m., private citizen prō, prep. w. abl., in front of, before, for, instead of, as, in accordance with, in proportion to **probitās**,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., honesty probo, 1, prove, approve prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go forward, advance, proceed **procul**, adv., at a distance, far off prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, lie down, sink down prōcūrō, 1, take care of prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run forward prodo, -ere, -didi, -ditus, give (forth), hand down, betray produco, -ere, -duxi, -ductus, lead or bring out, prolong **proelium**,  $-l\bar{l}$ , n., battle profectio, -onis, f., departure profero, proferre, protuli, prolatus, bring out, extend professor, -ōris, m., professor proficio, -ere, -feci, -fectus, accomplish proficiscor, proficisci, profectus, set out, start profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee progenies,  $-ie\bar{i}$ , f., descendants prognātus, -a, -um, descended progredior, progredi, progressus, step forward, advance prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, prevent, keep from, cut off

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw, thrust (forward), abandon prolabor, -ī, prolapsus, slip prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go; promise; prōmissus, long prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move forward promptus, -a, -um, ready pronuntio, 1. announce, recite pronus, -a, -um, flat (face down) prope, adv., almost; prep. w. acc.. near propello, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, drive away, dislodge **properō**, 1, hasten, hurry (on) propinguitās,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ ,  $f_{\cdot \cdot}$ nearness propinguus, -a, -um, near; as noun, m., relative propitius, -a, -um, favorable propono, -ere, -posui, -positus, explain, present, offer, raise, propose proprius, -a, -um, (one's) own, characteristic of **propter**, prep. w. acc., because of, on account of propterea, adv., on this account; propterea quod, because propugno, 1, fight on the offensive prōra, -ae, f., prow prōscrīptiō, -ōnis, f., proscription, list of condemned prőseguor, prősegui, prosecutus, pursue, address prospectus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., view prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look out for, see prösternő, -ere, -strávi, -strātus, overthrow prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, benefit, help prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, cover **prōtinus**, adv., immediately proveho, -ere, -vexi, -vectus, carry forward provideo, -ere, -vidi, -visus,

provide, look out for,

**prōvincia**, **–ae**, *f*., province **proximē**, adv., recently proximus, -a, -um, nearest. last, next, very near prūdēns, gen. prūdentis, sensible prūdentia, -ae, f., foresight, good sense pūblicē, adv., publicly pūblicus, -a, -um, public Pūblius, Pūblī, m., Pub'lius puella, -ae, f., girl puer, puer $\bar{i}$ , m., boy, child puerīlis, -e, boyish, childish puerīliter, adv., childishly pueritia, -ae, f., childhood, boyhood pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle pugnō, 1, fight pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful pulchrit $\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ d $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ , –dinis, f., beauty pulsō, 1, dash against pulsus, part. of pello Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic. Carthaginian pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, punish **puppis**, -is, f., stern pūrgō, 1, cleanse purpurātus, -a, -um, purple putō, 1, think, consider Pvrēnaei montēs, Pyrenees Mountains

## Q

Q., abbreviation for Quīntus
quā, adv., where
quadringentī, -ae, -a, four
hundred
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī,
quaesītus, seek, inquire
quaestiō, -ōnis, f., investigation
quaestor, -ōris, m., quaestor (a
Roman official), treasury
official
quaestus, -ūs, m., gain
quālis, -e, what kind of, what,

such as **quam**, adv. and conj.. how, as:

w. comp., than; w. superl., as

... as possible; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible **quamquam**, conj., although

quando, conj., when quantus, -a, -um, how great, how much, what, as (great or much as) quārē, why quartus, -a, -um, fourth; quartus decimus, fourteenth quasi, adv. and conj., as if, like, as it were quattuor, four -que, conj. (added to second word), and queror, querī, questus, complain qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, what, that; interrog. adj., what; quī, qua, quod, indef. adj., any quia, conj., because quīcumque, quaecumque,

whatever quid, adv., why quīdam, quaedam, quiddam and (adj.) quoddam, a certain one or thing; adj., certain, some, a, one

quodcumque, whoever,

quidem, adv. (follows
 emphasized word), at least, to
 be sure; nē...quidem, not
 even

**quidnam**, what in the world **quies**, **quietis**, *f*., rest, sleep, quiet

quiētus, -a, -um, quiet; quiētē, adv., quietly

quīn, conj., that; quīn etiam, moreover

Quīnctīlis, -e, (of) July quīngentī, -ae, -a, five hundred quīnquāgintā, fifty quīnque, five Quīntiliānus, -ī, m., Quintil´ian

quintilianus, –i, m., Quintil'ian quintus, –a, –um, fifth

Quirīnālis (mōns), -is, m., Quĭr´inal Hill

quis, quid, interrog, pron., who,
 what; indef. pron., anyone,
 anything

quisquam, quicquam, anyone, anything, any; neque quisquam, not a single one quisque, quidque, each one, each thing, each
quō, adv., where, to which; quō modō, how
quō, conj., in order that; quō

minus (quōminus), that not quoad, *conj.*, as long as quod, *conj.*, because, that, since;

**quondam**, *adv.*, once (upon a time)

quod sī, but if

quoniam, conj., since, because
quoque, adv., too (follows the
 word it emphasizes)

quot, indeclinable adj., how many; as (many as)

quotannīs, adv., every year
quotiēns, adv., as often as, how
often

### R

radio, 1, shine  $r\bar{a}d\bar{i}x$ ,  $-d\bar{i}cis$ , f., root raeda, -ae, f., carriage, bus rāmulus, -ī, m., branch rāmus, -ī, m., branch  $r\bar{a}na, -ae, f., frog$ rapiditās, -tātis, f., swiftness rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, seize, carry off rārus, -a, -um, rare ratio, -onis, f., account, plan, manner, reason, consideration, method, theory, system, judgment ratis, -is, f., raft rebellio,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f., rebellion recēdō, -ere, recessī, recessūrus, withdraw recēns, gen. recentis, new, recent recēnseō, -ēre, recēnsuī, recensus, count again, review recingo, -ere, recinxi, recinctus, loosen recipiō, -ere, recēpī, receptus, take (back), receive, recover; mē recipiō, withdraw. recover, retire recitō, 1, recite, read aloud reclīnō, 1, bend back; passive. lean rēctē, adv., rightly

reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus, give (back), render, return, restore, reflect
redeō, -īre, rediī, reditūrus, go back, return
redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāctus, bring (back), drive back, reduce
redimō, -ere, redēmī, redēmptus, buy back, ransom
redintegrō, 1, renew
reditus, -ūs, m., return
redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reductus, lead back, bring back

recupero, 1, get back, recover

recurso, 1, run back and forth

rēctus, see regā

recūsō. 1. refuse

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, bring or carry (back), report, reproduce; pedem referō, withdraw; grātiam referō, show gratitude

reficiō, -ere, refēcī, refectus, repair, refresh. restore rēgia, -ae, f., palace rēgīna, -ae, f., queen regiō, -ōnis, f., district, region rēgnō, 1. reign, rule rēgnum, -ī, n., royal power,

kingdom, rule

regō, –ere, rēxī, rēctus, rule, direct; rēctus, straight

reiciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiectus, drive back, reject

relābor, relābī, relāpsus, slip back

relanguēscō, -ere, -languī, --, become weak

**religiō**, **–ōnis**, *f*., religion, superstition

relinquō, –ere, relīquī, relictus, leave (behind), abandon

reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest (of), left; w. tempus, the future

remaneō, -ēre, remānsī, remānsūrus, remain remedium, -dī, n., remedy rēmigō, -āre, —, -, row remigrō, 1, go back **remissio**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ **nis**, f., forgiveness remittō, -ere, remīsī, **remissus,** send *or* throw back. remit, relax; remissus, mild removeō, -ēre, removī, remotus, move back, remove; remotus, remote rēmus, -ī, m., oar **Rēmus,**  $-\bar{i}$ , m.. a Rē'man renūntiō, 1, report reparō, 1, restore repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, drive back, repulse repente, adv., suddenly repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, find repetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, seek reportō, 1, carry or bring back reprimõ, -ere, repressī, repressus, stop repudiō, 1, divorce repugnō, 1, oppose requiēs, -ētis, f., rest requiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, requirō, -ere, requisivi, requisitus, miss rēs, reī, f., thing, matter, affair, circumstance; novae rēs, novārum rerum, f. pl.. revolution; res frumentaria, reī frūmentāriae, f., grain supply; res militaris, military affairs, art of war; res pūblica, public affairs, government, state; res gestae, deeds rescindő, -ere, rescidí. rescissus, cut down reservo, 1, reserve resideō, -ēre, resēdī, —, remain

resistō, -ere, restitī, -, stand against; resist resolvō, -ere, resolvī, resolūtus, loosen respicio, -ere, respexi, respectus, look back. consider

respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsus, reply, answer; respōnsum, -ī, n., answer respuō, -ere, respuī, -, reject restituō, –ere, restituī, restitūtus, restore restō, -āre, restitī, -, remain resūmō, -ere, resūmpsī, resūmptus, take up again, resume resurgō = surgō retineō. –ēre. retinuī. retentus, hold back, restrain. keep retrahō, -ere, retrāxī, retrāctus, drag back retrō, adv., back rettulī, see referō reus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m.. defendant revereor, reverērī, reveritus, respect revertō, -ere, revertī, reversus, (sometimes deponent), turn back, return revisō, -ere, -, revisit revocō, 1, recall, call back rēx, rēgis, m., king **Rhēnus.** –**ī.** *m*.. Rhine river rhētor. -ōris. m., rhetorician **Rhodanus**,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., Rhone river rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, laugh (at) rigor, -ōris, m., stiffness rīpa, -ae, f., bank (of a river) rōborō, 1, strengthen rogito, 1, keep on asking rogō, 1, ask  $R\bar{o}ma$ , -ae, f., Rome Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman: as noun, a Roman rosa, -ae, f., rose**rostrum**,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., prow (of a ship); beak rotundus, -a, -um, round rudis, -e, untrained, ignorant ruīna, -ae, f., ruin, destruction rūmor, –ōris, m., rumor rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break

 $r\bar{u}p\bar{e}s$ , -is, f., cliff, rock

rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic

rūrsus, adv., again

S Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sā'bīne: as noun, f., a Sabine woman; pl., the Sā'bīnes, a people of Italy sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred sacerdos, -dotis, m., priest sacrificium,  $-c\bar{i}$ , n., sacrifice sacrifico. 1. sacrifice saeculum (saeclum), -ī, n., age saepe, adv., often saevitia, -ae, f., fierceness saevus, -a, -um, cruel sagitta, -ae, f., arrow sagittārius, -rī, m., bowman Saliī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sā'liī or "Jumpers" (priests of Mars) saliō, -īre, saluī, saltūrus, jump, beat saltō, 1, dance salūbris, -e, wholesome, healthy salūs, -ūtis, f., health, safety, greeting salūtātor, –ōris, m., greeter, visitor salvē, salvēte, be well, greetings, hail sānctus, -a, -um, sacred sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood sānitās, -tātis, f., sanity sānus, -a, -um, sound sapiēns, gen. sapientis, wise sapienter, wisely sapientia, -ae, f., wisdom satis, adv. and indeclinable adj., enough, rather satisfació, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, satisfy saxum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., rock, stone scaena, -ae, f., stage scaenicus, -a, -um, of the theater; w. lūdī, stage plays scelus, sceleris, n., crime scēptrum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., scepter schola, -ae, f., school scholasticus, -a, -um, scholastic: as noun, m., student scientia, -ae, f., knowledge sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know, know how scrība, -ae, m., secretary

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, sculpō, -ere, sculpsī, sculptus, carve scūtum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., shield Scythae, -ārum, m. pl., the Scythians (Sĭth'ians), people beyond the Black Sea sē, acc. and abl. of suī sēcēdō, -ere, sēcessī, sēcessūrus, secede, withdraw sēcrētō, adv., in private, secretly sēcum = cum sē secundus, -a, -um, second, favorable sed, conj., but sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit  $s\bar{e}d\bar{e}s$ , -is, f., abode sēdō, 1, quiet sēductus, -a, -um, separated sella, -ae, f., chair, seat, stool semel, adv., once sēmibarbarus, -a, -um, halfbarbarian semita, -ae, f., path, footpath semper, adv., always senātor, -ōris, m., senator senātus, -ūs, m., senate senectūs,  $-t\bar{u}tis$ , f., old age senex, senis, m., old man; adj., old; comp. senior sententia, -ae, f., feeling, opinion sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, think, realize, vote sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultus, bury septem, seven septentriones, -um, m. pl., seven plow-oxen (the seven

Great Bear or Big Dipper). septimus, -a, -um, seventh **sepulchrum**,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , n., tomb sepultūra, -ae, f., burial Sēguana, -ae, m., the Seine river

stars of the constellation

Sēquanus, -a, -um, Sequā'nian; as noun, m. pl., the Sequanians

sequor, sequi, secutus, follow, pursue, seek

serēnō, 1, clear up serēnus, -a, -um, quiet sērius, comp. adv., later sermō,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, m., conversation, serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, plant, sow serpēns, –entis, f., snake serva, -ae, f., slave servīlis, -e, of a slave servitūs, –tūtis, f., slavery servo, 1, save, preserve, guard servus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., slave sēsē, acc. and abl. of suī seu, see sīve sevērē, adv., severely sevēritās, -tātis, f., severity sevērus, -a, -um, stern sex, six; sexāgintā, sixty Sextīlis, -e, August sextus, -a, -um, sixth sī, conj., if Sibylla, -ae, f., the Sibyl, a proplietess sīc, adv., so, thus siccō, 1, dry up Sicilia, -ae, f.. Sicily (Sis'ily) sīcutī (sīcut), adv., just as, as if sidus, sideris, n., star signifer, -ferī, m., standard significāti $\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ ,  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ nis, f., signal

significo, 1, indicate, mean **signum**,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., sign, signal,

standardsilentium, -tī, n., silence silva, –ae, f., forest, woods similis, -e, like, similar simul, adv., at the same time; simul atque (ac), as soon as simulācrum, -ī, n., figure, image

simulō, 1, pretend sine, prep. w. abl., without singillātim, adv., one by one, individually singulāris, -e, one by one.

remarkable singulī, -ae, -a, pl. only, one at a time: one each, single sinister, -tra, -trum, left sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, allow

sīve (seu), conj., or if; sīve (seu)... sīve (seu), whether ... or, either ... or socius,  $-c\bar{i}$ , m., comrade, ally, accomplice sõl, sõlis, m., sun sōlācium, -cī, n., comfort **solea**, **–ae**, *f*., sandal, shoe soleō, -ēre, solitus, semideponent, be used to, be accustomed solidus, -a, -um, solid  $s\bar{o}lit\bar{u}d\bar{o}$ , -dinis, f., wilderness sollicitō, 1, stir up sōlum adv., only solus, -a, -um, alone, only, lonely solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, loosen, break, free; set sail; w. poenam, pay somnus, -ī, m., sleep sonus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., sound sopor, -ōris, m., sleep sordidus, -a, -um, dirty, mean soror, -ōris, f., sister sors, sortis, f., lot, prophecy spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, scatter, sprinkle Sparta, -ae, f., Sparta, a Greek **Spartacus**, –**ī**, *m*., Spartacus, leader in a revolt of gladiators Spartānus, -ī, m., a Spartan **spatium**, **–tī**, *n*., space, distance; time, period speciēs, speciēī, f., appearance, sight spectāculum, -ī, n., spectacle, show spectō, 1, look at or on, face speculātor, -ōris, m., spy spērō, 1, hope (for) spēs, spe $\bar{i}$ , f., hope spina, -ae, f., thornspoliō, 1, rob spondeo, -ēre, spopondi,

sponsus, promise, engage  $sp\bar{o}nsa, -ae, f., a betrothed$ sponsus, -i, m., a betrothed man

sponte, w. suā, of his/her/their own accord, by his/her/their own influence, voluntarily squālēns, gen. squālentis, foul st! interj., hush! stabulum, -ī, n., stable statim, adv., at once. immediately statiō, -ōnis, f., outpost, guard, picket statua, -ae, f., statue statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtus, decide, determine **statūra**, -ae, f., stature stēlla, -ae, f., star stetī, see stō stilus, -ī, m., stylus (instrument used in writing on wax tablets) stīpendiārius, -a, -um, tributary stīpendium, -dī, n., pay, tribute stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand, stop stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, draw studeō, -ēre, studuī, -, be eager (for), study studiōsē, adv., eagerly studium, -dī, n., eagerness, interest, enthusiasm; study, pursuit **stultitia**, -ae, f., stupidity, folly stultus, -a, -um, foolish stupeō, -ēre, -uī, -, be amazed urge suāvis. -e, sweet suāvitās, -tātis, f., sweetness

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsūrus,

sub, prep., under, close to, at the foot of, just before (w. acc. after verbs of motion; w. abl. after verbs of rest or position)

subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead up; draw up

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, go under, enter, come up, undergo

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw from below, subject, conquer; subjectus, lying beneath

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, force, subdue subitō, adv., suddenly sublātus, part. of tollō sublevo, 1, lighten, raise; w. reflex., rise submergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersus, plunge subministrō, 1, furnish submitto, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, drive back subruō. –ere. –ruī. –rutus. undermine subsequor, subsequi, subsecūtus, follow (closely) subsidium,  $-d\bar{\imath}$ , n., aid, reserve subterrāneus. -a. -um. subterranean subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come to help succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, come up, succeed

(w. dat.) successus, -ūs, m., success succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run to help  $Su\bar{e}b\bar{i}$ ,  $-\bar{o}rum$ , m. pl., the Suē'bans, or Suē'bī sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,

suffice suffrāgium, -gī, n., vote suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be summa, -ae, f., sum; leadership; summa imperī, supreme command

summus, -a, -um, highest, most important, greatest; top of, surface of: summum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n... sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus,

take, assume sūmptuōsē, adv., extravagantly sūmptuōsus, -a, -um,

extravagant

super, prep. w. acc., over, upon superbē, adv., arrogantly superbus, -a, -um, haughty superior, -ius, higher, upper, superior: previous

superō, 1, overcome, conquer: surpass; beat; defeat supersum, -esse, -fuī. -futūrus, be left (over), remain, survive superus, -a, -um, upper; as noun, m. pl., gods (above) supplex, gen. supplicis, begging supplicātiō, –ōnis, f., thanksgiving supplicium,  $-c\bar{\imath}$ , n.. thanksgiving; punishment suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., suprēmus, -a. -um, highest, last surgō, -ere, surrexi, surrectūrus, rise suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, undertake, incur suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsus, hang; suspēnsus, in suspense suspīciō,  $-\bar{o}$ nis, f.. suspicion suspicor, 1, suspect

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, hold up, keep up or back; endure, withstand, hold out. check sustulī, see tollō

suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their: his own, her own, etc. Svrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., Syracuse, a city in Sicily

T., abbreviation for Titus taberna, -ae, f., shop, tavern tabula, -ae, f., table, tablet (of the law); writing tablet taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus, be silent: tacitus, silent taciturnitās, -tātis, f., silence tacitus. -a. -um. silent tālis, -e, such tam, adv., so (with adjectives and adverbs) tamen, adv., still, nevertheless; however tamquam, adv., as if

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch

tandem, adv., at last, finally

tantulus, -a, -um, so small

tantum, adv., only tantus, -a, -um, so great, so much, so large, such tarde, slowly tardő, 1, slow up tardus, -a, -um, slow, late Tarquinius, -nī, m., Tarquin'ius, Tarquin Tartarus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m. or n. pl., Hades taurus, -ī, m., bull tēctum, -ī, n., roof, house tegimentum, -ī, n., cover tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover tellus,  $-\bar{u}ris$ , f., earth  $t\bar{e}lum, -\bar{i}, n.,$  weapon. missile temere, adv., rashly, without reason temeritās, –tātis, f., rashness temperātus, -a, -um, temperate tempestās, -tātis, f., weather. storm **templum**,  $-\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ , n., temple tempto, 1, test, try, attempt, tempt tempus, temporis, n., time tenāx, gen. tenācis, tenacious tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, stretch, go tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., darkness teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, hold, keep, possess; memoriā teneō, remember tenuo, 1, make thin tepeō, -ēre, -, -, be warm ter, adv., three times tergum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., back ternī, -ae, -a, three at a time terra, -ae, f., land, earth terreō, –ēre, terruī, territus, scare, frighten, terrify terribilis, -e, frightful terror, -ōris, m., terror tertius, -a, -um, third testāmentum, -ī, n., will testimonium, -nī, n., testimony, proof testis, -is, m., witness **testūdō**, **–dinis**, *f*., shed, turtle,

Thēbae, -ārum, f. pl., Thebes, a Greek city Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly, part of Greece Thrācia, -ae, f., Thrace, a country north of Greece Thrāx, -ācis, m., a Thracian thronus, -ī m., throne **Tiberis**, -is, m., Tī ber river **Tigurīnus**, **–ī**, *m*., Tīgurī'nus, *a* Helvetian canton; pl., the Tīgurī'nī timeō, -ēre, timuī, -, fear, be afraid timidus, -a, -um, timid; timidē, adv., timidly timor, -ōris, m., fear titulus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., title, sign toga, –ae, f., toga (cloak) tolerābilis, -e, endurable tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, raise, carry, remove, destroy tormentum, -ī, n., torture: artillerv torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortus, twist, turn, torture torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostus, roast, scorch tot, indeclinable adj., so many totidem, indeclinable adj., just as many, the same number tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire, all trabs, trabis, f., beam trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give or hand over, transmit, relate. surrender trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead across, win over trāgula, -ae, f., javelin trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, draw, drag; take on trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, strike through trānō, 1, swim across tranquillitās, -tātis, f., calm tranquillus, -a, -um, peaceful trāns, prep. w. acc., across trānscendō, -ere, -cendī, -, board, climb over trānscurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, traverse trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, cross, pass, go

trānsferō, trānsferre. trānstulī, trānslātus, carry trānsfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, pierce through trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, pierce through trānsiliō, -īre, -siluī, --, jump across trānsportō, 1, carry over, transport trānsversus, -a, -um, cross trecenti, -ae, -a, three hundred tremor,  $-\bar{o}$ ris, m., shaking trēs, tria, three tribūnus, -ī, m., tribune tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus, bestow, grant, assign tribūtum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., tax. tribute **trīclīnium**,  $-n\bar{i}$ , n., dining room trīduum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., three days trīgintā, thirty triplex, gen. triplicis, threefold, triple trīstis, -e, sad, severe trīstitia, -ae, f., sadness **Troia**, –ae, f., Troy. a city in Asia Minor Troiānus, -a, -um, Trojan; as noun, m. pl., the Trojans tū, tuī, you, yourself tuba, -ae, f., trumpet tueor, tuērī, tūtus, look, guard tulī, see ferō tum, adv., then tumultus, -ūs, m., uproar tunc, adv., then tunica, -ae, f., tunic turbō, 1, roughen turbulentus, -a, -um, muddy turma, -ae, f., troop (ofcavalry) turpis, -e, disgraceful, ugly turpitūdō, -dinis, f., disgrace turris, -is, f., tower Tusculānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Tus'culans, people of Tusculum, a town in Italy tūtus, -a, -um, safe tuūs, -a, -um, your, yours (referring to one person) tvrannus, -ī, m., tyrant

testudo

Teutons

**Teutonī**, –ōrum, m. pl., the

**theātrum**,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., theater

ubi, adv., where: when ubicumque, adv., wherever ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, avenge **ūllus**, -a, -um, any, anyone ulterior, -ius, farther ultimus, -a, -um, last, farthest ultrīx, gen. ultrīcis, avenging ultro, adv., voluntarily, actually ultus, part. of ulcīscor umbra, -ae, f., shade, shadow umquam, adv., ever, at any time ūnā, adv., at the same time. along unanimus, -a, -um, of one mind, sympathetic unda, -ae, f., wave unde, adv., from which (place), by which undique, adv., from or on all sides unguentum, -i, n., ointment. salve ūniversus, -a, -um, all (together) ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone urbs, urbis, f., city urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, press hard urna, -ae, f., urn ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustus, burn usque, adv., up to, continuously, still  $\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{s}$ ,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., use, practice, experience ut, conj., (in order) that, to, so that; as (to), when; ut... non, that . . . not uter, utra, utrum, which (of two); whichever uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), both  $ut\bar{i} = ut$ ūtilis, -e, useful **ūtilitās**, **–tātis**, *f.*, usefulness ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, use, make use of (w. abl.), enjoy

utrimque, adv., on both sides

uxor, -ōris, f., wife

vaco, 1, be uninhabited, have leisure vacuus, -a, -um, empty, free vādō, -ere, --, --, go **vadum,**  $-\bar{i}$ , n., ford, shallow vagor, 1, wander valeō, -ēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, be well, be powerful, prevail; imper., valē, valēte, farewell valētūdō, -dinis, f., health: illness vallēs, –is, f., valley  $v\bar{a}$ llum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., rampart, wall, barricade vānus, -a, -um, empty, false varius, -a, -um, changing, varying, various vās, vāsis, n., kettle. pot. vessel vāstō, 1, destroy, ruin vāstus, -a, -um, huge vehemēns, gen. vehementis, vigorous **vehiculum**,  $-\bar{1}$ , n., carriage vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, carry; passive, sail, ride **Veiī, –ōrum**, *m. pl.*, Vē'iī, *a* town in Italy vel, conj., or; vel... vel, either . . . or vellus, -eris, n., fleece, wool vēlō, 1, cover  $v\bar{e}l\bar{o}cit\bar{a}s$ ,  $-t\bar{a}tis$ , f., swiftness vēlum, -ī, n., sail velut, velutī, adv., just as, as vēna, -ae, f., vein vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., hunting, hunt vendō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, sell venēnum, -ī, n., poison Venetī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Věn´etī veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, **venter**, **–tris**, *m*., belly, stomach ventus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m., wind **Venus**, **–eris**, *f.*, Venus, *goddess* 

of love and beauty

verberō, 1, beat, strike

verbum, -ī, n., word: verba

facio, speak, make a speech

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, m., Vercingetorix (Versinjet orix) vērē, adv., truly vereor, verērī, veritus, fear, respect **Vergilius, Vergilī**, *m.*, Virgil vergo, -ere, -, slope, lie vēritās, -tātis, f., truth vērō, adv., in truth, but, however versicolor, gen. -oris, of various colors versō, 1, turn over; passive, live versor, 1, move about, be engaged, live, be versus, -ūs, m., line, verse vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn; passive, turn (oneself); sometimes deponent vērus, -a, -um, true Vespasiānus, -ī, m., Vespasian (Vespā'zhian), the emperor vesper, -erī, m., evening; vesperī, in the evening **Vesta. –ae,** f., Vesta, goddess of the hearth Vestālis, -e, Vestal, of Vesta vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (referring to two or more persons) vēstibulum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., entrance vēstīgium, -gī, n., footprint, vestio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, clothe vestis, -is, f., clothing, clothes, garment vestītus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}$ s, m., clothing veterānus, -a, -um, veteran, experienced vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid vetus, gen. veteris, old (g. pl. veterum) vetustus, -a, -um, old, ancient vexō. 1. disturb via, -ae, f., way, road, street; journey viātor, -ōris, m., traveler vīcēnī, -ae, -a, twenty (each) vīciēs, adv., twenty times vīcīnus, -a, -um, neighboring; as noun, m., neighbor vicis, -is, f., change; in vicem, in turn victima, -ae, f., victim

victor,  $-\bar{\mathbf{o}}$ ris, m., victor; adj., victorious victōria, -ae, f., victory  $v\bar{i}ctus, -\bar{u}s, m.$ , living, food vīcus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{i}}$ , m., village videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; passive, be seen, seem, seem videor, vidērī, vīsus, seem vigil, gen. vigilis, wakeful vigilia, –ae, f., watchman, watch (a fourth part of the night) v**īgintī**, *indeclinable*, twenty vigor, -ōris, m., vigor vīlis, -e, cheap, worthless  $v\bar{l}$ **lla, –ae,** f., farmhouse, villa Vīminālis (mons), -is, m., the Vĭm'inal Hill vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus, conquer, defeat, overcome. win vinculum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n., bond, chain

vindicō, 1, claim, appropriate

vīnea, -ae, f., grape arbor, shed  $v\bar{i}n\bar{e}tum, -\bar{i}, n., vineyard$  $v\bar{\mathbf{n}}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{m}, -\bar{\mathbf{i}}, n.$ , wine violo, 1, injure vir, virī, m., man, husband  $virg\bar{o}$ , -ginis, f., virgin, maiden **virtūs**, **–tūtis**, *f.*, manliness, courage, virtue  $v\bar{i}s$ , —, f., force, power, violence: pl., vīrēs, -ium, strength  $v\bar{t}a$ , -ae, f., life vitiōsus, -a, -um, full of faults vitium.  $-t\bar{\imath}$ , n. fault vītō, 1, avoid vīvo, -ere, vixi, victus, live vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living vix, adv., scarcely, with difficulty, hardly\_ vobiscum = cum vobis vocō, 1, call, summon, invite, invoke volō, 1, fly

volō, velle, voluī, —, want, wish, be willing Volscī,  $-\bar{o}$ rum, m. pl., the Volscians (Vŏl´shians) volucris, -ris, f., bird voluntās, -tātis, f., wish, consent voluptās, –tātis, f., pleasure volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus, roll (up); turn over; passive, toss about vos, you, pl. of tū 7 voveō, –ēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow, promise vox, vocis, f., voice, word, remark, talk Vulcānus, -ī, m., Vulcan, god of fire vulgus, -ī, n., common people vulnerō, 1, wound vulnus, vulneris, n., wound vultus,  $-\bar{\mathbf{u}}\mathbf{s}$ , m., expression,

features



## English-Latin

For proper nouns and proper adjectives not given in this vocabulary see the Latin-English Vocabulary or the text.

Verbs of the first conjugation whose parts are regular are indicated by the figure 1.

able (be), possum, posse, potuī,

about, dē, w. abl.

accomplice, socius,  $-c\bar{\iota}$ , m. accomplish, conficio, -ere,

-fēcī. -fectus

account (on), see on

accustomed (be), consuesco,

-ere, -suēvī, -suētus

achieve, efficio, -ere, effeci, effectus

across, trāns, w. acc.

add, adiciō, -ere, adiēcī,

adiectus

admire, admīror, 1

adopt, adoptō, 1

adorn, ōrnō, 1

after (conj.), postquam; use abl. abs. (perfect participle)

again, iterum

against, contrā, w. acc.

agree, consentio, -īre, -sēnsī,

-sēnsus

**aid.** auxilium,  $-l\bar{l}$ , n.

all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um;

all other, ceteri, -ae, -a

allow, licet, -ēre, licuit or

licitum est

almost, paene

alone, sõlus, -a, -um

already, iam

also, etiam

although, cum; quamquam; use participle or abl. abs.

always, semper

among, inter, w. acc.

and, et; -que

another, alius, alia, aliud

any(one), ūllus, -a, -um; quis, quid (after sī)

appear, appāreō, -ēre, appāruī,

appāritūrus

approach (noun), adventus,

-ũs, m.; (verb), accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessūrus (w. ad);

adeō. adīre, adiī, aditūrus; appropinquō, 1 (w. dat.)

arena, arēna, -ae, f.

arise, orior, orīrī, ortus

arm, armō, 1

arms, arma, -ōrum, n. pl.

army, exercitus, -ūs, m.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.

arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī,

-ventūrus

art, ars, artis, f.

as... as possible, quam, w. superl.; as soon as possible,

quam prīmum; as to, ut

ask, rogō, 1

at (near), ad, w. acc.; abl. of

time or place

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl.

attack, oppugnō, 1; aggredior, aggredī, aggressus

**author**, auctor, –ōris, m.

await, exspectō, 1

away (be), absum, -esse, āfuī,

āfutūrus

### R

bad, malus, -a, -um

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum,

n. pl.

bandit, latro, -onis, m.

banish, expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus

battle line, aciēs, aciēī, f.

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

beat, superō. 1

beautiful, pulcher, -chra.

-chrum

because, use participle or abl.

abs.; quod, quoniam

become, fīō, fierī, (factus)

before (adv. and prep.), ante,

beg, ōrō, 1; petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus

begin, incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus; began, coepī, coeptus

believe, crēdō. -ere, crēdidī, crēditus (w. dat.)

besiege, obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī, obsessus

best, optimus, -a, -um

better, melior, melius

between, inter. w. acc.

blame, accūsō. 1

**book**, liber, librī, m.

boy, puer, puerī, m.

brave, fortis, -e; bravely, fortiter

**bridge**, pōns, pontis, m. bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus;

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus;

bring together, condūcō,

-ere, -dūxī, -ductus

Britons, Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl.

build, exstruō, –ere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus; aedificō, 1

**building**, aedificium,  $-c\bar{\imath}$ , n.

burn, incendō, -ere, incendī, incēnsus

business, negōtium,  $-t\bar{t}$ , n.

but, sed

buy, emō, -ere, -ēmī, emptus

by, ā. ab, w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone

(

call, appellō, 1

camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl. capture, expugnō, 1; capiō,

-ere, cepī, captus

VOCABULARY

carry, portō, 1; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; carry on war, bellum gerō; carry back, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus cause, efficio, -ere, effeci, effectus (w. ut and subjunct.) cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, m.; equitēs, -um, m. pl. certain, a certain (one), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; certainly, certē **chain**, vinculum,  $-\bar{1}$ , n. chance, cōpia. -ae. f. check, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, \_tentus **children**, līberī, –ōrum, *m. pl.* choose, ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī. ēlēctus; dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus **circumstance**, rēs, reī, f. citadel, arx, arcis, f. citizen, cīvis, -is, m. city, urbs, urbis, f. civil, cīvīlis, -e client, cliens, -entis, m. close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus collect, confero, conferre. contulī, collātus come, veniō, -īre. vēnī. ventūrus command (be in), praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (w. dat.) common people, plēbs, plēbis, complete, conficio, -ere, -feci, -fectus conceal, cēlō, 1 concern, cūra, –ae, f. condemn, damnō, 1 **condition**, condiciō, –ōnis, f. conference, colloquium, -quī, conquer, vinco, -ere, vīcī, victus; superō, 1 conspire, coniūro, 1 consul, consul, -ulis, m. consult (for), consulo, -ere. -suluī. -sultus

criticize, accūsō, 1
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus
crowded together. cōnfertus,
-a. -um
cruel, crūdēlis, -e
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -tātis, f.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
cut off, interclūdō. -ere. -clūsī,
-clūsus

### D

daughter, fīlia, -ae, f. day, diēs, diēī, m. and f. dear, cārus, -a, -um decided (be), placet, –ēre, placuit decorated, adornātus, -a, -um **deed.** factum.  $-\bar{\imath}$ . n. **defeat** (noun). calamitās, –tātis, f.; (verb), superō, 1; pellō, -ere. pepulī, pulsus; vincō. -ere, vīcī, victus defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus defenses, mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. delay. mora. –ae. f. demand, postulō, 1 depart, excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessūrus **departure**, exitus, –ūs, *m*.; profectio, -onis, f. desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus despair (of), dēspērō, 1 destrov. dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus determine, constituo, -ere. -stituī, -stitūtus die, morior, morī, mortuus differ, differo, differre, distulī. dīlātus difficult, difficilis. -e dinner, cēna, –ae, f. divide, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus draw up, înstruō, -ere, înstrūxī, īnstrūctus drive out, expello, -ere, expuli, expulsus during, per, w. acc. dutiful, pius, -a, -um **duty**, officium,  $-c\bar{\imath}$ , n.

E each one, quisque, quidque eager for (be), studeō, -ēre, studu $\bar{i}$ . — (w. dat.) eagerness, studium,  $-d\bar{1}$ , n. earn, mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus earth, terra, -ae, f. easy, facilis, -e; easily, facile elect, creō, 1 elevated, ēditus, -a, -um embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis. f. **empire**, imperium,  $-r\bar{1}$ , n. encourage, confirmo, 1 endure, fero, ferre, tulī, lātus enemy (personal), inimīcus, -ī, m.; (national), hostis, -is, m. enjoy, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus (w. abl.) enter, ingredior, ingredī, ingressus entire, tõtus, -a, -um entrust, mandō, 1 envoy, lēgātus, -ī, m. envy, invideō. -ēre, invīdī. invīsus (w. dat.) erect, exstruō, –ere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus escape, fugiō. –ere, fūgī, fugitūrus establish, constituo, -ere, -stituī. -stitūtus everything, omne or omnia **example**, exemplum,  $-\bar{1}$ , n. excel, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitūrus (w. dat.) exclaim, (ex)clāmō, 1

### $\mathbf{F}$

fame, fāma, -ae, f.,
family, familia, -ae, f.
famous, clārus, -a, -um
farm, ager, agrī, m.,
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
farthest, extrēmus, -a, -um;
ultimus, -a, -um
father, pater, patris, m.
fear, timeō, -ēre, timuī, —;
vereor, verērī, veritus
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus
few, paucī, -ae, -a
fierce, ferus, -a, -um
fight, pugnō, 1

cover, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tectus

**creditor**, crēditor, –ōris, m.

**country**, patria, –ae, f.

courage, virtūs, -tūtis, f.

find, invenio, -īre, invēnī, inventus first, prīmum; at first, prīmō flame, flamma, –ae, f. flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus **food**, cibus,  $-\bar{1}$ , m. for (conj.), nam; (prep.), ad, ob, w. acc.; prō, w. abl.; for the purpose or sake of, causā or grātiā (preceded by gen.); sometimes not expressed forest, silva, -ae, f. former (the), ille; the former ... the latter, ille... hic fortify, mūnio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus **fortune**, fortūna, –ae, f. free (adj.), līber, -era, -erum; (verb), līberō, 1 fresh, integer, -gra, -grum friend, amīcus,  $-\bar{i}$ ; m.; (girl) **friend**, amīca, –ae, f. friendly, amīcus, -a, -um frighten, terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus frog, rāna, -ae, f. from, ē, ex, ā, ab, dē, w. abl.;

## furnish, praebeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus G

from one another, inter sē

gate, porta, -ae, f. Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.; Gauls, Gallī, –ōrum, m. pl. general, dux, ducis, m.; lēgātus,  $-\bar{1}, m$ . get, parō, 1; get (possession of), potior, potiri, potītus (w. abl.) girl, puella, -ae, f. give, do, dare, dedī, datus **gladiator**, gladiator, -oris, m.; gladiatorial, gladiātōrius, -a. -um go, eō, īre, iī, itūrus; go out, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus god, deus,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , m.; goddess, dea, -ae, f.gold, aurum, -ī, n. good, bonus, -a, -um grain, frūmentum,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , n.

great, magnus, -a, -um; greater, maior, maius; greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um; great deal, plūrimum; so great, tantus, -a, -um

Greece, Graecia, -ae, f. Greek, Graecus, -a, -um guard, praesidium, -dī, n. guest-friend, hospes, -itis, m.

guest-friend, hospes, –itis, m. H happen, accidō, -ere, accidī, -harbor, portus, -ūs, m. hardly, vix harsh, dūrus. -a. -um hasten, properõ, 1; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūrus have, habeō, –ēre, habuī, habitus; have to, use fut. pass. part. he, is; hic; ille; often not expressed head, caput, capitis, n. hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus help, auxilium, -lī her (poss.), eius; (reflex.), suus, -a, -um; herself (reflex.), suī high, altus, -a, -um hill, mons, montis, m.: collis, -is, m. **himself** (*reflex.*), suī; (*intens.*), ipse hinder, impediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus his (poss.), eius; his own (reflex.), suus, -a, -um **home**, domus,  $-\bar{u}s$ , f. **Horace**, Horatius, –tī, m. **horse**, equus,  $-\tilde{1}$ , m. horseman, eques, equitis, m. **hostage**, obses, obsidis, m. hour, hōra, -ae, f. **house**, domus,  $-\bar{u}s$ , f. how, quō modō; how much, quantus, –a, –um however, autem (never first word) humble, humilis, -e hurry (on), propero, 1

I, ego, meī; often not expressed

immediately, statim impel, impellō, -ere, impulī,

impulsus

in, in, w. abl.; in order to or that, ut (w. subjunctive); in order not to, nē

influence (*verb*) addūcō, –ere, addūxī, adductus; (*noun*), auctōritās, –tātis, *f*.

inform, (eum) certiorem facio,
 -ere, feci, factus; passive,
 certior fio, fieri

inhabit, incolō, -ere, incoluī, -inspire, iniciō, -ere, iniēcī,
iniectus

into, in, w. acc. investigate, exploro, 1

invite, vocō, l
it, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc; ille,
 illa, illud; often not expressed

### J

**journey**, iter, itineris, *n*.

## K

keep, retineō, –ēre, retinuī, retentus; keep from, prohibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus

kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus; occīdo, -ere, occīdi, occīsus

kind, genus, generis, n.
kindness, beneficium, -cī, n.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; perf. of nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, or of cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus

### T

large, magnus, -a, -um; so large, tantus, -a, -um later, posteā, post latter, hic law, lēx, lēgis, f. lay aside, dēponō, -ere, dēposuī, dēpositus

lead a life, vītam agō leader, dux, ducis, m.; prīnceps, prīncipis, m. learn, cognōscō, -ere. -nōvī, -nitus leave (behind), relinquō, –ere,

lead, dūcō, –ere, dūxī, ductus:

relīquī, relictus **legion**, legiō, –ōnis, f. letter (epistle), litterae, -ārum,

liberty, lībertās, -tātis, f. life, vīta, –ae, f. like, amō, 1 little later, paulo post live (a life), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; (dwell), habitō, 1 long, longus, -a, -um; long (adv.), (for) a long time, diū look at or on, specto, 1 lose, āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus; perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus

loss, dētrīmentum.  $-\bar{i}$ , n. love, amor, amōris, m. luxury, luxuria, -ae, f.

### M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; make war upon, bellum īnferō (w. dat.) man, vir. virī. m.: homō. hominis, m. many, multī, -ae, -a; so many, tot; very many, plūrimī, -ae, march, iter, itineris, n. master, dominus,  $-\bar{1}$ , m. matter, rēs, reī, f. meanwhile, interea, interim meet (in battle), congredior, congredī, congressus mercy, clēmentia. -ae, f. messenger, nūntius, -tī, m. mile, mīlle passūs; pl. mīlia passuum molest, noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (w. dat.) money, pecūnia, -ae, f. month, mēnsis, -is m. **monument**, monumentum,  $-\bar{1}$ , n.

mother, māter, mātris, f. move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus: afficiō, -ere, affēcī. affectus much, multus, -a, -um must, use fut. pass. part. my, meus, -a, -um

name, nōmen, nōminis, n. **nature**, nātūra, –ae, f. near, ad w. acc.; (adj.), propinguus, -a, -um necessary (it is), oportet, -ēre, oportuit; necesse est neglect, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lectus **neighbors**, fīnitimī, —ōrum, *m*. nevertheless, tamen new, novus, -a, -um next, proximus, -a, -um **night**, nox, noctis, f. no, nūllus, -a. -um; no longer, non iam not, non, ne (w. negative volitive and purpose clauses) **noted**, īnsignis. –e: nōtus, –a. -um nothing, nihil notice, animadverto, -ere, -vertī, -versus

### 0

**number**, numerus. –ī. m.

obey, pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus (w. dat.) obstruct, impedio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus obtain (one's request), impetro, occur, intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus often, saepe old man, senex, senis, m. omen, ōmen, ōminis, n. on, in, w. abl.: on account of, ob or propter, w. acc. one, ūnus, -a, -um opinion, sententia, –ae, f. oppress, opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressus or, vel oracle, őrāculum, -ī, n.

order (noun), imperium, -rī, n.,; (verb), iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō, 1, w. dat.; in order to or that, ut; in order not to or that, nē other, alius, alia, aliud: the other, alter, -a, -um: others. see some; all other, see all ought, dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus; oportet, -ēre, oportuit; use fut. pass. part. our, noster, -tra, -trum overcome, superō, 1; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus

part, pars, partis, f. pay, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus; pay the penalty, poenam dō peace, pāx, pācis, f. **people**, populus,  $-\bar{1}$ , m. permit, licet. –ēre, licuit or licitum est; permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus persuade, persuadeo, –ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus (w. dat.) place (noun), locus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m.; pl. loca, –ōrum, n.; (verb), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus; place in charge, praeficio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus plan (noun), consilium, -lī, n.; (verb), in animō habeō please, be pleasing to, placeo, -ēre, placuī, placitūrus (w. dat.) **poem**, carmen, carminis, n. poet, poēta, –ae, m. Pompey, Pompeius, -peī, m. **power**, potestās, -tātis, f.; imperium, -rī, n. **praetor**, praetor, –ōris, m. praise, laudō. 1 prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, prepare, parō, 1 prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus **prisoner**, captīvus, -ī, m. proceed, procedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessūrus procession, pompa, -ae, f.

more, magis, amplius; use

comparative

promise, polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus **protection**, praesidium,  $-d\bar{l}$ , n. pursue, însequor, însequi, īnsecūtus put in charge of, praeficio, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

## O

queen, rēgīna, -ae. f. quickly, celeriter

### R

read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus ready, parātus, -a, -um recall, revocō, 1 receive, accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptus; excipiō, -ere, excēpī, exceptus recite, recitō, 1 reconnoiter, exploro, 1 refrain, abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus region, regio, -onis, f. remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remember, memoriā teneō repair, reficio, -ere, refecī, refectus reply, respondeo, -ere, respondo, responsus report (noun), nūntius, -tī, m.; (verb), nūntiō, 1 reserve, reservo, 1 resist, resisto, -ere, restitī, -(w. dat.) resources, opēs, -um, f. pl. rest (of), reliquus, -a, -um; cēterī, -ae, -a retire, mē recipiō return (verb), redeō, -īre, rediī, reditūrus; (noun), reditus,  $-\bar{u}s, m$ . revolution, novae res, novarum rērum, f. pl.

river, flūmen, flūminis, n.

Roman, Romanus, -a, -um

imperō, 1 (w. dat.)

rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus;

**road**, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.

S safety, salūs, –ūtis, f. sail, nāvigō, 1 sailor, nauta, –ae, m. sake of (for the), causā or grātiā (w. gen. preceding) sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. same, idem, eadem, idem save, servo, 1 say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; inquit (w. direct quotations) scare, terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus school, lūdus, -ī, m. scout, explorator, -oris, m. sea, mare, maris, n. see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus seize, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; occupō, 1; comprehendō, -ere. -hendī. -hēnsus select, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus; dēligō, 1 senate, senātus, -ūs, m. **senator**, senātor, —ōris, m. send, mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus; send out, dīmittō, -ere, dīmīsī, dīmissus; send ahead, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, missus; send for, arcesso, -ere, -īvī, -ītus set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus; set on fire, incendo. -ere, incendo. incēnsus she, ea; haec; illa; often not expressed **shield**, scūtum,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , n. ship, nāvis, nāvis, f. short, brevis, -e **show** (*noun*), mūnus, –eris, *n*.; (verb), ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus; dēmonstro, 1 **sign**, **signal**, signum,  $-\bar{1}$ , n. sight, conspectus, -ūs, m. since, quod, cum, quoniam; use abl. abs. sing, canto, 1 single one (not a), neque quisquam **sister**, soror, –ōris, *f*. six, sex; sixty, sexāgintā

size, magnitūdō, –dinis, f. slave, servus,  $-\bar{i}$ , m. slavery, servitūs, servitūtis, f. small, parvus, -a, -um sō, ita, tam; so great or so large, tantus, -a, -um; so that, ut; so as not to, so that not, nē soldier, mīles, mīlitis, m. some, non nullī, -ae, -a; quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; some . . . others, aliī... aliī; some (one), aliquis son, fīlius,  $-l\bar{l}$ , m. soon as possible (as), quam prīmum speak, dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus; loquor, loqui, locūtus; verba faciō spear, pīlum,  $-\bar{i}$ , n. **spectacle**, spectāculum,  $-\bar{\imath}$ , n. spend, consumo, -ere, -sumpsi. -sūmptus; (of time), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; spend the winter, hiemō, 1 stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus start, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus state (noun), cīvitās, -tātis, f.; station, colloco, 1 stop, consisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitūrus **storm**, tempestās, –tātis, f. story, fābula, –ae, f. strange, novus, -a, -um strive, contendo, -ere, -tendo, -tentūrus struggle, laboro, 1 succeed, succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus such, tantus, -a, -um summon, vocō, 1: convocō, 1 supplies, commeātus, –ūs, m. surpass, superō, 1 surrender, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus surround, circumsistō, –ere, -stetī, --survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus suspect, suspicor, 1 swiftly, celeriter

tablet (of the law), tabula, -ae, f. talk, loquor, loqui, locutus teach, doceo, -ēre, docuī, doctus **teacher**, magister, –trī, m. tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus **temple**, templum,  $-\tilde{\mathbf{i}}$ , n. tempt, temptō, 1 terrify, terreo, -ere, terrui, territus territory, fines, -ium, m. pl. **terror**, terror, –ōris, m. than, quam that (dem. pron.), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id that, in order that, so that (conj.), ut(ī); that...not (purpose), nē; (result), ut . . . nōn their (poss.), eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (reflex.), suus, –a, themselves (reflex.), suī; (intens.), ipsī, -ae, -a then, tum they, eī, eae, ea; illī, illae, illa; often not expressed thing, res, rei, f.; often not expressed think, putō, 1; existimō, 1; arbitror, 1 third, tertius, -a, -um this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id thousand, mīlle; pl. mīlia throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus; coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus; throw down, dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, deiectus; proiciō, -ere, −iēcī, −iectus

train, instituō, —ere, instituī, institūtus travel, iter faciō traveler, viātor, —ōris, m. tribe, gēns, gentis, f. troops, cōpiae, —ārum, f. pl. try, cōnor, 1 twenty, vīgintī two, duo, duae, duo

### U

under, sub, w. abl.; under the direction of, dux or prīnceps in abl. abs.
unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um unharmed, incolumis. -e unless, nisi unlike, dissimilis, -e until, dum unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — urge, hortor, 1; impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsus use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus (w. abl.)

### V

very, use superlative: very many, plūrimī, -ae, -a victory, victōria, -ae, f. villa, vīlla, -ae, f. village, vīcus, -ī, m. Virgil, Vergilius, -lī, m.

### W

wage war, bellum gerō
wait, exspectō, 1
war, bellum, -ī, n.
warn, moneō, -ēre, monuī,
monitus
waste, cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī,
-sūmptus
water, aqua, -ae, f.
wave, unda, -ae, f.
we, nōs: often not expressed
weapons, tēlā, -ōrum, n. pl.
wedding, nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl.
weep, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus
well, bene

what (pron), quis, quid; (adj.), quī, quae, quod when, ubi; cum; expressed by participle or abl. abs. which (rel. pron.), quī, quae, quod; which (of two), uter, utra. utrum who (rel. pron.), quī, quae, quod; (interrog. pron.), quis, auid whole, tōtus, -a, -um wholesome, salūbris. -e why, cūr willing (be), volō, velle, voluī, —; not be willing, nolo, nölle, nöluī. win, mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus winter, hiems, hiemis, f. wisely, sapienter wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; volō, velle, voluī, —: wish not, nolo, nolle, nolui, with, cum, w. abl.; sometimes abl. alone withdraw, concēdō, -ere. -cessī. -cessūrus: discēdō. -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus without, sine, w. abl. woman, mulier, -eris, f.; fēmina, -ae, f. wonder, mīror, 1 **word.** verbum.  $-\bar{\imath}$ . n. worship, colō, -ere, coluī, cultus worthy, dignus, -a, -um write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī,

### Y

scrīptus

year, annus, -ī, m.
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī,
cessūrus; concēdō, -ere,
-cessī, -cessūrus
you, tū (sing.); vōs (pl.); often
not expressed
young man, iuvenis, -is, m.
your, tuus, -a, -um; yourself
(reflex.), tuī
youth, adulēscēns, -entis, m.

time, tempus, temporis, n.

top (of), summus, -a, -um

torture, cruciātus, –ūs, m.

toward, ad, w. acc.

tower, turris, -is, f.

**town**, oppidum.  $-\tilde{1}$ , n.

to, ad, in, w. acc.; (purpose), ut

too, quoque; use comparative

# Subject Index

Bibulus, 233 architecture A Greek, 138 Bingen, Hildegard von, 426, Academy, the, 125, 126 Roman, 138 Achilles, 207 arena, Roman, 279 biremes, Roman, 67, 298 Acropolis, 57, 79, 81, 91, 92, 95 Argo, 208, 209, 220 Bituriges, 358 Actium, Battle of, 179 Black Sea, 204, 209 Argonauts, 203, 204, 209, 220 Adam of Bremen, 425 map of their voyage, 205 boats, Roman, 67 adopting children, 11 Argus, 204, 208 books, Roman, 16, 22 Aeetes, King, 204, 216 Ariovistus, 277, 280, 281, 283, boxing, 116 Aeneas, 446, 449-453 285, 287, 289 bridge, Roman, 307 Aeneid, 22, 24, 398, 446-453, Britain, 303, 313, 315, 324, 324, 447 Aristotle, 124, 125 Arles, France, 279 Aesculapius, 76 armor, Roman, 174 Britons, 186, 188, 321 Aeson, King, 204, 206 army, Caesar's, 236-239 Brittany, France, 299 Aesop, 413 Artotrogus, 400 Brundisium, 73, 74 agape, 201 Arvernians, 358, 359 Brutus, 125, 156, 235, 296 Agora, 79 Athena, 209, 435 Agricola, 419 Nike, Temple of, 92 Agrippa, Marcus, 35, 291 Caecilia Metella, 64, 65, 101-Athens, 57, 78, 80, 86, 91, 92, Aisne River, 294 95, 112, 138, 204 102, 104 Albans, 145 Atlas, 443 Caesar, Julia, 186, 234 Alesia, 362, 363, 368, 371, 375, ātrium, 5 Caesar, Julius, 11-12, 22, 48, 375 Atrius, Quintus, 325 73, 76, 84, 85, 98, 120, map of, 364 Atuatuci, 295-296, 329, 338 125, 165, 186, 188, 189, Alexander, 125, 234 Augustine, 423 Units V-VII (pp. 230-379), Allobroges, 254, 256 Augustus, Emperor, 2, 11, 17, 402, 407, 408 Ambiorix, 329, 338, 355, 357 20, 23, 120, 125, 126, 146, Caligula, 324, 370 America, discovery of, 425 Calpurnius, 82, 84 *147*, *165*, *179*, 190, *191*, amphitheater, Roman, 55, 316 camp, Roman, 365 192, 231, 243, 352, 370, Anchises, 452 374, 410, 413, 419 Cannae, Battle of, 178 animals in Caesar's time, 354. Aurelius, Marcus, 173 Cape Cod, 425 355 Avaricum, 359, 360 Capitoline Hill, 172, 173 Annals, 398, 419 Aventine, 154 Capua, 68, 71, 74 antefix, 212 Avranches, Normandy, 300 Carmina Burana, 428 Antiochus III, 193 Carnutes, 329, 338, 357 Antony, Mark, 179, 190, 192, B carriage, Roman travelling, 71 404 barbarians, 272 Carthage, 158, 179, 180, 423, Apollo, 76, 99, 197 barges, Roman, 367 448, 448 Temple of, 106, 109, 183 Bath, England, 83 Carthaginians, 178 Appian Way, 45, 64, 65, 74 baths, Roman, 83, 352 Caryatid, 81 aqueduct, Roman, 241 Battle of Actium, 179 Cassius, 125, 190 Aquitania, 296, 302 Battle of Cannae, 178 Cassivellaunus, 325, 329 Arar River, 260 Belgians, 240, 242, 294-296, Catiline, 186, 187, 188, 397. Arch of 404, 407 Septimius Severus, 30 322 Bellovaci, 294 Cato, 409 Tiberius and Germanicus, 257 Bembo, Pietro, 433 Catullus, 402 Titus. 322 arch, Roman, 282 Bias of Priene, 111 cavalry, Roman, 236 Bibracte, 267 celebrations, Roman, 41

festivals, Roman, 39 Celts, 342 D death masks, 268 fire brigade, Roman, 82 David, Jacques-Louis, 145 First Triumvirate, 232 Cenabum, 357 Deal. 324 Flamininus, 182 censorship, Gallic, 349 decursio, 278 Fleece, Golden, 203, 204, 208, centaur, 206, 207 del Sarto, 337 Cerinthus, 411, 412 219, 220, 222 Delia, 412 Cernunnos, 350 food, Roman, 58 Delphi, 99, 106, 109, 109, 156, Ceutrones, 256 fortifications, Caesar's, 253 157 Fortuna (goddess), 44, 48, 48, Channel, English, 310 Delphic Oracle, 109 Chilon of Sparta, 111 161 Demosthenes, 120, 121 Chiron, 76, 207 Forum of Julius Caesar, 293 **Deucalion**, 438-440, *439* Churchill, Winston, 234 Forum, Roman, 3, 30, 42, 233, Dido, 448, 448, 450, 451 Cicero, Marcus Tullius, 120, 293 Diespater, 346 186, 187, 188, 290, 374, Dioskorides of Samos. 133 founding of Rome, 149 freedoms, Roman, 200 382, *397*, 402, 404, 405, Discobolus, 123 Fulvia, 8, 32, 37 405, 406, 417, 431 Diviciacus, 264, 280 Cicero, Quintus 329, 331, 333 Fundanus, 388 Domitian, 419 funeral rites, Roman, 82 (different than orator) Doric Cimbri, 290 funerals, Gallic, 349 columns, 183 Circus Maximus, 49 Furianus, Unit I-II (pp. 1-143) temple. 140 Cisalpine Gaul, 289 Dover, 324, 328 cithara, 90 G drama, Roman, 132 Galba, Servius, 296 civilization Druids, 327, 341, 342, 344, 345 Gallia, map of, 228-229 Greek, 138-140 Drusilla, Livia, 17, 20 Roman, 138-140 Garden, the (school), 401 Dumnorix, 256, 264, 325 Claudian, 200 Gaul(s), 167, 168, 171, 172, Claudius, Emperor, 324, 324, 370 173, 186, 188, Units V-VII E Cleobulus of Rhodes, 111 (pp. 230-379) Eburones, 329 Cleopatra, 189, 190, 192 Gellius Aulus, 175, 420 Echo, 441, 442 Cloaca Maxima, 155 Geneva, 254 Eclogues, 24 coinage, 98, 338 Georgics, 24 education Colchis. 203, 204, 208 Gergovia, 360, 362 Greek, 86 Collingwood, R.G., 324 Germanicus, 370 of children, early, 16, 21 Colosseum, Roman, 421 Germans, Units V-VII Roman, 86 comedy, Roman, 399 (pp. 230-379) Elaver River, 360 Comum, 382 Gesta Romanorum, 431 Elysian Fields, 412 Considius, 264-265 gladiators, 49, 53, 54 Empire, Roman, 199-201 Constantine, 173, 238 Glauce, 227 map of, 136-137 Corinna, 412 Golden Fleece, 203, 204, 208, Ennius, 398 Corinth, 182, 183, 204, 227 219, 220, 222 Epicureans, 401 Isthmus of, 182 Epicurus, 400, 401 Gordiano, Emperor, 55 Corinthian columns, 95 Gorgon, 435 Erechtheum, 81 government, Roman, 200 Coronis, 76 Ericson, Leif, 425 Costa, Lorenzo, 203 Great Fire of 1666, 324 Etruscans, 14, 138, 149, 158 Crassus, M., 65, 232, 234 Great St. Bernard Pass, 296 Euclid, 138 Crassus, Publius, 289, 296, 302 Greek civilization, 138-140 Euridice, 437, 444, 445 Creticus, Quintus Caeciliius Eutropius, 146 Metellus, 65 Н Hades, 444, 451, 452 cubiculum, 385 Cumae, 451 Hadrian, Emperor, 95 Facilis, Marcus Favonius, 331 Curia, 30, 33, 231 Villa, 81 family Curiatii, 145 Haeduan, 325 matters, Gallic, 349 Cynthia, 412 unit. Roman. 11

Haeduans, 260, 261, 264, 285, 325, 361, 362 Hammer-God, 346 Hannibal, 178, 234 Harpy, 212 Helen of Troy, 450 Helvetians, Unit V (pp. 230-291) Herculaneum, 216, 382, 383 Hercynian Forest, 354 Hermes, 445 Hirtius, Aulus, 375 Histories, 419 holidays, Roman, 42 Holmes, T. Rice, 290 Homer, 120, 121, 138 Horace, 22, 23, 126, 138, 410 Horatii, 145, 148 House of the Moralist, 416 houses, Roman, 58 hunting, Roman, 421

**Iacopone of Todi**, 429 Iberian Peninsula, 290 Ides of March, 232 Ile de la Cité, 361 Ile St. Louis, 361 Illyricum, 233, 325 impluvium, 5 ink, Roman, 69 inkpot, Roman, 69 invasions of Britain, Caesar's, 324, 325 Isthmus of Corinth, 182

Italy, map of, 194

Jason, Unit IV (pp. 202-229) Julio-Claudian line, 23 Junius, 156 Juno, 172, 441, 448 Jupiter, 346, 438, 443, 449, 450 Juvenal, 420

# L

Labienus, 256, 257, 264-265, 295, 296, 322, 325, 329, 331, 338, 362, 371 Lambaesis, 262 Laura, 432 Laws of the Twelve Tables, 26-27, 27, 30, 45

Libanius, 78 liberty, Roman political, 200 libraries, Roman, 22 Libya, 199 Liger River, 296 Lingones, 271 Liutprand, 424 Livius, Titus, see Livy Livy, 146, 147, 175, 409 Loire River, 296 Londinium, 324 Longinus, Cassius, 235 Louvre, 93, 286, 445 Lucretia, 153 Lucretius, 120, 400-401, 402 Lupercalia, 39 Lutecia, 362 Lycurgus, 112, 114 Lyon, France, 261

# M

Maison Carée, 243 Mandubii, 369 Manlius, see Torquātus map of Gallia, 228-229 Italy, 194 Roman Empire, 136-137 Rome, 197 Siege of Alisia, 364 voyage of the Argonauts, 205 marathon race, 116 Marius, 120, 287, 290 Maro, Publius Vergilius, see Vergil marriage ceremonies, Roman, 101. 103 marriages, Gallic, 349 married women, Roman, 130 Martial, 418 masks, theater, 133, 291 Mauritania, 324 Maxentius, 233 Maximus, Valerius, 414 meals, Roman, 58, 59, 61 Medea, 204, 216, 224, 227 Medusa, 435, 443 megalith, prehistoric, 327 Menapii, 302, 304, 338 Menelaus, 450 Mercury, 450 Mérida, Spain, 291

Messalla, 411

Metamorphōsēs, 438 Metella, Caecilia, 64, 65 Metiosedum, 362 Michelangelo, 173 Micon, 79 Milton, 442 Misenum, 383 Mithradates VI of Anatolia. 127 Morini, 302, 310, 322 mosaic, Roman, 75, 114, 133 Mucius, see Scaevola Myron, 116, 123

## N

Naples, 383 Napoleon, 234 Narbo, 358 Narcissus, 441, 442 Naso, Publius Ovidius, see Ovid navy, Roman, 179 Nepos, Cornelius, 402 Neptune, Temple of, 140 Nero, 195, 196, 197, 382, 415, 416 Nervii, 294, 329, 338 New Year, Roman, 39 Nike, 91, 92, 93 Nile Mosaic, 161 River, 161 Nîmes, France, 241, 243 Nine Lyric Poets, The, 111 Norsemen, 425 Notre Dame de Paris, 361 Numa, 120 Numidia, 407

### 0

Ocelum, 256 Octavian, see Augustus Octodurus, 296 oculus, 35 Oedipus, 109 Olympeium, Temple of, 95 Olympic Games, 116, 118, 182 omens, 48 omphalos, 99 oracles, 44, 106, 109, 109, 157, 204 Orange, France, 246, 282 oratory, art of, 111

Porch of Maidens, 81 Samothrace, 93 Orgetorix, 244, 245, 248, 249 Orpheus, 355, 437, 444, 445 Porsena, 159 Santoni, 257 Saône River, 261. 261. 264 Portus Itius, 325 Ostia, 41 Poussin, Nicolas, 437, 442 Saturnalia, 39 Ovid, 24, 82, 84, 84, 85, 412, Scaevola, 159 Praeneste, 161 435, 438, 439 Praetorian Guard, 196, 238. "School of Athens", 124 P schools, Roman, 424 Propertius, 412 Scipio, 120 Paestum. 140 Painted Stoa, 79 Secular Games, 22 prophecies, 44 prophesy, 99, 157 Secular Hymn, The, 22 Palmyra, Syria, 193 Pantheon. 35 Propvlaea, 57, 91, 92 Secunda, 2, 26, 31, 32 Paris, 361, 361 Proserpina, 444 Segusiavi, 256 Parisii, 338, 361 Provence, 268 Seine River, 361 Parnassus, Mt., 438 Senate, Roman, 32, 165, 191, Publius Vergilius Maro, see Parthenon, 57, 91, 95, 112 Vergil 231 patricians, 133, 163 Publius, Unit I & II (pp. 1-143) House, 30, 231 Punic Wars, 178, 179 Pax Romana, 191 Senators, Roman, 32 peace, Roman, 200 Pygmalion of Cyprus, 445-446 Seneca, 415, 418 Pelias, King, 204, 206, 207, Pyrgopolinices, 400 Senones, 338 222, 224 Pvrrha, 438, 439 Sequanians, 261, 280 Python, 99 servants, Roman, 142 Periander of Corinth, 111 Pericles, 112, 120, 234 Seven Wise Men, The, 111 0 peristylum, 5 Sextus, 153 persecutions of Christians, 200 Quintilian, 382, 417, 418 Shakespeare, 232 Perseus, 435, 443 Quintus, see Furianus Shaw, George Bernard, 232 Petrarch, 431, 432 Petronius, 415-416 R Gallic, 297 Phaedrus, 413 races, chariot, 395 Roman, 297, 301 Pharsalus, 234 Raphael, 124 Sibyl, 451, 452 Silvanus, 346 Pheidippides, 116 Regulus, 178, 180 Philip, 182 Remi, 294 slavery, Roman, 200 Phoenicia, 178, 448 Renaissance, 139, 431, 432 slaves. Phoenicians, 158 rhetoric, art of, 87 daily tasks of, 70 Phoreys, 435 Rhine River, 290, 296, 304. Roman, 394 Pirustae, 325 306, 307, 338, 370 Socrates, 109, 120 Pittacus of Mytilene, 111 Rhone River, 253, 254, 261 Solon, 111, 120 Pius, Antoninus, 278 rights. Gallic, 349 Sotiates, 302 Plato, 87, 124 Rome spectacles, Roman, 55 Plautus, 133, 399, 399 civilization, 138-140 sports, plebians, 133, 163 founding of, 149 Olympic, 116 Pliny the Elder, 200, 382, 383 Roman, 55, 116 map of. 197 Pliny the Younger, 381, 382, Romulus, 149, 164 St. Albans, England, 316 383, 384, 391, 392, 420 roof tiles, Roman, 319 statue of Victory, 91 Plutarch, 232 Rubicon River, 234, 337 Stonehenge, 327 Pluto, 444 Rufus, Cornelius, 1, 8 Sucellus, 346 Poggio, 433 ruins, Roman, 199, 227, 258, Suebi, 303, 304, 304, 338, 355 Pollians, 331 262.316 Suessiones, 294 Polygnotus. 79 Suetonius, 232 Pompeii, 1. 381. 382, 383, 385, Sulla, 126, 127, 165, 232 399, 416 Sabines, 164, 398 Sulpicia, 411-412, *≠11* 

Sabinus, 300, 329

Sallust, 407

sacrifices, Roman, 409

Syria, 193

Syrus, Publilius, 408

Pompey, 73, 76, 120, 186, 188,

232, 234, 234, 338

Pont du Gard, \_4/

T Tacitus, Cornelius, 290, 324, 383, 384, 419 Tamesis River, 329 Taranis, 346 Tarquin, 152, 153, 157 **Tarquinia**, 14, 139 Tarquins, 155, 157 Tasgetius, 329 Tatius, Titus, 398 taxes, 3 Temple of Apollo, 106, 109, 183 Athena Nike, 92 Neptune, 140 Olympeium, 95 Venus and Rome, 42, 233 Venus Genetrix, 293 Ten Attic Orators, The, 111 Tencteri, 304 Terence, 399, 399 Teutonic, 290 Teutons, 290 Thales of Miletus, 111 Thames River, 329 theater, Roman, 133, 246, 291 Themistocles, 120 Theodosius I, 50 Thermopylae, 112, 113, 193 Thessaly, 204, 206, 222 **Thomas of Celano**, 429, *430* Thrace, 324 Tiber

Arch, 155 city of, 146

River, 159

Tiberius, 20 and Germanicus, Arch of, 257 Tibullus, 411, 411, 412 Timgad, Algeria, 262 Titus, Arch of, 322 Tivoli, 81 Tiziano, 153 Torquātus, 175 Trajan, 269, 298 Transalpine Gaul, 233, 246 Treasury of the Athenians at **Delphi**, 107 Treveri, 295, 296, 325, 331, 334, 338, 352 Treverorum, Augusta, 352 Trier, Germany, 352 Trimalchio, 415-416 Trinovantes, 329 Trojan War, 450 Trojans, 448, 450 Troy, fall of, 450 Turner, William, 448 Twelve Tables, Laws of the, 26-27, 27, 30, 45 Tyre, 448, 448

U

Usipetes, 304

V

values, Greek and Roman, 128 Veneti, 296, 300, 357 Venus, 232, 233, 445, 449 and Rome, Temple of, 42, 233 Genetrix, Temple of, 293 Vercassivellaunus, 371 Vercingetorix, 357, 357, 359-363, 371, 373, 375, 375 Vergil (Publius Vergilius Maro), 22, 23, 24, 120, 138, 140, 398, 410, 435, 446-447, 453

Vergilius Maro, Publius, see Vergil
Verona, Italy, 258
verse, Latin, 436
Vesontio, 289
Vespasian, Emperor, 417
Vestal Virgins, 18, 38, 42
Vesuvius, Mt., 382, 383
Via, Appia, see Appian Way
Vichy, 360
Victory, statue of, 91
Virgins, Vestal, 18, 38, 42
Volubilis, Morocco, 199
"vulgar" Latin, 290

W

Washington, George, 146, 234 water standards, 129 weaponry, Roman, 174 wedding customs, 101, 101 well, community, 129 Wheeler, Sir Mortimer, 324 women's responsibilities,

Roman, 21 writing implements, Roman, 69, 97

# Grammar/Vocabulary Index



A	cum, 88	future
ablative	clauses, 154, 169	infinitive, 36
absolute, 30, 53	D	passive participle, 113, 122,
of accompaniment, 14, 52	D	157
of agent, 30, 53	dative	perfect tense, 23-24
of comparison, 54	case, 14-15	tense, 5, 19
of degree of difference, 84,	of agent, 157	
192	of possession, 261	G
of means, 20, 52	of purpose, 134, 172	genitive, 168-169, 475
of place where, 7, 52	of reference, 134, 172	geometrical terms from Latin,
of respect, 41, 53-54	with adjectives, 48	166
of separation, 188	with compounds, 149-150	gerund, 121-123, 157, 486
of time when, 7, 52	with special verbs, 133-134	gerundive, 122-123, 485
uses of, 52, 477-479	uses, 476	
accusative, 6, 477	declension	Н
adjectives	first	hic, 40
agreement of, 7	adjectives, 4	•
comparison of, 46, 47, 50-51	nouns, 4	I
dative with, 48	second	idem, 45-46
first declension, 4	adjectives, 4	ille, 40
indefinite, 107-108	nouns, 4	imperative, 183, 485
interrogative, 34	third	imperfect
	adjectives. 13	subjunctive, 69, 70
irregular, 39 second declension, 4	nouns, 12	tense. 5, 19
	fourth, 59-60	impersonal verbs, 164-165
third declension. 13	fifth, 83	indefinite
adverbs, comparison of, 46, 47.	demonstratives, 40	
51		adjectives, 107-108
aliquis, 176	deponent verbs, 98	pronouns, 107-108
antecedent, 37	derivatives from Latin, 16	indefinites <i>quis</i> , <i>aliquis</i> , and
anticipatory clauses,	description, 191	quīdam, 176
subjunctive in, 262	direct object, 6	indirect
apposition, 7	double consonants, 55	commands, 117, 176
assimilation, 55	E	object, 14-15
aviation terms from Latin, 177	<del></del>	questions, 103-104
	eō, 108-109	statement, 36
C	etiam, 193	infinitives
cardinal numerals, Latin,	10	active, 33-34
67, 460	F	passive, 33-34
causal clauses with quod and	$f\bar{\imath}\bar{o}$ , 126	tenses of, 36
quoniam, 268	ferō, 74-75	used as subject and object, 20
commands, indirect, 117, 176	fifth declension, 83	interrogative
comparison of	first declension	adjectives, 34
adjectives, 46, 47, 50-51	adjectives, 4	pronouns, 34-35
adverbs, 46, 47, 51	nouns, 4, 83	ipse, 45-46
consonants	fourth declension	irregular adjectives, 39
double (in Latin), 55	nouns, 59-60	is, 45-46
silent (in English), 162		<i>i–stem</i> nouns, 12

L	perfect	result clauses, 184
legal phrases from Latin, 111	infinitive, 36	with <i>ut</i> and <i>ut non</i> , 79-80
locative case, 154, 480	participles used as adjectives	
Totalite case, 13 i, 100	and nouns, 29	S
M	subjunctive, 92-93, 94	scientific terms from Latin,
<i>mālō</i> , 153	tense, 23-24	100
mathematical terms from	personal pronouns, 102	second declension
Latin, 166	place	adjectives, 4
medical terms from Latin, 77	names from Latin, 273	nouns, 4
milia, 41	to which, 180	sentence structure, Latin, 160
mille, 41	pluperfect	sequence of tenses,
mottos, state, 124, 270, 356	active subjunctive, 87	subjunctive, 94
musical terms from Latin, 90	subjunctive, 92-93	Spanish, Latin influence in,
	tense, 23-24	115, 185, 243
N	possum, 40, 84	statement, indirect, 36
names in Latin, foreign, 243	postquam, 88	subject nominative, 6
$n\bar{e}$ , 65, 80	predicate nominative, 6	subjunctive
<i>nōlō</i> , 129-130	prefixes, Latin, 15, 21, 25, 31,	after verbs of fearing, 160
nominative, 4, 475	48, 55, 127, 155, 170, 198	hortatory, 61-62
predicate, 6	present	imperfect, 69, 70
subject, 6	active subjunctive, 60-61	in anticipatory clauses, 262
nouns	infinitive, 36	jussive, 61-62
clause of result, 117	participle, 105	mood, 60-61
fifth declension, 83	passive subjunctive, 60-61	possum, 84
first declension, 4	stem of verbs, 5	sum, 84
fourth declension, 59-60	tense, 5, 19	pluperfect active, 87
i–stem, 12	pronouns	present active, 60-61
second declension, 4	indefinite, 107-108	present passive, 60-61
third declension, 12	interrogative, 34-35	sequence of tenses, 94
numerals	personal, 102	sum, 84
cardinal, 67	reflexive, 102	tense sequence in purpose
ordinal, 67	relative, 34, 36-37	clauses, 70-71
	purpose clauses with <i>ut</i> and	uses, 482-484
object ()	$n\bar{e}$ , 65, 80	suffixes, Latin, 37, 43, 72, 119, 181
direct, 6	Q	sum, 6, 40, 24, 70, 84
indirect, 14-15	quīdam, 176	omission of, 172
ordinal numerals, Latin, 67, 460	questions, indirect, 103-104	superlative, 47
**	quidem, 193	ne
P	quis, 176	T
participles, 28-29, 485	quisquam, 184	third declension
agreement of, 29	quisque, 184	adjectives, 13
future passive, 113, 122, 157	quod, causal clauses with, 268	nouns, 12
present, 105	quoniam, causal clauses with,	time clauses: ubi, postquam,
used as adjectives and nouns,	268	cum, 88
perfect, 29	quoque, 193	translation hints, 205
used as clauses, 29	R	U
passive		
participle, future, 113, 122,	reflexive pronouns, 102 relative	ubi, 88, 104 ut, 65, 79-80
157, 485	as connective, 179	ut, 65, 79-80 ut non, 65, 79-80
subjunctive, present, 60-61 voice, 27-28	pronouns, 34, 36-37	ш ноп, оз, 77-00
VOICE, 21-20	purpose clauses, 196	

 $\mathbf{V}$ 

verbs conjugations, 463-474 deponent, 98 future perfect tense, 23-24 future tense. 5, 19 imperfect tense. 5, 19 impersonal, 164-165 perfect tense, 23-24 pluperfect tense, 23-24

present stem, 5 present tense, 5, 19 uses, 480-485 vocative, 4 volō, 129-130











ISBN 0-02-640913-5



9780026409131

GLENCOE McGraw-Hill